CAMBRIDGE

American English

GRAMMAR IN USE INTERMEDIATE

Self-study reference and practice for students of English

with answers

Fourth Edition

Raymond Murphy

with William R. Smalzer and Joseph Chapple

THE WORLD'S BEST-SELLING GRAMMAR SERIES

Experience Better Learning

Grammar in Use Intermediate

Self-study reference and practice for students of North American English

Fourth Edition

with answers

Raymond Murphy

with William R. Smalzer and Joseph Chapple



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

Acknowledgements vii
To the Student viii
To the Teacher x

Present and Past
1 Present Continuous (**I am doing**)
2 Simple Present (**I do**)
3 Present Continuous and Simple Present 1 (**I am doing** and **I do**)
4 Present Continuous and Simple Present 2 (**I am doing** and **I do**)
5 Simple Past (**I did**)
6 Past Continuous (**I was doing**)

Present Perfect and Past
7 Present Perfect (**I have done**)
8 Present Perfect and Past 1 (**I have done** and **I did**)
9 Present Perfect Continuous (**I have been doing**)
10 Present Perfect Continuous and Simple (**I have been doing** and **I have done**)
11 **How long have you (been) ... ?**
12 **for** and **since** **When ... ?** and **How long ... ?**
13 Present Perfect and Past 2 (**I have done** and **I did**)
14 Past Perfect (**I had done**)
15 Past Perfect Continuous (**I had been doing**)
16 **have** and **have got**
17 **used to (do)**

Future
18 Present Tenses (**I am doing / I do**) with a Future Meaning
19 **I'm going to (do)**
20 **will** 1
21 **will** 2
22 **I will** and **I'm going to**
23 **will be doing** and **will have done**
24 **when I do** and **when I've done** **if** and **when**

Modals
25 **can, could,** and **(be) able to**
26 **could (do)** and **could have (done)**
27 **must** and **can't**
28 **may** and **might** 1
29 **may** and **might** 2
30 **have to** and **must**
31 **should**
32 Subjunctive (**I suggest you do**)
33 **I'd better ...** **It's time ...**
34 **would**
35 **Can/Could/Would you ... ?**, etc. (Requests, Offers, Permission, and Invitations)

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 321.

if and wish
36 **if I do ...** and **if I did ...**
37 **if I knew ... I wish I knew ...**
38 **if I had known ... I wish I had known ...**
39 **wish**

Passive
40 Passive 1 (**is done / was done**)
41 Passive 2 (**be done / been done / being done**)
42 Passive 3
43 **It is said that ... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...**
44 **have/get something done**

Reported Speech
45 Reported Speech 1 (**He said that ...**)
46 Reported Speech 2

Questions and Auxiliary Verbs
47 Questions 1
48 Questions 2 (**Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ...**)
49 Auxiliary Verbs (**have/do/can**, etc.) **I think so / I hope so**, etc.
50 Tag Questions (**do you? / isn't it?**, etc.)

-ing** and **to ...
51 Verb + **-ing** (**enjoy doing / stop doing**, etc.)
52 Verb + **to ...** (**decide to ... / forget to ...** , etc.)
53 Verb (+ Object) + **to ...** (**I want you to ...**)
54 Verb + **-ing** or **to ...** 1 (**remember**, **regret**, etc.)
55 Verb + **-ing** or **to ...** 2 (**try**, **need**, **help**)
56 Verb + **-ing** or **to ...** 3 (**like / would like**, etc.)
57 **prefer** and **would rather**
58 Preposition (**in/for/about**, etc.) + **-ing**
59 **be/get used to ...** (**I'm used to ...**)
60 Verb + Preposition + **-ing** (**succeed in -ing / insist on -ing**, etc.)
61 **there's no point in -ing**, **it's worth -ing**, etc.
62 **to ...** , **for ...** , and **so that ...**
63 Adjective + **to ...**
64 **to ...** (afraid **to do**) and Preposition + **-ing** (afraid **of -ing**)
65 **see somebody do** and **see somebody doing**
66 **-ing** Phrases (He hurt his knee **playing football**.)

Articles and Nouns
67 Count and Noncount Nouns 1
68 Count and Noncount Nouns 2
69 Count Nouns with **a/an** and **some**
70 **a/an** and **the**
71 **the** 1
72 **the** 2 (**school / the school**, etc.)
73 **the** 3 (**children / the children**, etc.)
74 **the** 4 (**the giraffe / the telephone / the old**, etc.)
75 Names with and without **the** 1

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 321.

Additional Exercises

At the back of the book there are *Additional Exercises* (pages 296–320). These exercises bring together some of the grammar points from a number of different units. For example, Exercise 16 brings together grammar points from Units 25–35. You can use these exercises for extra practice after you have studied and practiced the grammar in the units concerned.

76 Names with and without **the** 2
77 Singular and Plural
78 Noun + Noun (a **bus driver** / a **headache**)
79 **-'s** (**your sister's** name) and **of ...** (the name **of the book**)

Pronouns and Determiners
80 **myself/yourself/themselves**, etc.
81 a friend **of mine** **my own** house **on my own / by myself**
82 **there ...** and **it ...**
83 **some** and **any**
84 **no/none/any** **nothing/nobody**, etc.
85 **much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty**
86 **all / all of** **most / most of** **no / none of**, etc.
87 **both / both of** **neither / neither of** **either / either of**
88 **all** **every** **whole**
89 **each** and **every**

Relative Clauses
90 Relative Clauses 1: Clauses with **who/that/which**
91 Relative Clauses 2: Clauses with and without **who/that/which**
92 Relative Clauses 3: **whose/whom/where**
93 Relative Clauses 4: Extra Information Clauses (1)
94 Relative Clauses 5: Extra Information Clauses (2)
95 **-ing** and **-ed** Phrases (the woman **talking to Tom**, the boy **injured in the accident**)

Adjectives and Adverbs
96 Adjectives Ending in **-ing** and **-ed** (**boring/bored**, etc.)
97 Adjectives: a **nice new** house, you look **tired**
98 Adjectives and Adverbs 1 (**quick/quickly**)
99 Adjectives and Adverbs 2 (**well, fast, late, hard/hardly**)
100 **so** and **such**
101 **enough** and **too**
102 Comparative 1 (**cheaper, more expensive**, etc.)
103 Comparative 2 (**much better / any better**, etc.)
104 Comparative 3 (**as ... as / than**)
105 Superlative (**the longest / the most enjoyable**, etc.)
106 Word Order 1: Verb + Object; Place and Time
107 Word Order 2: Adverbs with the Verb
108 **still** **anymore** **yet** **already**
109 **even**

Conjunctions and Prepositions
110 **although** **though** **even though** **in spite of** **despite**
111 **in case**
112 **unless** **as long as** **provided**
113 **as** (**as** I walked ... / **as** I was ... , etc.)
114 **like** and **as**
115 **like** **as if**
116 **during** **for** **while**
117 **by** and **until** **by the time ...**

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 321.

Prepositions
118 **at/on/in** (Time)
119 **on time** and **in time** **at the end** and **in the end**
120 **in/at/on** (Position) 1
121 **in/at/on** (Position) 2
122 **in/at/on** (Position) 3
123 **to**, **at**, **in**, and **into**
124 **in/at/on** (Other Uses)
125 **by**
126 Noun + Preposition (**reason for**, **cause of**, etc.)
127 Adjective + Preposition 1
128 Adjective + Preposition 2
129 Verb + Preposition 1 **to** and **at**
130 Verb + Preposition 2 **about/for/of/after**
131 Verb + Preposition 3 **about** and **of**
132 Verb + Preposition 4 **of/for/from/on**
133 Verb + Preposition 5 **in/into/with/to/on**

Phrasal Verbs
134 Phrasal Verbs 1 Introduction
135 Phrasal Verbs 2 **in/out**
136 Phrasal Verbs 3 **out**
137 Phrasal Verbs 4 **on/off** (1)
138 Phrasal Verbs 5 **on/off** (2)
139 Phrasal Verbs 6 **up/down**
140 Phrasal Verbs 7 **up** (1)
141 Phrasal Verbs 8 **up** (2)
142 Phrasal Verbs 9 **away/back**

Appendix 1 Regular and Irregular Verbs 286
Appendix 2 Present and Past Tenses 288
Appendix 3 The Future 289
Appendix 4 Modal Verbs (**can/could/will/would**, etc.) 290
Appendix 5 Short Forms (**I'm/you've/didn't**, etc.) 291
Appendix 6 Spelling 292
Appendix 7 British English 294

Additional Exercises 296

Study Guide 321

Answer Key to Exercises 331
Answer Key to Additional Exercises 363
Answer Key to Study Guide 367

Index 368

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE THE **STUDY GUIDE** ON PAGE 321.

Acknowledgements

Editor
Rebecca Winthrop

Design
Q2A Media Services Pvt. Ltd.

To the Student

This book is for students who want help with English grammar. It is written for you to use without a teacher.

The book will be useful for you if you are not sure of the answers to questions like these:

- What is the difference between *I did* and *I have done*?
- When do we use *will* for the future?
- What is the structure after *I wish*?
- When do we say *used to do* and when do we say *used to doing*?
- When do we use *the*?
- What is the difference between *like* and *as*?

These and many other points of English grammar are explained in the book, and there are exercises on each point.

Level

The book is intended mainly for *intermediate* students (students who have already studied the basic grammar of English). It concentrates on those structures that intermediate students want to use, but that often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the book useful.

The book is *not* suitable for beginning learners.

How the Book Is Organized

There are 142 units in the book. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar. Some problems (for example, the present perfect or the use of *the*) are covered in more than one unit. For a list of units, see the *Contents* at the beginning of the book.

Each unit consists of two facing pages. On the left there are explanations and examples; on the right there are exercises. At the back of the book there is an *Answer Key* for you to check your answers to the exercises (page 331).

There are also seven *Appendixes* at the back of the book (pages 286–295). These include irregular verbs, summaries of verb forms, spelling, and British English.

Finally, there is a detailed *Index* at the back of the book (pages 368–374).

How to Use the Book

The units are *not* in order of difficulty, so it is *not* intended that you work through the book from beginning to end. Every learner has different problems, and you should use this book to help you with the grammar that *you* find difficult.

It is suggested that you work in this way:

- Use the *Contents* and/or *Index* to find which unit deals with the point you are interested in.
- If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the *Study Guide* on page 321.
- Study the explanations and examples on the left-hand page of the unit you have chosen.
- Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Check your answers with the *Answer Key*.
- If your answers are not correct, study the left-hand page again to see what went wrong.

You can, of course, use the book simply as a reference book without doing the exercises.

Unit 1

Present Continuous (I am doing)

A

Study this example situation:

Sarah is in her car. She is on her way to work.
She**'s driving** to work. (= She **is driving** ...)



This means: she is driving *now*, at the time of speaking.
The action is not finished.

am/is/are + **-ing** is the *present continuous*:

I	**am**	(= I'**m**)	**driving**
he/she/it	**is**	(= he'**s**, etc.)	**working**
we/you/they	**are**	(= we'**re**, etc.)	**doing**, etc.

B

I am doing something = I started doing it, and I haven't finished. I'm in the middle of doing it.

- Please don't make so much noise. I**'m trying** to work. (*not* I try)
- "Where's Mark?" "He'**s taking** a shower." (*not* He takes a shower)
- Let's go out now. It **isn't raining** anymore. (*not* It doesn't rain)
- How's your new job? **Are** you **enjoying** it?
- What's all that noise? What'**s going** on? *or* What'**s happening**?

Sometimes the action is not happening at the time of speaking. For example:

Steve is talking to a friend on the phone. He says:



Steve says "I'm reading ..." but he is *not* reading the book at the time of speaking.
He means that he has started reading the book but has not finished it yet. He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

- Kate wants to work in Italy, so she'**s learning** Italian.
  (but perhaps she isn't learning Italian at the time of speaking)
- Some friends of mine **are building** their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.

C

You can use the present continuous with **today, this week, this year**, etc. (periods around now):

- A: You'**re working** hard **today**. (*not* You work hard today)
  B: Yes, I have a lot to do.
- The company I work for **isn't doing** so well **this year**.

We use the present continuous when we talk about a change that has started to happen. We often use these verbs in this way:

getting	**changing**	**increasing**	**rising**	**starting**
becoming	**improving**	**growing**	**falling**	**beginning**
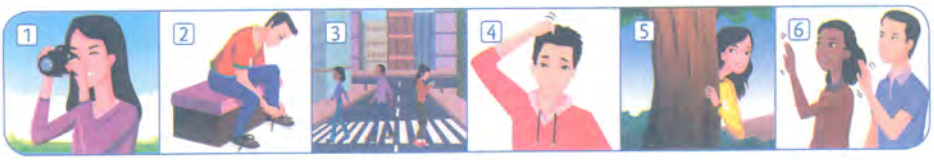
- Is your English **getting** better? (*not* Does your English get better)
- The population of the world **is increasing** very fast. (*not* increases)
- At first I didn't like my job, but I'**m starting** to enjoy it now. (*not* I start)

Present Continuous and Simple Present → **Units 3–4** Present Tenses with a Future Meaning → **Unit 18**

Exercises

1.1 What's happening in the pictures? Choose from these verbs:

cross	hide	scratch	~~take~~	tie	wave



1 She's taking a picture.
2 He ..... his shoelaces.
3 ..... the road.
4 ..... his head.
5 ..... behind a tree.
6 ..... to somebody.

1.2 The sentences on the right follow those on the left. Which sentence goes with which?

1 Please don't make so much noise.	a I'm getting hungry.	1 .....
2 We need to leave soon.	b They're lying.	2 .....
3 I don't have anywhere to live right now.	c It's starting to rain.	3 .....
4 I need to eat something soon.	d They're trying to sell it.	4 .....
5 They don't need their car anymore.	e It's getting late.	5 .....
6 Things are not so good at work.	~~f I'm trying to work.~~	6 .....
7 What they say isn't true.	g I'm staying with friends.	7 .....
8 We're going to get wet.	h The company is losing money.	8 .....

1.3 Write questions. Use the present continuous.

1 What's all that noise? What's happening? (what / happen?)
2 What's the matter? ..... (why / you / cry?)
3 Where's your mother? ..... (she / work / today?)
4 I haven't seen you in ages. ..... (what / you / do / these days?)
5 Amy is a student. ..... (what / she / study?)
6 Who are those people? ..... (what / they / do?)
7 I heard you started a new job. ..... (you / enjoy / it?)
8 We're not in a hurry. ..... (why / you / walk / so fast?)

1.4 Put the verb into the correct form, affirmative (**I'm doing**, etc.) or negative (**I'm not doing**, etc.).

1 Please don't make so much noise. I'm trying (I / try) to work.
2 Let's go out now. It isn't raining (it / rain) anymore.
3 You can turn off the music. ..... (I / listen) to it.
4 Kate called last night. She's on a trip with friends. ..... (She / have) a great time and doesn't want to come back.
5 Andrew started evening classes recently. ..... (He / learn) Japanese.
6 Jason and Sarah have had an argument and now ..... (they / speak) to each other.
7 The situation is already very bad, and now ..... (it / get) worse.
8 Tim ..... (work) today. He's taken the day off.
9 ..... (I / look) for Allison. Do you know where she is?
10 The washing machine has been repaired. (It / work) now.
11 ..... (They / build) a new hospital. It will be finished next year.
12 Ben is a student, but he's not very happy. ..... (He / enjoy) his courses.
13 ..... (The weather / change). I think it's going to rain.
14 Dan has been in the same job for a long time. ..... (He / start) to get bored with it.

Unit 2

Simple Present (I do)

A

Study this example situation:



Alex is a bus driver, but now he is asleep in bed. He is not driving a bus. (He is asleep.)

but He **drives** a bus. (He is a bus driver.)

drive(s), **work(s)**, **do(es)**, etc., is the *simple present*:

I/we/you/they	**drive/work/do**, etc.
he/she/it	**drives/works/does**, etc.

B

We use the simple present to talk about things in general. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general:

- Nurses **take** care of patients in hospitals.
- I usually **leave** for work at 8 a.m.
- The earth **goes** around the sun.
- The coffee shop **opens** at 7:30 in the morning.

We say:

I **work**	*but*	he **works**	you **go**	*but*	it **goes**
they **teach**	*but*	my sister **teaches**	I **have**	*but*	he **has**

For spelling (**-s** or **-es**), see Appendix 6.

C

We use **do/does** to make questions and negative sentences:

do	I/we/you/they	**work**?
does	he/she/it	**drive**?
		do?

I/we/you/they	**don't**	**work**
he/she/it	**doesn't**	**drive**
		do

- I come from Japan. Where **do** you **come** from?
- **I don't travel** a lot.
- What **does** this word **mean**? (*not* What means this word?)
- Rice **doesn't grow** in cold climates.

In the following examples, **do** is also the main verb (do you **do** / doesn't **do**, etc.):

- "What **do** you **do**?" "I work in a store."
- He's always so lazy. He **doesn't do** anything to help us.

D

We use the simple present to say how often we do things:

- **I get** up at 8:00 **every morning**.
- **How often** do you **go** to the dentist?
- Julia **doesn't drink** coffee **very often**.
- Michael usually **plays** tennis two or three times a week.

E

I promise / I apologize, etc.

Sometimes we do things by saying something. For example, when you promise to do something, you can say "**I promise** ..."; when you suggest something, you can say "**I suggest** ...":

- **I promise** I won't be late.
- "What do **you suggest** I do?" "**I suggest** that you ..."

In the same way we say: **I agree** ... / **I advise** ... / **I insist** ... / **I refuse** ... / **I suppose** ... , etc.

Simple Present and Present Continuous ➜ Units 3–4 Present Tenses with a Future Meaning ➜ Unit 18

Exercises

2.1 Complete the sentences using the following verbs:

cause(s) close(s) connect(s) go(es) live(s) ~~speak(s)~~ take(s)

1 Tanya *speaks* German very well.
2 Ben and Jack ..... to the same school.
3 Bad driving ..... many accidents.
4 The museum ..... at 4:00 on Sundays.
5 My parents ..... in a very small apartment.
6 The Olympics ..... place every four years.
7 The Panama Canal ..... the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

2.2 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 Julia *doesn't drink* (not / drink) coffee very often.
2 What time ..... (the banks / close) here?
3 I have a car, but I ..... (not / use) it very much.
4 Where ..... (Maria / come) from? Is she Colombian?
5 "What ..... (you / do)?" "I'm an electrician."
6 Look at this sentence. What ..... (this word / mean)?
7 David isn't in very good shape. He ..... (not / get) any exercise.
8 It ..... (take) me an hour to get to work in the morning. How long ..... (it / take) you?

2.3 Complete the sentences using these verbs. Sometimes you need the negative.

believe eat flow ~~go~~ ~~grow~~ make rise tell translate

1 The earth *goes* around the sun.
2 Rice *doesn't grow* in cold climates.
3 The sun ..... in the east.
4 Bees ..... honey.
5 Vegetarians ..... meat.
6 An atheist ..... in God.
7 An interpreter ..... from one language into another.
8 Liars are people who ..... the truth.
9 The Amazon River ..... into the Atlantic Ocean.

2.4 You ask Emily questions about herself and her family. Write the questions.

1 You know that Emily plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her.
How often *do you play tennis*?
2 Perhaps Emily's sister plays tennis too. You want to know. Ask Emily.
..... your sister .....?
3 You know that Emily goes to the movies a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.
.....?
4 You know that Emily's brother works. You want to know what he does. Ask Emily.
.....?
5 You're not sure if Emily speaks Spanish. You want to know. Ask her.
.....?
6 You don't know where Emily's grandparents live. You want to know. Ask Emily.
.....?

2.5 Complete using the following:

I agree I apologize I insist I promise I recommend ~~I suggest~~

1 Mr. Evans is not in the office today. *I suggest* you try calling him tomorrow.
2 I won't tell anybody what you said. .....
3 (*in a restaurant*) You must let me pay for the meal. .....
4 ..... for what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
5 The new restaurant on Lake Street is very good. ..... it.
6 I think you're absolutely right. ..... with you.

Unit 3

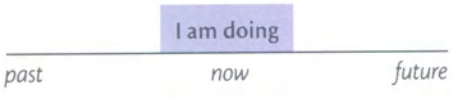
Present Continuous and Simple Present 1 (I am doing and I do)

A

Compare:

Present continuous (**I am doing**)

We use the *continuous* for things happening at or around the time of speaking.
The action is not complete.



- The water **is boiling**. Be careful.
- Listen to those people. What language **are** they **speaking**?
- Let's go out. It **isn't raining** now.
- "I'm busy." "What **are** you **doing**?"
- I**'m getting** hungry. Let's go and eat.
- Kate wants to work in Italy, so she**'s learning** Italian.
- The population of the world **is increasing** very fast.

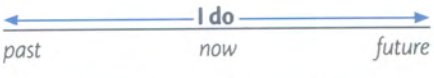
We use the *continuous* for *temporary* situations (things that continue for a short time):

- I**'m living** with some friends until I find a place of my own.
- A: You'**re working** hard today.
  B: Yes, I have a lot to do.

See Unit 1 for more information.

Simple present (**I do**)

We use the *simple* for things in general or things that happen repeatedly.



- Water **boils** at 212 degrees Fahrenheit.
- Excuse me, **do** you **speak** English?

- It **doesn't rain** very much in the summer.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?
- I always **get** hungry in the afternoon.
- Most people **learn** to swim when they are children.
- Every day the population of the world **increases** by about 200,000 people.

We use the *simple* for *permanent* situations (things that continue for a long time):

- My parents **live** in Vancouver. They have lived there their whole lives.
- Joe isn't lazy. **He works** hard most of the time.

See Unit 2 for more information.

B

I always do and **I'm always doing**

I always do something = I do it every time:

- I **always go** to work by car. (*not* I'm always going)

I'm always doing something = I do it too often or more often than normal. For example:



I'm always losing them = I lose them too often, or more often than normal.

- Eric is never satisfied. He**'s always complaining**. (= he complains too much)
- You**'re always looking** at your phone. Don't you have anything else to do?

Present Continuous and Simple Present 2 → Unit 4 Present Tenses with a Future Meaning → Unit 18

Exercises

3.1 Are the underlined verbs OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Water boils at 212 degrees Fahrenheit. OK
2 How often ~~are you going~~ to the cinema? How often do you go
3 Ben tries to find a job, but he hasn't had any luck yet.
4 Melissa is calling her mother every day.
5 The moon goes around the earth in about 27 days.
6 Can you hear those people? What do they talk about?
7 What do you do in your spare time?
8 Sarah is a vegetarian. She doesn't eat meat.
9 I must go now. It gets late.
10 "Come on! It's time to leave." "OK, I come."
11 Mike is never late. He's always starting work on time.
12 They don't get along well. They're always arguing.

3.2 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or simple present.

1 a I usually get (I / usually / get) hungry in the afternoon.
b I'm getting (I / get) hungry. Let's go and eat something.
2 a "..... (you / listen) to the radio?" "No, you can turn it off."
b "..... (you / listen) to the radio a lot?" "No, not very often."
3 a The Nile River ..... (flow) into the Mediterranean.
b The river ..... (flow) very fast today—much faster than usual.
4 a My apartment is a mess. ..... (I / not / do) the housework very often.
b What ..... (you / usually / do) on weekends?
5 a Rachel is in New York right now. ..... (She / stay) at the Park Hotel.
b ..... (She / always / stay) there when she's in New York.

3.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or simple present.

1 Why are all these people here? What's happening (What / happen)?
2 Julia is good at languages. ..... (She / speak) four languages very well.
3 Are you ready yet? ..... (Everybody / wait) for you.
4 I've never heard this word. How ..... (you / pronounce) it?
5 Kate ..... (not / work) this week. She's on vacation.
6 I think my English ..... (improve) slowly. It's better than it was.
7 Nicole ..... (live) in Dallas. She has never lived anywhere else.
8 Can we stop walking soon? ..... (I / start) to get tired.
9 Sam and Natalie are in Madrid right now. ..... (They / visit) a friend of theirs.
10 "What ..... (your father / do)?" "He's an architect."
11 It took me an hour to get to work this morning. Most days ..... (it / not / take) so long.
12 I ..... (I / learn) to drive. My driving test is next month. My father ..... (teach) me.

3.4 Finish B's sentences. Use **always -ing**.

1 A: I lost my keys again.
B: Not again! You're always losing your keys.
2 A: The car broke down again.
B: That car is useless. It .....
3 A: Look! You made the same mistake again.
B: Oh no, not again! I .....
4 A: Oh, I left my phone at home again.
B: Typical! .....

Unit 4

Present Continuous and Simple Present 2 (I am doing and I do)

A

We use continuous forms (**I'm waiting**, **it's raining**, etc.) for actions and events that have started but haven't finished. Some verbs (for example, **know** and **like**) are not normally used in this way. We don't say "I am knowing" or "they are liking." We say "I **know**" and "they **like**."

The following verbs are not normally used in the present continuous:

like	**want**	**need**	**prefer**	
know	**understand**	**recognize**		
believe	**suppose**	**remember**	**mean**	
belong	**fit**	**contain**	**consist**	**seem**

- I'm hungry. I **want** something to eat. (*not* I'm wanting)
- **Do** you **understand** what I **mean**?
- Anna **doesn't seem** very happy right now.

B

think

When **think** means "believe" or "have an opinion," we do not use the continuous:

- I **think** Mary is Canadian, but I'm not sure. (*not* I'm thinking)
- What **do** you **think** of my idea? (= what is your opinion?)

When **think** means "consider," the continuous is possible:

- I'**m thinking** about what happened. I often **think** about it.
- Nicky **is thinking** of giving up her job. (= she is considering it)

C

see **hear** **smell** **taste** **look** **feel**

We normally use the simple present (not the present continuous) with **see/hear/smell/taste**:

- **Do** you **see** that man over there? (*not* are you seeing)
- The room **smells** bad. Let's open a window.
- This soup **doesn't taste** very good.

You can use the simple present or the present continuous to say how somebody **looks** or **feels** now:

- You **look** well today. *or* You'**re looking** well today.
- How **do** you **feel** now? *or* How **are** you **feeling** now?

but

- I usually **feel** tired in the morning. (*not* I'm usually feeling)

D

am/is/are being

You can say **he's being** ..., **you're being** ..., etc., to say how somebody is behaving *now*:

- I can't understand why he'**s being** so selfish. He isn't usually like that. (**being** selfish = behaving selfishly now)
- "The path is icy. Don't slip." "Don't worry. I'**m being** very careful."

Compare:

- He never thinks about other people. He'**s** very selfish. (= he is selfish generally, not only now)
- I don't like to take risks. I'**m** a very careful person.

We use **am/is/are being** to say how a person is *behaving* (= doing something they can control) now. It is not usually possible in other situations:

- Sam **is** sick. (*not* is being sick)
- **Are** you tired? (*not* are you being tired)

Present Continuous and Simple Present 1 ➜ Unit 3 **have** ➜ Unit 16
Present Tenses with a Future Meaning ➜ Unit 18

Exercises

4.1 Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or simple present.

1 Are you hungry? Do you want (you / want) something to eat?
2 Alan says he's 90 years old, but nobody ..... (believe) him.
3 She told me her name, but ..... (I / not / remember) it now.
4 Don't put the dictionary away. ..... (I / use) it.
5 Don't put the dictionary away. ..... (I / need) it.
6 Air ..... (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.
7 Who is that man? What ..... (he / want)?
8 Who is that man? Why ..... (he / look) at us?
9 Who is that man? ..... (you / recognize) him?
10 ..... (I / think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?
11 I can't make up my mind. What ..... (you / think) I should do?
12 Alex wasn't well earlier, but ..... (he / seem) OK now.

4.2 Use the words in parentheses to make sentences.



4.3 Are the underlined verbs OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Michelle is thinking of giving up her job. OK
2 It's not true. I'm not believing it. I don't believe it
3 I'm feeling hungry. Is there anything to eat? .....
4 I've never eaten that fruit. What is it tasting like? .....
5 I'm not sure what she does. I think she works in a store. .....
6 Look over there. What are you seeing? .....
7 You're very quiet. What are you thinking about? .....

4.4 Complete the sentences. Use **is/are being** (continuous) or **is/are** (simple).

1 I can't understand why he's being so selfish. He isn't usually like that.
2 You'll like Andrea when you meet her. She ..... very nice.
3 Sarah ..... very nice to me right now. I wonder why.
4 They ..... very happy. They just got married.
5 You're normally very patient, so why ..... so unreasonable about waiting ten more minutes?
6 Would you like something to eat? ..... hungry?

Unit 5

Simple Past (I did)

A

Study this example:

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart **was** an Austrian musician and composer. He **lived** from 1756 to 1791. He **started** composing at the age of five and **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music. He **was** only 35 years old when he **died**.

lived/started/wrote/was/died are all *simple past*.



B

Very often the simple past ends in **-ed** (*regular* verbs):

- I work in a travel agency now. I **worked** in a department store before.
- They **invited** us to their party, but we **decided** not to go.
- The police **stopped** me on my way home last night.
- Lauren **passed** her exam because she **studied** very hard.

For spelling (sto**pp**ed, studied, etc.), see Appendix 6.

But many verbs are *irregular*. The simple past does *not* end in **-ed**. For example:

write → **wrote**
see → **saw**
go → **went**
shut → **shut**

- Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.
- We **saw** Alice in town a few days ago.
- I **went** to the movies three times last week.
- It was cold, so I **shut** the window.

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

C

In questions and negative sentences we use **did/didn't** + infinitive (**enjoy/see/go**, etc.):

I	enjoy**ed**
she	**saw**
they	**went**

	you	**enjoy**?
did	she	**see**?
	they	**go**?

I		**enjoy**
she	**didn't**	**see**
they		**go**

- I enjoyed the party a lot. **Did** you **enjoy** it?
- How many people **did** they **invite** to the wedding?
- I **didn't buy** anything because I **didn't have** any money.
- "**Did** you **go** out?" "No, I **didn't**."

Sometimes **do** is the main verb in the sentence (**did** ... **do** / **didn't do**). For example:

- What **did** you **do** on the weekend? (*not* What did you on the weekend?)
- I **didn't do** anything. (*not* I didn't anything)

D

The past of **be** (**am/is/are**) is **was/were**:

I/he/she/it	**was/wasn't**
we/you/they	**were/weren't**

was	I/he/she/it?
were	we/you/they?

- **I was** annoyed because **they were** late.
- **Was the weather** good when **you were** on vacation?
- **They weren't** able to come because **they were** so busy.
- **I wasn't** hungry, so I didn't eat anything.
- Did you go out last night, or **were you** too tired?

Simple Past and Past Continuous → **Unit 6** Simple Past and Present Perfect → **Units 8, 13**

Exercises

5.1 Read what Lauren says about a typical working day:



I usually get up at 7:00 and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8:45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5:00. I'm always tired when I get home. I usually cook dinner a little later. I don't usually go out. I go to bed at about 11:00, and I always sleep well.

Lauren

Yesterday was a typical working day for Lauren. Write what she did or didn't do yesterday.

1 She got up ..... at 7:00.
2 She ..... a big breakfast.
3 She ..... .
4 It ..... to get to work.
5 ..... at 8:45.
6 ..... lunch.
7 ..... at 5:00.
8 ..... tired when ..... home.
9 ..... dinner a little later.
10 ..... out last night.
11 ..... at 11:00.
12 ..... well last night.

5.2 Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form:

buy **catch** **cost** **fall** **hurt** **sell** **spend** **teach** **throw** ~~**write**~~

1 Mozart ..... wrote ..... more than 600 pieces of music.
2 "How did you learn to drive?" "My father ..... me."
3 We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we ..... it.
4 Dave ..... down the stairs this morning and ..... his leg.
5 Joe ..... the ball to Sue, who ..... it.
6 Kate ..... a lot of money yesterday. She ..... a dress which ..... $200.

5.3 You ask James about his trip in the U.S. Write your questions.

1 YOU: Where ..... did you go ..... ?
JAMES: To the U.S. We went on a trip from San Francisco to Denver.
2 YOU: How ..... ? By car?
JAMES: Yes, we rented a car in San Francisco.
3 YOU: It's a long way to drive. How long ..... ?
JAMES: Two weeks, but we stopped at a lot of places on the way.
4 YOU: Where ..... ? In hotels?
JAMES: Yes, small hotels or motels.
5 YOU: ..... ?
JAMES: It was very hot – sometimes too hot.
6 YOU: ..... the Grand Canyon?
JAMES: Of course. It was wonderful.

5.4 Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, affirmative or negative.

1 It was warm, so I ..... took ..... off my coat. (take)
2 The movie wasn't very good. I ..... didn't enjoy ..... it much. (enjoy)
3 I knew Sarah was busy, so I ..... her. (disturb)
4 We were very tired, so we ..... the party early. (leave)
5 It was hard carrying the bags. They ..... really heavy. (be)
6 The bed was very uncomfortable. I ..... well. (sleep)
7 This watch wasn't expensive. It ..... much. (cost)
8 The window was open, and a bird ..... into the room. (fly)
9 I was in a hurry, so I ..... time to call you. (have)
10 I didn't like the hotel. The room ..... very clean. (be)

Unit 6

Past Continuous (I was doing)

A

Study this example situation:



Yesterday Karen and Joe played tennis. They started at 10:00 and finished at 11:30.
So, at 10:30 they **were playing** tennis.

they **were playing** =
they were in the middle of playing, they had not finished

was/were + -ing is the *past continuous*:

he/she/it	**was**	playing doing working, etc.
we/you/they	**were**	

B

I was doing something = I was in the middle of doing it at a certain time. The action or situation started before this time but had not finished:



- This time last year I **was living** in Hong Kong.
- What **were** you **doing** at 10:00 last night?
- I waved to Hannah, but she **wasn't looking**.

C

Compare I **was doing** (*past continuous*) and I **did** (*simple past*):

I **was doing** (= in the middle of an action)

- We were **walking** home when we met Dan. (in the middle of walking home)
- Kate **was watching** TV when we arrived.

I **did** (= complete action)

- We **walked** home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
- Kate **watched** TV a lot when she was sick last year.

D

You can say that something **happened** (*simple past*) in the middle of something else (*past continuous*):

- Matt **called** while we **were having** dinner.
- It **was raining** when I **got** up.
- I **saw** you in the park yesterday. You **were sitting** on the grass and **reading** a book.
- I **hurt** my back while I **was working** in the yard.

But we use the *simple past* to say that one thing happened *after* another:

- I **was walking** along the road when I **saw** Dan. So I **stopped**, and we **talked** for a while.

Compare:

- When Karen arrived, we **were having** dinner. (= we had already started before she arrived)
- When Karen arrived, we **had** dinner. (= Karen arrived, and then we had dinner)

E

Some verbs (for example, **know** and **want**) are not normally used in *continuous* forms (**is + -ing**, **was + -ing**, etc.). See Unit 4A for a list of these verbs.

- We were good friends. We **knew** each other well. (*not* we were knowing)
- I was enjoying the party, but Chris **wanted** to go home. (*not* was wanting)

Simple Past (**I did**) → Unit 5

Exercises

6.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

was looking	~~was wearing~~	wasn't listening	weren't looking
was snowing	was working	were sitting	were you going

1 Today Hannah is wearing a skirt. Yesterday she *was wearing* pants.
2 "What did he say?" "I don't know. I _____."
3 We _____ in the back of the theater. We couldn't hear very well.
4 This time last year John _____ on a farm.
5 They didn't see me. They _____ in my direction.
6 The weather was bad. It was very cold, and it _____.
7 I saw you in your car. Where _____?
8 I saw Kate a few minutes ago. She _____ for you.

6.2 Which goes with which?

1 When I got to the cafe,	a when she was living in Rome.	1 *f*
2 We fell asleep	b she was working in a clothing store.	2 _____
3 Amy learned Italian	c when I was driving home.	3 _____
4 Tom didn't come out with us	d but nobody was watching it.	4 _____
5 The car began to make a strange noise	e while we were watching a movie.	5 _____
6 The TV was on,	f ~~my friends were waiting for me.~~	6 _____
7 When I first met Jessica,	g because he wasn't feeling well.	7 _____

6.3 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or simple past.



I *saw* (see) Sue downtown yesterday, but she _____ (not/see) me. She _____ (look) the other way.



I _____ (ride) my bike home yesterday when a man _____ (step) out into the road in front of me. I _____ (go) pretty fast, but luckily I _____ (manage) to stop in time, and I _____ (not/hit) him.

6.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or simple past.

1 Jen *was waiting* (wait) for me when I *arrived* (arrive).
2 "What _____ (you/do) at this time yesterday?" "I was asleep."
3 "_____ (you/go) out last night?" "No, I was too tired."
4 How fast _____ (you/drive) when the accident _____ (happen)?
5 Sam _____ (take) a picture of me while I _____ (not/look).
6 We were in a very difficult position. We _____ (not/know) what to do, so we _____ (do) nothing.
7 I haven't seen Josh for ages. When I last _____ (see) him, he _____ (try) to find a job.
8 I _____ (walk) along the street when suddenly I _____ (hear) something behind me. Somebody _____ (follow) me. I was scared, and I _____ (start) to run.
9 When I was young, I _____ (want) to be a pilot. Later I _____ (change) my mind.
10 Last night I _____ (drop) a plate when I _____ (do) the dishes. Fortunately, it _____ (not/break).

→ Additional Exercise 1 (page 296)

Unit 7

Present Perfect (I have done)

A

Study this example conversation:

DAVE: **Have** you **traveled** a lot, Liz?
LIZ: Yes, **I've been** to lots of places.
DAVE: Really? **Have** you ever **been** to China?
LIZ: Yes, **I've been** to China twice.
DAVE: What about India?
LIZ: No, I **haven't been** to India.



Have/Has + traveled/been/done, etc. (*past participle*) is the present perfect:

I/we/they/you **have** (= **I've**, etc.)	**traveled**
he/she/it **has** (= he**'s**, etc.)	**been**
	done, etc.

The past participle often ends in **-ed** (travel**ed**/decid**ed**, etc.), but many important verbs are *irregular* (**been/done/written**, etc.). For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

B

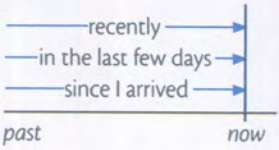
When we talk about a period of time that continues from the past until now, we use the *present perfect* (**have been / have traveled**, etc.). In the conversation in **A**, Dave and Liz are talking about the places Liz **has visited** in her life, which is a period that continues until now. Some more examples:

- **Have** you **ever eaten** caviar?
- We**'ve** never **had** a car.
- I don't know what the movie is about. I **haven't seen** it.
- Susan really loves that book. She**'s read** it three times. (She**'s** = She **has**)
- It's a really boring movie. It's the most boring movie I**'ve ever seen**.

C

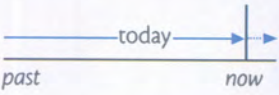
In the following examples too, the speakers are talking about a period that continues until now (**recently, in the last few days, so far, since I arrived**, etc.):

- **Have** you **heard** anything from Ben **recently**?
- **I've met** a lot of people **in the last few days**.
- Everything is going well. There **haven't been** any problems **so far**.
- The weather is bad here. **It's** (= It **has**) **rained** every day **since I arrived**. (= from when I arrived until now)
- It's good to see you again. We **haven't seen** each other **for a long time**.



In the same way we use the present perfect with **today, this evening, this year**, etc., when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking:

- **I've had** four cups of coffee **today**.
- **Have** you **taken** a vacation **this year**?
- **haven't seen** Tom **this morning**. **Have** you?



D

We say "It's the (first) time something **has happened**." For example:

Don is having a driving lesson. It's his first lesson.
We can say:
It's the first time he **has driven** a car. (*not* drives)
or He **hasn't driven** a car **before**.
or He **has never driven** a car **before**.

In the same way we say:

- Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this **has happened**. (*not* happens)
- Andy is calling his friend again.That's the third time he**'s called** her **tonight**.



Present Perfect and Past → Units 8, 13 Present Perfect + **for/since** → Units 11–12

Exercises

7.1 You ask people about things they have done. Write questions with **ever**.

1 (ride / horse?) Have you ever ridden a horse?
2 (be / California?) Have .....
3 (run / marathon?) .....
4 (speak / famous person?) .....
5 (most beautiful place / visit?) What's .....

7.2 Complete B's answers. Some sentences are affirmative and some negative. Use these verbs:

be **be** **eat** **happen** ~~**have**~~ **have** ~~**meet**~~ **play** **read** **see** **try**

	A	B
1	What's John's sister like?	I have no idea. I've never met her.
2	Is everything going well?	Yes, we haven't had any problems so far.
3	Are you hungry?	Yes. I ..... much today.
4	Can you play chess?	Yes, but ..... for ages.
5	Are you enjoying your vacation?	Yes, it's the best vacation ..... for a long time.
6	What's that book about?	I don't know. ..... it.
7	Is Brussels an interesting place?	I have no idea. ..... there.
8	I hear your car broke down again yesterday.	Yes, it's the second time ..... this month.
9	Do you like caviar?	I don't know. ..... it.
10	Mike was late for work again today.	Again? He ..... late every day this week.
11	Who's that woman by the door?	I don't know. ..... her before.

7.3 Write four sentences about yourself. Use **I haven't** and choose from the boxes.

used a computer **taken a bus** **eaten any fruit**
been to the movies **read a book** **lost anything**

today **this week** **recently** **for ages** **since ...** **this year**

1 I haven't used a computer today.
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....

7.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 Jack is driving a car for the first time. He's very nervous and not sure what to do.
It's the first time he's driven a car.
2 Some children at the zoo are looking at a giraffe. They've never seen one before.
It's the first time ..... a giraffe.
3 Sue is riding a horse. She doesn't look very confident or comfortable.
She ..... before.
4 Joe and Lauren are on vacation in Japan. They've been to Japan once before.
This is the second time .....
5 Emily is staying at the Prince Hotel. She stayed there a few years ago.
It's not the first ..... this hotel.
6 Ben is playing tennis for the first time. He's a complete beginner.
..... before.

Unit 8

Present Perfect and Past 1 (**I have done** and **I did**)

A

You can use the present perfect (**I have done**) for new or recent happenings:

- I**'ve emailed** her, but she **hasn't replied**.
- You**'ve done** great work on the project. Congratulations!
- The police **have arrested** two people in connection with the robbery.

You can also use the simple past (I **lost**, she **went**, etc.):

- I **emailed** her, but she **didn't reply**.
- You **did** great work on the project. Congratulations!
- The police **arrested** two people in connection with the robbery.

B

When we say that "something **has happened**," this is *new* information:

- I**'ve repaired** the washing machine. It's working OK now.
- "Sally **has had** a baby! It's a boy." "That's great news."



Use the simple past (*not* the present perfect) for things that are not recent or new:

- Mozart **was** a composer. He **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music. (*not* has been ... has written)
- My mother **grew** up in Chile. (*not* has grown)

Compare:

- Somebody **has invented** a new type of washing machine.
- Who **invented** the telephone? (*not* has invented)

C

The present perfect always tells us something about now:

- I'm sorry, but I'**ve forgotten** your name. (= I can't remember it *now*)
- Sally isn't here. She**'s gone** out to the country for a few days. (= she is in the country *now*)
- It**'s** (= It has) **stopped** raining. (= it isn't raining *now*)
- He**'s changed** a lot. (= he looks very different *now*)

You can also use the simple past in these examples ("I **forgot** your name," etc.).

Use the simple past (*not* the present perfect) if the situation now is different:

- Sally **went** out to the country for a few days, but she's back now. (*not* Sally has gone out)
- It **stopped** raining for a while, but now it's raining again. (*not* It has stopped)

D

You can use the simple past or present perfect with **just**, **already** and **yet**.

just = a short time ago

- A: Are you hungry?
  B: No, I **just had** lunch. *or* I**'ve just had** lunch.

already = sooner than expected

- A: What time is Mark leaving?
  B: He **already left**. *or* He**'s already left**.

yet = until now (in questions and negative sentences)

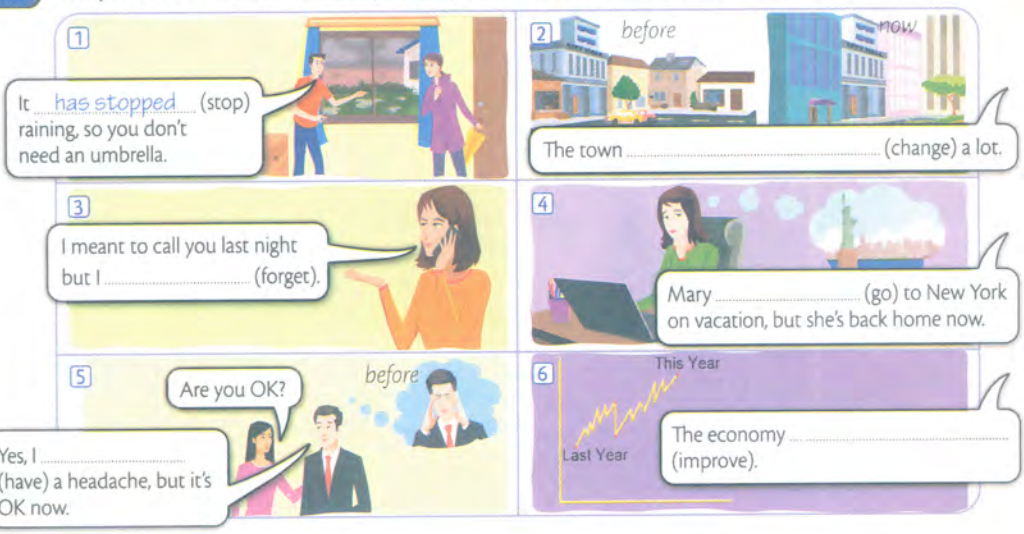
Yet shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen (see Unit 108).

- **Did** it **stop** raining **yet**? *or* **Has** it **stopped** raining **yet**?
- Sally is still here. She **didn't leave yet**. *or* She **hasn't left yet**.

Simple Past ➜ Unit 5 Present Perfect ➜ Unit 7 Present Perfect and Past 2 ➜ Unit 13
yet and **already** ➜ Unit 108 British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

8.1 Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect where possible. Otherwise, use the simple past.



8.2 Are the underlined parts of these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Did you hear about Sophie? She's given up her job. — OK
2 My mother has grown up in Italy. — My mother grew up
3 How many plays has William Shakespeare written? —
4 I know him, but I've forgotten his name. Is it Joe or Jack? —
5 Who has invented paper? —
6 Drugs have become a big problem everywhere. —
7 We've washed the car, but now it's dirty again. —
8 "Where have you been born?" "In Seattle." —
9 Mary has gone shopping. She'll be back in about an hour. —
10 Albert Einstein has been the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity. —
11 I have applied for a job as a tour guide, but I wasn't successful. —

8.3 Read the situations and write sentences with **just**, **already**, or **yet**.

1 After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, "Would you like something to eat?"
You say: No, thank you. I just had lunch. (have lunch)
2 Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the doorbell rings, and the person at the door says, "Is Joe here?"
You say: I'm sorry. ..... (go out)
3 You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to clear the table.
You say: Wait a minute! ..... (not / finish)
4 You are going to a restaurant tonight. You call to make a reservation. Later, your friend says, "Should I make a reservation?" You say: No, ... (do it)
5 You know that a friend of yours is looking for a place to live. Maybe she has been successful. Ask her. You say: ..... ? (find)
6 You are still thinking about where to go on vacation. A friend asks, "Where are you going on vacation?"
You say: ..... (not / decide)
7 Liz went to the bank, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks, "Is Liz still at the bank?"
You say: No, ... (come back)
8 Yesterday Carol invited you to a party on Saturday. Now another friend is inviting you to the same party.
You say: Thanks, but Carol ..... (invite)

Unit 9

Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing)

A

It's been raining.

Study this example situation:



Is it raining?
No, but the ground is wet.

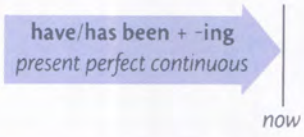
It's been raining. (= It **has** been ...)

have/has been + **-ing** is the *present perfect continuous*:

I/we/they/you he/she/it	**have** **has**	(= I**'ve**, etc.) (= he**'s**, etc.)	**been**	**doing** **working** **learning**, etc.

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped:

- Why are you out of breath? **Have** you **been running**?
- Ryan is very tired. He**'s been working** hard.
- Why are you so tired? What **have** you **been doing**?
- I**'ve been talking** to Amanda and she agrees with me.
- Where have you been? I**'ve been looking** for you.



B

It's been raining for two hours.

Study this example situation:



It began raining two hours ago, and it is still raining.

How long **has** it **been raining**?
It**'s been raining** for two hours. (= It **has** been ...)

We use the present perfect continuous in this way especially with **how long**, **for**... and **since**... . The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

- **How long have** you **been learning** English? (= you're still learning English)
- Ben is watching TV. He**'s been watching** TV **all day**.
- Where have you been? I**'ve been looking** for you **for the last half hour**.
- Chris **hasn't been feeling** well **lately**. (= recently)

You can use the present perfect continuous for repeated actions:

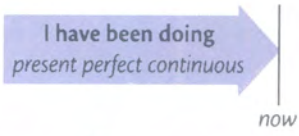
- Silvia is a very good tennis player. She**'s been playing since she was eight**.
- Every morning they meet in the same coffee shop. They**'ve been going** there **for years**.

C

Compare **I am doing** and **I have been doing**:



- Don't disturb me now. I**'m working**.
- We need an umbrella. It**'s raining**.
- Hurry up! We**'re waiting**.

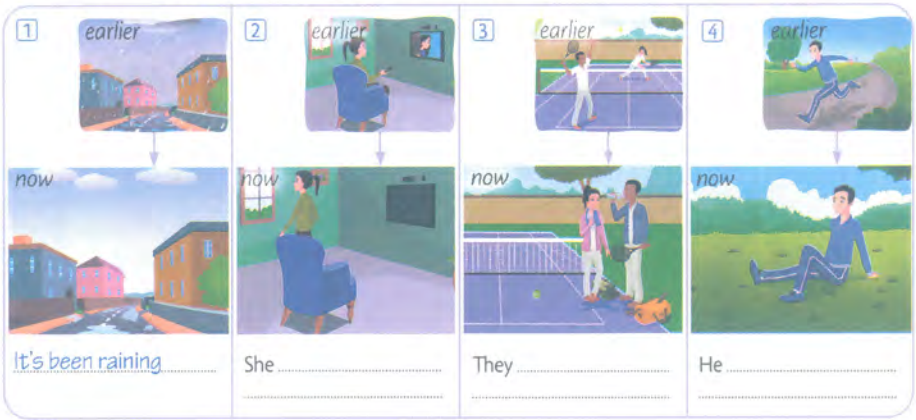


- I**'ve been working** hard. Now I'm going to have a break.
- The ground is wet. It**'s been raining**.
- We**'ve been waiting** for an hour.

Present Perfect Continuous and Simple → Units 11–12 Present Perfect + **for/since** → Units 12–13

Exercises

9.1 What have these people been doing or what has been happening?



It's been raining

She .....

They .....

He .....

9.2 Write a question for each situation.

1 You meet Kate as she is leaving the swimming pool. You say:
Hi, Kate. (you / swim?) Have you been swimming?
2 You have arrived a little too late to meet Ben, who is waiting for you. You say:
I'm sorry I'm late, Ben. (you / wait / long?) .....
3 Emma's little boy comes into the house with a very dirty face and dirty hands. His mother says:
Why are you so dirty? (what / you / do?) .....
4 You are in a store and see Anna. You didn't know she worked there. You say:
Hi, Anna. (how long / you / work / here?) .....
5 A friend tells you about his job—he sells phones. You say:
You sell phones? (how long / you / do / that?) .....

9.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 It's raining. The rain started two hours ago.
It 's been raining for two hours.
2 We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.
We ..... for 20 minutes.
3 I'm learning Japanese. I started classes in December.
I ..... since December.
4 Jessica is working in a hotel. She started working there on January 18.
..... since January 18.
5 Our friends always go to Mexico for their vacations. The first time was years ago.
..... for years.

9.4 Put the verb into the present continuous (**am/is/are + -ing**) or present perfect continuous (**have/has been + -ing**).

1 Maria has been learning (Maria / learn) English for two years.
2 Hi, Tom. ..... (I / look) for you. I need to ask you something.
3 Why ..... (you / look) at me like that? Stop it!
4 Rachel is a teacher. ..... (she / teach) for ten years.
5 ..... (I / think) about what you said, and I've decided to take your advice.
6 "Is Eric on vacation this week?" "No, ... (he / work)."
7 Sarah is very tired. ..... (she / work) very hard lately.
8 It's dangerous to use your phone when ..... (you / drive).
9 Jessica ..... (travel) in South America for the last three months.

Unit 10

Present Perfect Continuous and Simple (I have been doing and I have done)

A

Compare these two situations:



There is paint on Kate's clothes.
She **has been painting** her bedroom.

has been painting is the *present perfect continuous*

We are thinking about the activity. It does not matter whether it has been finished or not. In this example, the activity (painting the bedroom) has not been finished.



The bedroom was green. Now it is yellow.
She **has painted** her bedroom.

has painted is the *present perfect simple*.

Here, the important thing is that something has been finished. "She **has painted**" is a completed action. We are thinking about the *result* of the activity (the painted bedroom), not the activity itself.

B

Compare these examples:

- My hands are very dirty. **I've been repairing** my bike.
- Joe **has been eating** too much lately. He should eat less.
- It's nice to see you again. What **have** you **been doing** since we last met?
- Where have you been? **Have** you **been playing** tennis?

- My bike is OK again now. **I've repaired it**. (= I've finished repairing it)
- Somebody **has eaten** all the chocolates. The box is empty.
- Where's the book I gave you? What **have** you **done** with it?
- **Have** you ever **played** tennis?

C

Compare:

We use the *continuous* to say *how long* (for something that is still happening):

- How long **have** you **been reading** that book?
- Amy is writing emails. She**'s been writing** emails all morning.
- They**'ve been playing** tennis since 2:00.
- I'm learning Arabic, but **I haven't been learning** it very long.

We use the *simple* to say *how much, how many* or *how many times* (for completed actions):

- How many pages of that book **have** you **read**?
- Amy **has sent** lots of emails this morning.
- They**'ve played** tennis three times this week.
- I'm learning Arabic, but I **haven't learned** very much yet.

D

Some verbs (for example, **know**) are not normally used in continuous forms (**be** + **-ing**):

- **I've known** about the problem for a long time. (*not* I've been knowing)
- How long **have** you **had** that camera? (*not* have you been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For **have**, see Unit 16.
But note that you *can* use **want** and **mean** in the present perfect continuous (**have/has been** + **-ing**):

- **I've been meaning** to phone Anna, but I keep forgetting.

Present Perfect Simple ➜ Unit 7 Present Perfect Continuous ➜ Unit 9
Present Perfect + **for/since** ➜ Units 11–12

Exercises

10.1 Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in parentheses.

1 Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it, and now he is on page 53.
He has been reading for two hours. (read)
He has read 53 pages so far. (read)

2 Rachel is from Australia. She is traveling around Europe. She began her trip three months ago.
She ..... for three months. (travel)
..... six countries so far. (visit)

3 Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was 10 years old. This year he won the national championship again—for the fourth time.
..... the national championship four times. (win)
..... since he was ten. (play)

4 When they left college, Liz and Sue started making movies together. They still make movies.
They ..... movies since they left college. (make)
..... five movies since they left college. (make)

10.2 For each situation, ask a question using the words in parentheses. Use the present perfect simple (**have/has done**) or continuous (**have/has been doing**).

1 You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask:
(how long / learn / Arabic?) How long have you been learning Arabic?
2 You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask:
(wait / long?) Have .....
3 You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask:
(catch / any fish?) .....
4 Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask:
(how many people / invite?) .....
5 A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask:
(how long / teach?) .....
6 You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask:
(how many books / write?) .....
(how long / write / books?) .....
7 A friend of yours is saving money to go on a world trip. You ask:
(how long / save?) .....
(how much money / save?) .....

10.3 Put the verb into the present perfect simple or continuous.

1 Where have you been? Have you been playing (you/play) tennis?
2 Look! ..... (somebody/break) that window.
3 You look tired. ..... (you/work) hard?
4 "..... (you/ever/work) in a factory?" "No, never."
5 Where's Megan? Where ..... (she/go)?
6 This is a very old book. ..... (I/have) it since I was a child.
7 "Have you been busy?" "No, ... (I/watch) TV."
8 My brother is an actor. ..... (he/appear) in several movies.
9 "Sorry I'm late." "That's all right. ..... (I/not/wait) long."
10 Are you OK? You look as if ..... (you/cry).
11 "Is it still raining?" "No, ... (it/stop)."
12 The children are tired now. ..... (they/play) in the yard.
13 ..... (I/lose) my phone. ..... (you/see) it?
14 ..... (I/read) the book you lent me, but .....
..... (I/not/finish) it yet. It's really interesting.
15 ..... (I/read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

Unit 11

How long have you (been) ... ?

A

Study this example situation:



Dan and Kate are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary.

They **have been** married **for 20 years**.

We say: They **are** married. (*present*)

but How long have they **been** married? (*not* How long are they married?)
They **have been** married **for 20 years**. (*not* They are married for 20 years)
(*present perfect*)

We use the *present perfect* to talk about something that began in the past and still continues now.
Compare the *present* and the *present perfect*:

- Matt is in the hospital.

but He**'s been** in the hospital **since Monday**. (= He **has** been ...)
(*not* Matt is in the hospital since Monday)

- We **know** each other very well.

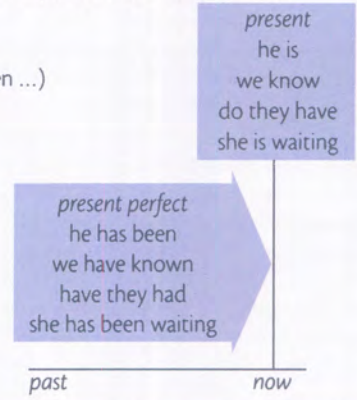
but We**'ve known** each other **for a long time**.
(*not* We know)

- **Do** they **have** a car?

but **How long have** they **had** their car?

- She**'s waiting** for somebody.

but She **hasn't been waiting very long**.



B

I've known / I've had / I've lived, etc., is the *present perfect simple*.
I've been learning / I've been waiting, etc., is the *present perfect continuous*.

When we ask or say "how long," the continuous is more common (see Unit 10):

- I**'ve been learning** English **since January**.
- It**'s been raining all morning**.
- Richard **has been doing** the same job **for 20 years**.
- **"How long have** you **been driving**?" "Since I was 17."

Some verbs (for example, **know** and **like**) are not normally used in the continuous:

- How long **have** you **known** Jane? (*not* have you been knowing)
- I**'ve had** these shoes for ages. (*not* I've been having)

See also Units 4A and 11C. For **have**, see Unit 16.

C

You can use either the continuous or simple with **live** and **work**:

- Julia **has been living** in this house for a long time. *or* Julia **has** lived ...
- How long **have** you **been working** here? *or* How long **have** you **worked** here?

But we use the simple (**have lived**, etc.) with **always**:

- I**'ve always lived** in the country. (*not* always been living)

D

We say "**I haven't** (done something) **since/for** ..." (*present perfect simple*):

- I **haven't seen** Tom since Monday. (= Monday was the last time I saw him)
- Sarah **hasn't called** for ages. (= the last time she called was ages ago)

I haven't ... **since/for** ➜ Unit 12B Present Perfect Continuous ➜ Units 9–10 **for** and **since** ➜ Unit 12

Exercises

11.1 Which is right?

1 Ben is a friend of mine. I know / ~~I've known~~ him very well. (*I know is correct*)
2 I like your house. How long do you live / have you lived here?
3 You'll need an umbrella if you go out now. It's raining / It's been raining.
4 The weather is / has been awful since I arrived here.
5 I'm sorry I'm late. Are you waiting / Have you been waiting long?
6 We've moved. We're living / We've been living on New Street now.
7 I met Maria just recently. I don't know / I haven't known her very long.
8 Lauren is in Germany. She's / She's been there on a business trip.
9 That's a very old bike. How long do you have / have you had it?
10 I'm not feeling well. I'm feeling / I've been feeling sick all day.

11.2 Read the situations and write questions from the words in parentheses.

1 A friend tells you that Chris is in the hospital. You ask him:
(how long / Chris / the hospital?) How long has Chris been in the hospital?
2 You know that Anna is a good friend of Katherine's. You ask Anna:
(how long / you / know / Katherine?) .....
3 Your friend's sister went to Australia some time ago, and she's still there. You ask your friend:
(how long / sister / in Australia?) .....
4 You meet a woman who tells you that she teaches English. You ask her:
(how long / you / teach / English?) .....
5 Tom always wears the same jacket. It's very old. You ask him:
(how long / you / have / that jacket?) .....
6 You are talking to a friend about Joe, who now works at the airport. You ask your friend:
(how long / Joe / work / airport?) .....
7 You meet somebody on a plane. She says that she lives in Chicago. You ask her:
(you / always / live / in Chicago?) .....

11.3 Complete B's answers to A's questions.

	A	B
1	Alex is in the hospital, isn't he?	Yes, he has been in the hospital since Monday.
2	Do you see Nicole very often?	No, I haven't seen her for three months.
3	Is Sam married?	Yes, he ..... married for ten years.
4	Is Amy married?	Yes, she ..... married to a German guy.
5	Do you still play tennis?	No, I ..... tennis for years.
6	Are you waiting for the bus?	Yes, I ..... for about 20 minutes.
7	You know Julia, don't you?	Yes, we ..... each other a long time.
8	Jack is never sick, is he?	No, he ..... sick since I met him.
9	Brian lives in Italy, doesn't he?	Yes, he ..... in Milan.
10	Sue lives in Berlin, doesn't she?	Yes, she ..... in Berlin for many years.
11	Is Joe watching TV?	Yes, he ..... TV all evening.
12	Do you watch TV a lot?	No, I ..... TV since last weekend.
13	Do you have a headache?	Yes, I ..... a headache all morning.
14	Do you go to the movies a lot?	No, I ..... to the movies for ages.
15	Would you like to go to Hong Kong one day?	Yes, I ..... to go to Hong Kong. (*use* **always / want**)

Unit 12

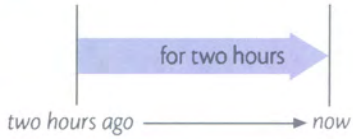
for and since When ... ? and How long ... ?

A

We use **for** and **since** to say how long something has been happening.

We use **for** + a period of time:

- We've been waiting **for two hours**.



for		
two hours	a long time	a week
20 minutes	six months	ages
five days	50 years	years

- Emily has been working here **for six months**. (*not* since six months)
- I haven't seen Tom **for three days**.

We use **since** + the start of a period:

- We've been waiting **since 8:00**.



since		
8:00	April	lunchtime
Monday	2009	we arrived
May 12	Christmas	I got up

- Emily has been working here **since April**. (= from April until now)
- I haven't seen Tom **since Monday**.

B

We sometimes leave out **for** (but not usually in negative sentences):

- They've been married (for) **ten years**. (with or without **for**)
- They **haven't had** a vacation **for** ten years. (you need **for**)

You can use **in** instead of **for** in negative sentences (**I haven't** ... , etc.):

- They **haven't had** a vacation **in ten years**. (= **for** ten years)

We do *not* use **for** + **all** ... (**all day** / **all my life**, etc.):

- I've lived here **all my life**. (*not* for all my life)

C

Compare **when** ... ? (+ *past simple*) and **how long** ... ? (+ *present perfect*):



A: **When** did it start raining?
B: It started raining **an hour ago** / **at 1:00.**

A: **How long** has it been raining?
B: It's been raining **for an hour** / **since 1:00.**



A: **When** did Joe and Kate first meet?
B: They first met { **a long time ago.** / **when they were in high school.**

A: **How long** have they known each other?
B: They've known each other { **for a long time.** / **since they were in high school.**

D

We say "**It's** (= It has) **been a long time** / **two years**, etc., since something happened":

- **It's been two years since** I last saw Joe. (= I **haven't seen** Joe for two years)
- **It's been ages since** we went to the movies. (= We **haven't been** to the movies for ages)
- **How long has it been since** Mrs. Hill died? (= when did she die?)

How long have you (been) ... ? ➜ Unit 11

Exercises

12.1 Write **for** or **since**.

1 It's been raining *since* lunchtime.
2 Sarah has lived in Seattle ..... 2015.
3 Dan has lived in Brazil ..... ten years.
4 I'm tired of waiting. We've been sitting here ..... an hour.
5 Kevin has been looking for a job ..... he left school.
6 I haven't been to a party ..... ages.
7 I wonder where Joe is. I haven't seen him ..... last week.
8 Liz is away on vacation. She's been away ..... Friday.
9 The weather is dry. It hasn't rained ..... a few weeks.

12.2 Look at each answer and choose the right question.

1 ~~How long have they been married?~~ / When did they get married? — Ten years ago.
(When did they get married? *is correct*)
2 How long have you had this car? / When did you buy this car? — About five years.
3 How long have you been waiting? / When did you get here? — Only a few minutes.
4 How long have you been taking the class? / When did the class start? — September.
5 How long has Anna been in New York? / When did Anna arrive in New York? — Last week.
6 How long have you known each other? / When did you first meet each other? — A long time.

12.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 It's raining. It's been raining since lunchtime. It *started raining* at lunchtime.
2 Anna and Jess are friends. They first met years ago. They've *known each other for* years.
3 Josh is sick. He got sick on Sunday. He has ..... Sunday.
4 Sarah is married. She's been married for a year. She got .....
5 You have a headache. It started when you woke up.
I've ..... I woke up.
6 Sue is in a meeting at work. It's been going on since 9:00.
The meeting ..... at 9:00.
7 You're working in a hotel. You started working there six months ago.
I've been .....
8 Kate is learning Japanese. She's been doing this for a long time.
Kate started .....

12.4 Complete B's sentences.

A	B
1 Do you take vacations often?	No, I *haven't taken a vacation for* five years.
2 Have you seen Amy recently?	No, I ..... about a month.
3 Do you still go swimming?	No, I ..... a long time.
4 Do you still ride a bike?	No, I ..... ages.

Now write B's answers again. This time use **It's been . . . since . . . .**

5 (1) No, *it's been five years since I last took a vacation.*
6 (2) No, it's .....
7 (3) No, ...
8 (4) .....

Unit 13

Present Perfect and Past 2 (I have done and I did)

A

We do not use the present perfect (**I have done**) when we talk about a *finished* time (for example, **yesterday / last year / ten minutes ago**, etc.). We use a past tense:

- It **was** very cold **yesterday**. (*not* has been)
- Nick and Rachel **arrived ten minutes ago**. (*not* have arrived)
- **Did** you **eat** a lot of candy **when you were a child**? (*not* have you eaten)
- I **got** home late **last night**. I **was** very tired and **went** straight to bed.

Use the past to ask **When** ... ? or **What time** ... ?:

- **When did** your friends **arrive**? (*not* have ... arrived)
- **What time did** you **finish** work?

Compare:

Present Perfect

- Tom **has lost** his key. He can't get into the house.
- Is Carla here or **has** she **left**?

Simple Past

- Tom **lost** his key **yesterday**. get into the house.
- **When did** Carla **leave**?

B

Compare:

Present Perfect (**have done**)

- **I've done** a lot of work **today**.

We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues *until now*. For example: **today / this week / since 2010**.

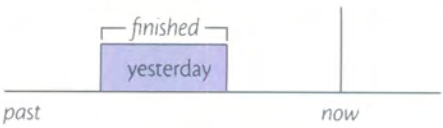


- It **hasn't rained this week**.
- **Have** you **seen** Anna **this morning**? (it is still morning now)
- **Have** you **seen** Tim **recently**? (in the last few days or weeks)
- **I've been working** here **since 2010**. (I still work here now)
- I don't know where Emma is. I **haven't seen** her. (= I haven't seen her recently)
- We**'ve been waiting** for an hour. (we are still waiting now)
- Jack lives in Los Angeles. He **has lived** there for seven years.
- **I've never ridden** a horse. (in my life)
- *It's the last day of your vacation. You say:* It**'s been** a really good vacation. **I've** really **enjoyed** it.

Simple Past (**did**)

- I **did** a lot of work **yesterday**.

We use the simple past for a *finished* time in the past. For example: **yesterday / last week / from 2010 to 2014.**



- It **didn't rain last week**.
- **Did** you **see** Anna **this morning**? (it is now afternoon or evening)
- **Did** you **see** Tim **on Sunday**?
- I **worked** here **from 2010 to 2014**. (I don't work here now)
- A: **Was** Emma at the party **on Sunday**?
  B: I don't think so. I **didn't see** her.
- We **waited** (*or* **were waiting**) for an hour. (we are no longer waiting)
- Jack **lived** in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles.
- I **never rode** a bike **when I was a child**.
- *After you come back from a vacation, you say:* It **was** a really good vacation. I really **enjoyed** it.

Simple Past → Unit 5 Present Perfect → Unit 7 Present Perfect and Past 1 → Unit 8

Exercises

13.1 Are the underlined parts of these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 I've lost my key. I can't find it anywhere. OK
2 Have you eaten a lot of candy when you were a child? Did you eat
3 I've bought a new car. You have to come and see it.
4 I've bought a new car last week.
5 Where have you been yesterday evening?
6 Maria has left school in 2009.
7 I'm looking for Mike. Have you seen him?
8 "Have you been to Paris?" "Yes, many times."
9 I'm very hungry. I haven't eaten much today.
10 When has this bridge been built?

13.2 Make sentences from the words in parentheses. Use the present perfect or simple past.

1 (it / not / rain / this week) It hasn't rained this week.
2 (the weather / be / cold / recently) The weather
3 (it / cold / last week) It
4 (I / not / eat / any fruit yesterday) I
5 (I / not / eat / any fruit today)
6 (Emily / earn / a lot of money / this year)
7 (she / not / earn / so much / last year)
8 (you / have / a vacation recently?)

13.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or simple past.

1 I haven't been (I/not/be) to France, but I'd like to go there.
2 Aaron and Emily arrived (arrive) about ten minutes ago.
3 I'm tired. (I/not/sleep) well last night.
4 (There/be) a bus drivers' strike last week, so (there/be) no buses.
5 Michael (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then (he/give) it up. Now he works as a gardener.
6 Mary lives in Toronto. (She/live) there all her life.
7 My grandfather (die) before I was born. (I/never/meet) him.
8 I don't know Jessica's husband. (I/never/meet) him.
9 It's nearly lunchtime, and (I/not/see) Matt all morning. I wonder where he is.
10 A: (you/go) to the movies last night?
B: Yes, but the movie (be) awful.
11 A: (It/be) very warm here since we arrived.
B: Yes, (it/be) 95 degrees yesterday.
12 A: Where do you live? B: In Boston.
A: How long (you/live) there? B: Five years.
A: Where (you/live) before that? B: In Chicago.
A: And how long (you/live) in Chicago? B: Two years.

13.4 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1 (something you haven't done today) I haven't eaten any fruit today.
2 (something you haven't done today)
3 (something you didn't do yesterday)
4 (something you did last night)
5 (something you haven't done recently)
6 (something you've done a lot recently)

→ Additional Exercises 2–4 (pages 297–298), 14–15 (pages 304–305)

Unit 14

Past Perfect (I had done)

A

Study this example situation:





Sarah and Nick went to the same party last week, but they didn't see each other. Nick left the party at 10:30 and Sarah arrived at 11:00.

So when Sarah arrived at the party, Nick wasn't there.

He **had gone** home.

had gone is the *past perfect*:

I/we/they/you he/she/it	**had**	(= I**'d**, etc.) (= he**'d**, etc.)	**gone** **seen** **finished**, etc.

The past perfect (simple) is **had** + *past participle* (**gone**/**seen**/**finished**, etc.).

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

- Sarah **arrived** at the party.

This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened *before* this time, we use the past perfect (**had** ...):

- **When Sarah arrived** at the party, Nick **had** already **gone** home.

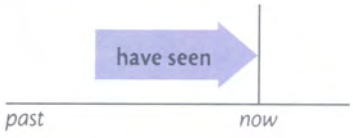
Some more examples:

- When we got home last night, we found that somebody **had broken** into the apartment.
- Lauren didn't come to the movies with us. She**'d** already **seen** the movie.
- At first I thought I**'d done** the right thing, but I soon realized that I**'d made** a big mistake.
- The people sitting next to me on the plane were nervous. They **hadn't flown** before.
  or They**'d** never **flown** before.

B

Compare the *present perfect* (**have seen**, etc.) and the *past perfect* (**had seen**, etc.):

Present perfect



- Who is that woman? I**'ve seen** her before, but I can't remember where.
- We aren't hungry. We**'ve** just **had** lunch.
- The house is dirty. They **haven't cleaned** it for weeks.

Past perfect



- I wasn't sure who she was. I**'d seen** her before, but I couldn't remember where.
- We weren't hungry. We**'d** just **had** lunch.
- The house was dirty. They **hadn't cleaned** it for weeks.

C

Compare the *simple past* (**left**, **was**, etc.) and the *past perfect* (**had left**, **had been**, etc.):

Simple past

- A: Was Tom there when you arrived?
  B: Yes, but he **left** soon afterwards.
- Kate **wasn't** at home when I called. She **was** at her mother's house.

Past perfect

- A: Was Tom there when you arrived?
  B: No, he**'d** already **left**.
- Kate **had** just **gotten** home when I called. She**'d been** at her mother's house.

Past Perfect Continuous → **Unit 15** Irregular Verbs (**gone**/**seen**, etc.) → **Appendix 1**

Exercises

14.1 Read the situations and write sentences with the words in parentheses.

1 There was a picture lying on the floor.
(It / fall / off the wall) It had fallen off the wall.
2 You went back to your hometown recently after many years. It wasn't the same as before.
(It / change / a lot) It .....
3 I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn't come.
(She / arrange / to do something else) .....
4 You went to the movies last night. You got to the movie theater late.
(The movie / already / start) .....
5 I saw Daniel last week. It was good to see him again after such a long time.
(I / not / see / him for five years) .....
6 I offered my friends something to eat, but they weren't hungry.
(They / just / have / lunch) .....

14.2 For each situation, write a sentence ending with **before**. Use the verb in parentheses.

1 The people sitting next to you on the plane were nervous. It was their first flight.
(fly) They'd never flown before or They hadn't flown before.
2 Somebody sang a song. I didn't know it.
(hear) I ..... before.
3 Sam played tennis yesterday. He wasn't very good at it because it was his first game ever.
(play) He .....
4 Last year we went to Mexico. It was our first time there.
(be) We .....

14.3 Use the sentences on the left to complete the paragraphs on the right. These sentences are in the order in which they happened – so (a) happened before (b), (b) before (c), etc. But your paragraph begins with the underlined sentence, so sometimes you need the past perfect.

1 (a) Somebody broke into the office during the night.
(b) We arrived at work in the morning.
(c) We called the police.

We arrived at work in the morning and found that somebody had broken into the office during the night. So we called the police.

2 (a) Laura went out this morning.
(b) I rang her doorbell.
(c) There was no answer.

I went to Laura's house this morning and rang her doorbell, but ..... no answer. ..... out.

3 (a) Joe came back from his vacation a few days ago.
(b) I met him the same day.
(c) He looked great.

I met Joe a few days ago. ..... just ..... his vacation. ..... great.

4 (a) James sent Amy lots of emails.
(b) She never replied to them.
(c) Yesterday he got a phone call from her.
(d) He was surprised.

Yesterday James ..... from Amy. ..... surprised. ..... lots of emails, but .....

14.4 Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (**I had done**) or simple past (**I did**).

1 David wasn't at the party when I arrived. He'd gone (He/go) home.
2 I felt very tired when I got home, so ..... (I/go) straight to bed.
3 The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody ..... (go) to bed.
4 John travels a lot. When I first met him, ...
(he/already/travel) around the world.
5 Sorry I'm late. The car ..... (break) down on my way here.
6 We were driving along the road when ..... (we/see) a car that ..... (break) down, so ..... (we/stop) to help.

→ Additional Exercises 5–8 (pages 298–301)

Unit 15

Past Perfect Continuous (I had been doing)

A

Study this example situation:

yesterday morning



Yesterday morning I got up and looked out the window. The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.

It **had been raining**.

It was *not* raining when I looked out the window. The sun was shining. But it **had been** raining before.

had been -ing is the *past perfect continuous*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	**had**	(= I'**d**, etc.) (= he'**d**, etc.)	**been**	doing working playing, etc.

Some more examples:

- My hands were dirty because I'**d been repairing** my bike.
- Tom was tired when he got home. He'**d been working** hard all day.
- I went to Mexico City a few years ago and stayed with a friend of mine. **She hadn't been living** there very long, but she knew the city very well.

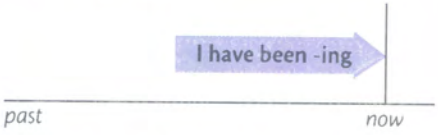
You can say that something **had been happening** before something else happened:

- We'**d been playing** tennis for about half an hour when it **started** to rain heavily.

B

Compare **have been -ing** (*present perfect continuous*) and **had been -ing** (*past perfect continuous*):

Present perfect continuous



- I hope the bus comes soon. **I've been waiting** for 20 minutes. (*before now*)
- James **is** out of breath. **He's been running**. (= he **has** been ...)

Past perfect continuous



- The bus finally came. **I'd been waiting** for 20 minutes. (*before the bus came*)
- James **was** out of breath. **He'd been running**. (= he **had** been ...)

C

Compare **was -ing** (*past continuous*) and **had been -ing**:

- It **wasn't raining** when we went out. The sun **was shining**. But it **had been raining**, so the ground was wet.
- Katherine **was lying** on the sofa. She was tired because **she'd been working** hard.

D

Some verbs (for example, **know**) are not normally used in continuous forms (**be + -ing**):

- We were good friends. We **had known** each other for years. (*not* had been knowing)
- A few years ago Lisa cut her hair really short. I was surprised because **she'd** always **had** long hair. (*not* she'd been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For **have**, see Unit 16.

Present Perfect Continuous → **Unit 9** Past Perfect Simple → **Unit 14**

Exercises

15.1 Read the situations and make sentences with the words in parentheses.

1 Tom was very tired when he got home.
(He / work / hard all day) He'd been working hard all day.
2 The children came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.
(They / play / football) .....
3 I was disappointed when I had to cancel my vacation.
(I / look / forward to it) .....
4 Anna woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn't know where she was.
(She / have / a bad dream) .....
5 When I got home, Mark was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.
(He / watch / a movie) .....
6 The people waiting at the bus stop were getting impatient. The bus was very late.
(They / wait / a long time) .....

15.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 We played tennis yesterday. We didn't finish our game.
We'd been playing (We/play) for half an hour when it started (it/start) to rain.
2 I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and waited for him to come.
..... (I/wait) for 20 minutes when ..... (I/realize) that ..... (I/be) in the wrong restaurant.
3 Sarah worked for a company for a long time. The company no longer exists.
At the time the company ..... (go) out of business, Sarah ..... (work) there for twelve years.
4 I went to a concert. Soon after the orchestra began playing, something strange happened.
The orchestra ..... (play) for about ten minutes when a man in the audience suddenly ..... (start) shouting.

Now make your own sentence:

5 I began walking along the road. I .....
when .....

15.3 Which is right?

1 It was noisy next door last night. Our neighbors were having / ~~had been having~~ a party.
(were having *is correct*)
2 At the end of our trip, we were extremely tired. We were traveling / We'd been traveling for more than 24 hours.
3 James was on his hands and knees on the floor. He was looking / He'd been looking for his contact lens.
4 Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. She was running / She'd been running.
5 John and I went for a walk. He was walking / He'd been walking very fast, and I had difficulty keeping up with him.
6 I was sad when I sold my car. I've had it / I'd had it for a very long time.
7 I was sad when my local coffee shop closed. I was going / I'd been going there for many years.
8 I'm running a marathon next month. I've been training / I'd been training for it every day.
9 I had arranged to meet Kate, but I was late. When I finally arrived, she was waiting / she'd been waiting for me. She was annoyed because she was waiting / she'd been waiting such a long time.
10 a Joe and I work for the same company. He joined the company before me. When I started a few years ago, he was already working / he'd already been working there.
b I started working at the company a few years ago. At the time I started, Joe was already working / had already been working there for two years.
c Joe still works for the company. He's been working / He'd been working there a long time now.

→ Additional Exercises 5–8 (pages 298–301)

Unit 16

have and have got

A

have and **have got** (= for possession, relationships, illnesses, appointments, etc.)

You can use **have** or **have got**. There is no difference in meaning. You can say:

- **They have** a new car. *or* **They've got** a new car.
- Lisa **has** two brothers. *or* Lisa **has got** two brothers.
- **I have** a headache. *or* **I've got** a headache.
- Our house **has** a small yard. *or* Our house **has got** a small yard.
- **He has** a few problems. *or* **He's got** a few problems.
- **I have** a driving lesson tomorrow. *or* **I've got** a driving lesson tomorrow.

With these meanings (possession, etc.), we do not use *continuous* forms (**I'm having**, etc.):

- We're enjoying our vacation. **We have** / **We've got** a nice room in the hotel. (*not* We're having a nice room)

For the past we use **had** (usually without **got**):

- Hannah **had** long hair when she was a child. (*not* Hannah had got)

B

In questions and negative sentences there are two possible forms:

Do you have any questions?	**I don't have** any questions.
or **Have you got** any questions?	*or* **I haven't got** any questions.
Does she have a car?	**She doesn't have** a car.
or **Has she got** a car?	*or* **She hasn't got** a car.

In past questions and negative sentences, we use **did**/**didn't**:

- **Did** you **have** a car when you were living in Miami?
- I **didn't have** my phone, so I couldn't call you.
- Liz **had** long hair, **didn't** she?

C

have breakfast / **have trouble** / **have a good time**, etc.

We also use **have** (*but not* have got) for things we do or experience. For example:

have	**breakfast** / **dinner** / **a cup of coffee** / **something to eat**, etc. **a party** / **a vacation** **an accident** / **an experience** / **a dream** **a good trip** / **a good flight** / **a good time** **fun** / **trouble** / **difficulty** **a look** (at something) **a chat** / **a discussion** / **a conversation** / **a talk** (with somebody) **a baby** (= give birth to a baby) / **an operation**

Have got is *not* possible in these expressions. Compare:

- Sometimes **I have** (= eat) a sandwich for lunch. (*not* I've got)

but **I've got** / **I have** some sandwiches. Would you like one?

You can use *continuous* forms (**I'm having**, etc.) with these expressions:

- We're enjoying our vacation. **We're having** a great time.
- Mike **is having** trouble with his car. He often has trouble with his car.

In questions and negative sentences, we use **do**/**does**/**did**:

- I **don't** usually **have** a big breakfast. (*not* I usually haven't)
- Where **does** Chris usually **have** lunch?
- **Did** you **have** trouble finding somewhere to stay? (*not* Had you)

have (got) to ... ➜ Unit 30 British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

16.1 Which goes with which?

1 I'm not free tomorrow morning.	a She has a degree in physics.	1 d
2 Rachel is an only child.	b I've got a sore throat.	2
3 We've got plenty of time.	c There's no need to hurry.	3
4 You've got a really good voice.	d ~~I've got a driving lesson.~~	4
5 I don't feel very well this morning.	e Maybe you can answer it.	5
6 Megan went to college.	f I think he should get the job.	6
7 I've got a question.	g I wish I could sing as well as you.	7
8 James has got a lot of experience.	h She hasn't got any brothers or sisters.	8

16.2 Complete the sentences using **have**.

1 She couldn't get into the house. She *didn't have* a key.
2 Is there anything you'd like to ask? *Do you have* any questions?
3 They can't pay their bills. They ..... any money.
4 We got wet in the rain yesterday. We ..... an umbrella.
5 Jack ..... a car. He can't afford one, and he can't drive anyway.
6 "Excuse me, ... a pen I could borrow?" "Yes, sure. Here you go."
7 I was very busy yesterday. I ..... time to go shopping.
8 "Tell me about Jack. ..... a job?" "Yes, he works at the hospital."
9 When you worked at your last job, ... your own office?
10 "Where's the remote control?" "I don't know. I ..... it."
11 "Tom ..... a motorcycle, ... he ?" "Yes, a long time ago. He doesn't have one now."

16.3 Are the underlined words OK? Change them where necessary.

1 I'm not free tomorrow morning. I've got a driving lesson. *OK*
2 Rachel had got long hair when she was a child. *Rachel had long hair*
3 I couldn't contact you because I hadn't my phone. .....
4 "Are you feeling OK?" "No, I'm having a cold." .....
5 This party is great. I'm having a good time. .....
6 I felt really tired. I hadn't any energy. .....
7 It's a small town. It doesn't have many stores. .....
8 Was your trip OK? Had you any problems? .....
9 My friend called me when I was having lunch. .....
10 The last time I saw Steve, he was having a beard. .....
11 We don't need to hurry. We have plenty of time. .....
12 Have you breakfast every day? .....

16.4 Complete the sentences. Use an expression with **have** in the correct form. Choose from:

have a baby **have a bad dream** **have a chat** **have trouble** **have a good trip**
have a look ~~**have lunch**~~ **have a party** **have a nice time** **have a vacation**

1 I don't eat much during the day. I never *have lunch*.
2 I didn't sleep well last night. I ..... about my exam.
3 We ..... last week. We invited lots of people.
4 Excuse me. Can I ..... at your magazine, please?
5 Joe is away on vacation right now. I hope he .....
6 I met some friends in the supermarket yesterday. We stopped and .....
7 " ..... finding the book you wanted?" "No, I found it OK."
8 Lauren ..... a few weeks ago. It's her second child.
9 "I'm leaving for Hawaii in a few hours." "That's great! ..... !"
10 I'd like to go away somewhere. I ..... for a long time.

Unit 17

used to (do)

A Study this example situation:



Nicole doesn't travel much these days.
She prefers to stay at home.

But she **used to travel** a lot.
She **used to go** away two or three times a year.

She **used to travel** a lot = she traveled often in the past, but she doesn't do this anymore.



B I **used to** do something = I did it often in the past, but not anymore:

- I **used to play** tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now.
- David **used to spend** a lot of money on clothes. These days he can't afford it.
- "Do you go to the movies much?" "Not now, but I **used to**." (= I used to go)

We also use **used to** ... for things that were true, but are not true anymore:

- This building is now a furniture store. It **used to be** a movie theater.
- I **used to think** Mark was unfriendly, but now I realize he's a very nice person.
- I started drinking coffee recently. I never **used to like** it before.
- Jen **used to have** very long hair when she was a child.

C "I **used to** do something" is past. There is no present form. You cannot say "I use to do."
To talk about the present, we use the *simple present* (I **do**).

Compare:

past	he **used to play**	we **used to live**	there **used to be**
present	he **plays**	we **live**	there **is**

- We **used to live** in a small village, but now we **live** in a city.
- There **used to be** four movie theaters in the city. Now there **is** only one.

D The normal question form is **did** (you) **use to** ... ?:

- **Did** you **use to eat** a lot of candy when you were a child? (= did you do this often?)

The negative form is **didn't use to** ... :

- I **didn't use to like** him.

E Compare **I used to do** and **I was doing**:

- I **used to watch** TV a lot. (= I watched TV often in the past, but I don't do this anymore)
- I **was watching** TV when Rob called. (= I was in the middle of watching TV)

F Do not confuse **I used to do** and **I am used to doing** (see Unit 59). The structures and meanings are different:

- I **used to live** alone. (= I lived alone in the past, but I no longer live alone.)
- I **am used to living** alone. (= I live alone, and it's not a problem for me because I've lived alone for some time.)

Past Continuous (**I was doing**) → Unit 6 **would** (= **used to**) → Unit 34
be/get used to (**doing** something) → Unit 59

Exercises

17.1 Complete the sentences with **used to** + an appropriate verb.

1 Nicole *used to travel* a lot, but she doesn't go away much these days.
2 Sophie _____ a motorcycle, but last year she sold it and bought a car.
3 Our friends moved to Spain a few years ago. They _____ in Paris.
4 Jackie _____ my best friend, but we aren't friends anymore.
5 I rarely eat ice cream now, but I _____ it often when I was a child.
6 It only takes me about 40 minutes to get to work now that the new road is open. It _____ more than an hour.
7 There _____ a hotel near the airport, but it closed a long time ago.
8 I _____ in a factory. It wasn't my favorite job.

17.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 Jen *used to have* very long hair when she was a child.
2 We _____ to watch TV a lot, but we don't have a TV anymore.
3 Liz works in a store now. She _____ a receptionist in a hotel.
4 What games _____ you use to play when you were a child?
5 I _____ like big cities, but now I prefer the country.
6 In your last job, how many hours a day did you _____ to work?
7 I don't travel a lot these days, but I used _____.
8 I used to _____ to run ten kilometers, but I can't run that far now.
9 These days I eat more than before. I _____ use to eat as much.

did
didn't
to
use
used
used to
used to be
~~**used to have**~~
be able

17.3 Compare what Karen said ten years ago and what she says today:



Now write about how Karen has changed. Use **used to** / **didn't use to** / **never used to** in the first part of your sentence.

1 *She used to travel a lot* but *she doesn't go away much these days.*
2 She used _____ but _____
3 _____ but _____
4 _____ but _____
5 _____ but _____
6 _____ but _____

17.4 Write sentences about yourself. Begin with **I used to ...** (**I used to be/work/like/play**, etc.)

1 *I used to live in a small village, but now I live in a city.*
2 *I used to play tennis a lot, but I don't play anymore.*
3 I used _____, but _____
4 I _____
5 _____

Now begin with **I didn't use to ...**.

6 *I didn't use to read a lot, but I do now.*
7 I didn't _____
8 _____

→ **Additional Exercise 9** (page 301)

Unit 18

Present Tenses (I am doing / I do) with a Future Meaning

A *Present continuous* (**I am doing**) with a future meaning



This is Ben's diary for next week.

He **is playing** tennis on Monday afternoon.
He **is going** to the dentist on Tuesday morning.
He **is meeting** Kate on Friday.

In all these examples, Ben has already decided and arranged to do these things.

I'm doing something (tomorrow, etc.) = I have already decided and arranged to do it:

- A: What **are** you **doing** on Saturday night? (*not* What do you do)
  B: **I'm going** to the movies. (*not* I go)
- A: What time **is** Katherine **arriving** tomorrow?
  B: At 10:30. We**'re meeting** her at the airport.
- **I'm not working** tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere.
- Ryan **isn't playing** football next Saturday. He hurt his leg.

We do not normally use **will** to talk about what we have arranged to do:

- What **are** you **doing** tonight? (*not* What will you do)
- Alex **is getting** married next month. (*not* will get)

We also use the present continuous for an action *just before you start to do it*. This happens especially with verbs of movement (**go/come/leave,** etc.):

- I'm tired. **I'm going** to bed now. Good night. (*not* I go to bed now)
- "Emily, are you ready yet?" "Yes, I**'m coming**" (*not* I come)

B *Simple present* (**I do**) with a future meaning

We use the simple present when we talk about schedules and programs (for example, transportation or movie times):

- I have to go. My flight **leaves** at 11:30.
- What time **does** the movie **start** tonight?
- The meeting **is** at 9:00 tomorrow.

You can use the simple present to talk about people if their plans are fixed, as in a schedule:

- **I start** my new job on Monday.
- What time **do you finish** work tomorrow?

But the continuous is more usual for other personal arrangements:

- What time **are you meeting** Kate tomorrow? (*not* do you meet)

Compare:

Present continuous

- What time **are you arriving**?
- **I'm going** to the movies this evening.

Simple present

- What time **does the train arrive**?
- **The movie starts** at 8:15.

When you talk about appointments, lessons, exams, etc., you can use **I have** or **I've got**:

- **I have** an exam next week. *or* **I've got** an exam next week.

I'm going to → Units 19, 22 **will** → Units 20–22 Simple Present after **when** and **if** → Unit 24

Exercises

18.1 Ask Anna about her vacation plans.


ANNA

1 (where / go?) Where are you going?
2 (how long / go for?) .....
3 (when / leave?) .....
4 (go / alone?) .....
5 (travel / by car?) .....
6 (where / stay?) .....

Quebec.
Ten days.
Next Friday.
No, with a friend.
No, by plane.
In a hotel.

18.2 Complete the sentences.

1 Ryan isn't playing (not / play) football on Saturday. He hurt his leg.
2 ..... (We / have) a party next week. We've invited all our friends.
3 ..... (I / not / work) tomorrow. It's a public holiday.
4 ..... (I / leave) now. I've come to say goodbye.
5 "What time ..... (you / go) out tonight?" "7:00."
6 ..... (Laura / not / come) to the party tomorrow. She's sick.
7 I love Tokyo. ..... (I / go) there soon.
8 Ben can't meet us on Monday. ..... (He / work) late.

18.3 Have you arranged to do anything at these times? Write sentences about yourself.

1 (tonight) I'm not doing anything this evening.
2 (tomorrow morning) I .....
3 (tomorrow night) I .....
4 (next Sunday) I .....
5 *(another day or time)* .....

18.4 Complete the sentences. Use the present continuous or the simple present.

1 A: Olivia, are you ready yet?
B: Yes, I'm coming (I / come).
2 A: ..... (you / go) to Sam's party on Saturday?
B: No, I haven't been invited.
3 A: Has Jack moved into his new apartment yet?
B: Not yet, but ..... (he / move) soon – probably at the end of the month.
4 A: ..... (I / go) to a concert tonight.
B: That's nice. What time ..... (it / start)?
5 A: Have you seen Chris recently?
B: No, but ..... (we / meet) for lunch next week.
6 A: ..... (you / do) anything tomorrow morning?
B: No, I'm free. Why?
7 A: When ..... (this semester / end)?
B: Next Friday. And the next semester ..... (start) four weeks after that.
8 A: ..... (We / go) to a wedding on the weekend.
B: Really? ..... (Who / get) married?
9 A: There' a football game on TV later tonight. ..... (you / watch) it?
B: No, I'm not interested.
10 A: What time is your train tomorrow?
B: It ..... (leave) at 9:35 and ..... (arrive) at 12:47.
11 A: I'd like to go and see the exhibition at the museum. How long is it on for?
B: ..... (It / finish) next week.
12 A: Do you need the car tonight?
B: No, you can take it. ..... (I / not / use) it.

→ Additional Exercises 10–13 (pages 302–304)

Unit 19

I'm going to (do)

A

am going to do something = I have already decided to do it, I intend to do it:

- "**Are** you **going to eat** anything?" "No, I'm not hungry."
- A: I heard Sarah won the lottery. What **is** she **going to do** with the money?
  B: She**'s going to buy** a new car.
- **I'm** just **going to make** a quick phone call. Can you wait for me?
- This cheese smells horrible. **I'm not going to eat** it.

B

I am doing and **I am going to do**

I am doing = it is *already fixed or arranged*. For example, you have arranged to go somewhere or meet somebody:

- **I'm leaving** next week. I've booked my flight.
- What time **are** you **meeting** Hannah this evening?

I am going to do something = I've decided to do it. Maybe I've arranged to do it, maybe not.

- A: Your shoes are dirty.
  B: Yes, I know. **I'm going to polish** them.
  (= I've *decided* to polish them, but I haven't *arranged* this)
- I don't want to stay here. Tomorrow **I'm going to look** for another place to stay.

Compare:

- I don't know what **I'm doing** tomorrow. (= I don't know my schedule or plans)
- I don't know what **I'm going to do** about the problem. (= I haven't decided what to do)

Often the difference is small and either form is possible.

C

You can also say that "something **is going to happen**" in the future. For example:



The man isn't looking where he is going.

He **is going to walk** into the wall.

When we say that "something **is going to happen**," the situation *now* makes this clear. The man is walking toward the wall now, so we can see that he **is going to walk** into it.



now *future*

Some more examples:

- Look at those black clouds! It**'s going to rain**. (we can see the clouds *now*)
- I feel terrible. I think I**'m going to be** sick. (I feel terrible *now*)
- The economic situation is bad now, and things **are going to get** worse.

D

was going to do something = I intended to do it, but didn't do it:

- We **were going to take** the train, but then we decided to drive instead.
- I **was** just **going to cross** the street when somebody shouted, "Stop!"

You can say that "something **was going to happen**" (but didn't happen):

- I thought it **was going to rain**, but it didn't.

I am doing with a Future Meaning → Unit 18A **I will** and **I'm going to** → Unit 22

Exercises

19.1 Write questions with **going to**

1 Your friend has won some money. You ask:
(what / do?) What are you going to do with it?
2 Your friend is going to a wedding next week. You ask:
(what / wear?) .....
3 Your friend has just bought a new table. You ask:
(where / put?) .....
4 Your friend has decided to have a party. You ask:
(who / invite?) .....
5 Your friend has bought some fish for dinner. You ask:
(how / cook?) .....

19.2 Complete the sentences using **I'm going to ... / I'm not going to ...** . Choose from:

complain **learn** **run** **say** **try** **wash** **not/accept** ~~**not/eat**~~ **not/tell**

1 This cheese smells horrible. I'm not going to eat it.
2 I haven't been trying hard enough. From now on ..... harder.
3 I have to make a speech tomorrow, but I don't know what .....
4 "The car is very dirty." "I know. ..... it."
5 I've had a job offer, but ..... it. The pay is too low.
6 ..... a language, but I haven't decided on the language yet.
7 One day ..... a marathon. It's my ambition.
8 The food in this restaurant is awful. .....
9 Ben doesn't need to know what happened, so ..... him.

19.3 What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in parentheses.

1 There are a lot of dark clouds in the sky.
(rain) It's going to rain.
2 It is 8:30. Tom is leaving home. He has to be at work at 8:45, but the trip takes 30 minutes.
(late) He .....
3 There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in through the hole.
(sink) The boat .....
4 Amy and Ben are driving. The gas tank is nearly empty. It's a long way to the nearest gas station.
(run out) They .....
5 Sarah's car was badly damaged in an accident. Now it has to be repaired.
(cost a lot) It ..... to repair the car.

19.4 Complete the sentences with **was/were going to**. Choose from:

be **buy** **call** **play** **quit** **say** ~~**take**~~

1 We were going to take the train, but then we decided to go by car instead.
2 I ..... some new clothes yesterday, but I didn't have time to go shopping.
3 Tom and I ..... tennis last week, but he'd hurt his knee and had to cancel.
4 I ..... Jane, but I sent her an email instead.
5 I thought the exam ..... hard, but it was easier than I expected.
6 Kevin ..... his job, but in the end he decided to stay where he was.
7 I'm sorry I interrupted you. What ..... you .....?

Unit 20

will 1

A

We use **I'll** ... (= **I will**) when we've just decided to do something. When we say "**I'll** do something," we announce our decision:

- Oh, I left the door open. **I'll go** and shut it.
- I don't have time to talk to you now. **I'll talk** to you later.
- A: What would you like to drink?
  B: **I'll have** orange juice, please.
- A: Did you call Mike?
  B: Oh no, I forgot. **I'll call** him now.

We do not use the *simple present* (**I do** / **I go**, etc.) in these sentences:

- **I'll call** him now. (*not* I call him now)

We often use **I think I'll** ... / **I don't think I'll** ... :

- I'm a little hungry. **I think I'll have** something to eat.
- **I don't think I'll go** out tonight. I'm too tired.

In spoken English, **will not** is usually **won't**:

- I can see you're busy, so **I won't stay** long. (= I will not stay long)

B

We often use **I'll** in these situations:

Offering to do something

- That bag looks heavy. **I'll help** you with it. (*not* I help)



Agreeing to do something

- A: Can you give Tom this book?
  B: Sure, **I'll give** it to him when I see him this afternoon.

Promising to do something

- Thanks for lending me the money. **I'll pay** you back on Friday.
- I **won't tell** anyone what happened. I promise.

We use **won't** to say that somebody refuses to do something:

- I've tried to give her advice, but she **won't listen**.
- The car **won't start**. (= the car "refuses" to start)



Will you (do something)? = please do it:

- **Will you** please turn the music down? It's too loud.

C

We do *not* use **will** to talk about what has been decided or arranged before:

- **I'm going** on vacation next Saturday. (*not* I'll go)

Compare:

- **I'm meeting** Kate tomorrow morning. (decided before)
- A: **I'll meet** you at 10:30, OK? (decided now)
  B: Fine. See you then.

I am doing with a Future Meaning ➜ Unit 18 **will** 2 ➜ Unit 21 **I will** and **I'm going to** ➜ Unit 22
British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

20.1 Complete the sentences with I'll + an appropriate verb.

1 A: How are you going to get home?
B: I think I'll take a taxi.
2 A: It's cold in this room.
B: It is? ..... on the heat then.
3 A: Are you free next Friday?
B: Let me see. ..... my calendar.
4 A: Should I do the dishes?
B: No, it's all right. ..... them later.
5 A: I don't know how to use this phone.
B: OK, ... you.
6 A: Would you like coffee or tea?
B: ..... coffee, please.
7 A: Are you coming with us?
B: No, I think ..... here.
8 A: Can you finish this report today?
B: Well, ..., but I can't promise.

20.2 Read the situations and write sentences with **I think I'll ...** or **I don't think I'll ...**

1 It's a little cold. The window is open, and you decide to close it. You say:
It's cold with the window open. I think I'll close it.
2 You're tired, and it's getting late. You decide to go to bed. You say:
I'm tired, so ..... Good night!
3 The weather is nice and you need some exercise. You decide to go for a walk. You say:
It's a beautiful morning. ..... Do you want to come too?
4 You were going to have lunch. Now you decide you don't want to eat anything. You say:
I don't feel hungry anymore. ..... lunch.
5 You planned to go swimming today. Now you decide not to go. You say:
I've got a lot to do, so ..... today.

20.3 Which is correct?

1 A: Can we meet tomorrow morning?
B: I'm sorry, I can't. I'm playing / ~~I'll play~~ tennis. (I'm playing *is correct*)
2 A: I meet / I'll meet you outside the hotel at 10:30, OK?
B: Yes, that's fine.
3 A: Please don't go yet.
B: OK, I'm staying / I'll stay a little longer, but I have to go soon.
4 A: I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
B: Of course. I'd love to.
5 A: Don't forget to lock the door when you go out.
B: OK. I don't forget / I won't forget.
6 A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
B: Yes, we're going / we'll go to a wedding.
7 A: Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?
B: No, I'm free. Why?
8 A: Do you do / Will you do something for me?
B: That depends. What do you want me to do?
9 A: Do you drive / Will you drive to work?
B: Not usually. I prefer to walk.
10 A: Did Sue tell you what happened?
B: No, I've asked her, but she doesn't tell / won't tell me.
11 A: How do you think you'll do on the exam tomorrow?
B: I don't know, but I'm doing / I'll do my best.

→ Additional Exercises 10–13 (pages 302–304)

Unit 21

will 2

A

We do *not* use **will** to say what somebody has *already arranged* or *decided* to do:

- Emily **is working** next week. (*not* Emily will work)
- **Are** you **going to watch** TV this evening? (*not* will you watch)

See Units 18–19.

We use **will** to say what we know or believe about the future (not what someone has already decided). For example:

Kate has her driving test next week. Chris and Joe are talking about it.



Joe believes that Kate **will pass** the driving test.
He is *predicting* the future.

When we predict a future happening or situation, we use **will/won't**.

Some more examples:

- They've been away a long time. When they return, they'**ll see** a lot of changes here.
- "Where **will** you **be** this time next year?" "I'**ll be** in Japan."
- That plate is hot. If you touch it, you'**ll burn** yourself.
- Anna looks completely different now. You **won't recognize** her.
- When **will** you **find out** how you did on the exam?

Compare:

- I think James **is going** to the party on Friday.
  (= I think he has already decided to go)
- I think James **will go** to the party on Friday.
  (= I think he will decide to go)

B

We often use **will** ('**ll**) with:

probably	I'**ll probably** be home late tonight.
I expect	I **expect** the test **will** take two hours.
I'm sure	Don't worry about the exam. **I'm sure** you'**ll** pass.
I think	Do you **think** Sarah **will** like the present we bought her?
I don't think	I **don't think** the exam **will** be very difficult.
I guess	I **guess** your parents **will** be tired after their trip.
I suppose	When do you **suppose** Jen and Mike **will** get married?
I doubt	I **doubt** you'**ll** need a heavy coat in Las Vegas. It's usually hot there.
I wonder	I **wonder** what **will** happen.

After **I hope**, we generally use the present:

- I hope Kate **passes** the driving test.
- I hope it **doesn't rain** tomorrow.

C

Generally we use **will** to talk about *the future*, but we sometimes use **will** to talk about *now*:

- Don't call Amy now. She'**ll be** busy. (= she'll be busy *now*)

will 1 ➜ Unit 20 **I will** and **I'm going to** ➜ Unit 22 **will be doing** and **will have done** ➜ Unit 23
will have to ➜ Unit 30A The Future ➜ Appendix 3 British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

21.1 Put in **will ('ll)** or **won't**.

1 Can you wait for me? It ___won't___ be long.
2 There's no point in asking Amanda for advice. She _____ know what to do.
3 I'm glad I'm seeing Emma tomorrow. It _____ be good to talk with her.
4 I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It _____ happen again.
5 You don't need to take an umbrella with you. I don't think it _____ rain.
6 I've got some incredible news! You _____ believe it.

21.2 Complete the sentences using **will ('ll)**. Choose from the following:

it/be	**she/come**	**you/get**	**you/like**	**you/enjoy**
people/live	**it/look**	**we/see**	~~**you/pass**~~	**she/mind**

1 Don't worry about your exam. I'm sure ___you'll pass___.
2 Why don't you try on this jacket? _____ nice on you.
3 You must meet Max sometime. I think _____ him.
4 It's a very nice hotel. _____ your stay there.
5 It's raining hard. Don't go out. _____ very wet.
6 Do you think _____ longer in the future?
7 Goodbye! I'm sure _____ each other again before long.
8 I've invited Anna to the party, but I don't think _____.
9 You can borrow Amy's umbrella. I don't think _____.
10 It takes me an hour to get to work now. When the new road is finished, _____ much quicker.

21.3 Write questions using **do you think ... will ... ?** + the following:

be back	**cost**	**end**	**get married**	**happen**	~~**like**~~	**rain**

1 I bought this picture for Karen. ___Do you think she'll like it___?
2 The weather doesn't look very good. Do you _____?
3 The meeting is still going on. When do you _____?
4 My car needs to be repaired. How much _____?
5 Nicole and David are in love. Do _____?
6 "I'm going out now." "OK. What time _____?"
7 The future situation is uncertain. What _____?

21.4 Where do you think you will be at these times? Write sentences about yourself. Use:
I'll be ... *or* **I'll probably be ...** *or* **I don't know where ...**

1 (next Monday evening at 7:45) ___I'll probably be at home.___
2 (at 3:00 a.m. tomorrow) _____
3 (at 10:30 tomorrow morning) _____
4 (next Friday afternoon at 4:15) _____
5 (this time next year) _____

21.5 Which is better in these sentences?

1 Lisa isn't free on Saturday. ~~She'll work~~ / She's working. (She's working *is correct*)
2 It was an amazing experience. I never forget it. / I'll never forget it.
3 Something very funny happened. You're laughing / You'll laugh when I tell you about it.
4 I'll go / I'm going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?
5 Who do you think will win / is winning the game tomorrow?
6 I can't meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.
7 Don't be afraid of the dog. It won't hurt / It isn't hurting you.
8 What's happening / What will happen if I press this button?
9 A: Have you decided where to go for your vacation?
B: Yes, we'll go / we're going to Italy.

→ Additional Exercises 10–13 (pages 302–304)

Unit 22

I will and I'm going to

A Future actions

Compare **will** and (**be**) **going to**:

Sarah is talking to Kate:



will (We'**ll invite** ...)

We use **will** (We'**ll** invite ...) to announce a new decision. The party is a new idea.

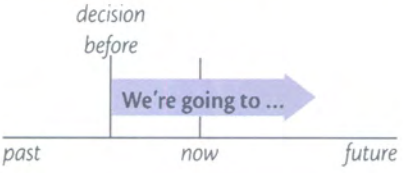


Later that day, Kate meets Rob:



(**be**) **going to** (We'**re going to** invite ...)

We use (**be**) **going to** when we have *already decided* to do something.
Kate had already decided to invite lots of people *before* she spoke to Rob.



Compare:

- "Kevin has been trying to contact you." "Has he? OK, I'**ll call** him."
- "Kevin has been trying to contact you." "Yes, I know. I'**m going to call** him."

- "Anna is in the hospital." "Really? I didn't know. I'**ll go** and visit her."
- "Anna is in the hospital." "Yes, I know. I'**m going to visit** her tonight."

B Future happenings and situations (predicting the future)

We use both **will** and **going to** for future happenings and situations. So you can say:

- I think the weather **will be** nice later. *or*
  I think the weather **is going to be** nice later.
- Those shoes are well made. They'**ll last** a long time. *or*
  Those shoes are well made. They'**re going to last** a long time.

When we say something **is going to** happen, we believe this because of the situation *now*. What is happening *now* shows that something **is going to** happen in the future. For example:

- Look at those black clouds. It'**s going to rain**. (*not* it will rain)
  (we can see that it **is going to rain**—the black clouds are in the sky *now*)

Compare:

- We'**re going to be** late. The meeting starts in five minutes, and it takes 15 minutes to get there.
  (it is clear *now* that we don't have enough time to get there)
- Jane **will be** late for the meeting. She's always late.
  (I believe this because I know what Jane is like)

I'm going to → Unit 19 **will** → Units 20–21 The Future → Appendix 3

Exercises

22.1 Complete the sentences using will ('ll) or (be) going to.

1 A: Why are you turning on the TV?
B: I'm going to watch the news. (I/watch)
2 A: I forgot my wallet. I don't have any money.
B: Not to worry. _____ you some. (I/lend)
3 A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
B: _____ the car. (I/wash)
4 A: I don't know how to use the washing machine.
B: It's easy. _____ you. (I/show)
5 A: I've decided to paint this room.
B: That's nice. What color _____ it? (you/paint)
6 A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
B: Yes, _____ some things for dinner tonight. (I/buy)
7 A: What would you like to eat?
B: _____ a pizza, please. (I/have)
8 A: This food doesn't taste very good, does it?
B: No, it's horrible. _____ it. (I/not/finish)
9 A: Tom is starting a night class next month.
B: He is? What _____ ? (he/study)
10 A: Did you call Emma?
B: Oh, no. I completely forgot. _____ her now. (I/call)
11 A: Has Dan decided what to do when he leaves school?
B: Yes. Everything is planned.
First _____ a vacation for a few weeks. (he/take)
Then _____ a management training course. (he/do)

22.2 Read the situations and complete the sentences using will ('ll) or (be) going to.

1 You want some coffee. You go to the kitchen to make some.
You say (to your friend): I'm going to make some coffee. Would you like some?
2 You're speaking to a friend and arranging to meet. You suggest a time and place.
You say: _____ you at 10:30 in the hotel lobby, OK? (I/see)
3 You have decided to sell your car. You tell a friend of yours.
You say: I don't need my car anymore. _____ it. (I/sell)
4 Your friend is worried because she has lost her driver's license.
You say: Don't worry. I'm sure _____ it. (you/find)
5a You have an old camera that is broken. You have decided to throw it away. You tell your friend.
You say: This camera is broken. _____ it away. (I/throw)
5b Your friend loves and collects old cameras. He doesn't want you to throw it away.
He says: Don't throw it away! _____ it. (I/take)
6a Joe has to go to the airport tomorrow. He doesn't know how to get there. Amy offers to take him.
Amy says: Don't worry about getting to the airport, Joe. _____ you. (I/take)
6b Later that day, Eric offers to take Joe to the airport. Joe tells him that it's not necessary.
Joe says: Thanks, Eric, but _____ me. (Amy/take)

22.3 Which goes with which?

1	Why don't you come to the party with us?	a	He'll get what he wants.
2	That ceiling looks dangerous.	b	He probably won't remember me.
3	He looks very tired.	c	It's going to be a nice day.
4	This table is too big.	d	It looks as if it's going to fall down.
5	The weather forecast is good.	e	It's going to be 600 feet high.
6	Jack is very determined.	f	~~You'll enjoy it.~~
7	They are building a new skyscraper here.	g	I don't think it will fit in the room.
8	I haven't seen Ben for ages.	h	I think he's going to fall asleep.

1 f
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____
7 _____
8 _____

→ Additional Exercises 10–13 (pages 302–304)

Unit 23

will be doing and will have done

A

Study this example situation:

These people are waiting in line to get into the movie theater.



now

Half an hour from now, the movie theater will be full. Everyone **will be watching** the movie.



half an hour from now

Three hours from now, the movie theater will be empty. The movie **will have finished**. Everyone **will have gone** home.



three hours from now

B

I **will be doing** something (*future continuous*) = I will be in the middle of doing it:

- This time next week I'll be on vacation. I**'ll be lying** on the beach or **swimming** in the ocean.
- You have no chance of getting the job. You**'ll be wasting** your time if you apply.

Compare **will be** (do)**ing** and **will** (do):

- Don't phone between 7 and 8. We**'ll be eating**.
- Let's wait for Liz to arrive, and then we**'ll eat**.

Compare:

- At 10:00 yesterday, Tina **was** in her office. She **was working**. (*past continuous*)
  It's 10:00 now. She **is** in her office. She **is working**. (*present continuous*)
  At 10:00 tomorrow, she **will be** in her office. She **will be working**. (*future continuous*)

C

We also use **will be -ing** to talk about complete actions in the future. For example:

- The government **will be making** a statement about the crisis later today.
- Later in the program, I**'ll be talking** to the Minister of Education.
- The team's star player is injured and **won't be playing** in the game on Saturday.



When we use it in this way, **I'll be doing** is similar to **I'll do** and **I'm going to do**.

D

I **will have done** something (*future perfect*) = it will be complete before a time in the future. For example:

- Emily always leaves for work at 8:30 in the morning. She won't be at home at 9:00—she**'ll have gone** to work.
- We're late. The movie **will** already **have started** by the time we get to the theater.

Compare:

- Michael and Amy **have been** married for 24 years. (*present perfect*)
  Next year they **will have been** married for 25 years. (*future perfect*)
  When their son was born, they **had been** married for three years. (*past perfect*)

will → Units 20–21 **by then / by the time** → Unit 117 The Future → Appendix 3

Exercises

23.1 Read about Andy. Then check (✓) the sentences that are true. In each group of sentences, at least one is true.

Andy goes to work every day. He leaves home at 8:00 and arrives at work at about 8:45. He starts work immediately and continues until 12:30 when he has lunch (which takes about half an hour). He starts work again at 1:15 and goes home at exactly 4:30. Every day he follows the same routine, and tomorrow will be no exception.

1 

At 7:45
a he'll be leaving the house
b he'll have left the house
c he'll be at home ✓
d he'll be having breakfast ✓

2 

At 8:15
a he'll be leaving the house
b he'll have left the house
c he'll have arrived at work
d he'll be arriving at work

3 

At 9:15
a he'll be working
b he'll start work
c he'll have started work
d he'll be arriving at work

4 

At 12:45
a he'll have lunch
b he'll be having lunch
c he'll have finished his lunch
d he'll have started his lunch

5 

At 4:00
a he'll have finished work
b he'll finish work
c he'll be working
d he won't have finished work

6 

At 4:45
a he'll leave work
b he'll be leaving work
c he'll have left work
d he'll have arrived home

23.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 There's an election next week. Who *will you be voting* for?
2 I'll ..... shopping later. Can I get you anything?
3 Emily is not well, so she ..... volleyball tomorrow.
4 Little Emma ..... school soon. She's growing up fast.
5 The game is on TV tonight. Will you ..... it?
6 What ..... in your new job? The same as before?
7 I ..... to the wedding. I'll be away on vacation.
8 Please fasten your seat belts. The plane ..... in ten minutes.

be watching
will be landing
won't be playing
will be starting
~~**will you be voting**~~
won't be going
be going
will you be doing

23.3 Put the verb into the correct form, **will be (do)ing** or **will have (done)**.

1 Don't call between 7 and 8. *We'll be eating* then. (we/eat)
2 Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3:00 until 4:30. So at 4:00, ... tennis. (we/play)
3 Sarah will meet you at the airport. ..... for you when you arrive. (she/wait)
4 The meeting starts at 9:30 and won't last longer than an hour. You can be sure that ..... by 11:00. (it/finish)
5 Do you think ..... in the same place in ten years? (you/still/live)
6 Jessica is traveling in Europe and so far she has traveled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, ... more than 3,000 miles. (she/travel)
7 If you need to contact me, ... at the Lion Hotel until Friday. (I/stay)
8 Ben is on vacation and is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, ... all his money before the end of his vacation. (he/spend)
9 I'm fed up with my job. I hope ..... it much longer. (I/not/do)

→ Additional Exercises 12–13 (pages 303–304)

Unit 24

when I do and when I've done if and when

A

Study this example:

Amy is on a train. She's calling a friend.



"I'll call you again when I arrive" is a sentence with two parts:

the main part:	I'll call you again
and **when** ... :	when I arrive

The time is *future*, but Amy says:

... **when I arrive** (*not* when I will arrive)

We say

when I **do** something (*not* will do)
when something **happens** (*not* will happen)

Some more examples:

- We'll go out **when** it **stops** raining. (*not* when it will stop)
- **When** you **are** here again, you have to come and see us. (*not* When you will be)
- Don't forget to lock the door **when** you **go** out. (*not* will go)

The same thing happens after **while** / **before** / **after** / **as soon as** / **until**:

- What are you going to do **while I'm** away? (*not* while I will be)
- **Before** you **go**, there's something I want to ask you.
- Wait here **until** I **come** back. *or* ... **till** I **come** back.

B

You can also use the present perfect (**have done**) after **when** / **after** / **until** / **as soon as**:

- Can I read your magazine **when** you**'ve finished** with it?
- Don't say anything while Chris is here. Wait **until** he **has gone**.

We use the present perfect to show that one thing is complete *before* the other. The two things do *not* happen together:

- **When I've called** Kate, we can go out.
  (= first I'll phone Kate and *after that* we can go out)

Do not use the present perfect if the two things happen together:

- **When** I **call** Kate, I'll ask her about the party. (*not* when I've called)

It is often possible to use either the simple present or the present perfect:

I'll come **as soon as I finish**.	*or*	I'll come **as soon as I've finished**.
You'll feel better **after** you **have** something to eat	*or*	You'll feel better **after** you**'ve had** something to eat.

C

if and **when**

After **if**, we normally use the present (**if** I **do** / **if** I **see**, etc.) for the future:

- I'll be angry **if** it **happens** again. (*not* if it will happen)
- Hurry up! **If** we **don't** hurry, we'll be late.

We use **if** (*not* when) for things that will *possibly* happen (or not happen):

- **If** it is raining this evening, I won't go out. (*not* when it is raining)
- Don't worry **if** I'm late tonight. (*not* when I'm late)
- **If** they don't come soon, I'm not going to wait for them.

We use **when** for things which are *sure* to happen. Compare:

- I might go out later. *(it's possible)* **If** I go out, I'll get some bread.
- I'm going out later. *(for sure)* **When** I go out, I'll get some bread.

if → Units 36–38 **even if / even when** → Unit 109D **unless** → Unit 112

Exercises

24.1 Which is correct?

1 Don't forget to lock the door when you go out / ~~you'll go out~~. (you go out *is correct*)
2 As soon as we get any more information, we let / we'll let you know.
3 I want to get to the theater before the movie starts / will start.
4 Don't drive through a red light. Wait until it changes / it will change to green.
5 Sarah will be here soon. I make / I'll make some coffee when she comes.
6 I'm 20 now. I wonder where I'll be when I'm 40 / I'll be 40.
7 I wait / I'll wait for you until you're ready, but don't take too long.
8 Josh is five years old. He wants to be a TV presenter when he grows up / he'll grow up.
9 We could meet for coffee tomorrow morning if you're / you will be free.
10 If the weather is / will be nice tomorrow, we're going to the beach.
11 Vicky is / will be very disappointed if she doesn't get into college.
12 You'll feel better after you've had / you'll have something to eat.

24.2 Complete the sentences using the verbs in parentheses. Use **will/won't** or the present (**see/plays/are**, etc.).

1 When *you are* (you/be) here again, you have to come and see us.
2 I want to see Hannah before ..... (she/go) away next week.
3 Call me when ..... (you/know) what time you're going to get here.
4 There's no need to hurry. ..... (I/wait) for you until ..... (you/be) ready.
5 I'm going out for about an hour. ..... (you/still/be) here when ..... (I/get) back?
6 I think everything will be fine, but if ..... (there/be) any problems, ... (I/let) you know, OK?
7 Katherine looks completely different now. ..... (you/not/recognize) her when ..... (you/see) her again.
8 I'm going to be away for a few days. If ..... (you/need) to contact me while ..... (I/be) away, you can call me.

24.3 Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 You and a friend want to go out, but it's raining hard. You don't want to get wet.
You say: Let's wait until *it stops raining*.
2 You're visiting a friend. It's going to get dark soon, and you want to leave before that.
You say: I'd better go now before .....
3 You want to sell your car. Dan is interested in buying it, but he hasn't decided yet.
You ask: Let me know as soon as .....
4 Your friends are going to Hong Kong soon. You want to know where they're going to stay.
You ask: Where are you going to stay when .....?
5 The traffic is bad in your town, but they are going to build a new road.
You say: I think things will be better when they .....
6 Someone you know has been very rude to you. You want her to apologize.
You say (to someone else): I won't speak to her until .....

24.4 Put in **when** or **if**.

1 Don't worry *if* I'm late tonight.
2 Be careful. You'll hurt yourself ..... you fall.
3 I'm going shopping. ..... you want anything, I can get it for you.
4 I'm going away for a few days. I'll call you ..... I get back.
5 ..... I don't see you tomorrow, when will I see you again?
6 I'm watching a program on TV right now. ..... it finishes, I'm going to bed.
7 We can eat at home or, ... you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.
8 I hope Sarah can come to the party. It will be a shame ..... she can't come.

→ Additional Exercises 10–15 (pages 302–305), 33 (page 315)

Unit 25

can, could, and (be) able to

A

We use **can** to say that something is possible or allowed, or that somebody has the ability to do something. We use **can** + *infinitive* (**can do** / **can see**, etc.):

- We **can see** the lake from our hotel.
- "I don't have a pen." "You **can use** mine."
- **Can** you **speak** any foreign languages?
- I **can come** and see you tomorrow if you want.
- The word "dream" **can be** a noun or a verb.

The negative is **can't** (= **cannot**):

- I'm afraid I **can't come** to the party on Friday.

B

You can say that somebody **is able to** do something, but **can** is more common:

- We **are able to see** the lake from our hotel.

But **can** has only two forms: **can** (*present*) and **could** (*past*). So sometimes it is necessary to use (**be**) **able to**. Compare:

- I **can't** sleep.
- Tom **can** come tomorrow.
- Maria **can** speak French, Spanish and English.

- I **haven't been able to** sleep lately.
- Tom **might be able to** come tomorrow.
- Applicants for the job **must be able to** speak two foreign languages.

C

Sometimes **could** is the past of **can**. We use **could** especially with:

see **hear** **smell** **taste** **feel** **remember** **understand**

- We had a lovely room in the hotel. We **could see** the lake.
- As soon as I walked into the room, I **could smell** gas.
- I was sitting at the back of the theater and **couldn't hear** very well.

We also use **could** to say that somebody had the ability to do something or was allowed to do something:

- My grandfather **could speak** five languages.
- We were totally free. We **could do** what we wanted. (= we were allowed to do)

D

could and **was able to**

We use **could** for *general* ability and with **see**, **hear**, etc. :

- My grandfather **could speak** five languages.
- I **could see** them, but not very clearly.

But to say that somebody succeeded in doing something in a specific situation, we normally use **was/were able to** or **managed to** (*not* **could**):

- The fire spread quickly, but everybody **was able to escape**. (*not* could escape)
- I didn't know where John was, but I finally **managed to find** him. (*not* could find)

Compare:

- Jack was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He **could beat** anybody. (= he was good enough to beat anybody, he had the ability)

but Jack and Andy played tennis yesterday. Andy played well, but Jack **managed to beat** him. (= he succeeded in beating him this time)

The negative **couldn't** (**could not**) is possible in all situations:

- My grandfather **couldn't swim**.
- I looked for John everywhere, but I **couldn't find** him.
- Andy played well, but he **couldn't beat** Jack.

could (**do**) and **could have** (**done**) → Unit 26 **must** → Unit 27 **Can/Could you** ... ? → Unit 35

Exercises

25.1 Complete the sentences using **can** or **(be) able to**. If **can** is not possible, use **(be) able to**.

1 Gary has traveled a lot. He *can* speak five languages.
2 I haven't *been able to* sleep very well recently.
3 Nicole ..... drive, but she doesn't have a car.
4 I used to ..... stand on my head, but I can't do it anymore.
5 I can't understand Ryan. I've never ..... understand him.
6 I can't see you on Friday, but I ..... meet you on Saturday morning.
7 Ask Katherine about your problem. She might ..... help you.
8 You have to be careful in this part of the city. It ..... be dangerous.
9 Michael has lived in Italy for a long time, so he should ..... speak Italian.

25.2 Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in parentheses.

1 (something you used to be able to do)
I used to be able to sing well.
2 (something you used to be able to do)
I used .....
3 (something you would like to be able to do)
I'd .....
4 (something you have never been able to do)
I've .....

25.3 Complete the sentences with **can/can't/could/couldn't** + the following:

believe ~~**come**~~ **hear** **run** **sleep** **wait**

1 I'm afraid I *can't come* to your party next week.
2 When Dan was 16, he ..... 100 meters in 11 seconds.
3 "Are you in a hurry?" "No, I've got plenty of time. I ....."
4 I don't feel well this morning. I ..... last night.
5 Can you speak a little louder? I ..... you very well.
6 I was amazed when I heard the news. I ..... it.

25.4 Complete the answers to the questions with **was/were able to** ... .

1 A: Did everybody escape from the fire?
B: Yes. The fire spread quickly, but everybody *was able to escape* .....
2 A: Did you finish your work this afternoon?
B: Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I .....
3 A: Did you solve the problem?
B: Yes, we did. It wasn't easy, but we .....
4 A: Did the thief get away?
B: Yes. No one realized what was happening, and the thief .....

25.5 Complete the sentences using **could, couldn't** or **managed to**.

1 My grandfather traveled a lot. He *could* speak five languages.
2 I looked everywhere for the book, but I *couldn't* find it.
3 They didn't want to come with us at first, but we *managed to* persuade them.
4 Jessica hurt her foot and ..... walk very well.
5 There was a small fire in the kitchen, but fortunately I ..... put it out.
6 The walls were thin, and I ..... hear people talking in the next room.
7 I ran my first marathon recently. It was very hard, but I ..... finish.
8 My grandmother loved music. She ..... play the piano very well.
9 We wanted to go to the concert, but we ..... get tickets.
10 A girl fell into the river, but some people ..... pull her out. She's all right now.

Unit
26 could (do) and could have (done)

A

Sometimes **could** is the past of **can** (see Unit 25):

- Listen. I **can hear** something. *(now)*
- I listened. I **could hear** something. *(past)*

But **could** is not always past. We also use **could** for possible actions now or in the future, especially to make suggestions. For example:

- A: What should we do tonight?
  B: We **could go** to the movies.
- A: When you go to New York next month, you **could stay** with Sarah.
  B: Yes, I suppose I **could**.



Can is also possible in these sentences ("We can go to the movies.", etc.). **Could** is less sure than **can**.

B

We also use **could** (*not* **can**) for actions that are not realistic. For example:

- I'm so tired, I **could sleep** for a week. (*not* I can sleep for a week)

Compare **can** and **could**:

- I **can stay** with Sarah when I go to New York. (realistic)
- Maybe I **could stay** with Sarah when I go to New York. (possible, but less sure)
- This is a wonderful place. I **could stay** here for ever. (unrealistic)

C

We also use **could** (*not* **can**) to say that something is possible now or in the future:

- The story **could be** true, but I don't think it is. (*not* can be true)
- I don't know what time Olivia is coming. She **could get** here at any time.

Compare **can** and **could**:

- The weather **can** change very quickly in the mountains. (in general)
- The weather is nice now, but it **could** change later. (the weather now, not in general)

D

We use **could have** (done) to talk about the past. Compare:

- I'm so tired I **could sleep** for a week. *(now)*
  I was so tired I **could have slept** for a week. *(past)*
- The situation is bad, but it **could be** worse. *(now)*
  The situation was bad, but it **could have been** worse. *(past)*

Something **could have** happened = it was possible, but did *not* happen:

- Why did you stay at a hotel? You **could have stayed** with me.
- David was lucky. He **could have hurt** himself when he fell, but he's all right.

E

I couldn't do something = it would not be possible:

- I **couldn't live** in a big city. I'd hate it. (= it wouldn't be possible for me)
- Everything is fine right now. Things **couldn't be** better.

For the past we use **couldn't have** ... (= would not have been possible):

- We had a really good vacation. It **couldn't have been** better.

Note that "I **couldn't do** something" has two meanings:

(1) I **couldn't** = it would not be possible now, I would not be able:

- I **couldn't run** ten kilometers now. I'm not fit enough. (= I would not be able)

(2) I **couldn't** = I was not able (past)

- I **couldn't run** yesterday because I'd hurt my leg. (= I was not able)

can and **could** ➜ Unit 25 **could** and **might** ➜ Unit 28C **Could I/you** ... ? ➜ Unit 35
could with **if** ➜ Units 36C, 37E, 38D Modal Verbs (**can/will**, etc.) ➜ Appendix 4

Exercises

26.1 Which goes with which?

1	What should we eat tonight?	a We could go away somewhere.	1 c
2	I need to phone Vicky sometime.	b You could give her a book.	2
3	What should I get Anna for her birthday?	~~c We could have fish.~~	3
4	Where should we put this picture?	d You could wear your brown suit.	4
5	What would you like to do on the weekend?	e You could do it now.	5
6	I don't know what to wear to the wedding.	f We could hang it in the kitchen.	6

26.2 Put in **can** or **could**.

1 This is a wonderful place. I *could* stay here forever.
2 I'm so angry with him. I ..... kill him!
3 I ..... hear a strange noise. What is it?
4 It's so nice here. I ..... sit here all day, but unfortunately I have to go.
5 I ..... understand your point of view, but I don't agree with you.
6 Peter is an excellent musician. He plays the flute, and he ..... also play the piano.
7 The company Amy works for isn't doing well. She ..... lose her job.
8 Some people are unlucky. Life ..... be very unfair.
9 I've been really stupid. I ..... kick myself.
10 Be careful climbing that tree. You ..... fall.

26.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

gone	**could be**	**could come**	~~**could sleep**~~
have moved	**could have**	**could have gone**	**could have been**

1 A: Are you tired?
B: Yes, very tired. I feel as if I *could sleep* for a week.
2 A: I spent a very boring evening at home yesterday.
B: Why did you stay at home? You ..... out with us.
3 A: Should I open this letter?
B: Yes. It ..... important.
4 A: How was your exam? Was it difficult?
B: It wasn't so bad. It ..... worse.
5 A: I got really wet walking home in the rain.
B: Why did you walk? You ..... taken a taxi.
6 A: Where should we meet tomorrow?
B: Well, I ..... to your office if you like.
7 A: Does Tom still live in the same place?
B: I'm not sure. He could ..... .
8 A: Did you go to college?
B: No. I could have ....., but I didn't want to.

26.4 Complete the sentences. Use **couldn't** or **couldn't have** + these verbs (in the correct form):

afford	**be**	~~**be**~~	**do**	~~**live**~~	**stand**	**study**	**wear**

1 I *couldn't live* in a big city. I'd hate it.
2 We had a really good vacation. It *couldn't have been* better.
3 I ..... that hat. People would laugh at me.
4 You helped me a lot. I ..... it without you.
5 The staff at the hotel were really good. They ..... more helpful.
6 There's no way we could buy a car now. We ..... it.
7 Jack prepared for the exam as well as he could. He ..... harder.
8 I wouldn't like to live near the highway. I ..... the noise of the traffic.

→ Additional Exercises 16–18 (pages 305–307)

Unit 27

must and can't

A

Study this example:



We use **must** to say that we feel sure something is true:

- You've been traveling all day. You **must be** tired.
  (traveling is tiring, and you've been traveling all day, so you **must** be tired)
- "Joe is a hard worker." "Joe? You **must be kidding**. He doesn't do anything."
- Louise **must get** very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.

We use **must not** to say that we feel sure something is not true:

- Their car isn't outside their house. They **must not be** home. (= They **must be** out)
- Tony said he would be here by 9:30. It's 10:00 now, and he's never late. He **must not be coming**.
- They haven't lived here for very long. They **must not know** many people.

The structure is:

I/you/he, etc.	**must (not)**	**be** (tired / hungry / at work, etc.) **be -ing** (doing / going / joking, etc.) **get / know / have,** etc.

B

must (not) have done

For the past we use **must (not) have (done)**:

- I lost one of my gloves. I **must have dropped** it somewhere.
  (that's the only explanation I can think of)
- There's nobody home. They **must have gone** out.
- "We used to live very close to the highway." "You did? It **must have been** noisy."
- Sarah hasn't contacted me. She **must not have gotten** my message.
- Justin walked into a wall. He **must not have been looking** where he was going.

The structure is:

I/you/he, etc.	**must (not)**	**have**	**been** (tired / hungry / noisy, etc.) **been (doing / going / joking,** etc.) **gone / dropped / seen**, etc.

C

can't and **must not**

We use **can't** to say that we find it impossible to believe something:

- How can you say that? You **can't be** serious. (= I find it impossible to believe that you are serious)

Compare **can't** and **must not**:

- A: Joe wants something to eat.
  B: But he just had lunch. He **can't be** hungry already.
  (= I find it impossible to believe that he is hungry)
- A: I offered Olivia something to eat, but she doesn't want anything.
  B: She **must not be** hungry.
  (= that is the only explanation—if she were hungry, she would eat something)

can't ("I can't swim," etc.) ➜ Unit 25A, B **must** ("I must go," etc.) ➜ Unit 30
Modal Verbs (**can**/**will**, etc.) ➜ Appendix 4 British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

27.1 Put in **must** or **must not**.

1 You've been traveling all day. You must be tired.
2 That restaurant ..... be very good. It's always full of people.
3 That restaurant ..... be very good. It's always empty.
4 I'm sure Kate gave me her address. I ..... have it somewhere.
5 I often see that man on this street. He ..... live nearby.
6 It rained every day during their vacation. It ..... have been very pleasant for them.
7 You got here very quickly. You ..... have driven very fast.
8 Bill and Sue always stay at five-star hotels. They ..... have a problem with money.

27.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (one or two words).

1 I've lost one of my gloves. I must have dropped it somewhere.
2 Their house is very near the motorway. It must be very noisy.
3 You've lived in this village a long time. You must ..... everybody who lives here.
4 I don't seem to have my wallet with me. I must ..... it at home.
5 "How old is Sam?" "He's older than me. He must ..... at least 40."
6 I didn't hear my phone. I must ..... asleep.
7 "You're taking a vacation soon. You must ..... forward to it." "Yes, I am."
8 I'm sure you know this song. You must ..... it before.
9 The road is closed, so we have to go another way. There must ..... an accident.
10 "Do you have a car?" "You must ..... ! How could I afford to have a car?"

27.3 Use the words in parentheses to write sentences with **must have** and **must not have**.

1 We went to our friends' house and rang the doorbell, but nobody answered. (they / go out)
They must have gone out.
2 Sarah hasn't contacted me. (she / get / my message)
She must not have gotten my message.
3 The jacket you bought is very good quality. (it / be / very expensive)
.....
4 I haven't seen our neighbors for the last few days. (they / go away)
.....
5 Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. (it / be / easy for her)
.....
6 There was a man standing outside the coffee shop. He was there a long time. (he / wait / for somebody)
.....
7 Rachel did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said)
.....
8 When I got back to my car, it was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)
.....
9 The light was red, but the car didn't stop. (the driver / see / the red light)
.....
10 Paul has had these shoes for years, but they still look new. (he / wear / them much)
.....

27.4 Complete each sentence with **must not** or **can't**.

1 How can you say such a thing? You can't be serious!
2 Their car isn't outside their house. They ..... be home.
3 I just bought that box of chocolates yesterday. It ..... be empty already.
4 The Smiths always go on vacation this time of year, but they are still home.
They ..... be taking a vacation this year.
5 You just started filling out your tax forms 10 minutes ago.
You ..... be finished with them already!
6 Eric is a good friend of Anna's, but he hasn't visited her in the hospital.
He ..... know she's in the hospital.

→ Additional Exercises 16–18 (pages 305–307)

Unit 28

may and might 1

A

Study this example situation:

You are looking for Ben. Nobody is sure where he is, but you get some suggestions.



We use **may** or **might** to say that something is possible. Usually you can use **may** or **might**:

- It **may** be true. *or* It **might** be true. (= perhaps it is true)
- She **might** know. *or* She **may** know.

The negative forms are **may not** and **might not**:

- It **may not** be true. (= perhaps it isn't true)
- She **might not** know. (= perhaps she doesn't know)

I/you/he (etc.)	**may** **might**	(**not**)	**be** (true / in his office, etc.) **be -ing** (doing / working / having, etc.) **know** / **work** / **want**, etc.

Note the difference between **may be** (2 words) and **maybe** (1 word):

- It **may be** true. (**may** + verb)
- "Is it true?" "**Maybe**. I'm not sure." (**maybe** = it's possible, perhaps)

B

For the past we use **may have** ... or **might have** ... :

- A: I wonder why Kate didn't answer her phone.
  B: She **may have been** asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep)
- A: I can't find my phone anywhere.
  B: You **might have left** it at work. (= perhaps you left it at work)
- A: Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?
  B: She **might not have known** about it. (= perhaps she didn't know)
- A: I wonder why David was in such a bad mood yesterday.
  B: He **may not have been feeling** well. (= perhaps he wasn't feeling well)

I/you/he (etc.)	**may** **might**	(**not**) **have**	**been** (asleep / at home, etc.) **been -ing** (doing / working / feeling, etc.) **known** / **had** / **wanted** / **left**, etc.

C

could is similar to **may** and **might**:

- It's a strange story, but it **could be** true. (= it is possible that it's true)
- You **could have left** your phone at work. (= it's possible that you left it there)

But **couldn't** (*negative*) is different from **may not** and **might not**. Compare:

- Sarah **couldn't have received** my message. Otherwise, she would have replied. (= it is not possible that she got my message)
- Why hasn't Sarah replied to my message? I suppose she **might not have received** it. (= it's possible that she didn't receive it—perhaps she did, perhaps she didn't)

could ➜ Unit 26 **may/might** 2 ➜ Unit 29 **may I** ... ? ➜ Unit 35
might with **if** ➜ Units 29B, 36C, 38D Modal Verbs (**can/will**, etc.) ➜ Appendix 4

Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 A: Do you know where Helen is?
B: I'm not sure. She might be in her room.
2 A: Is there a bookstore near here?
B: I'm not sure, but ask Anna. She _____.
3 A: Where are those people from?
B: I don't know. They _____.
4 A: I hope you can help me.
B: I'll try, but it _____.
5 A: Whose phone is this?
B: It's not mine. It _____.
6 A: Why doesn't Kevin answer his phone?
B: He _____.
7 A: Do you know anyone who has a key to this cupboard?
B: Rachel _____, but I'm not sure.
8 A: Tom is in a strange mood today.
B: Yes, he is. He _____.

may be Tom's
may not be feeling well
may not be possible
~~**might be in her room**~~
might be Brazilian
might be driving
might have one
might know

28.2 Complete each sentence using the verb in parentheses.

1 A: Where's Ben?
B: I'm not sure. He might be having lunch.
2 A: Who was the guy we saw with Anna yesterday?
B: I'm not sure. It may _____ her brother. (be)
3 A: Is Jen here?
B: I don't see her. She may not _____ yet. (arrive)
4 A: Aaron said he would meet us in the coffee shop, but he isn't here.
B: He might _____ outside. I'll go and look. (wait)
5 A: How did John know that I'd lost my job?
B: I don't know. I suppose Sam may _____ him. (tell)
6 A: Do you know where Nate is? Is he still in the office?
B: He was here earlier, but he might _____ home. (go)
7 A: Where's Emma? What's she doing?
B: I'm not sure. She might _____ TV. (watch)
8 A: Does Eric have any brothers or sisters?
B: I'm not sure. I think he may _____ a younger sister. (have)
9 A: I can't find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
B: You may _____ it in the restaurant last night. (leave)
10 A: I rang Dan's doorbell, but he didn't answer. I'm sure he was there.
B: He might not _____ the doorbell. (hear)
11 A: Hannah is supposed to meet us here, and she's already 20 minutes late.
B: She may _____. She's always forgetting things. (forget)

28.3 Complete the sentences using **might not have ...** or **couldn't have ...**.

1 A: I was surprised Amy wasn't at the meeting. It's possible she didn't know about it.
B: Maybe. She might not have known about it.
2 A: I wonder why Tom didn't come to the party. It's possible he didn't want to come.
B: It's possible. He _____ to come.
3 A: I wonder how the fire started. Was it an accident?
B: No, the police say it _____ an accident. It was deliberate.
4 A: Mike says he needs to see you. He tried to find you yesterday.
B: Well, he _____ very hard. I was in my office all day.
5 A: The man you spoke to—are you sure he was American?
B: No, I'm not sure. He _____.

→ Additional Exercises 16–18 (pages 305–307)

Unit 29

may and might 2

A

We use **may** and **might** to talk about possible actions or events in the future:

- I haven't decided where to go on vacation. I **may go** to Hawaii. (= perhaps I will go there)
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might rain** later. (= perhaps it will rain)
- The bus isn't always on time. We **might have** to wait a few minutes. (= perhaps we will have to wait)

The negative forms are **may not** and **might not**:

- Amy **may not go** out tonight. She isn't feeling well. (= perhaps she will not go out)
- There **might not be** enough time to discuss everything at the meeting. (= perhaps there will not be enough time)

Compare:

- **I'm going** to buy a car. (for sure)
- I **may buy** a car. *or* I **might buy** a car. (possible)

B

Usually you can use **may** or **might**. So you can say:

- I **may go** to Hawaii. *or* I **might go** to Hawaii.
- Julia **might be** able to help you. *or* Julia **may be** able to help you.

But we use **might** (*not* **may**) when the situation is *not real*:

- If they paid me better, I **might** work harder. (*not* I may work)

This situation (**If they paid** me better) is not real. They do *not* pay me well, so I'm not going to work harder.

C

Compare **may/might be -ing** and **will be -ing**:

- Don't phone at 8:30. I'**ll be watching** football on TV.
- Don't phone at 8:30. I **might be watching** football on TV. (= perhaps I'll be watching it)

We also use **may/might be -ing** for possible plans. Compare:

- **I'm going** to Hawaii soon. (for sure)
- I **might be going** (*or* I **may be going**) to Hawaii soon. (possible)

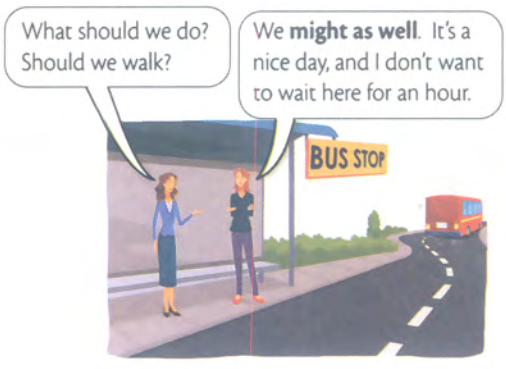
D

might as well

Helen and Clare have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.

We **might as well** do something = we should do it because there is no better alternative. There is no reason not to do it.

You can also use **may as well**.



- A: What time are you going out?
  B: Well, I'm ready, so I **might as well go** now. *or* ... I **may as well go** now.
- Buses are so expensive these days you **might as well take** a taxi. (= taxis are as good, no more expensive than buses)

will be -ing ➜ Unit 23 **may/might** 1 ➜ Unit 28 **May I** ... ? ➜ Unit 35
might with **if** ➜ Units 36C, 38D

Exercises

29.1 Which alternative makes sense?

1 A: Where are you going for your vacation?
B: I haven't decided yet. I might go / ~~I'm going~~ to Hawaii. (I might go *makes sense*)
2 A: Have you decided what kind of car you want to buy?
B: Yes, I might get / I'm going to get a sports car.
3 A: When is Tom coming to see us?
B: He hasn't said yet. He might come / He's coming on Sunday.
4 A: Where are you going to put that picture?
B: I don't know yet. I might hang / I'm going to hang it in the bedroom.
5 A: What's Natalie going to do when she leaves school? Does she know yet?
B: Yes, she's decided. She might go / She's going to college.
6 A: Do you have plans for the weekend?
B: Nothing definite. I might go away / I'm going away.

29.2 Complete the sentences using **might** + a verb from the box:

hear **need** ~~**rain**~~ **slip** **spill** **wake**

1 Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It might rain later.
2 Don't make too much noise. You ..... the baby.
3 Be careful with your coffee. You ..... it.
4 Don't forget your phone. You ..... it.
5 It's better if we don't talk so loud. Somebody ..... us.
6 Be careful. This sidewalk is icy. You ..... .

29.3 Complete the sentences. Use **might be able to** or **might have to** + one of these verbs:

fix ~~**help**~~ **leave** **pay** **see** **wait**

1 Tell me about your problem. I might be able to help ..... you.
2 I can come to the meeting, but I ..... before the end.
3 I'm not free this evening, but I ..... you tomorrow evening.
4 I'm not sure whether this parking lot is free or not. We ..... .
5 There's a long line. We ..... a long time.
6 "I have a problem with my bike." "Let me take a look. I ..... it."

29.4 Write sentences with **might not**.

1 Lisa's not feeling very well. I'm not sure that she will go to the party.
Lisa might not go to the party.
2 I haven't seen him for a long time. I don't know if I will recognize him or not.
I ..... him.
3 We want to go to the game, but I don't know whether we'll be able to get tickets.
We ..... for the game.
4 I said I'd do the shopping, but it's possible I won't have time.
..... to do the shopping.
5 I've been invited to the wedding, but I'm not sure that I'll be able to go.
I ..... .

29.5 Read the situations and write sentences with **might as well**.

1 You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.
You say: We'll have to wait an hour for the next bus. We might as well walk.
2 Your computer doesn't work anymore. It will cost a lot to repair.
You say: It's not worth repairing. I ..... a new one.
3 You've painted the kitchen. You still have a lot of paint, so why not paint the bathroom too?
You say: I ..... too. There's plenty of paint left.
4 You and a friend are at home. You're bored. There's a movie on TV starting in a few minutes.
You say: We ..... it. There's nothing else to do.

→ Additional Exercises 16–18 (pages 305–307)

Unit 30

have to and must

A

I **have to** do something = it is necessary to do it, I am obligated to do it:



- You can't turn right here. You **have to turn** left.
- I **have to wear** glasses for reading.
- Robert can't come out with us this evening. He **has to work** late.
- Last week Emily broke her arm and **had to go** to the hospital.
- I haven't **had to go** to the doctor for ages.

We use **do/does/did** in questions and negative sentences (for the simple present and past):

- What **do** I **have to do** to get a new driver's license? (*not* What have I to do?)
- Karen **doesn't have to work** Saturdays. (*not* Karen hasn't to)
- "**Did** you **have to wait** a long time for a bus?" "No, only ten minutes."

You can say: **I'll have to** ... / **I won't have to** ...
I'm going to have to ...
I might/may have to ...

- They can't repair my computer, so I'**ll have to buy** a new one. *or* I'**m going to have to buy** a new one.
- We **might have to change** our plans. *or* We **may have to change** ... (= it's possible that we will have to change them)

B

Must is sometimes similar to **have to**. You can say:

- The economic situation is bad. The government **must do** something about it. *or* The government **has to do** ...
- We **must reduce** pollution to help future generations. *or* We **have to reduce** ...
- You **must stop** working all the time. Get out and have some fun! *or* You **have to stop** ...

But **have to** is more common than **must**.

We use **must** especially in written rules and instructions:

- Applications for the job **must be received** by May 18.
- Seat belts **must be worn**.



We use **had to** (*not* must) to talk about the past:

- I went to the meeting yesterday, but I **had to** leave early. (*not* I must)

C

Must not and **don't have to** are completely different:

You **must not** do something = *don't* do it:

- You **must keep** this a secret. You **must not tell** anyone. (= don't tell anyone)
- The exam is really important. I **must not fail** it. (= I must pass it)

You **don't have to** do something = you don't need to do it (but you can if you want):

- You **don't have to come** with me. I can go alone.
- I **don't have to be** at the meeting, but I'm going anyway.

D

You can use **have got to** instead of **have to**. You can say:

- I'**ve got to** work tomorrow. *or* I **have to** work tomorrow.
- He'**s got to visit** his aunt tonight. *or* He **has to visit** his aunt tonight.

must ("You must be tired") ➜ Unit 27

Exercises

30.1 Complete the sentences using have/has/had to ... . Use the verbs in parentheses.

1 Robert can't come out with us this evening. He has to work . (he / work)
2 "The bus was late this morning." "How long did you have to wait ?" (you / wait)
3 I don't have much time. ..... in ten minutes. (I / go)
4 "I'm afraid I can't stay long." "What time .....?" (you / go)
5 Joe starts work at 5:00 a.m. every day, which means ..... at four. (he / get up)
6 We almost missed the bus this morning. ..... to catch it. (we / run)
7 Is Liz usually free on Saturdays, or .....? (she / work)
8 There was nobody to help me. ..... everything by myself. (I / do)
9 How old ..... to get a driver's license? (you / be)
10 There was a lot of noise from the street. ..... the window. (we / close)
11 Was the exhibition free, or ..... to go in? (you / pay)

30.2 Complete the sentences using have/has/had to + the verbs in the list. Some sentences are negative (I don't have to ..., etc.):

ask decide drive ~~get up~~ go make make pay ~~show~~ stand

1 I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
2 Steve didn't know how to change the settings on his phone. I had to show him.
3 Excuse me a moment—I ..... a phone call. I won't be long.
4 You can let me know later what you want to do. You ..... now.
5 I couldn't find the street I wanted. I ..... somebody for directions.
6 This parking lot is free. You ..... .
7 A man was slightly injured in the accident, but he ..... to the hospital.
8 Anna has a senior position in the company. She ..... important decisions.
9 The train was very full, and there were no seats available. We ..... all the way.
10 When Patrick starts his new job next month, he ..... 50 miles to work every day.

30.3 Complete the sentences with might have to, will have to ('ll have to), or won't have to.

1 They can't fix my computer, so I 'll have to buy a new one.
2 I might have to leave the party early. My son is going to call me if he needs a ride home.
3 We ..... take the train downtown instead of driving. It depends on the traffic.
4 Emily's car broke down this afternoon. She ..... take the bus tomorrow.
5 Unfortunately, my father ..... stay in the hospital another week. The doctor is going to decide tomorrow.
6 If it snows all night, we ..... go to class tomorrow. It will be canceled.

30.4 Complete the sentences with must not, don't have to, or doesn't have to.

1 I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You must not tell anyone.
2 Matt doesn't have to wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
3 There's an elevator in the building, so we ..... climb the stairs.
4 Whatever you do, you ..... touch that switch. It's very dangerous.
5 I'm not very busy. I have a few things to do, but I ..... do them now.
6 Liz likes weekends because she ..... get up early.
7 You ..... be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.
8 You ..... forget what I told you. It's very important.
9 We have plenty of time before our flight. We ..... check in yet.

→ Additional Exercise 16 (pages 305–306)

Unit 31

should

A

You **should do** something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do. You can use **should** to give advice or to give an opinion:

- You look tired. You **should go** to bed.
- The government **should do** more to improve schools.
- A: **Should we invite** Stephanie to the party?
  B: Yes, I think **we should**.
- The man on the motorcycle **should be wearing** a helmet.



You **shouldn't** do something = it isn't a good thing to do:

- You **shouldn't believe** everything you read in newspapers.

We often use **should** with **I think** / **I don't think** / **Do you think** ... ?:

- **I think** the government **should do** more to improve schools.
- **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
- "**Do you think** I **should apply** for this job?" "Yes, **I think** you **should**."

Should is not as strong as **must** or **have to**:

- You **should** apologize. (= it would be a good thing to do)
- You **must** apologize. / You **have to** apologize. (= you have no alternative)

B

We use **should I** ...**?** / **should we** ...**?** to ask if it's OK to do something or to ask for a suggestion:

- Are you cold? **Should I** close the window? (= do you want me to close it)
- I don't have any money. What **should I** do? (= what do you suggest?)
- A: **Should we** go?
  B: Just a minute. I'm not ready yet.
- A: Where **should we** have lunch?
  B: Let's go to Marino's.

C

We use **should** when something is not right or what we expect:

- Where's Hannah? She **should be** here by now.
  (= she isn't here yet, and this is not normal)
- The price on this packet is wrong. It **should be** $2.50, not $3.50.

We also use **should** to say that we expect something to happen:

- Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she **should pass**. (= I expect her to pass)
- There are plenty of hotels in the town. It **shouldn't be** hard to find a place to stay.
  (= I don't expect it to be hard)

D

You **should have done** something = you didn't do it, but it would have been a good thing to do:

- You missed a great party last night. You **should have come**. Why didn't you?
  (= you didn't come, but it would have been good to come)
- I wonder why they're so late. They **should have been** here long ago.

You **shouldn't have done** something = you did it, but it was the wrong thing to do:

- I'm feeling sick. I **shouldn't have eaten** so much. (= I ate too much)
- She **shouldn't have been listening** to our conversation. It was private.
  (= she was listening)

Compare **should** (do) and **should have** (done):

- You look tired. You **should go** to bed now.
- You went to bed very late last night. You **should have gone** to bed earlier.

should and **had better** → Unit 33B Modal Verbs (**can**/**could**/**will**/**would**, etc.) → Appendix 4

Exercises

31.1 For each situation, write a sentence with **should** or **shouldn't** + one of the following:

~~go away for a few days~~	stay up so late	look for another job
put some pictures on the walls	take a picture	worry so much

1 Anna needs a change. She should go away for a few days.
2 Your salary is very low. You .....
3 Jack always finds it hard to get up. He .....
4 What a beautiful view! You .....
5 Laura is always anxious. She .....
6 Dan's room isn't very nice. .....

31.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

should solve	should be working OK	shouldn't cost more	shouldn't take long
should receive	~~should pass the exam~~	should be much warmer	should be here soon

1 Hannah has been studying hard, so she should pass the exam .
2 Joe hasn't arrived yet, but he ..... .
3 The TV has been repaired. It ..... now.
4 It ..... to get to the hotel. About 20 minutes.
5 I sent the documents to you today, so you ..... them tomorrow.
6 The weather is unusually cold. It ..... at this time of year.
7 The best way to get to the airport is by taxi. It ..... than $25.
8 If you have a problem with the computer, try restarting it. That ..... the problem.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use **should ...** or **should have ...** + the verb in parentheses.

1 You look tired. You should go to bed. (go)
2 You missed a great party last night. You should have come . (come)
3 I'm in a difficult position. What do you think I ..... now? (do)
4 I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I ..... what you said. (do)
5 We lost the game, but we were the better team. We ..... . (win)
6 We don't see you enough. You ..... and see us more often. (come)
7 We went the wrong way and got lost. We ..... right, not left. (turn)
8 My exam results weren't good. I ..... better. (do)

31.4 Read the situations and write sentences with **should / should have / shouldn't / shouldn't have.**

1 I'm feeling sick. I ate too much.
I shouldn't have eaten so much
2 When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn't made a reservation.
We .....
3 Lauren told me her address, but I didn't write it down. Now I can't remember the house number.
I .....
4 The store is usually open every day from 8:30. It is 9:00 now, but the store isn't open yet.
.....
5 I was looking at my phone. I wasn't looking where I was going. I walked into a wall.
.....
6 Kate is driving. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50.
She .....
7 I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I went to work. That was a mistake. Now I feel worse.
.....
8 Tomorrow there is a football game between Team A and Team B. Team A is much better.
.....
9 I was driving. The car in front of me stopped suddenly, and I drove into it. It wasn't my fault.
The driver in front of me .....

→ Additional Exercises 16–19 (pages 305–307)

Unit 32

Subjunctive (I suggest you do)

A

Study this example:



Liz said to Mary, "Why don't you buy some nice clothes?"

Liz suggested (that) Mary **buy** some nice clothes.
(*with or without* **that**)

In this example, **buy** is the *subjunctive*. The subjunctive is always the same as the *base form* (I **buy**, he **buy**, she **buy**, etc.):

I/we/you/they	**do**
he/she/it	**buy**
	be
	have, etc.

B

We use the subjunctive after these verbs:

demand **insist** **propose** **recommend** **suggest**

- I **insisted** he **have** dinner with us.
- The doctor **recommended** that I **rest** for a few days.
- John **demanded** that Hannah **apologize** to him.
- What **do** you **suggest** I **do**?

We also say **It's essential/imperative/important/necessary/vital** (that) something **happen**:

- **It's essential** that everyone **be** here on time.
- **It's imperative** that the government **do** something about health care.

C

The negative is **not** + *base form* (I **not be**, you **not leave**, she **not go**, etc.):

- The doctor strongly **recommended** that I **not go** to work for two days.
- It's very **important** that you **not miss** this appointment with your eye doctor.

You can use the subjunctive for the present, past, or future:

- I **insist** you **come** with us.
- They **insisted** I **go** with them.

Note the subjunctive **be** (often passive):

- I **insisted** that something **be done** about the problem.
- **It's essential** that this medicine not **be taken** on an empty stomach.
- The airline **recommended** we **be** at the airport two hours before our flight.

D

Other structures are possible after **insist** and **suggest**:

- They **insisted on paying** for dinner. (see Unit 60A)
- It's a beautiful evening, so I **suggest going** for a walk. (see Unit 51)

You cannot use **to** + *base form* after **suggest** or **insist**:

- Liz **suggested that** Mary **buy** some new clothes.
  (*not* suggested her to buy)
- He **insists on going** with us.
  (*not* he insists to go)

Verb + **-ing** ➜ Unit 51 Verb + Preposition + **-ing** ➜ Unit 60A British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

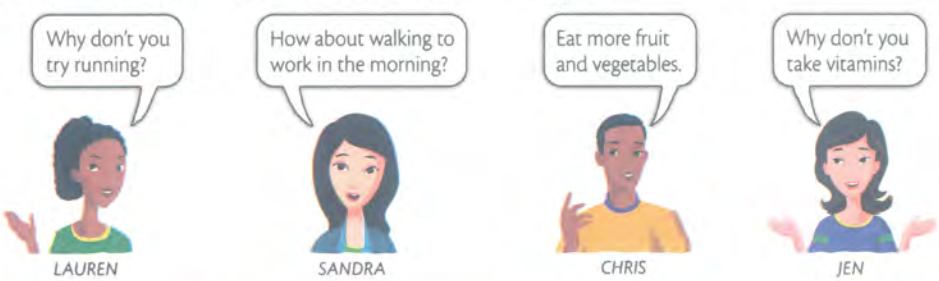
32.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 "Why don't you buy some new clothes?" said Liz to Mary.
Liz suggested that Mary buy some new clothes.
2 "I don't think you should go to work for two days," the doctor said to me.
The doctor recommended that I not go to work for two days.
3 "You really have to stay a little longer," she said to me.
She insisted that .....
4 "Why don't you visit the museum after lunch?" I said to her.
I suggested that .....
5 "I think it would be a good idea to see a specialist," the doctor said to me.
The doctor recommended that .....
6 "I think it would be a good idea for you not to lift anything heavy," the specialist said to me.
The specialist recommended that .....
7 "You have to pay the rent by Friday at the latest," the landlord said to us.
The landlord demanded that .....
8 "Why don't you go away for a few days?" Josh said to me.
Josh suggested that .....
9 "I don't think you should give your children snacks right before dinner," the doctor told me.
The doctor suggested that .....
10 "Let's have dinner early," Sarah said to us.
Sarah proposed that .....

32.2 Complete the sentences with appropriate verbs.

1 It's imperative that the government do something about health care.
2 I insisted that something be done about the problem.
3 Our friends recommended that we ..... our vacation in the mountains.
4 Since Dave hurt Megan's feelings, I strongly recommended that he ..... to her.
5 The workers at the factory are demanding that their wages ..... raised.
6 Rachel wanted to walk home alone, but we insisted that she ..... for us.
7 The city council has proposed that a new convention center ..... built.
8 What do you suggest I ..... to the party? Something casual?
9 It is essential that every child ..... the opportunity to get a good education.
10 Nick forgot his wife's birthday last year, so it's really important he ..... it this year.
11 It is vital that every runner ..... water during the marathon.

32.3 Tom wants to get healthy. His friends have made some suggestions:



Write sentences telling what Tom's friends suggested.

1 Lauren suggested that he try running.
2 Sandra suggested that he .....
3 Chris suggested .....
4 Jen .....

Unit 33

I'd better ... It's time ...

A had better (I'd better / you'd better, etc.)

I'd better do something = it is advisable to do it. If I don't do it, there will be a problem or a danger:

- I have to meet Amy in ten minutes **I'd better go** now or I'll be late.
- "Should I take an umbrella?" "Yes, **you'd better**. It might rain."
- **We'd better stop** for gas soon. The tank is almost empty.

The negative is **I'd better not** (= I **had** better not):

- A: That jacket looks good on you. Are you going to buy it?
  B: **I'd better not**. It's very expensive.
- You don't look very well. **You'd better not go** out tonight.

Remember that:

I'd better = **I had** better, **you'd** better = you **had** better, etc.

- I'**d better** phone Chris, **hadn't** I?
- We **had better** go now.

Had is normally past, but we use **had better** for the present or future, *not* past.

- I'd better go **now** / **tomorrow**.

We say "I'd better **do**" (*not* to do).

- It might rain. We'd better **take** an umbrella. (*not* We'd better to take)

B had better and should

Had better is similar to **should** but not exactly the same.
We use **had better** only for a specific situation, not for things in general. You can use **should** in all types of situations to give an opinion or give advice:

- It's late. You'**d better go**. *or* You **should go**. (a specific situation)
- You're always at home. You **should go** out more often. (in general—*not* "had better go")

Also, with **had better**, there is always a danger or a problem if you don't follow the advice.
Should means only "it is a good thing to do." Compare:

- It's a great movie. You **should** go and see it. (but no problem if you don't)
- The movie starts at 8:30. You'**d better** go now, or you'll miss the beginning.

C it's time ...

You can say **It's time** (for somebody) **to** ... :

- It's time **to go** home. / It's time for us **to go** home.

But you can also say:

- It's late. It's time **we went** home.

When we use **it's time** + past ("it's time we **went**," etc.), the meaning is present, *not* past:

- **It's time** they **were** here. Why are they so late? (*not* It's time they are here)

It's time somebody **did** something = they should have already done it or started it.
We often use this structure to criticize or to complain:

- This situation can't continue. **It's time** you **did** something about it.
- He's very selfish. **It's time he realized** that he isn't the most important person in the world.

You can also say **It's about time** ... :

- Jack is a great talker, but **it's about time** he **did** something instead of just talking.

should → Unit 31

Exercises

33.1 Read the situations and write sentences with 'd better or 'd better not. Choose a verb from:

check disturb go make put ~~take~~

1 You're going out for a walk with a friend. It looks as if it might rain.
You say: We'd better take an umbrella.
2 You and Kate plan to go to a restaurant tonight. It will be busy.
You say to Kate: We ..... a reservation.
3 James has just cut himself. It's bleeding, and he'll need a bandage on it.
You say to him: You ..... on it.
4 Rebecca doesn't look well this morning—not well enough to go to work.
You say to her: ..... this morning.
5 You're going to the movies, but you're not sure what time the movie starts.
You say: ..... the movie starts.
6 You need to talk to your boss, but she's very busy right now.
You say to a colleague: ..... right now.

33.2 Is had better OK in these sentences? Change to should where necessary.

1 I have an appointment in ten minutes. I'd better go now, or I'll be late. OK
2 You'd better set your alarm. You have to get up early tomorrow. .....
3 I'm glad you came to see us. You'd better come more often. .....
4 She'll be sad if we don't invite her to the party, so we'd better invite her. .....
5 It's almost time to go. I'd better get ready. .....
6 I think everybody had better learn a foreign language. .....
7 We just missed the last bus. We'd better get a taxi. .....

33.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 It might rain. We'd better take an umbrella.
2 Ben needs to know what happened. Somebody ..... better tell him.
3 We'd better ..... park the car here. The road is too narrow.
4 You ..... brush your teeth at least twice a day.
5 What are we going to do? It's time ..... decide.
6 ..... better not be late. It's an important meeting.
7 It's time they ..... here. They promised they wouldn't be late.
8 The window is open. You'd ..... close it before you go out.
9 We'd better leave as soon as possible, ... we?
10 The government should ..... something about the problem.
11 It's time the government ..... something about the problem.
12 It's time something ..... done about the problem.

better do did had hadn't I'd not to ~~take~~ should was were

33.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It's time (somebody did something).

1 You're at a friend's house. You planned to go home at 11:00. It's already 11:00 now.
(I/go) It's time I went home.
2 You haven't taken a vacation for a very long time. You need one now.
(I/vacation) It's time .....
3 It's 10:00. It's after the children's bedtime. You think they should be in bed.
(children/bed) .....
4 You didn't realize it was so late. You need to start cooking dinner.
(start/cook) ..... dinner.
5 Kate is always complaining about everything. You think she complains too much.
(stop/complaining) ..... about everything.
6 The company you work for has been badly managed for a long time. You think some changes should be made.
(changes/make) ..... in the way the company is run.

→ Additional Exercise 16 (pages 305–306)

Unit 34

would

A

We use **would** (**'d**) **wouldn't** when we *imagine* a situation or action (= we think of something that is not real):



- It **would be** nice to buy a new car, but we can't afford it.
- **I'd love** to live by the ocean.
- A: Should I tell Chris what happened?
  B: No, I **wouldn't say** anything.
  (= I wouldn't say anything in your situation)

We use **would have** (**done**) when we imagine something that didn't happen in the past:

- They helped us a lot. I don't know what we**'d have done** without their help.
  (we**'d** have done = we **would** have done)
- It's a shame you didn't see the movie. You **would have liked** it.
- I didn't tell Sam what happened. He **wouldn't have been** pleased.

Compare **would** (**do**) and **would have** (**done**):

- I **would call** Nicole, but I don't have her number. *(now)*
  I **would have called** Nicole, but I didn't have her number. *(past)*
- I'm not going to invite them to the party. They **wouldn't come** anyway.
  I didn't invite them to the party. They **wouldn't have come** anyway.

We often use **would** in sentences with **if** (see Units 36–38):

- I **would call** Nicole **if** I had her number.
- I **would have called** Nicole **if** I'd had her number.

B

Compare **will** (**'ll**) and **would** (**'d**):

- **I'll stay** a little longer. I've got plenty of time.
  I'd stay a little longer, but I really have to go now. (so I can't stay longer)
- **I'll call** Nicole. I have her number.
  I'd call Nicole, but I don't have her number. (so I can't call her)

Sometimes **would**/**wouldn't** is the past of **will**/**won't**.
Compare:

	present		*past*
TOM:	**I'll call** you on Sunday.	→	Tom said he**'d** call me on Sunday.
AMY:	I promise I **won't be** late.	→	Amy promised that she **wouldn't be** late.
ANNA:	Oh no! The car **won't start**.	→	Anna was annoyed because her car **wouldn't start**.

Somebody **wouldn't do** something = he/she refused to do it:

- I tried to warn him, but he **wouldn't listen** to me. (= he refused to listen)
- The car **wouldn't start**. (= it "refused" to start)

C

You can also use **would** to talk about things that happened regularly in the past:

- When we were children, we lived by the ocean. In the summer, if the weather was nice, we **would** all get up early and go for a swim. (= we did this regularly)
- Whenever Tony was angry, he **would** walk out of the room.

With this meaning, **would** is similar to **used to** (see Unit 17):

- Whenever Tony was angry, he **used to walk** out of the room.

will → Units 20–21 **would** ... **if** → Units 36–38 **wish** ... **would** → Unit 39
would like → Units 35D, 56 **would prefer** / **would rather** → Unit 57 **Modal Verbs** → Appendix 4

Exercises

34.1 Write sentences about yourself. Imagine things you would like or wouldn't like.

1 (a place you'd love to live) I'd love to live by the ocean.
2 (a job you wouldn't like to do) .....
3 (something you would love to do) .....
4 (something that would be nice to have) .....
5 (a place you'd like to go) .....

34.2 Complete the sentences using would + the following verbs (in the correct form):

be **be** ~~**do**~~ **do** **enjoy** **enjoy** **have** **stop**

1 They helped us a lot. I don't know what we would have done without their help.
2 You should go and see the movie. I think you ..... it.
3 It's too bad you couldn't come to the party last night. You ..... it.
4 Should I apply for the job or not? What ..... you ..... in my position?
5 I was in a hurry when I saw you. Otherwise, I ..... to talk.
6 We took a taxi home last night but got stuck in the traffic. It ..... quicker to walk.
7 Why don't you go and see Olivia? She ..... very pleased to see you.
8 In an ideal world, everybody ..... enough to eat.

34.3 Each sentence on the right follows a sentence on the left. Which follows which?

1 I'd like to go to Australia one day.	a It wouldn't have been pleasant.	1 c
2 I wouldn't like to live on a busy road.	b It would have been fun.	2 .....
3 I'm sorry your trip was canceled.	c ~~It would be nice.~~	3 .....
4 I'm looking forward to going out tonight.	d It won't be much fun.	4 .....
5 I'm glad we didn't go out in the rain.	e It wouldn't be very pleasant.	5 .....
6 I'm not looking forward to the trip.	f It will be fun.	6 .....

34.4 Write sentences using promised + would/wouldn't.

1 I wonder why Emma is late. She promised she wouldn't be late.
2 I wonder why Eric hasn't called me. He promised .....
3 Why did you tell Amy what I said? You .....
4 I'm surprised they didn't wait for us. They .....

34.5 Complete the sentences. Use wouldn't + an appropriate verb.

1 I tried to warn him, but he wouldn't listen to me.
2 I asked Amanda what had happened, but she ..... me.
3 Brian was angry about what I'd said, and he ..... to me for two weeks.
4 Julia insisted on carrying all her luggage. She ..... me help her.

34.6 Complete the sentences using would (section C). Choose from these verbs:

forget **shake** **share** **smile** **stay** ~~**walk**~~

1 Whenever Tony was angry, he would walk out of the room.
2 We used to live next to railroad tracks. Every time a train went past, the house .....
3 Katherine was always very generous. She didn't have much, but she ..... what she had with everyone else.
4 You could never rely on Joe. It didn't matter how many times you reminded him to do something, he ..... always ..... .
5 When we were children, we used to go to the beach a lot. We ..... there all day playing in the sand and swimming in the ocean.
6 Allison was always friendly. Whenever I saw her, she ..... always ..... and say hello.

→ Additional Exercises 16–18 (pages 305–307)

Unit 35

Can/Could/Would you ... ?, etc. (Requests, Offers, Permission, and Invitations)

A Asking people to do things (requests)



We use **can** or **could** to ask people to do things:

- **Can you** wait a minute, please?

or

- **Could you** wait a minute, please?
- Helen, **can you** do me a favor?
- Excuse me, **could you** tell me how to get to the bus station?

You can say **Do you think you could** ... ?:

- **Do you think you could** take me to the airport?
  (*not usually* Do you think you can)

B Asking for things

To ask for something, we use **Can** (I) **have** ... ? / **Could** (I) **have** ... ? or **Can** (I) **get** ... ?:

- (*in a store*) **Can** I **have** these postcards, please? *or* **Can** I **get** these postcards, please?
- (*in a restaurant*) **Could** we **have** the menu, please? *or* **Can** we **have** the menu, please?

May I **have** ... ? is also possible:

- **May** I **have** these postcards, please?

C Asking to do things



We use **can I** or **could I** to ask to do something:

- (*on the phone*) Hello, **can I** speak to Steve, please?
- "**Could I** use your phone charger?" "Sure."
- **Do you think I could** borrow your bike?

May is also possible:

- **May** I **ask you a question**?

May is more formal than **can** or **could**.

You can also say: **Do you mind if I** ...?
Is it all right if I ...? / **Is it OK if I** ...?

- **Do you mind if I** use your phone charger?
- "**Is it all right if I** sit here?" "Yes, of course."

D Offering and inviting

You can use **Can I** ... ? to offer to do something:

- "**Can I** help you?" "No, that's OK. I can handle it, thanks."
- "**Can I** get you some coffee?" "That would be nice."

To offer or to invite, we use **Would you like** ... ? (*not* Do you like):

- "**Would you like** some coffee?" "No, thanks."
- "**Would you like** to eat with us tonight?" "That would be great."

I'd like ... (= I **would** like) is a polite way to say what you want:

- (*at a tourist information center*) **I'd like** some information about hotels, please.
- (*in a store*) **I'd like** to try on this jacket, please.

can and **could** ➜ Units 25–26 **mind -ing** ➜ Unit 51 **would like** ➜ Units 53A, 56B
Modal Verbs (**can/could/will/would**, etc.) ➜ Appendix 4

Exercises

35.1 Which goes with which?

1 Could you pass the sugar?	a It depends what you want me to do.	1 *e*
2 Would you like to go to the movies?	b No, that's fine.	2
3 Can I use your bathroom?	c Me too. Let's go for a walk.	3
4 Do you mind if I leave work early?	d Sure. It's the door on the left.	4
5 Can you do me a favor?	e ~~Yes, here you are.~~	5
6 Would you like something to eat?	f No, that's all right. I can handle it.	6
7 Can I give you a hand?	g Maybe. What's playing?	7
8 I'd like some fresh air.	h No, thanks. I'm not hungry.	8

35.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

I'd like	**Would you like to try**	**Do you mind**	**Can I tell**
~~Can I give~~	**Would you like to go**	**Would you like**	**I'd like to**

1 You're driving and you see a friend walking along the road. You stop and say:
Hi Joe. *Can I give* you a ride?

2 You're making a cold drink for your friend. Maybe he wants ice. You ask:
_____ ice in your drink?

3 You're ordering something to eat in a cafe. You say:
_____ a chicken salad, please.

4 You have an extra ticket for a concert. Maybe your friend will go. You ask:
_____ to a concert tomorrow night?

5 Your friend Liz has a big problem. She tells you about it. You say:
That sounds really hard. _____ you what I would do?

6 You need to see a dentist. You call for an appointment. You say:
Hello. _____ make an appointment, please.

7 You work in a shoe store. A customer asks you about some shoes. You ask:
_____ them on?

8 You go into a coffee shop and see some people you know. You ask:
_____ if I join you?

35.3 What would you say in these situations?

1 You're carrying a lot of things. You can't open the door yourself. There's a man near the door.
You say to him: *Could you open the door, please?*

2 You've finished your dinner in a restaurant, and now you want the check.
You ask the waiter: _____

3 You've filled in some forms in English. You want your friend to check them for you.
You ask your friend: _____

4 The woman in the next room is playing music. It's very loud. You want her to turn it down.
You say to her: _____

5 You're on a train. The window is open, and you're cold. You'd like to close it.
You ask the man next to you: _____

6 You're on a bus. You have a seat, but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.
You say to him: _____

7 You're a tourist. You want to go to the train station, but you don't know how to get there.
You ask at your hotel: _____

8 You are in a clothing store. You see some pants you like, and you want to try them on.
You say to the salesclerk: _____

9 You meet a very famous person. You want to get his/her autograph.
You ask: _____

Unit 36

if I do ... and if I did ...

A

Compare these examples:

(1) LISA: Should we take the bus or the train?
JESS: **If we take** the bus, it **will** be cheaper.

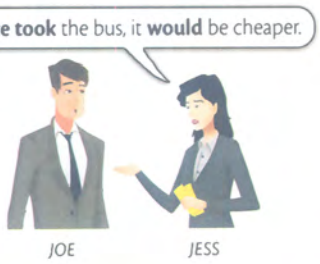
For Jess, it is possible that they will take the bus, so she says:
If we **take** the bus, it **will** be ...



(2) Lisa and Jess decide to take the train.
Later, Jess talks to Joe.

JOE: How are you going to get there?
JESS: We're going to take the train. **If we took** the bus, it **would** be cheaper, but the train is faster.

Now Jess knows they are *not* going to take the bus, so she says:
If we **took** the bus, it **would** be ...



B

When we talk about something that will not happen, or we don't expect it to happen, we use **if** + *past* (**if** we **went** / **if** there **was/were**, etc.).
But the meaning is *not* past:

- What would you do **if** you **won** a lot of money? (I don't really expect this to happen)
- I'd be surprised **if** they **didn't come** to the party. (I expect them to come)
- **If** there **were** (*or* **was**) an election tomorrow, who would you vote for? (there will not be an election tomorrow)



For **if** ... **was/were**, see Unit 37C.

Compare **if I find** and **if I found**:

- I think I left my watch at your house. **If you find** it, can you call me?

but

- **If you found** a wallet on the sidewalk, what would you do with it?

C

We do not normally use **would** in the **if** part of the sentence:

- I'd be very scared **if** somebody **pointed** a gun at me. (*not* if somebody would point)
- **If** we **took** the bus, it would be cheaper. (*not* If we would take)

In the other part of the sentence (not the **if** part) we use **would** (**'d**) / **wouldn't**:

- **I'd be** (= I **would** be) scared if somebody pointed a gun at me.
- I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I went to bed now, I **wouldn't sleep**.
- What **would** you **do** if you were bitten by a snake?

Could and **might** are also possible:

- If I won a lot of money, I **might** buy a house. (= it is possible that I would buy a house)
- If it stopped raining, we **could go** out. (= we would be able to go out)

will → Units 20–21 **if** and **when** → Unit 24C **would** → Unit 34 **if I knew** → Unit 37
if ... **was/were** → Unit 37C **if I had known** → Unit 38

Exercises

36.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

did	dropped	~~found~~	happened	lost	went	were

1 If you *found* a wallet on the sidewalk, what would you do with it?
2 Be careful with that vase. If you ..... it, it would break into small pieces.
3 This notebook is very important to me. I'd be very upset if I ..... it.
4 I don't expect to lose my job but if that ....., I'd have to find another one.
5 We're thinking about our vacation for next year. If we ..... to Italy, would you come with us?
6 I don't think he'll fail the exam. I'd be very surprised if he ..... .
7 If there ..... a fire in the building, would you know how to put the fire out?

36.2 What do you say in these situations?

1 Of course you don't expect to win the lottery. Which do you say?
  a If I win the lottery, I'll buy a big house. ☐
  b If I won the lottery, I'd buy a big house. ☑ (b *is correct*)
2 You're not going to sell your car because it's old and not worth much. Which do you say?
  a If I sell my car, I won't get much money for it. ☐
  b If I sold my car, I wouldn't get much money for it. ☐
3 You often see Sarah. A friend of yours wants to contact her. Which do you say?
  a If I see Sarah, I'll tell her to call you. ☐
  b If I saw Sarah, I'd tell her to call you. ☐
4 You don't expect that there will be a fire in the building. Which do you say?
  a What will you do if there is a fire in the building? ☐
  b What would you do if there were a fire in the building? ☐
5 You've never lost your passport. You can only imagine it.
  a I don't know what I'll do if I lose my passport. ☐
  b I don't know what I'd do if I lost my passport. ☐
6 Somebody stops you and asks the way to a bank. Which do you say?
  a If you turn right at the end of this street, you'll see a bank on your left. ☐
  b If you turned right at the end of this street, you'd see a bank on your left. ☐
7 You're in an elevator. There is an emergency button. Nobody is going to push it. Which do you say?
  a What will happen if somebody pushes that button? ☐
  b What would happen if somebody pushed that button? ☐

36.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I'd be very scared if *somebody pointed* (somebody/point) a gun at me.
2 I can't afford to buy a car. If ..... (I/buy) a car, I'd have to borrow the money.
3 If you had a party, who ..... (you/invite)?
4 Don't lend James your car. If ..... (he/ask) me, I wouldn't lend him mine.
5 I don't think Gary and Emma will get married. ..... (I/be) amazed if they did.
6 If ..... (somebody/give) me $20,000, ... (I/take) a very long vacation.
7 ..... (you/be) nervous if ..... (you/meet) a famous person?
8 What ..... (you/do) if ..... (you/be) in an elevator and ..... (it/stop) between floors?

36.4 Write sentences beginning **If ...**.

1 We're not going to take the 10:30 train. (we / arrive too early)
  If we took the 10:30 train, we'd arrive too early.
2 We're not going to stay at a hotel. (it / cost too much)
  If we ....., it .....
3 There's no point in telling you what happened. (you / not / believe)
  If I .....
4 Jessica has no plans to leave her job. (it / hard to find another one)
  If she .....
5 Matt is not going to apply for the job. (he / not / get it).
  .....

Unit 37

if I knew ... I wish I knew ...

A

Study this example situation:

Sarah wants to call Mike, but she can't do this because she doesn't know his number. She says:

I'd call him **if** I **knew** his number.
(I'd call = I **would** call)

Sarah *doesn't* know Mike's number, so she says "if I **knew**."
She *imagines* what she **would** do **if** she **knew** his number.



When we imagine a situation like this, we use **if** + *past* (**if** I **knew** / **if** you **were** / **if** we **didn't**, etc.).
But the meaning is present, *not* past:

- There are many things I'd like to do **if** I **had** more time. (but I don't have time)
- **If** I **didn't** want to go to the party, I wouldn't go. (but I want to go)
- **If** you **were** in my position, what would you do?
- It's too bad he can't drive. It would be useful **if** he **could**.

B

We use the past in the same way after **wish** (I **wish** I **knew** / I **wish** you **were**, etc.).
We use **wish** to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be:

- I **wish** I **knew** Paul's phone number.
  (= I don't know it, and I regret this)
- Do you ever **wish** you **could** fly?
  (you can't fly)
- It's very crowded here. I **wish** there **weren't** so many people. (there are a lot of people)
- I **wish** I **didn't** have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.



Compare:

- **I'm glad** I **live** here. (I live here and that's good)
- **I wish** I **lived** here. (I don't live here unfortunately)

C

After **if** and **wish**, you can use **were** instead of **was** (**if I were** / I **wish it were**, etc.).
You can also use **was**. So you can say:

- **If I were** you, I wouldn't buy that coat. *or* **If I was** you, ...
- I'd go for a walk **if it weren't** so cold. *or* ... **if it wasn't** so cold.
- I **wish Anna were** here. *or* I **wish Anna was** here.

D

We do not usually say "if ... would." We use **would** (**'d**) in the other part of the sentence:

- **If** I **were** rich, I **would** travel a lot. (*not* If I would be rich)
- Who **would** you ask **if** you **needed** help? (*not* if you would need)

In the same way, say:

- I **wish** I **had** something to read. (*not* I wish I would have)
- I **wish** she **were** here now. (*not* I wish she would be)

For "**I wish** ... **would** ...," see Unit 39.

E

Could sometimes means "would be able to" and sometimes "was/were able to":

- She **could get** a better job if she **could speak** another language. (she **could get** = she **would be able** to get) (if she **could speak** = if she **were able** to speak)
- I wish I **could** help you. (I wish I **could** = I wish I **was able**)

could ➜ Units 25–26 **if I do / if I did** ➜ Unit 36
if I had known / I wish I had known ➜ Unit 38 **wish** ➜ Unit 39

Exercises

37.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 If I knew (I/know) his number, I would phone him.
2 I wouldn't buy (I/not/buy) that coat if I were you.
3 ..... (I/help) you if I could, but I'm afraid I can't.
4 This soup isn't very good. ..... (it/taste) better if it weren't so salty.
5 We live in a city and don't need a car, but we would need one if ..... (we/live) in the country.
6 If we had the choice, ... (we/live) in the country.
7 I'd make a lot of changes if ..... (I/be) the manager of the company.
8 I wouldn't call someone in the middle of the night if ..... (it/not/be) important.
9 If I were you, ... (I/not/wait). ..... (I/go) now.
10 You're always tired because you go to bed so late. If ..... (you/not/go) to bed so late every night, ... (you/not/be) tired all the time.
11 I think there are too many cars. If ..... (there/not/be) so many cars, ... (there/not/be) so much pollution.
12 We all need jobs and money, but what ..... (you/do) if ..... (you/not/have) to work?

37.2 Write a sentence with **if ...** for each situation.

1 We don't see you very often because you live so far away.
If you didn't live so far away, we'd see you more often.
2 I like these shoes but they're too expensive, so I'm not going to buy them.
I ..... them if ..... so .....
3 We'd like to take a trip, but we can't afford it.
We ..... if .....
4 It would be nice to have lunch outside, but it's raining, so we can't.
We .....
5 I don't want his advice, and that's why I'm not going to ask for it.
If .....

37.3 Write sentences beginning **I wish ...**.

1 I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). I wish I knew more people.
2 I don't have much free time (and I need more). I wish .....
3 Emily isn't here (and I need to see her). .....
4 It's cold (and I hate cold weather). .....
5 I live in a big city (and I don't like it). .....
6 I can't find my phone (which is a problem). .....
7 I'm not feeling well (which isn't good). .....
8 I have to get up early tomorrow (but I'd prefer to sleep late).
.....
9 I don't know much about science (and I should know more).
.....

37.4 Write your own sentences beginning **I wish ...**.

1 (somewhere you'd like to be now—on the beach, in New York, in bed, etc.)
I wish I .....
2 (something you'd like to have—a motorcycle, more friends, lots of money, etc.)
.....
3 (something you'd like to be able to do—sing, travel more, cook, etc.)
.....
4 (something you'd like to be—famous, smarter, good at sports, etc.)
.....

→ Additional Exercises 20–22 (page 308)

Unit 38

if I had known ... I wish I had known ...

A

Study this example situation:

Last month Matt was in the hospital for a few days. Rachel didn't know this. A few days ago they met by chance. Rachel said:

If I'd known you were in the hospital, **I would have gone** to visit you.
(= I didn't know, so I didn't go to visit you)

If I'd known = If I **had** known. This tells us that she *didn't* know before.

We use **if** + **had** (**'d**) ... to talk about the past (**if I'd known** / **if you'd done**, etc.):

- I didn't see you when you passed me on the street. **If I'd seen** you, I would have said hello.
- They didn't go out last night. They would have gone out **if** they **hadn't been** so tired. (but they were tired)
- **If** you**'d been looking** where you were going, you wouldn't have walked into the wall. (but you weren't looking)
- The view was wonderful. I would have taken some pictures **if I'd had** (= if I **had had**) a camera with me. (but I didn't have a camera)

Compare:

- I'm not hungry. **If** I **were** hungry, I would eat something. *(now)*
- I wasn't hungry. **If** I **had been** hungry, I would have eaten something. *(past)*

B

We do *not* say "if something would have happened." We use **would** in the other part of the sentence:

- **If** I **had seen** you, I **would have said** hello. (*not* If I would have seen you)

The short form **'d** can be **would** or **had**:

- If I**'d seen** you, (I**'d** seen = I **had** seen)
  I**'d have said** hello. (I**'d** have said = I **would** have said)

C

We use **had done/known/been**, etc. in the same way after **wish**.

I **wish** something **had happened** = I am sorry that it didn't happen
I **wish** something **hadn't happened** = I am sorry that it happened

- I **wish I'd known** that Matt was sick. I would have gone to see him. (but I didn't know)
- I feel sick. I **wish** I **hadn't eaten** so much. (I ate too much)
- Do you **wish** you**'d studied** science instead of languages? (you didn't study science)

Compare:

- **I'm glad I saw** him. (= I **saw** him)
- **I wish I'd seen** him. (= I **didn't see** him)

We do *not* say "wish ... would have ...":

- The weather was cold. I wish it **had been** warmer. (*not* I wish it would have been)

D

Compare **would** (**do**) and **would have** (**done**):

- If I'd gone to the party last night, I **would be** tired now. (I am not tired now—*present*)
- If I'd gone to the party last night, I **would have met** lots of people. (I didn't meet lots of people—*past*)

Compare **would have**, **could have**, and **might have**:

- If the weather hadn't been so bad,
  - we **would have gone** out.
  - we **could have gone** out. (= we would have been able to go out)
  - we **might have gone** out. (= maybe we would have gone out)

had done ➜ Unit 14 **if I do / if I did** ➜ Unit 36 **if I knew / I wish I knew** ➜ Unit 37
wish ➜ Unit 39

Exercises

38.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 I didn't see you. If I'd seen (I/see) you, I would have said (I / say) hello.
2 Sarah got to the station just in time to catch her train to the airport. If ..... (she/miss) the train, ... (she/miss) her flight too.
3 Thanks for reminding me about Liz's birthday. ..... (I/forget) if ..... (you/not/remind) me.
4 I didn't have your email address, so I couldn't contact you. If ..... (I/have) your email address, ... (I/send) you an email.
5 Their trip was OK, but ..... (they/enjoy) it more if the weather ..... (be) better.
6 Sorry we're late. Our taxi got stuck in traffic. ..... (it / be) faster if ..... (we/walk).
7 Why didn't you tell me about your problem? If ..... (you/tell) me, ... (I/try) to help you.
8 I'm not tired. If ..... (I/be) tired, I'd go home now.
9 I wasn't tired last night. If ..... (I/be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

38.2 For each situation, write a sentence beginning with If.

1 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat anything.
If I'd been hungry, I would have eaten something.
2 The accident happened because the road was icy.
If the road .....
3 I didn't know that you had to get up early, so I didn't wake you up.
If I .....
4 Unfortunately, I lost my phone, so I couldn't call you.
.....
5 Emma wasn't injured in the crash because, fortunately, she was wearing a seat belt.
.....
6 You didn't have any breakfast—that's why you're hungry now.
.....
7 I didn't take a taxi because I didn't have enough money.
.....
8 Dan didn't do well in high school, so he couldn't go to college.
.....

38.3 Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with I wish.

1 You've eaten too much and now you feel sick.
You say: I wish I hadn't eaten so much
2 When you were younger, you never learned to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
You say: .....
3 You've painted the gate red. Now you think it doesn't look good. Red was the wrong color.
You say: .....
4 You decided to drive, but the trip was long and tiring. Taking the train would have been better.
You say: I wish we .....
5 Last year you went to New York with a friend. You didn't have time to do all the things you wanted to do.
You say: .....
6 You moved to a new apartment a few months ago. Now you don't like your new apartment. You think that moving was a bad idea.
You say: .....

→ Additional Exercises 20–22 (page 308)

Unit 39

wish

A

We say "**wish** somebody **luck / all the best / success,**" etc.:

- **I wish you all the best** in the future.
- I saw Mark before the exam, and **he wished me luck**.

We say "wish somebody *something*" (**luck, happiness**, etc.), but we do not say "I wish something *happens*."
We use **hope** in this situation:

- I'm sorry you're not well. I **hope** you **feel** better soon. (*not* I wish you feel)

Compare **I wish** and **I hope**:

- **I wish** you **a pleasant stay** at this hotel.
- **I hope** you **enjoy** your stay at this hotel. (*not* I wish you enjoy)

B

We also use **wish** to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it.
When we use **wish** in this way, we use the *past* (**knew/lived**, etc.), but the meaning is *present*:

- I **wish** I **knew** what to do about the problem. (but I don't know)
- I **wish** you **didn't** have to go so soon. (but you have to go)
- Do you **wish** you **lived** near the ocean? (you don't live near the ocean)
- Jack's going on a trip to Mexico soon. I **wish** I **were** going too. (but I'm not going)

To say that we regret something that happened before, we use **wish** + **had** known / **had** said, etc.:

- I **wish** I'**d known** about the party. I'd have gone if I'd known. (but I didn't know)
- It was a stupid thing to say. I **wish** I **hadn't said** it. (but I said it)

See also Units 37 and 38.

C

I wish I could (**do** something) = I regret that I cannot do it:

- I'm sorry you have to go. I **wish** you **could stay** longer. (but you can't)
- I've met that man before. I **wish** I **could remember** his name. (but I can't)

I wish I could have (**done** something) = I regret that I could not do it:

- I hear the party was great. I **wish** I **could have gone**. (but I couldn't go)

D

You can say "**I wish** something **would** happen." For example:



It's been raining all day. Hannah doesn't like it. She says:
I wish it **would stop** raining.

Hannah would like the rain to stop, but this will probably not happen.

We use **I wish** ... **would** when we would like something to happen or change.

We often use **I wish** ... **would** to complain about a situation:

- The phone has been ringing for five minutes. **I wish** somebody **would answer** it.
- **I wish** you'**d do** (= you **would** do) something instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

You can use **I wish** ... **wouldn't** ... to complain about things that people do repeatedly:

- **I wish** you **wouldn't keep** interrupting me. (= stop interrupting me)

E

We use **I wish** ... **would** ... to say that we want something *to happen*. We do not use **I wish** ... **would** ... to say how we would like things *to be*. Compare:

- I **wish** Sarah **would** come. (= I want her to come)

but I **wish** Sarah **was** (*or* **were**) here now. (*not* I wish Sarah would be)

- I **wish** somebody **would buy** me a car.

but I **wish** I **had** a car. (*not* I wish I would have)

would → Unit 34 **I wish I knew** → Unit 37 **I wish I was / I wish I were** → Unit 37C
I wish I had known → Unit 38

Exercises

39.1 Put in **wish(ed)** or **hope(d)**.

1 I *wish* you a pleasant stay at this hotel.
2 Enjoy your vacation. I ..... you have a great time.
3 Goodbye. I ..... you all the best for the future.
4 We said goodbye to each other and ..... each other luck.
5 We're going to have a picnic tomorrow, so I ..... the weather is nice.
6 Congratulations on your new job. I ..... you every success.
7 Good luck in your new job. I ..... it works out well for you.

39.2 Complete the sentences.

1 Jack is going on a trip to Mexico soon. I wish I *were going* too.
2 I'm very tired, and I have so much to do. I wish I ..... so tired.
3 You didn't tell me you were sick. Why not? I wish you ..... me.
4 I don't have enough free time. I wish I ..... more free time.
5 I can't make up my mind what to do. I wish I ..... decide.
6 I bought these shoes, but now I don't like them. I wish I ..... them.
7 We have to go out now, and I don't want to go. I wish we ..... to go out now.
8 Unfortunately, I couldn't go to the wedding last month. I wish I could ..... .

39.3 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with **I wish ... would ...**

1 It's raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain.
You say: *I wish it would stop raining.*
2 You're waiting for Megan. She's late, and you're getting impatient.
You say to yourself: I wish she .....
3 You're looking for a job—so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.
You say: I wish somebody .....
4 You can hear a dog barking. It's been barking a long time, and you're trying to study.
You say: .....

For the following situations, write sentences with **I wish ... wouldn't ...** .

5 Your friend is driving very fast. She always drives fast and you don't like this.
You say to her: I wish you .....
6 Joe leaves the door open all the time. This annoys you.
You say to Joe: .....
7 A lot of people drop litter on the sidewalk. You don't like this.
You say: I wish people .....

39.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 It was a stupid thing to say. I wish *I hadn't said* it. (I / not / say)
2 I'm fed up with this rain. I wish *it would stop* . (it / stop)
3 It's a difficult question. I wish ..... the answer. (I / know)
4 I really didn't enjoy the party. I wish ..... . (we / not / go)
5 I wish ..... . We've been waiting for 20 minutes. (the bus / come)
6 You're lucky to be going away. I wish ..... with you. (I / can / come)
7 Our apartment is pretty small. I wish ..... a little bigger. (it / be)
8 I should have listened to you. I wish ..... your advice. (I / take)
9 You keep interrupting me! I wish ..... . (you / listen)
10 You're always complaining. I wish ..... all the time. (you / not / complain)
11 It's freezing today. I wish ..... so cold. I hate cold weather. (it / not / be)
12 I wish ..... . It's horrible! (the weather / change)
13 I wish ..... a piano. I'd love to have one. (I / have)
14 When we were in Miami last year, we didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see.
I wish ..... there longer. (we / can / stay)

Unit 40

Passive 1 (is done / was done)

A

Study this example:



This house **was built** in 1981.

"This house **was built**" is *passive*.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody **built** this house in 1981. *(active)*
subject *object*

This house **was built** in 1981. *(passive)*
subject

When we use an active verb, we say *what the subject does*:

- My grandfather was a builder. **He built** this house in 1981.
- It's a big company. **It employs** two hundred people.

When we use a passive verb, we say *what happens to the subject*:

- "How old is this house?" "**It was built** in 1981."
- **Two hundred people are employed** by the company.

B

When we use the passive, who or what causes the action is often unknown or unimportant:

- A lot of money **was stolen** in the robbery. (somebody stole it, but we don't know who)
- **Is** this room **cleaned** every day? (does somebody clean it?—it's not important who)

If we want to say who does or what causes the action, we use **by**:

- This house was built **by my grandfather**.
- Two hundred people are employed **by the company**.

C

The passive is **be** (**is**/**was**, etc.) + *past participle* (**done**/**cleaned**/**seen**, etc.):
(be) done **(be) cleaned** **(be) damaged** **(be) built** **(be) seen**, etc.

The past participle often ends in **-ed** (clean**ed**/damag**ed**, etc.), but many important verbs are *irregular* (**built**/**done**/**stolen**, etc.). See Appendix 1.

Compare active and passive, *simple present* and *simple past*:

Simple Present

active: **clean(s)** / **see(s)**, etc. — Somebody **cleans** this room every day.

passive: **am**/**is**/**are** + **cleaned**/**seen**, etc. — This room **is cleaned** every day.

- Many accidents **are caused** by careless driving.
- **I'm not invited** to parties very often.
- How **is** this word **pronounced**?

Simple Past

active: **cleaned**/**saw**, etc. — Somebody **cleaned** this room yesterday.

passive: **was**/**were** + **cleaned**/**seen**, etc. — This room **was cleaned** yesterday.

- We **were woken** up by a loud noise during the night.
- "Did you go to the party?" "No, I **wasn't invited**."
- How much money **was stolen** in the robbery?

Passive 2–3 → Units 41–42 **by** → Unit 125

Exercises

40.1 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs in the correct form, present or past:

~~cause~~	damage	find	hold	injure	invite
make	own	pass	send	show	surround

1 Many accidents *are caused* by careless driving.
2 Cheese ..... from milk.
3 The roof of the building ..... in a storm a few days ago.
4 A movie theater is a place where movies ..... .
5 You ..... to the party. Why didn't you go?
6 This plant is very rare. It ..... in very few places.
7 Although we were driving fast, we ..... by a lot of other cars.
8 In the U.S., elections for president ..... every four years.
9 There was an accident last night, but fortunately nobody ..... .
10 You can't see the house from the road. It ..... by trees.
11 I never received the letter. It ..... to the wrong address.
12 The company I work for ..... by a much larger company.

40.2 Write questions using the passive. Some are present and some are past.

1 Ask about glass. (how / make?) *How is glass made?*
2 Ask about TV. (when / invent?) When .....
3 Ask about mountains. (how / form?) .....
4 Ask about DNA. (when / discover?) .....
5 Ask about silver. (what / use for?) .....

40.3 Put the verb into the correct form, present or past, active or passive.

1 a Two hundred people *are employed* (employ) by the company.
b The company *employs* (employ) 200 people.
2 a Water ..... (cover) most of the earth's surface.
b How much of the earth's surface ..... (cover) by water?
3 a While I was on vacation, my camera ..... (steal) from my hotel room.
b While I was on vacation, my camera ..... (disappear) from my hotel room.
4 a Robert's parents ..... (die) when he was very young.
b Robert and his sister ..... (bring up) by their grandparents.
5 a The boat hit a rock and ..... (sink) quickly.
b Fortunately, everybody ..... (rescue).
6 a Mike ..... (fire) from his job. He wasn't very good at it.
b Sue ..... (resign) from her job because she didn't enjoy it anymore.
7 a It can be noisy living here, but it ..... (not/bother) me.
b It can be noisy living here, but I ..... (not/bother) by it.
8 a Maria had an accident. She ..... (knock) off her bike.
b Maria had an accident. She ..... (fall) off her bike.
9 a I haven't seen these flowers before. What ..... (they/call)?
b I haven't seen these flowers before. What ..... (you/call) them?

40.4 Instead of using **somebody, they, people** etc., write a passive sentence.

1 Somebody cleans the room every day. *The room is cleaned every day*.
2 They canceled all flights because of fog. All ..... .
3 Somebody accused me of stealing money. ..... money.
4 How do you use this word? How ..... used?
5 The price includes all taxes. All ..... in the price.
6 People warned us not to go out alone. We ..... .
7 We don't use this office anymore. This ..... .
8 They invited five hundred people to the wedding. Five hundred ..... .

Unit 41

Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)

A

After **will** / **can** / **must** / **going to** / **want to**, etc.

active: (to) **do/clean/see**, etc. Somebody **will clean** this room later.

passive: (to) **be** + **done/cleaned/seen**, etc. This room **will be cleaned** later.

- ☐ The situation is serious. Something must **be done** before it's too late.
- ☐ A mystery is something that can't **be explained**.
- ☐ The music was very loud and could **be heard** from a long way away.
- ☐ A new supermarket is going **to be built** next year.
- ☐ Please go away. I want **to be left** alone.

B

After **should have** / **might have** / **would have** / **seem to have**, etc.

active: (to) **have** + **done/cleaned/seen**, etc. Somebody **should have cleaned** the room.

passive: (to) **have been** + **done/cleaned/seen**, etc. The room **should have been cleaned**.

- ☐ I haven't received the letter yet. It might **have been sent** to the wrong address.
- ☐ If you had locked the car, it wouldn't **have been stolen**.
- ☐ There were some problems at first, but they seem **to have been solved**.

C

Present Perfect

active: **have/has** + **done**, etc. The room looks nice. Somebody **has cleaned** it.

passive: **have/has been** + **done**, etc. The room looks nice. It **has been cleaned**.

- ☐ Have you heard? The trip **has been canceled**.
- ☐ **Have** you ever **been bitten** by a dog?
- ☐ "Are you going to the party?" "No, I **haven't been invited**."

Past Perfect

active: **had** + **done**, etc. The room looked nice. Somebody **had cleaned** it.

passive: **had been** + **done**, etc. The room looked nice. It **had been cleaned**.

- ☐ The vegetables didn't taste good. They **had been cooked** too long.
- ☐ The car was three years old but **hadn't been used** very much.

D

Present Continuous

active: **am/is/are** + **(do)ing** Somebody **is cleaning** the room at the moment.

passive: **am/is/are** + **being (done)** The room **is being cleaned** at the moment.

- ☐ There's somebody walking behind us. I think we **are being followed**.
- ☐ A new bridge **is being built** across the river. It will be finished next year.

Past Continuous

active: **was/were** + **(do)ing** Somebody **was cleaning** the room when I arrived.

passive: **was/were** + **being (done)** The room **was being cleaned** when I arrived.

- ☐ There was somebody walking behind us. I think we **were being followed**.

Passive 1, 3 ➜ Units 40, 42

Exercises

41.1 Complete these sentences. Use the following verbs in the passive:

arrest carry cause delay ~~do~~ forget keep know make repair ~~send~~ tear

Sometimes you need **have** (**might have, would have,** etc.).

1 The situation is serious. Something must *be done* before it's too late.
2 I haven't received the letter yet. It might *have been sent* to the wrong address.
3 A decision will not ..... until the next meeting.
4 These documents are important. They should always ..... in a safe place.
5 This road is in bad condition. It should ..... a long time ago.
6 The injured man couldn't walk and had to ..... .
7 If you hadn't shouted at the police officer, you wouldn't ..... .
8 I'm not sure what time I'll arrive tomorrow. I may ..... .
9 It's not certain how the fire started. It might ..... by an electrical fault.
10 A new school is being built. The old one is going to ..... down.
11 The election is next Sunday. The full results will ..... on Tuesday.
12 Last week they weren't speaking to one another. Now they're happy again. The problem seems to ..... .

41.2 Make sentences from the words in parentheses. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

1 There's somebody behind us. (We / follow) *We're being followed.*
2 This door is a different color, isn't it? (you / paint?) *Have you painted it?*
3 My bike has disappeared. (It / steal!) It .....
4 My umbrella has disappeared. (Somebody / take) Somebody .....
5 A neighbor of mine disappeared six months ago.
(He / not / see / since then) He .....
6 I wonder how Jessica is these days.
(I / not / see / for ages) I .....
7 A friend of mine was stung by a bee recently.
(you / ever / sting / bee?) ..... you .....
8 The bridge was damaged recently.
(It / repair / right now) It .....
9 Tom's car was stolen recently.
(It / not / find / yet) .....
10 I went into the room and saw that the table and chairs were not in the same place.
(The furniture / move) The .....
11 I had a problem with my phone, but it's OK now.
(It / work) It ..... now. (It / fix) .....

41.3 Instead of using **somebody, they,** etc., write a passive sentence.

1 Somebody has cleaned the room. The *room has been cleaned* .
2 They are building a new road around the city.
A ..... around the city.
3 They have built two new hotels near the airport.
Two ..... near the airport.
4 When I last visited, they were building some new houses here.
When I last visited, some ..... .
5 The meeting is now on April 15. They have changed the date.
The date of ..... .
6 I didn't know that somebody was recording our conversation.
I didn't know that our ..... .
7 Is anyone doing anything about the problem?
..... anything ..... the problem?
8 The windows were very dirty. Nobody had cleaned them for ages.
The windows were very dirty. They ..... .

→ Additional Exercises 23–25 (pages 309–310)

Unit 42

Passive 3

A I was offered ... / we were given ..., etc.



Some verbs can have two objects. For example, **give**:

- My grandfather gave **me** (*object 1*) **this watch** (*object 2*).

It is possible to make two passive sentences:

- **I was given** this watch (by my grandfather). *or*
  This watch was given to me (by my grandfather).

Other verbs which can have two objects are:

ask **offer** **pay** **show** **tell**

When we use these verbs in the passive, most often we begin with the *person*:

- **I've been offered** the job, but I don't think I want it. (= somebody has offered me the job)
- **You will be given** plenty of time to decide. (= we will give you plenty of time)
- I didn't see the original document, but **I was shown** a copy. (= somebody showed me a copy)
- Tim has an easy job—**he's paid a lot of money** to do very little. (= somebody pays him a lot)

B I don't like being ...

The passive of **doing/seeing**, etc., is **being done** / **being seen**, etc. Compare:

active: I don't like **people telling me** what to do.
passive: I don't like **being told** what to do.

- I remember **being taken** to the zoo when I was a child.
  (= I remember **somebody taking** me to the zoo)
- Steve hates **being kept** waiting. (= he hates **people keeping** him waiting)
- We climbed over the wall without **being seen**. (= without **anybody seeing** us)

C I was born

We say "**I was** born ..." (*not* I am born):

- I **was born** in Chicago.
- Where **were** you **born**? (*not* Where are you born?) } *past*

but

- How many babies **are born** every day? *present*

D get

You can use **get** for the passive:

- There was a fight, but nobody **got hurt**. (= nobody **was** hurt)
- I don't **get invited** to many parties. (= I**'m** not invited)
- I'm surprised Liz **didn't get offered** the job. (= Liz **wasn't offered** the job)

We use **get** only when things *happen*. For example, you cannot use **get** in these sentences:

- Jessica **is liked** by everybody. (*not* gets liked—this is not a "happening")
- Nick was a mystery man. Very little **was known** about him. (*not* got known)

We use **get** mainly in informal spoken English. You can use **be** in all situations.

We also use **get** in the following expressions (which are not passive in meaning):

get married, **get divorced**
get lost (= not know where you are)
get dressed (= put on your clothes)
get changed (= change your clothes)

Passive 1–2 ➜ Units 40–41

Exercises

42.1 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verb.

1 I tried to contact Tom.
I called his office but I was told (tell) that he was in a meeting.
2 Amy retired from her job recently.
She _____ (give) a present by her colleagues.
3 I didn't know there was a meeting yesterday.
I _____ (not/tell) about it.
4 Sarah's salary is very low.
I don't understand why she _____ (pay) so little.
5 You will need to use this machine.
Have you _____ (show) how it works?
6 I had an interview for a job recently. It wasn't easy.
I _____ (ask) some questions that were very hard for me to answer.
7 They didn't tell us much about the project.
We _____ (not/give) enough information.
8 I was surprised to get the job I applied for.
I didn't expect _____ (offer) the job.

42.2 Complete the sentences using being + the following verbs (in the correct form):

bite **give** **hit** **invite** ~~**keep**~~ **stick** **treat**

1 Steve hates being kept waiting.
2 We went to the wedding without _____.
3 I like giving presents, and I also like _____ them.
4 It's a busy road, and I don't like crossing it. I'm afraid of _____ by a car.
5 How do you avoid _____ by mosquitoes?
6 I'm an adult. I don't like _____ like a child.
7 You can't do anything about _____ in a traffic jam.

42.3 Complete the sentences using get or got + the following verbs (in the correct form):

ask **break** ~~**hurt**~~ **pay** **steal** **sting** **stop** **use**

1 There was a fight, but nobody got hurt.
2 Alex _____ by a bee while he was sitting in the yard.
3 These tennis courts don't _____ very often. Not many people want to play here.
4 I used to have a bike, but it _____ a few months ago.
5 Rachel works hard, but she doesn't _____ very much.
6 Please pack these things very carefully. I don't want anything to _____.
7 People often want to know what my job is. I _____ that question a lot.
8 Last night I _____ by the police as I was driving home. One of the lights on my car wasn't working.

42.4 Complete the sentences.

1 I've been offered the job, but I don't think I'll accept it.
2 I don't get invited to many parties.
3 Which year _____ you born in?
4 I haven't been _____ any information yet.
5 I didn't know the way, so I got _____.
6 He doesn't like _____ interrupted when he's speaking.
7 How did the window _____ broken? What happened?
8 She's a volunteer worker. She _____ get paid.
9 I _____ born in a small town in the north of the country.
10 We had to do what we did. We _____ given any choice.

→ Additional Exercises 23–25 (pages 309–310)

Unit 43

It is said that ... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...

A

Study this example situation:



George is very old. Nobody knows exactly how old he is, but:

It is said that he is 108 years old.

or He **is said to be** 108 years old.

Both these sentences mean: "People say that he is 108 years old."

You can use these structures with a number of other verbs, especially:

alleged **believed** **considered** **expected** **known** **reported** **thought** **understood**

Compare:

- Cathy loves running.
  It is said that she runs 10 miles a day. *or* **She is said to** run 10 miles a day.
- The police are looking for a missing boy.
  It is believed that the boy is wearing a white sweater and blue jeans. *or* **The boy is believed to** be wearing a white sweater and blue jeans.
- The strike started three weeks ago.
  It is expected that it will end soon. *or* **The strike is expected to** end soon.
- A friend of mine has been arrested.
  It is alleged that he stole a car. *or* **He is alleged to** have stolen a car.
- The two houses belong to the same family.
  It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them. *or* **There is said to** be a secret tunnel between them.

These structures are often used in news reports. For example, in a report about an accident:

- **It is reported that** two people were injured in the explosion. *or* **Two people are reported to** have been injured in the explosion.

B

supposed to ...

You can use **supposed to** ... in the same way as **said to** ... :

- I want to see that movie. **It's supposed to be** good. (= people say it's good)
- There are many stories about Joe. **He's supposed to have robbed** a bank many years ago.
- Fireworks **are supposed to have been invented** in China. Is it true?

Sometimes **supposed to** ... has a different meaning. We use **supposed to** to say what is intended, arranged or expected. Often this is different from the real situation:

- The plan **is supposed to be** a secret, but everybody seems to know about it.
  (= the plan is intended to be a secret)
- What are you doing at work? You**'re supposed to be** on vacation.
  (= you arranged to be on vacation)
- Our guests **were supposed to come** at 7:30, but they were late.
- Jen **was supposed to call** me last night, but she didn't.
- I'd better hurry. I**'m supposed to be meeting** Chris in ten minutes.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed or advised:

- **You're not supposed to park** your car here. It's private parking only.
- Joe is much better after his illness, but **he's not supposed to exercise** too hard.

Exercises

43.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown. Use the underlined word each time.

1 It is expected that the strike will end soon.
The strike *is expected to end soon.*
2 It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods.
Many people .....
3 It is thought that the thieves got in through a window.
The thieves .....
4 It is alleged that the driver of the car was driving 110 miles an hour.
The driver .....
5 It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire.
The building .....
6 It is said that the company is losing a lot of money.
The company .....
7 It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year.
The company .....
8 It is expected that the company will take a loss this year.
The company .....

43.2 Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses and other necessary words.

1 A: What's the City Hotel like? Can you recommend it?
B: I've never stayed there, but *it's supposed to be* (it / supposed) very nice.
2 A: How much are these paintings worth?
B: I'm not sure, but ..... (they / supposed) very valuable.
3 A: This looks like an interesting building.
B: Yes, ... (it / supposed) a prison a long time ago.
4 A: Is it true that your neighbors were lucky in the lottery?
B: Yes, ... (they / supposed) won a lot of money.
5 A: Is it possible to climb to the top of the tower?
B: Yes, ... (the view / supposed) very nice.
6 A: I heard that Julia has gone away.
B: Yes, ... (she / supposed) living in New York now.

43.3 Write sentences using **supposed to be** + the following:

on a diet **a flower** **my friend** **a joke** **open every day** ~~**a secret**~~ **working**

1 How is it that everybody knows about the plan? *It's supposed to be a secret.*
2 You shouldn't criticize me all the time. You .....
3 I shouldn't be eating this cake really. I .....
4 I'm sorry for what I said. I was trying to be funny. It .....
5 What's this drawing? Is it a tree? Or maybe it .....
6 You shouldn't be playing a game now. .....
7 That's strange. The museum seems to be closed. .....

43.4 Write sentences with **supposed to ...** or **not supposed to ...** . Choose from the following verbs:

call **depart** **lift** ~~**park**~~ **put** **start**

1 You *'re not supposed to park* your car here. It's private parking only.
2 We ..... work at 8:15, but we rarely do anything before 8:30.
3 I ..... Lauren last night, but I completely forgot.
4 This door is a fire exit. We ..... anything in front of it.
5 My flight ..... at 10:15, but it didn't leave until 11:30.
6 Jonathan has a problem with his back. He ..... anything heavy.

→ Additional Exercises 23–25 (pages 309–310)

Unit 44

have something done get something done

A

Study this example situation:



MEGAN

The roof of Megan's house was damaged. So she called a roofing company, and yesterday a worker came and repaired it.

Megan **had** the roof **repaired** yesterday.

This means: Megan arranged for somebody else to repair the roof. She didn't repair it herself.

If you **have something done**, you arrange for somebody to do it for you.

Compare:

- Megan **repaired** the roof. (= she repaired it herself)
  Megan **had** the roof **repaired**. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)
- "Did you **make** those curtains yourself?" "Yes, I like making things."
  "Did you **have** those curtains **made**?" "No, I made them myself."

B

Study the word order:

	have	*object*	*past participle*
Megan	**had**	the roof	**repaired**.
Where did you	**have**	your hair	**cut**?
We are	**having**	the house	**painted**.
I think you should	**have**	that coat	**cleaned**.
I don't like	**having**	my picture	**taken**.

We say:

- How often do you **have your car serviced**? (*not* have serviced your car)
- Our neighbor is **having a garage built**. (*not* having built a garage)
- Your hair looks nice. Did you **have it cut**?

C

get something done

You can say "**get** something done" instead of "**have** something done":

- When are you going to **get the roof repaired**? (= have the roof repaired)
- I think you should **get your hair cut** really short.

D

We also use **have something done** with a different meaning. For example:

- Josh and Rachel **had their bags stolen** while they were traveling.

This does not mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their bags. "They **had their bags stolen**" means only: "Their bags were stolen."

With this meaning, we use **have something done** to say that something happens to somebody or their belongings:

- Nick **had** his nose **broken** in a fight. (= his nose was broken)
- Have you ever **had** your bike **stolen**?

Exercises

44.1 Check (✓) the correct sentence, (a) or (b), for each picture.

1 

SARAH

(a) Sarah is cutting her hair.
(b) Sarah is having her hair cut.

2 

ANDY

(a) Andy is cutting his hair.
(b) Andy is having his hair cut.

3 

KATE

(a) Kate is painting the gate.
(b) Kate is having the gate painted.

4 

SUE

(a) Sue is taking a picture.
(b) Sue is having her picture taken.

44.2 Put the words in the correct order.

1 (painted / had / a few weeks ago / the house)
We *had the house painted a few weeks ago.*
2 (serviced / car / once a year / her / has)
Sarah .....
3 (had / your / recently / tested / eyes / you?)
Have .....
4 (like / cut / my / getting / don't / hair)
I .....
5 (fifteen dollars / have / cleaned / my suit / cost / to)
It .....
6 (as soon as possible / need / translated / to get / this document)
You .....

44.3 Write sentences in the way shown.

1 Lauren didn't repair the roof herself. She *had it repaired.*
2 I didn't cut my hair myself. I .....
3 We didn't clean the carpets ourselves. We .....
4 Ben didn't build that wall himself. He .....
5 I didn't deliver the flowers myself. I .....
6 Sarah didn't repair her shoes herself. She .....

44.4 Which goes with which?

1 My hair is getting long.	a I need to get it fixed.	1 *d*
2 I really like this picture.	b I have to get a new one made.	2 .....
3 The washing machine is broken.	c I need to get my teeth checked.	3 .....
4 I want to wear earrings.	d ~~I should get it cut.~~	4 .....
5 Can you recommend a dentist?	e I'm going to get my ears pierced.	5 .....
6 I lost my key.	f I'm going to get it framed.	6 .....

44.5 Use the words in parentheses to complete the sentences.

1 Did I tell you about Josh and Rachel?
(They / their bags / steal) *They had their bags stolen.*
2 Security at the airport was strict.
(We / our bags / search) .....
3 I have some good news!
(I / my salary / increase) I .....
4 Joe can't get a visa.
(He / his application / reject) .....

Unit 45

Reported Speech 1 (He said that ...)

A

Study this example situation:



DAN

You saw Dan yesterday and you want to tell somebody what he said.
There are two ways of doing this:

You can repeat Dan's words (direct speech):
Dan said, "**I'm feeling sick.**"

Or you can use reported speech:
Dan said **that he was feeling sick.**

Compare:

direct	Dan said, "I **am** feeling sick."
reported	Dan said that **he** **was** feeling sick.

In writing we use these quotation marks to show direct speech.

B

When we use reported speech, the main verb of the sentence is usually past (Dan **said** that ... / I **told** her that ..., etc.). The rest of the sentence is usually past too:

- Dan **said** that he **was feeling** sick.
- I **told** Jen that I **didn't have** any money.

You can leave out **that**. So you can say:

- Dan **said that** he was feeling sick. *or* Dan **said** he was feeling sick.

In general, the *present* in direct speech changes to the *past* in reported speech:

am/is → **was** do/does → **did** will → **would**
are → **were** have/has → **had** can → **could**
want/like/know/go, etc.→ **wanted/liked/knew/went**, etc.

See also Unit 46A.

Compare direct and reported speech:

You saw Anna. Here are some of the things she said in *direct* speech:

I **have** a new job.
I **want** to buy a car.
I **can't** come to the party on Friday.
I **don't** have much free time.
My parents **are** fine.
I'**m** going away for a few days.
I'**ll** call you when I **get** back.



ANNA

Later you tell somebody what Anna said. You use *reported* speech:

- Anna said that she **had** a new job.
- She said that she **wanted** to buy a car.
- She said that she **couldn't** come to the party on Friday.
- She said she **didn't** have much free time.
- She said that her parents **were** fine.
- She said that she **was** going away for a few days and **would** call me when she **got** back.

C

The *simple past* (**did/saw/knew**, etc.) can stay the same in reported speech, or you can change it to the *past perfect* (**had done / had seen / had known**, etc.):

- *direct* Dan said: "I **woke** up feeling sick, so I **didn't go** to work."
  reported Dan said (that) he **woke** up feeling sick, so he **didn't go** to work. *or*
  Dan said (that) he **had woken** up feeling sick, so he **hadn't gone** to work.

Reported Speech 2 ➜ Unit 46 Reported Questions ➜ Unit 48B

Exercises

45.1 You talked to some friends of yours (Dan, Tom, Anna, etc.). Read what they said on the left (direct speech). Later (the same day) you tell another friend what they said (reported speech). Complete the sentences.

	direct speech	*reported speech*
 1 You: Are you going to work today, Dan? Dan: No, I'm feeling sick.		Dan didn't go to work today. He said he was feeling sick.
 2 You: Should we walk to the station? Tom: No, it's too far. Let's get a taxi.		I wanted to walk to the station, but Tom said ..... far.
 3 You: Have you been invited to the party? Anna: Yes, but I don't want to go.		Anna has been invited to the party but she told me ..... to go.
 4 You: When are you going away, Dan? Dan: I'll let you know next week.		I asked Dan about his travel plans. He said ..... next week.
 5 You: Do you ever see Rachel these days? Ben: I haven't seen her for a while.		I asked Ben about Rachel, but he told me ..... for a while.
 6 You: Where can I borrow a guitar? Kate: You can borrow mine.		I needed to borrow a guitar, and Kate said .....
 7 You: How's your job, Sue? Sue: I'm not enjoying it very much.		I asked Sue about her job. She said ..... very much.
 8 You: Do you still have your car? James: No, I sold it a few months ago.		I asked James about his car. He told me ..... a few months ago.
 9 You: What's the name of the cafe we went to? Sarah: I don't know.		I asked Sarah the name of the cafe we went to, but she said .....
 10 You: How many students are there in your class, Amy? Amy: Twenty.		I asked Amy about her school and she told me ..... class.

45.2 Somebody says something to you which is not what you expected. Use your own ideas to complete your answers.

1 A: It's quite a long way from the hotel to downtown.
B: It is? The man at the reception desk said it was only a five-minute walk.
2 A: Sue is coming to the party tonight.
B: She is? I saw her a few days ago and she said she .....
3 A: Sarah gets along fine with Dan.
B: She does? Last week you said ..... each other.
4 A: Joe knows lots of people.
B: That's not what he told me. He said ..... anyone.
5 A: Nicole will be here next week.
B: Oh, really? When I spoke to her, she said ..... away.
6 A: I'm going out tonight.
B: You are? I thought you said ..... at home.
7 A: I speak French quite well.
B: You do? But earlier you said ..... any other languages.
8 A: I haven't seen Ben recently.
B: That's strange. He told me ..... last weekend.

→ Additional Exercise 26 (pages 310–312)

Unit 46

Reported Speech 2

A

We do not always change the verb in reported speech. If the situation *is still the same*, it is not necessary to change the verb to the past. For example:

- *direct* John said, "**My** new job **is** boring."
  reported John said that **his** new job **is** boring.
  (The situation is still the same. **His job is** still boring now.)
- *direct* Olivia said, "**I want** to go to South America next year."
  reported Olivia told me that **she wants** to go to South America next year.
  (Olivia still wants to go to South America next year.)

You can also change the verb to the past:

- John said that his new job **was** boring.
- Olivia told me that she **wanted** to go to South America next year.

But if the situation has *changed* or *finished*, you need to use a past verb. Compare:

- John left the room suddenly. He said, "**I have to go**." *(direct speech)*
  John left the room suddenly. He said (that) **he had to go**. (*not* has to go)

B

You need to use the past in reported speech when what was said is different from what is really true. For example:



You met Lauren a few days ago. She said:

- Have you heard? Joe **is** in the hospital.

Later that day, you see Joe on the street. You say:

- Joe, this is a surprise. Lauren said you **were** in the hospital.
  (*not* "you are in the hospital"—it's clear that he isn't)

C

say and **tell**

If you say *who* somebody is talking to, use **tell**:

- Emma **told me** that you were in the hospital. (*not* Emma said me)
- What did you **tell the police**? (*not* say the police)



Otherwise use **say**:

- Emma **said** that you were in the hospital. (*not* Emma told that ...)
- What did you **say**?

You can "**say** something **to** somebody":

- Anna **said** goodbye **to** me and left. (*not* Anna said me goodbye)
- What did you **say to** the police?

D

We say "**tell** somebody **to** ..." and "**ask** somebody **to** ...". Compare direct and reported speech:

- *direct* "**Drink** plenty of water," the doctor said to me.
  reported The doctor **told me to drink** plenty of water.
- *direct* "**Don't work** too hard," I said to Joe.
  reported I **told Joe not to work** too hard.
- *direct* "Can you help me, please?" Jackie said to me.
  reported Jackie **asked me to help** her.

You can also say "Somebody **said** (**not**) **to** do something":

- Eric **said not to worry** about him. (*but not* Eric said me)

Reported Speech 1 ➜ Unit 45 Reported Questions ➜ Unit 48B

Exercises

46.1 Here are some things that Sarah said to you earlier:



I've never been to the United States.

I don't have any brothers or sisters.

I can't drive.

I don't like fish.

Jane has a very well-paid job.

I'm working tomorrow evening.

Allison is a friend of mine.

~~Dave is lazy.~~

But later Sarah says something different to you. What do you say?

	Sarah	You
1	Dave works very hard.	But you said he was lazy.
2	Let's have fish for dinner.	But .....
3	I'm going to buy a car.	.....
4	Julia is always short of money.	.....
5	My sister lives in Paris.	.....
6	I think New York is a great place.	.....
7	Let's go out tomorrow evening.	.....
8	I've never spoken to Allison.	.....

46.2 Complete the sentences with say or tell (in the correct form). Use only one word each time.

1 Anna said goodbye to me and left.
2 ..... us about your vacation. Did you have a nice time?
3 Don't just stand there! ..... something!
4 I wonder where Sue is. She ..... she would be here at 8:00.
5 Dan ..... me that he was bored with his job.
6 The doctor ..... that I should rest for at least a week.
7 Brian couldn't help me. He ..... me to ask Chris.
8 Brian couldn't help me. He ..... to ask Chris.
9 Don't ..... anybody what I ..... It's a secret just between the two of us.
10 "Did Kate ..... you what happened?" "No, she didn't ..... anything to me."

46.3 The following sentences are direct speech:

Don't wait for me if I'm late.

Mind your own business.

Don't worry, Sue.

Please slow down!

Can you open your bag, please?

Could you get me a paper?

~~Hurry up!~~

Will you marry me?

Do you think you could give me a hand, Tom?

Now choose one of these to complete each of the sentences below. Use reported speech.

1 Will was taking a long time to get ready, so I told him to hurry up.
2 Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked .....
3 Sue was nervous about the situation. I told .....
4 I couldn't move the piano alone, so I .....
5 The security guard looked at me suspiciously and .....
6 The man started asking me personal questions, so I .....
7 Adam was in love with Maria, so he .....
8 I didn't want to delay Mary, so I .....

→ Additional Exercise 26 (pages 310–312)

Unit 47

Questions 1

A

In questions the subject is usually after the first verb:

subject	+ *verb*		*verb* +	*subject*
Tom	will	→	will	Tom?
you	have	→	have	you?
the house	was	→	was	the house?

- **Will Tom** be here tomorrow?
- **Have you** been working hard?
- When **was the house** built?

The subject is after the *first* verb:

- **Is Katherine** working today? (*not* Is working Katherine)

B

In *simple present* questions, we use **do/does**:

you	live	→	**do**	you **live**?
the movie	starts	→	**does**	the movie **start**?

- **Do** you **live** nearby?
- What time **does** the movie **start**?

In *simple past* questions, we use **did**:

you	sold	→	**did**	you **sell**?
the train	stopped	→	**did**	the train **stop**?

- **Did** you **sell** your car?
- Why **did** the train **stop**?

But do not use **do/does/did** if **who/what**, etc. is the subject of the sentence. Compare:

who *object*

Emma called somebody .
object
Who **did** Emma **call**?

who *subject*

Somebody called Emma.
subject
Who **called** Emma?

In these examples, **who/what**, etc. is the subject:

- **Who wants** something to eat? (*not* Who does want)
- **What happened** to you last night? (*not* What did happen)
- **How many people came** to the party? (*not* did come)
- **Which bus goes** downtown? (*not* does go)

C

In questions beginning **who/what/which/where**, *prepositions* (**in**, **for**, etc.) usually go at the end:

- **Where** are you **from**?
- **Who** do you want to speak **to**?
- **What** was the weather **like**?
- **Which** job has Lauren applied **for**?

You can use *preposition* + **whom** in formal style:

- **To whom** do you wish to speak?

D

isn't it ... ? / **didn't you** ... ?, etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:

- **Didn't you** hear the doorbell? I rang it three times.

or when we expect the listener to agree with us:

- **"Haven't we** met before?" "Yes, I think we have."

Note the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answers to negative questions:

- **"Don't you** want to go?" { **"Yes."** (= Yes, I want to go) / **"No."** (= No, I don't want to go)

We often use negative questions with **Why** ... ? :

- **Why don't we** eat out tonight? (*not* Why we don't eat)
- **Why wasn't Emma** at work yesterday? (*not* Why Emma wasn't)

Questions 2 ➜ Unit 48 Tag Questions (**do you?**, **isn't it?**, etc.) ➜ Unit 50

Exercises

47.1 Ask Joe questions.



1	(where / live)	*Where do you live?*
2	(born there?)	
3	(married?)	
4	(how long?)	
5	(what / do?)	
6	(what wife / do?)	
7	(children?)	
8	(how old?)	

In Vancouver.
No, I was born in Toronto.
Yes.
17 years.
I'm a journalist.
She's a doctor.
Yes, two boys.
12 and 15.

47.2 Make questions with **who** or **what**.

1	Somebody hit me.	*Who hit you?*
2	I hit somebody.	*Who did you hit?*
3	Somebody paid the bill.	Who
4	I'm worried about something.	What
5	Something happened.	
6	Rachel said something.	
7	This book belongs to somebody.	
8	Somebody lives in that house.	
9	I fell over something.	
10	Something fell off the shelf.	
11	This word means something.	
12	Sarah was with somebody.	
13	I'm looking for something.	
14	Emma reminds me of somebody.	

47.3 Put the words in parentheses in the correct order.

1 (when / was / built / this house?) *When was this house built?*
2 (how / cheese / is / made?)
3 (why / Sue / working / isn't / today?)
4 (what time / arriving / your friends / are?)
5 (why / was / canceled / the meeting?)
6 (when / invented / paper / was?)
7 (where / your parents / were / born?)
8 (why / you / to the party / didn't / come?)
9 (how / the accident / did / happen?)
10 (why/ happy / you / aren't?)
11 (how many / speak / can / languages / you?)

47.4 Write negative questions from the words in parentheses. In each situation you are surprised.

1 A: We won't see Lauren tonight.
B: Why not? (she / not / come / out with us?) *Isn't she coming out with us?*
2 A: I hope we don't meet Sam tonight.
B: Why? (you / not / like / him?)
3 A: Don't go and see that movie.
B: Why not? (it / not / good?)
4 A: I'll have to borrow some money.
B: Why? (you / not / have / any?)

Unit 48

Questions 2 (**Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ...**)

A

Do you **know where** ... ? / **I don't know why** ... / **Could you tell me what** ... ?, etc.

We say: Where **has Tom** gone?

but **Do you know** where **Tom has** gone? (*not* has Tom gone)

When the question (**Where has Tom gone?**) is part of a longer sentence (**Do you know** ... ? / **I don't know** ... / **Can you tell me** ... ?, etc.), the word order changes. We say:

- What time **is it**? — *but* **Do you know** what time **it is**?
- Who **are those people**? — **I don't know** who **those people are**.
- Where **can I** find Julia? — **Can you tell me** where **I can** find Julia?
- How much **will it** cost? — **Do you have any idea** how much **it will** cost?

Be careful with **do/does/did** questions. We say:

- What time **does the movie start**? — *but* **Do you know** what time **the movie starts**? (*not* does the movie start)
- What **do you mean**? — **Please explain** what **you mean**.
- Why **did she leave** early? — I **wonder** why **she left** early.

Use **if** or **whether** where there is no other question word (**what, why,** etc.):

- Did anybody see you? — *but* I don't know **if** anybody saw me. *or* ... **whether** anybody saw me.

B

He asked me where ...

The same changes in word order happen in questions in reported speech. Compare:

- *direct* The police officer said to us, "Where **are you going** ?"
  reported The police officer asked us where **we were going** .
- *direct* Olivia asked, "What time **does the store close** ?"
  reported Olivia wanted to know what time **the store closed** .

In reported speech the verb usually changes to the past (**were, closed**, etc.). See Unit 45.

Study these examples. You had a job interview, and the interviewer asked you these questions:



Are you willing to travel?

What **do you do** in your spare time?

How long **have you** been working in your present job?

Why **did you apply** for the job?

Can you speak any other languages?

Do you have a driver's license?

Later you tell a friend what the interviewer asked you. You use *reported speech*:

- She asked if (*or* whether) **I was** willing to travel.
- She wanted to know what **I did** in my spare time.
- She asked how long **I had** been working in my present job.
- She asked why **I had** applied for the job. *or* ... why I **applied** ...
- She wanted to know if (*or* whether) **I could** speak any other languages.
- She asked if (*or* whether) **I had** a driver's license.

Reported Speech → Units 45–46

Exercises

48.1 Which is right? Check (✓) the correct alternative.

1 a Do you know what time the movie starts? ✓
b Do you know what time does the movie start?
c Do you know what time starts the movie?

2 a Why Amy does get up so early every day?
b Why Amy gets up so early every day?
c Why does Amy get up so early every day?

3 a I want to know what this word means.
b I want to know what does this word mean.
c I want to know what means this word.

4 a I can't remember where did I park the car.
b I can't remember where I parked the car.
c I can't remember where I did park the car.

5 a Why you didn't call me yesterday?
b Why didn't you call me yesterday?
c Why you not called me yesterday?

6 a Do you know where does Anna work?
b Do you know where Anna does work?
c Do you know where Anna works?

7 a How much it costs to park here?
b How much does it cost to park here?
c How much it does cost to park here?

8 a Tell me what you want.
b Tell me what you do want.
c Tell me what do you want.

48.2 Put the words in the correct order.

1 (it / you / what time / know / is) Do you know what time it is?
2 (is / to the airport / far / it) How ..... ?
3 (wonder / is / how / old / Tom) I ..... .
4 (they / married / been / have) How long ..... ?
5 (they / married / how long / been / have / know)
Do you ..... ?
6 (tell / the train station / you / me / is / where)
Could ..... ?
7 (in the accident / injured / anyone / don't / whether / know / was)
I ..... .
8 (what / tomorrow / know / time / will / arrive / you / you)
Do ..... ?

48.3 You were visiting Chicago. You met a lot of people who asked you a lot of questions:

1  Where are you from?

2  How long have you been in Chicago?

3  Have you been to Chicago before?

4  Do you like Chicago?

5  Where are you staying?

6  How long are you going to stay?

7  Do you think Chicago is expensive?

8  Why did you come to Chicago?

Now you tell a friend what people asked you. Use reported speech.

1 He asked me where I was from.
2 She asked me .....
3 They .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....

→ Additional Exercise 26 (pages 310–312)

Unit 49

Auxiliary Verbs (**have/do/can**, etc.)
I think so / I hope so, etc.

A

In these sentences there is an *auxiliary* verb and a *main* verb:

	auxiliary	*main*	
I	**have**	**lost**	my keys.
She	**can't**	**come**	to the party.
The hotel	**was**	**built**	ten years ago.
Why	**do** you	**want**	to go home?

In these examples **have/can't/was/do** are auxiliary (= helping) verbs.

You can use an auxiliary verb when you don't want to repeat something:

- "Have you locked the door?" "Yes, I **have**." (= I have *locked the door*)
- Mike wasn't working, but Emily **was**. (= Emily was *working*)
- Jessica could lend me the money, but she **won't**. (= she won't *lend me the money*)

We use **do/does/did** for the simple present and simple past:

- "Do you like onions?" "Yes, I **do**." (= I *like onions*)
- "Does Matt live in Miami?" "He **did**, but he **doesn't** anymore."

You can use auxiliary verbs to deny what somebody says (= say it is not true):

- "You're sitting in my place." "No, I**'m not**." (= I'm not *sitting in your place*)
- "You didn't lock the door before you left." "Yes, I **did**." (= I *locked the door*)

B

We use **He has**? / **She isn't**? / **You are**?, etc. to show that we are interested in what somebody has said, or to show surprise:

- "Josh has changed a lot." "**He has**? I haven't seen him lately."
- "Liz isn't very well today." "**She isn't**? What's wrong with her?"
- "It rained every day during our vacation." "**It did**? That's too bad!"
- "I'm getting married." "**You are**? Really?"

C

We use auxiliary verbs with **so** and **neither**:

- "I'm tired." "**So am I**." (= I'm tired too)
- "I never read newspapers." "**Neither do I**." (= I never read newspapers either)
- Sarah can't drive, and **neither can Nick**.

Note the word order after **so** and **neither** (verb before subject):

- I passed the exam, and **so did Paul**. (*not* so Paul did)

Instead of **neither**, you can use **not** ... **either**:

- "I don't know." "**Neither** do I." *or* "I do**n't either**."

D

I think so / I suppose so, etc.

You can say **I think so / I suppose so**, etc., when we don't want to repeat something:

- "Are those people Korean?" "**I think so**." (= I think *they are Korean*)
- "Will you be home tomorrow morning?" "**I guess so**." (= I guess *I'll be home*)
- "Is Kate working tomorrow?" "**I suppose so**." (= I suppose *she is working tomorrow*)

In the same way we say: **I hope so** and **I'm afraid so**.

The usual negative forms are:

I think so → I **don't think so**
I hope so / I'm afraid so → I **hope not** / I**'m afraid not**
I guess so / I suppose so → I **guess not** / I **suppose not**

- "Is that woman American?" "**I think so**. / **I don't think so**."
- "Do you think it will rain?" "**I hope so**. / **I hope not**." (*not* I don't hope so)

British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

49.1 Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (do/was/could/might, etc.). Sometimes the verb must be negative (don't/wasn't, etc.).

1 I wasn't tired, but my friends *were*.
2 I like hot weather, but Anna _____.
3 "Is Andy here?" "He _____ five minutes ago, but I think he's gone home now."
4 I haven't traveled much, but Dan _____.
5 Hannah said she might come and see us tomorrow, but I don't think she _____.
6 I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I _____?
7 "Please don't tell anybody what happened." "Don't worry. I _____."
8 "You never listen to me." "Yes, I _____!"
9 I usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I _____.
10 "Do you think it's going to rain?" "It _____. Take an umbrella just in case."
11 "Are you and Chris going to the party?" "I _____, but Chris _____."
12 "Please help me." "I'm sorry. I _____ if I _____, but I _____."

49.2 You never agree with Amy. Answer in the way shown.



1	I'm hungry.	*You are? I'm not.*
2	I don't like driving.	*You don't? I do.*
3	I like football.	
4	I didn't enjoy the movie.	
5	I'm not tired.	
6 AMY	I thought the exam was easy.	

49.3 Liz tells you something. If the same is true for you, answer with So ... or Neither ... (as in the first example). Otherwise, ask Liz questions (as in the second example).



1	I'm not tired.	*Neither am I.*
2	I work hard.	*You do? What do you do?*
3	I watched TV last night.	
4	I won't be home tomorrow morning.	
5	I like reading.	
6	I'd like to live somewhere else.	
7 LIZ	I can't go out tonight.	
8	I'm looking forward to the weekend.	

49.4 What do you say to Sam? Use I think so, I hope not, etc.

1 (You don't like rain.)
SAM: Is it going to rain?
YOU: *I hope not.* (hope)

2 (You need more money.)
SAM: Do you think you'll get a pay raise?
YOU: _____ (hope)

3 (You're going to a party. You can't stand John.)
SAM: Will John be at the party?
YOU: _____ (hope)

4 (You're not sure whether Amy is married, but she probably isn't.)
SAM: Is Amy married?
YOU: _____ (think)

5 (Sarah has lived in Italy for many years.)
SAM: Does Sarah speak Italian?
YOU: _____ (suppose)

6 (You have to leave Sam's party early.)
SAM: Do you have to leave already?
YOU: _____ (afraid)

7 (You're not sure what time the movie starts, but it probably starts at 7:30.)
SAM: What time is the movie? 7:30?
YOU: _____ (think)

8 (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.)
SAM: Do you have a room for tonight?
YOU: _____ (afraid)

Unit 50

Tag Questions (**do you? isn't it?**, etc.)

A

Study these examples:





Have you? and **wasn't it**? are *tag questions*. These are mini-questions that you can put on the end of a sentence. In tag questions, we use an auxiliary verb (**have/was/will**, etc.).

We use **do/does/did** for the simple present and simple past (see Unit 49):

- "Emily plays the piano, **does**n't she?" "Well, yes, but not very well."
- "You didn't lock the door, **did** you?" "No, I forgot."

B

Normally we use a *negative* tag question after an *affirmative* sentence:

affirmative sentence	+ *negative tag*
Kate **will** be here soon,	**won't she**?
There **was** a lot of traffic,	**wasn't there**?
Joe **should** pass the exam,	**shouldn't he**?

... and an *affirmative* tag question after a *negative* sentence:

negative sentence	+ *affirmative tag*
Kate **won't** be late,	**will she**?
They **don't** like us,	**do they**?
You **haven't** eaten yet,	**have you**?

Notice the meaning of **yes** and **no** in answer to a negative sentence:

- "You're **not** going out this morning, **are you**?" { "**Yes.**" (= Yes, I am going out) / "**No.**" (= No, I am not going out)

C

The meaning of a tag question depends on how you say it. If your voice goes *down*, you are not really asking a question. You expect the listener to agree with you:

- "It's a nice day, **isn't it**?" "Yes, beautiful."
- "David doesn't look well today, **does he**?" "No, he looks very tired."
- "She's very funny. She has a wonderful sense of humor, **doesn't she**?" "Yes, she does."

But if the voice goes *up*, it is a real question:

- "You haven't seen Kate today, **have you**?" "No, I haven't."
  (= Have you seen Kate today?)

You can use a *negative sentence + affirmative tag* to ask for things or information, or to ask somebody to do something. The voice goes *up* at the end of the tag:

- "You couldn't do me a favor, **could you**?" "It depends what it is."
- "You don't know where Lauren is, **do you**?" "Sorry, I have no idea."

D

After **Do** / **Listen** / **Give** ..., etc. (*imperative*), the tag question is usually **will you**:

- **Listen** to me, **will you**? (the voice goes *up*)

After **I'm** ... , the negative tag question is **aren't I**? (= am I not?):

- "I'm right, **aren't I**?" "Yes, you are."

Auxiliary Verbs (**have/do/can**, etc.) ➜ Unit 49

Exercises

50.1 Complete these sentences with a tag question.

1	Kate won't be late,	will she ?	No, she's never late.
2	You're tired,	aren't you ?	Yes, a little.
3	You travel a lot,	?	Yes, I love traveling.
4	You weren't listening,	?	Yes, I was!
5	Sarah doesn't know Anna,	?	No, they've never met.
6	Jack's on vacation,	?	Yes, he's in Australia.
7	It didn't take long to get here,	?	No, just ten minutes.
8	You can speak German,	?	Yes, but not fluently.
9	They won't mind if I take a picture,	?	No, of course they won't.
10	There are a lot of people here,	?	Yes, more than I expected.
11	Pay attention to me,	?	Yes, OK.
12	This isn't very interesting,	?	No, not really.
13	I'm too impatient,	?	Yes, you are sometimes.
14	You wouldn't tell anyone,	?	No, of course not.
15	Jen has lived here a long time,	?	Yes, 20 years.
16	I shouldn't have lost my temper,	?	No, but that's all right.
17	He'd never met her before,	?	No, that was the first time.

50.2 In these situations you expect your friend to agree with you. Use a tag question in your sentences.

1 You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining. You say to your friend:
(beautiful day) *It's a beautiful day, isn't it?*

2 You're with a friend outside a restaurant. You're looking at the prices, which are very high.
You say: (expensive) It .....

3 You and a colleague have just finished a training course. You really enjoyed it. You say to your colleague: (great) The course .....

4 Your friend's hair is much shorter than when you last met. You say to her/him:
(get / your hair / cut) You .....

5 You're listening to a woman singing. You like her voice very much. You say to your friend:
(a good voice) She .....

6 You're trying on a jacket in a store. You look in the mirror and you don't like what you see.
You say to your friend:
(not / look / right) It .....

7 You and a friend are walking over a small wooden bridge. The bridge is old, and some parts are broken. You say:
(not / very safe) This bridge .....

50.3 In these situations you are asking for information, asking people to do things, etc.

1 You need a pen. Perhaps Olivia has one. Ask her.
Olivia, you don't have a pen I could borrow, do you?

2 You have to move a heavy table. You want Joe to help you with it. Ask him.
Joe, you .....

3 You're looking for Sarah. Perhaps Rachel knows where she is. Ask her.
Rachel, you .....

4 You want to borrow a tennis racket. Maybe Nicole has one. Ask her.
Nicole, ...

5 Anna has a car and you need a ride to the train station. Maybe she'll take you. Ask her.
Anna, ...

6 You're looking for your keys. Maybe Robert has seen them. Ask him.
Robert, ...

Unit 51

Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing, etc.)

A

We say:

- I **enjoy reading**. (*not* I enjoy to read)
- Would you **mind closing** the door? (*not* mind to close)
- Chris **suggested going** to the movies. (*not* suggested to go)



After **enjoy**, **mind**, and **suggest**, we use **-ing** (*not* **to** ...).

Some more verbs that are followed by **-ing**:

stop	**recommend**	**deny**	**risk**	**miss**
finish	**consider**	**avoid**	**imagine**	

- Suddenly everybody **stopped talking**. There was silence.
- I'll do the shopping when I've **finished cleaning** the apartment.
- He tried to **avoid answering** my question.
- Have you ever **considered going** to live in another country?
- They said they were innocent. They **denied doing** anything wrong.
- After they moved, they **missed spending** time with their family.

The negative form is **not -ing**:

- When I'm on vacation, I enjoy **not having** to get up early.

B

We also use **-ing** after:

give up (= stop, stop trying)
put off (= delay until later)
go on (= continue)
keep *or* **keep on** (= do something continuously or repeatedly)

- I **gave up talking** to them; they don't listen.
- You shouldn't **put off telling** him what happened. You need to tell him now.
- Katherine doesn't want to retire. She wants to **go on working**.
- You **keep interrupting** me when I'm talking. *or* You **keep on interrupting** me ...

C

With some verbs you can use the structure *verb* + somebody + **-ing**:

- I can't **imagine George riding** a motorbike.
- Did she really say that? I don't **remember her saying** that.
- Sorry to **keep you waiting** so long.

D

When you talk about finished actions, you can say **having done/stolen/said**, etc.:

- They denied **having stolen** the money.

But it is not necessary to use **having** (done). You can say:

- They denied **stealing** the money.
- I now regret **saying** that. *or* I now regret **having said** that.

E

Other structures are possible with **deny**, **suggest**, and **recommend**. For example, you can say:

- They **denied** (that) **they had done** anything wrong. (= They **denied doing** ...)
- Chris **suggested** (that) **we go** to the movies. (= Chris **suggested going** ...)
- I **recommend** (that) **you take** the train. (= I **recommend taking** ...)

suggest ➜ Unit 32 **being done** (passive) ➜ Unit 42B Verb + **to** ... ➜ Unit 52
Verb + **to** ... and **-ing** ➜ Units 54–56 **remember** / **regret** / **go on** ➜ Unit 54B **go on** / **keep on** ➜ Unit 138A

Exercises

51.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use -ing.

1 What should we do? / We could go to the zoo.
She suggested *going to the zoo*.

2 Do you like to play tennis? / No, not really.
He doesn't enjoy .....

3 Let's go for a walk. / Good idea!
She suggested .....

4 You caused the accident. / No, I didn't.
He denied .....

5 Can you wait a few minutes? / Sure, no problem.
They didn't mind .....

6 Should I study Spanish? / No! Study Portuguese!
She recommended .....

51.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from these verbs (in the correct form):

~~answer~~	apply	drive	forget	interrupt	listen
live	lose	make	pay	read	study

1 He tried to avoid *answering* my question.
2 I'm trying to concentrate. Please stop ..... so much noise!
3 I enjoy ..... to music.
4 I considered ..... for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
5 Have you finished ..... that magazine yet?
6 We need to change our routine. We can't go on ..... like this.
7 It's better to avoid ..... during rush hour.
8 My memory is getting worse. I keep ..... things.
9 I've put off ..... this bill so many times. I absolutely have to do it today.
10 I've given up ..... Japanese. I was making no progress.
11 If you gamble, you risk ..... your money.
12 Would you mind not ..... me all the time? Let me speak!

51.3 Put the words in the right order.

1 Did she really say that? I [that / remember / her / saying / don't].
I *don't remember her saying that.*
2 It's OK if you want to drive my car. I [driving / don't / it / you / mind].
I .....
3 What a stupid thing to do! Can [imagine / so stupid / being / you / anybody]?
Can .....
4 Ben said he used to play chess, which is strange. I [remember / chess / him / don't / playing].
I .....
5 I'll be as fast as I can. I [waiting / want / keep / you / don't / to].
I .....

51.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use -ing.

1 She's a very interesting person. I always enjoy *talking to her*.
2 I'm afraid there aren't any chairs. I hope you don't mind .....
3 It was a beautiful day, so I suggested .....
4 The movie was very funny. I couldn't stop .....
5 My car is unreliable. It keeps .....

Unit 52

Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ..., etc.)

A

After these verbs you can use **to** ... (*infinitive*):

offer	**plan**	**manage**	**deserve**
agree	**arrange**	**fail**	**afford**
refuse	**hope**	**promise**	**learn**
decide	**forget**	**threaten**	**tend**

- It was a long way to walk, so we **decided to take** a taxi home.
- Kevin was in a difficult situation, so I **agreed to help** him.
- I waved to Emily, but **failed to attract** her attention.
- I like Dan, but he **tends to talk** too much.
- How old were you when you **learned to drive**?
  or ... learned **how** to drive?



Dan **tends to talk** too much.

The negative is **not to** ... :

- We **decided not to go** out because of the weather.
- I **promised not to be** late.

After some verbs, we use **-ing** (*not* **to** ...). For example, **enjoy/think/suggest**:

- I **enjoy reading**. (*not* enjoy to read)
- Andy **suggested meeting** for coffee. (*not* suggested to meet)
- Are you **thinking of buying** a car? (*not* thinking to buy)

For verb + **-ing**, see Units 51 and 60.

B

We also use **to** ... after **seem**, **appear**, **pretend** and **claim**. For example:

- They **seem to have** plenty of money.
- Anna **pretended not to see** me when she passed me in the street.

You can also use **to be -ing** (*continuous infinitive*) and **to have (done)** (*perfect infinitive*):

- I **pretended to be reading** a book. (= I pretended that I **was reading**)
- Have you seen my keys? I **seem to have lost** them. (= it seems that I **have lost** them)
- She **claimed not to have seen** me. (= she claimed that she **hadn't seen** me)

C

After **dare** you can use a verb with or without **to**:

- I didn't **dare to tell** him. *or* I didn't **dare tell** him.

D

After these verbs you can use a question word (**what/how**, etc.) + **to** ... :

ask **know** **decide** **remember** **forget** **learn** **explain** **understand** **wonder**

For example:

We **asked**	**how**	**to get**	to the train station.
Have you **decided**	**where**	**to go**	for your vacation?
I don't **know**	**whether**	**to apply**	for the job or not.
Do you **understand**	**what**	**to do?**	

also

show/tell/ask/advise/teach somebody **what/how/where** to do something:

- Can somebody **show me how to use** this camera?
- Ask Jack. He'll **tell you what to do**.

Verb + **-ing** ➜ Unit 51 Verb + Object + **to** ... (**want**, etc.) ➜ Unit 53
Verb + **to** ... and **-ing** ➜ Units 53C, 54–56

Exercises

52.1 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1 

They decided *to get married*.

2 

She agreed .....

3 

He offered .....

4 

They arranged .....

5 

She refused .....

6 

She promised .....

52.2 Complete the sentences. Use an appropriate verb.

1 Don't forget *to lock* the door when you go out.
2 There was a lot of traffic, but we managed ..... to the airport on time.
3 We couldn't afford ..... in New York. It's too expensive.
4 I can't play a musical instrument, but I'd like to learn ..... the guitar.
5 I don't want Mike to know what happened. I decided not ..... him.
6 We were all afraid to speak. Nobody dared ..... anything.

52.3 Put the verb into the correct form, **to** ... or **-ing**. (See Unit 51 for verbs + **-ing**)

1 When I'm tired, I enjoy *watching* TV. It's relaxing. (watch)
2 I've decided ..... for another job. I need a change. (look)
3 I'm not going anywhere! I refuse ..... . (move)
4 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind ..... . (wait)
5 Jessica ran in a marathon last week, but she failed ..... . (finish)
6 I wish that dog would stop ..... . It's driving me crazy. (bark)
7 They didn't know I was listening to them. I pretended ..... asleep. (be)
8 We were hungry, so I suggested ..... dinner early. (have)
9 Hurry up! I don't want to risk ..... the train. (miss)
10 David is very quiet. He tends not ..... much. (say)

52.4 Make a new sentence using the verb in parentheses.

1 I've lost my keys. (seem) *I seem to have lost my keys.*
2 Tom is worried about something. (appear) Tom appears .....
3 You know a lot of people. (seem) You .....
4 My English is getting better. (seem) .....
5 That car has broken down. (appear) .....
6 Rachel is enjoying her job. (seem) .....
7 They have solved the problem. (claim) .....

52.5 Complete each sentence using **what/how/where/whether** + these verbs:

do ~~**get**~~ **go** **put** **ride** **use**

1 Do you know *how to get to* the airport from here?
2 Would you know ..... if there was a fire in the building?
3 You'll never forget ..... a bike once you've learned.
4 I've been invited to the party, but I haven't decided ..... or not.
5 My room is very messy. I've got so many things and I don't know ..... them.
6 I have some clothes to wash. Can you show me ..... the washing machine?

→ Additional Exercises 27–29 (pages 312–314)

Unit 53

Verb (+ Object) + to ... (I want you to ...)

A

We say:

Verb + **to** ...				*Verb* + *Object* + **to** ...		
want **expect** **ask** **help** **would like** **would prefer**	**to go** **to be** **to work**, etc.	*and*		**want** **expect** **ask** **help** **would like** **would prefer**	somebody something	**to go** **to be** **to work**, etc.

- We **expected to be** late.
- **Would** you **like to go** now?
- He doesn't **want to know**.
- We expected **Dan to be** late.
- Would you like **me to go** now?
- He doesn't want **anybody to know**.

We do not usually say "want that":

- Do you **want me to come** with you? (*not* want that I come)

You can use **help** with or without **to**. You can say:

- Can you help me **to move** this table? *or* Can you help me **move** this table?

B

These verbs have the structure *verb* + *object* + **to** ... :

Verb + *Object* + **to** ...		
tell **advise** **remind** **warn** **invite** **encourage** **persuade** **get** **force** **teach** **allow** **enable**	somebody	**to do** **to be** **to work** etc.

- It's not a nice hotel. I wouldn't **advise you to stay** there.
- Can you **remind me to call** Sam tomorrow?
- Joe said the switch was dangerous and **warned me not to touch** it.
- I didn't move the piano by myself. I **got somebody to help** me.
- Who **taught you to drive**?
- They don't **allow people to park** in front of the building.

In these examples, the verb is *passive* (**I was warned** / **we are allowed**, etc.):

- **I was warned not to touch** the switch.
- **Are we allowed to park** here?

We do not use **suggest** with **to** ... :

- Jane **suggested that I ask** for your advice. (*not* Jane suggested me to ask)

C

We say "**make** somebody **do** something," "**let** somebody **do** something" (without **to**):

- I **made him promise** that he wouldn't tell anybody what happened. (*not* made him to promise)
- Hot weather **makes me** feel tired. (= causes me to feel tired)
- Her parents wouldn't **let her go** out alone. (= wouldn't allow her to go out)
- **Let me carry** your bag for you.

We say "**make** somebody **do**," but in the *passive* we say "(be) **made to** do" (with **to**):

- **We were made to wait** for two hours. (= They **made us wait** ...)

suggest ➜ Units 32, 51 | **tell**/**ask** somebody **to** ... ➜ Unit 46D | Verb + **-ing** ➜ Unit 51
Verb + **to** ... ➜ Unit 52 | Verb + **to** ... and **-ing** ➜ Units 54–56 | **help** ➜ Unit 55C

Exercises

53.1 Complete the questions. Use do you want me to ... ? or would you like me to ... ? with these verbs (and any other necessary words):

~~come~~ lend repeat show shut wait

1 Do you want to go alone, or *do you want me to come with you* ?
2 Do you have enough money, or do you want ... ?
3 Should I leave the window open, or would you ... ?
4 Do you know how to use the printer, or would ... ?
5 Did you hear what I said, or do ... ?
6 Can I go now, or do ... ?

53.2 Complete the sentences for these situations.

1 Meet me at the train station. — OK.
She told *him to meet her at the train station* .

2 Why don't you come and stay with us? — That would be nice.
They invited him ... .

3 Don't forget to call Joe. — No, I won't forget.
He reminded her ... .

4 Be careful. — Don't worry. I will.
She warned ... .

5 Can you give me a hand? — Sure.
He asked ... .

53.3 Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.

1 My father said I could use his car.
My father allowed *me to use his car.*
2 I was surprised that it rained.
I didn't expect ...
3 Don't stop him from doing what he wants.
Let ...
4 Tom looks older when he wears glasses.
Tom's glasses make ...
5 I think you should know the truth.
I want ...
6 At first I didn't want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me.
Sarah persuaded ...
7 My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.
My lawyer advised ...
8 I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.
I was warned ...
9 If you have a car, you are able to get around more easily.
Having a car enables ...

53.4 Which is right?

1 You aren't allowed ~~take~~ / to take pictures here. (to take *is correct*)
2 I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me do / to do?
3 The movie was very sad. It made me cry / to cry.
4 Megan's parents always encouraged her study / to study hard in school.
5 Please don't interrupt me. Let me finish / to finish.
6 You can't make people do / to do things they don't want to do.
7 You can't force people do / to do things they don't want to do.
8 Sarah won't let me drive / to drive her car. She doesn't trust me.
9 Why did you change your decision? What made you change / to change your mind?
10 If you enter a country with a tourist visa, you are not allowed work / to work there.

→ Additional Exercises 27–29 (pages 312–314)

Unit 54

Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember, regret, etc.)

A

Some verbs are followed by **-ing**, and some are followed by **to** ... .

Verbs that you can use with **-ing** (*not* **to** ...):

avoid	**imagine**	**stop**
consider	**keep (on)**	**suggest**
deny	**mind**	
enjoy	**postpone**	
finish	**risk**	

For examples, see Unit 51.

Verbs that you can use with **to** ... :

afford	**fail**	**offer**
agree	**forget**	**plan**
arrange	**hope**	**promise**
decide	**learn**	**refuse**
deserve	**manage**	**tend**

For examples, see Unit 52.

B

Some verbs can be followed by **-ing** or **to** ... with a difference of meaning:

remember

I **remember doing** something = I did it, and now I remember this.
You **remember doing** something *after* you have done it.

- I know I locked the door. I clearly **remember locking** it.
  (= I locked it, and now I remember this)
- He could **remember driving** along the road just before the accident, but he couldn't remember the accident itself.

I **remembered to do** something =
I remembered that I had to do it, so I did it.
You **remember to do** something *before* you do it.

- I **remembered to lock** the door, but I forgot to shut the windows.
  (= I remembered that I had to lock it, and so I locked it)
- **Remember to buy** some bananas.
  (= Don't forget to buy them)

regret

I **regret doing** something = I did it, and now I am sorry about it:

- I now **regret saying** what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
- Do you **regret not** going to college?

I **regret to say / to tell** you / **to inform** you =
I am sorry that I have to say:

- *(from a formal letter)* I **regret to say** that we are unable to accept your offer.

go on

go on doing something = continue doing the same thing:

- The president paused for a moment and then **went on talking**.
- We need to change. We can't **go on living** like this.

go on to do something = do or say something new:

- After discussing the economy, the president **went on to talk** about foreign policy.

C

We use the following verbs with **-ing** or **to** ... with no difference of meaning:
begin **start** **continue** **bother**

So you can say:

- It **started raining**. *or* It **started to rain.**
- Don't **bother locking** the door. *or* Don't **bother to lock** ...

Normally we do not use **-ing** after **-ing**:

- It's **starting to rain**. (*not usually* It's starting raining)

Verb + **-ing** → Unit 51 Verb + **to** ... → Units 52–53 Other Verbs + **-ing** or **to** ... → Units 55–56

Exercises

54.1 Put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to ... .

1 They denied stealing the money. (steal)
2 I don't enjoy ..... very much. (drive)
3 I can't afford ..... away. I don't have enough money. (go)
4 Have you ever considered ..... to live in another country? (go)
5 We were unlucky to lose the game. We played well and deserved ..... . (win)
6 Why do you keep ..... me questions? Leave me alone! (ask)
7 Please stop ..... me questions! (ask)
8 I refuse ..... any more questions. (answer)
9 The driver of one of the cars denied ..... the accident. (cause)
10 Chris needed our help, and we promised ..... what we could. (do)
11 I don't mind ..... alone, but I'd rather be with other people. (be)
12 The wall was quite high, but I managed ..... over it. (climb)
13 Sarah doesn't know about the meeting. I forgot ..... her. (tell)
14 I've enjoyed ..... to you. I hope ..... you again soon. (talk, see)

54.2 Tom can remember some things about his childhood, but he can't remember others. Write sentences with He remembers ... or He doesn't remember ... .

1 He was in the hospital when he was a small child. He can still remember this.
He remembers being in the hospital when he was a small child.
2 He cried on his first day at school. He doesn't remember this.
He doesn't ..... on his first day at school.
3 Once he fell into a river. He remembers this.
He ..... .
4 He said he wanted to be a doctor. He doesn't remember this.
..... to be a doctor.
5 Once he was bitten by a dog. He doesn't remember this.
..... a dog.
6 His sister was born when he was four. He remembers this.
..... .

54.3 Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb in the correct form, -ing or to ... .

1 a Please remember to lock the door when you go out.
b He says we've met before, but I don't remember ..... him.
c Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember ..... it by the window, and now it isn't there.
d When you see Steve, remember ..... hello to him for me.
e A: You lent me some money a few months ago.
B: Did I? Are you sure? I don't remember ..... you any money.
f A: Did you remember ..... your sister?
B: No, I forgot. I'll call her tomorrow.
2 a The course I took wasn't very good, but I don't regret ..... it.
b I knew they were in trouble, but I regret ..... I did nothing to help them.
c It started to get cold, and he regretted not ..... his coat.
d I now regret ..... my job. It was a big mistake.
3 a Ben joined the company nine years ago. He became assistant manager after two years, and a few years later he went on ..... manager of the company.
b I can't go on ..... here anymore. I want a different job.
c When I came into the room, Liz was reading a book. She looked up and said hello, and then went on ..... her book.
d Food prices have gone up again. How are we going to manage if prices go on ..... .

→ Additional Exercises 27–29 (pages 312–314)

Unit 55

Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try, need, help)

A try to ... and try -ing

try to do = attempt to do, make an effort to do:

- I was very tired. I **tried to keep** my eyes open, but I couldn't.
- Please **try to be** quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.

try something or **try doing something** = do it as an experiment or test:

- These cookies are delicious. You should **try one**. (= have one to see if you like it)
- We couldn't find anywhere to stay. We **tried every hotel** in the town, but they were all full. (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room)
- A: The photocopier doesn't seem to be working.
  B: **Try pressing** the green button.
  (= press the green button—maybe this will help to solve the problem)

Compare:

- I **tried to move** the table, but it was too heavy. (so I couldn't move it)
- I didn't like the way the furniture was arranged, so I **tried moving** the table to the other side of the room. But it didn't look right, so I moved it back again. (I **tried moving** it = I moved it to see if it looked better)

B need to ... and need -ing

I need to do something = it is necessary for me to do it:

- He **needs to work** harder if he wants to make progress.
- I don't **need to come** to the meeting, do I?

Something **needs to be done** = someone needs to do it

- My phone **needs to be charged**.
- Does your suit **need to be cleaned**?

Sometimes people say that something **needs -ing**:

- My phone **needs charging**. (= it **needs to be charged**)
- Does your suit **need cleaning**? (= ... **need to be cleaned**)



Compare:

- **I** need **to charge** my phone.

but **My phone** needs **charging**. / **My phone** needs **to be charged**.

C help and can't help

You can say **help to do** or **help do** (with or without **to**):

- Everybody **helped to clean** up after the party. *or* Everybody **helped clean** up ...
- Can you **help** me **move** this table? *or* Can you **help** me **to move** ...

I **can't help doing** something = I can't stop myself from doing it:

- I don't like him, but he has a lot of problems. I **can't help feeling** sorry for him.
- She tried to be serious, but she **couldn't help laughing**. (= she couldn't stop herself from laughing)
- I'm sorry I'm so nervous. I **can't help it**. (= I can't help **being** nervous)



She **couldn't help laughing**.

Verb + **-ing** → Unit 51 Verb + **to** ... → Units 52–53 Other Verbs + **-ing** or **to** ... → Units 54, 56

Exercises

55.1 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 I was very tired. I tried *to keep* my eyes open, but I couldn't. (keep)
2 I tried ..... the shelf, but I wasn't tall enough. (reach)
3 I rang the doorbell, but there was no answer. Then I tried ..... on the window, but there was still no answer. (knock)
4 We tried ..... the fire out, but without success. We had to call the fire department. (put)
5 Please leave me alone. I'm trying ..... . (concentrate)
6 Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried ..... Carl, but he didn't have any. (ask)
7 Mr. Bennett isn't here right now. Please try ..... later. (call)
8 The woman's face was familiar. I tried ..... where I'd seen her before. (remember)
9 If you have a problem with the computer, try ..... it. (restart)

55.2 For each picture, write a sentence with need(s) + one of the following verbs:

clean **cut** **empty** ~~**paint**~~ **tighten**



1 This room isn't very nice. *It needs painting* .....
2 The grass is very long. It ..... .
3 The windows are dirty. They ..... .
4 The screws are loose. ..... .
5 The trash can is full. ..... .

55.3 Which is right?

1 We spend too much time sitting down. We need ~~getting~~ / to get more exercise. (to get *is correct*)
2 These clothes are dirty. They all need washing / to wash.
3 My grandmother isn't able to look after herself anymore. She needs looking / to look after.
4 I can't make a decision right now. I need thinking / to think about it.
5 Your hair is getting very long. It will need cutting / to cut soon.
6 I need a change. I need going / to go away for a while.
7 That shirt looks fine. You don't need ironing / to iron it.
8 That shirt looks fine. It doesn't need ironing / to iron.

55.4 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 I don't like him, but I can't help *feeling* sorry for him. (feel)
2 I've lost my phone. Can you help me ..... for it? (look)
3 They were talking very loudly. We couldn't help ..... what they said. (overhear)
4 He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can't help ..... . (smile)
5 The nice weather helped ..... it a really nice vacation. (make)
6 Did you help ..... the meeting? (organize)
7 I think about what happened all the time. I can't help ..... about it. (think)
8 I can't help you ..... a job. You have to find one yourself. (get)

Unit 56

Verb + -ing or to ... 3 (like / would like, etc.)

A like / love / hate

When you talk about repeated actions, you can use **-ing** or **to** ... after these verbs.
So you can say:

- Do you **like getting** up early? *or* Do you **like to get** up early?
- Stephanie **hates flying**. *or* Stephanie **hates to fly**.
- I **love meeting** people. *or* I **love to meet** people.
- I don't **like being** kept waiting. *or* ... **like to be** kept waiting.
- I don't **like** friends **calling** me at work. *or* ... friends **to call** me at work.

but

(1) We use **-ing** (*not* **to** ...) when we talk about a situation that already exists (or existed).
For example:

- Dan lives in Vancouver now. He **likes living** there.
  (he lives there now and he likes it)
- Do you **like being** a student? (you are a student—do you like it?)
- The office I worked in was horrible. I **hated working** there. (I worked there and I hated it)

(2) There is sometimes a difference between **I like to do** and **I like doing**:

I like doing something = I do it and I enjoy it:

- I **like cleaning** the kitchen. (= I enjoy it.)

I **like to do** something = I choose to do it (but maybe I don't enjoy it):

- It's not my favorite job, but I **like to clean** the kitchen as often as possible.

Note that we use **-ing** (*not* **to** ...) with **enjoy** and **mind**:

- I **enjoy cleaning** the kitchen. (*not* I enjoy to clean)
- I **don't mind cleaning** the kitchen. (*not* I don't mind to clean)

B would like / would love / would hate / would prefer

Would like / would love, etc. are usually followed by **to** ... :

- **I'd like** (= I **would** like) to go away for a few days.
- What **would** you **like to do** this evening?
- I **wouldn't like to go** on vacation alone.
- **I'd love to meet** your family.
- **Would** you **prefer to eat** now or later?

Compare **I like** and **I would like** (**I'd** like):

- I **like playing** tennis. / I **like to play** tennis. (= I like it in general)
- **I'd like to play** tennis today. (= I want to play today)

Would mind is followed by **-ing**:

- **Would** you **mind** closing the door, please? (*not* mind to close)

C I would like to have (done something)

I would like **to have done** something = I regret now that I didn't or couldn't do it:

- It's too bad we didn't see Anna. **would like to have seen** her again.
- We**'d like to have gone** away, but we were too busy at home.

We use the same structure after **would love / would hate / would prefer**:

- Poor David! I **would hate to have been** in his position.
- **I'd love to have gone** to the party, but it was impossible.

enjoy/mind ➜ Unit 51 would like ➜ Units 35E, 53A prefer ➜ Unit 57

Exercises

56.1 Write sentences about yourself. Do you like these activities? Choose from these verbs:

like / don't like **love** **hate** **enjoy** **don't mind**

1 (flying) I don't like flying. or I don't like to fly.
2 (playing cards) .....
3 (being alone) .....
4 (going to museums) .....
5 (cooking) .....
6 (getting up early) .....

56.2 Make sentences using **-ing** or **to ...** . Sometimes either form is possible.

1 Dan lives in Vancouver now. It's nice. He likes it.
(He / like / live / there) He likes living there.
2 Emily is a biology teacher. She likes her job
(She / like / teach / biology) She .....
3 Joe always has his camera with him and takes a lot of pictures.
(He / like / take / pictures) .....
4 I used to work in a supermarket. I didn't like it much.
(I / not / like / work / there) .....
5 Rachel is studying medicine. She likes it.
(She / like / study / medicine) .....
6 Dan is famous, but he doesn't like it.
(He / not / like / be / famous) .....
7 Jennifer is a very careful person. She doesn't take many risks.
(She / not / like / take / risks) .....
8 I don't like surprises.
(I / like / know / things / in advance) .....

56.3 Complete the sentences with a verb in the correct form, **-ing** or **to ...** . In two sentences, either form is possible.

1 It's fun to go to new places—I enjoy traveling .
2 "Would you like ..... down?" "No, thanks. I'll stand."
3 The music is very loud. Would you mind ..... it down?
4 How do you relax? What do you like ..... in your spare time?
5 When I have to take a train, I'm always worried that I'll miss it. So I like .....
to the station in plenty of time.
6 I enjoy ..... busy. I don't like it when there's nothing to do.
7 I would love ..... to your wedding, but I'm afraid I'll be away.
8 I don't like ..... in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.
9 Do you have a minute? I'd like ..... to you about something.
10 If there's bad news and good news, I like ..... the bad news first.
11 Should we leave now, or would you prefer ..... a little?
12 Nick wants to win every time. He hates ..... .

56.4 Write sentences using **would ... to have (done)**. Use the verbs in parentheses.

1 It's too bad I couldn't go to the party. (like) I would like to have gone to the party.
2 It's too bad I didn't see the program. (like) .....
3 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch. (hate) .....
4 It's too bad I didn't meet your parents. (love) .....
5 I'm glad I wasn't alone. (not / like) .....
6 We should have taken the train. (prefer) .....

→ Additional Exercises 27–29 (pages 312–314)

Unit 57

prefer and would rather

A prefer to ... and prefer -ing

When you say what you prefer in general, you can use "**prefer to** ..." or "**prefer -ing**":

- I don't like cities. I **prefer to live** in the country. *or* I **prefer living** in the country.

You can say:

I **prefer** something	**to** something else
I **prefer doing** something	**to doing** something else **rather than** (**doing**) something else
I **prefer to do** something	**rather than** (**do**) something else

- I **prefer** this coat **to** the other one.
- I **prefer driving to taking** the train. *or*
  I **prefer driving rather than taking** the train. *or*
  I **prefer to drive rather than take** the train.
- Sarah **prefers to live** in the country **rather than** in a city.

B would prefer (I'd prefer ...)

We use **would prefer** to say what somebody wants in a specific situation (not in general):

- "**Would** you **prefer** coffee or tea?" "Coffee, please."

We say "would prefer **to do** something" (*not usually* would prefer doing):

- A: Should we take the train?
  B: **I'd prefer to drive**. (= I **would** prefer ...)
- **I'd prefer to stay** at home tonight **rather than go** to the movies.

C would rather (I'd rather ...)

I'd rather = I **would** rather. **I'd rather do** something **= I'd prefer to do** it.
We say **I'd rather** do (*not* to do). Compare:

- "Should we take the train?" { "I'd **rather drive**." (*not* to drive) / "I'd **prefer to drive**." }
- Which **would** you **rather do**, / Which **would** you **prefer to do**, } go to the movies or go shopping?

The negative is "**I'd rather not** ...":

- I'm tired. **I'd rather not go** out tonight, if you don't mind.
- A: Do you want to go out tonight?
  B: **I'd rather not**.

We say "**I'd rather do** one thing **than do** another":

- **I'd rather stay** at home tonight **than go** to the movies.

D I'd rather somebody do something

We say "**I'd rather** you **do** something":

- A: Who's going to drive, you or me?
  B: **I'd rather** you **drive**. (= I would prefer this)
- A: Jack says he'll repair your bike tomorrow, OK?
  B: **I'd rather** he **do** it today.
- Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or **would** you **rather** I **tell** her?

In these examples, **you drive** / **he do** / **I tell** is the *subjunctive*, which is the same as the *base form*.
See Unit 32.

Subjunctive ➜ Unit 32 **would prefer** ➜ Unit 56B **prefer** (one thing) **to** (another) ➜ Unit 133D
British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

57.1 Which do you prefer? Write sentences using "I prefer (something) to (something else)".

1 (driving / taking the train)
I prefer driving to taking the train.

2 (basketball / football)
I prefer .....

3 (going to a movie theater / watching movies at home)
I ..... to .....

4 (being very busy / having nothing to do)
I .....

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using rather than

5 (1) I prefer to drive rather than take the train.
or I prefer driving rather than taking the train.

6 (3) I prefer .....

7 (4) .....

57.2 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need one word, sometimes more.

	A	B
1	Should we walk home?	I'd rather take a taxi.
2	Do you want to eat now?	I'd prefer to wait till later.
3	Would you like to watch TV?	I'd ..... to listen to some music.
4	Do you want to go to a restaurant?	I'd rather ..... at home.
5	Let's go now.	..... wait a few minutes.
6	How about a game of tennis?	I'd prefer ..... for a swim.
7	I think we should decide now.	I'd ..... think about it for a while.
8	Would you like to sit down?	..... to stand.
9	Do you want me to go with you?	I'd rather ..... alone.

Now use the same ideas to complete these sentences using than and rather than.

10 (1) I'd rather take a taxi than walk home.

11 (3) I'd rather ..... some music .....

12 (4) I'd prefer ..... at home .....

13 (6) I'd rather ..... for a swim .....

14 (7) I'd prefer ..... about it for a while .....

57.3 Complete the sentences using would you rather I ... .

1 Are you going to make dinner, or would you rather I make it ?

2 Are you going to pay the check, or would you rather ..... ?

3 Are you going to do the grocery shopping, or ..... ?

4 Are you going to call Liz, or ..... ?

57.4 Use your own ideas (one or two words) to complete these sentences.

1 I'm tired. I'd rather not go out tonight, if you don't mind.

2 I don't like this show. I'd rather not ..... it.

3 I don't want to go to the game. I'd prefer ..... it on TV.

4 I'd rather you ..... me the truth than lie about what happened.

5 Should we leave now or later? What ..... prefer to do?

6 I'd rather work outdoors ..... work in an office.

7 I'd prefer to pay by credit card ..... use cash.

8 I prefer cold weather ..... very hot weather.

9 Lauren goes out every night. Her mother would rather she ..... home more.

→ Additional Exercises 28–29 (pages 313–314)

Unit 58

Preposition (in/for/about, etc.) + -ing

A

If a preposition (**in/for/about**, etc.) is followed by a verb, the verb ends in **-ing**:

	preposition	*verb* (**-ing**)	
Are you interested	**in**	**working**	for us?
I'm not good	**at**	**learning**	languages.
Kate must be fed up	**with**	**studying**.	
What are the advantages	**of**	**having**	a car?
Thanks very much	**for**	**inviting**	me to your party.
How	**about**	**meeting**	for lunch tomorrow?
Why don't you go out	**instead of**	**sitting**	at home all the time?
Amy went to work	**in spite of**	**feeling**	sick.

You can also say "instead of **somebody** doing something," "fed up with **people** doing something," etc.:

- I'm fed up with **people** telling me what to do.

B

We say:

before -ing, after -ing:

- **Before going** out, I called Sarah. (*not* Before to go out)
- What did you do **after leaving** school?

You can also say "**Before I went** out ..." and "... **after you left** school."

by -ing (to say *how* something happens):

- You can improve your English **by reading** more.
- She made herself sick **by** not **eating** well.
- Many accidents are caused **by** people **driving** too fast.
- The burglars got into the house **by breaking** a window and **climbing** in.

without -ing:

- We ran ten miles **without stopping**.
- It was a stupid thing to say. I said it **without thinking**.
- She needs to work **without** people **disturbing** her. *or* ... **without being** disturbed.
- I have enough problems of my own **without having** to worry about yours.

C

to + -ing (look forward **to doing** something, etc.)

We often use **to** + *base form* (**to do** / **to see**, etc.):

- We decided **to travel** by train.
- Would you like **to meet** for lunch tomorrow?

But **to** is also a *preposition* (like **in/for/about/with**, etc.). For example:

- We drove from Houston **to Chicago**.
- I prefer tea **to coffee**.
- Are you looking forward **to the weekend**?

If we use a *preposition* + *verb*, the verb ends in **-ing**:

- I'm fed up **with traveling** by train.
- How **about going** away this weekend?

So, when **to** is a preposition and it is followed by a verb, we use **to -ing**:

- I prefer driving **to taking** the train. (*not* to take)
- Are you looking forward **to going** on vacation? (*not* looking forward to go)
- They admitted **to stealing** the money. (*not* to steal)

be/get used to -ing ➜ Unit 59 Verb + Preposition + **-ing** ➜ Unit 60 **while/when -ing** ➜ Unit 66A
in spite of ➜ Unit 110 Prepositions ➜ Units 118–133

Exercises

58.1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 Why is it useful to have a car?
What are the advantages of *having a car*?
2 I don't intend to apply for the job.
I have no intention of .....
3 Hannah has a good memory for names.
Hannah is good at .....
4 You probably won't win the lottery. You have very little chance.
You have very little chance of .....
5 Did you get in trouble because you were late?
Did you get in trouble for .....?
6 We didn't eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.
We went to a restaurant instead of .....
7 We got into the exhibition. We didn't have to wait in line.
We got into the exhibition without .....
8 Amy is 90 years old, but she's fit and healthy.
Amy is fit and healthy despite .....

58.2 Complete the sentences using **by -ing**. Choose from these verbs:

borrow ~~**break**~~ **drive** **push** **put** **stand**

1 The burglars got into the house *by breaking* a window.
2 I was able to reach the top shelf ..... on a chair.
3 You turn on the computer ..... the button on the back.
4 Kevin got himself into financial trouble ..... too much money.
5 You can put people's lives in danger ..... too fast.
6 We made the room look nicer ..... some pictures on the walls.

58.3 Complete the sentences with an appropriate word. Use only one word each time.

1 We ran ten miles without *stopping*.
2 Dan left the hotel without ..... his bill.
3 It's a nice morning. How about ..... for a walk?
4 You need to think carefully before ..... an important decision.
5 It was a long trip. We were tired after ..... on a train for 36 hours.
6 I'm not looking forward to ..... away. I'd prefer to stay here.
7 I was annoyed because the decision was made without anybody ..... me.
8 After ..... the same job for ten years, Liz felt she needed a change.
9 We got lost because we went straight instead of ..... left.
10 I like these pictures you took. You're good at ..... pictures.
11 Can you touch your toes without ..... your knees?
12 We decided to sell our car. Are you interested in ..... it?

58.4 For each situation, write a sentence with **I'm (not) looking forward to.**

1 You are going on vacation next week. How do you feel?
I'm looking forward to going on vacation.
2 A good friend of yours is coming to visit you soon. It will be good to see her again.
How do you feel? I'm .....
3 You're going to the dentist tomorrow. You don't enjoy visits to the dentist. How do you feel?
I'm not .....
4 Rachel doesn't like school, but she's graduating next summer. How does she feel?
.....
5 Joe and Megan are moving to a new apartment soon. It's much nicer than where they live now.
How do they feel? .....

→ Additional Exercises 27–29 (pages 312–314)

Unit 59

be/get used to ... (I'm used to ...)

A Study this example situation:



Rachel is American, but she lives in Tokyo. When she first drove a car in Tokyo, driving on the left was a problem for her because:

She **wasn't used to it**.
She **wasn't used to driving** on the left.
(because Americans drive on the right)

But after a while, driving on the left became easier.
She **got used to driving** on the left.

Now it's no problem for Rachel:
She **is used to driving** on the left.

B **I'm used to** something = it is not new or strange for me:

You can say:

be **get**	**used to**	something *or* **doing** something

- John lives alone. He has lived alone for a long time, so it is not strange for him. He**'s used to it**. He **is used to living** alone.
- I bought some new shoes. They felt a little strange at first because I **wasn't used to them**.
- Our new apartment is on a busy street. I suppose we'll **get used to the noise**, but right now it's very disturbing.
- Lauren has a new job. She has to get up much earlier now than before—at 6:30. She finds this difficult because she **isn't used to getting** up so early.
- Katherine's husband is often away from home. She doesn't mind this. **She's used to him being** away.

C We say "be/get used **to doing** something" (*not* I'm used to do).

- Rachel is used **to driving** on the left. (*not* is used to drive)
- I'm used **to living** alone. (*not* I'm used to live)

When we say "**I am used to** ...," **to** is a *preposition*:

- We're not used **to** **the noise**. / **it**. / **living here**. (*not* live here)

Compare **to** + *base form* (**to do**, **to live**, etc.):

- We don't want **to live** here.

D Compare **I am used to doing** and **I used to do**:

I **am** used **to** (**doing**) something = it isn't strange or new for me:

- I**'m** used **to the weather** here.
- I**'m** used **to driving** on the left because I've lived in Japan for a long time.

I **used to do** something = I did it regularly in the past but no longer do it. We use this only for the past (I **used** ...), not for the present. See Unit 17.

- I **used to drive** to work every day, but these days I usually ride my bike.
- We **used to live** just outside the city, but now we live near downtown.

used to (do) → Unit 17 **to + -ing** → Unit 58C

Exercises

59.1 Complete the sentences using **used to** + an appropriate verb.

1 I'm not lonely. I don't need other people. I'm *used to being* on my own.
2 I don't feel well. I stayed up until 3:00 a.m. I'm not _____ to bed so late.
3 Tomorrow I start a new job. I'll have to get _____ with new people.
4 My feet hurt. I can't go any further. I'm not _____ so far.
5 I like this part of town. I've been here a long time, so I'm _____ here.

59.2 Read about Sarah and Jack. Complete the sentences using **used to.**

1 Sarah is a nurse. A year ago she started working nights. At first it was hard for her.
Sarah *wasn't used to working* nights. It took her a few months to _____ it.
Now, after a year, it's normal for her. She _____ nights.

2 Jack has to drive two hours to work every morning. Many years ago, when he first had to do this, it was hard for him and he didn't like it.
When Jack started working in this job, he _____ driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he _____ it. Now it's no problem for him. He _____ two hours every morning.

59.3 What do you say in these situations? Use **I'm (not) used to ... .**

1 You live alone. You don't mind this. You have always lived alone.
FRIEND: Do you get lonely sometimes?
YOU: No, *I'm used to living alone.*
2 You sleep on the floor. It's OK for you. You have always slept on the floor.
FRIEND: Wouldn't you prefer to sleep in a bed?
YOU: No, I _____
3 You have to work long hours in your job. This is not a problem. You have always done this.
FRIEND: You have to work long hours in your job, don't you?
YOU: Yes, but I don't mind that. I _____
4 You've just moved from a small village to a big city. It's busy and you don't like the crowds of people.
FRIEND: How do you like living here now?
YOU: It's different from living in a village. I _____

59.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using **get/got used to.**

1 Some friends of yours have just moved into an apartment on a busy street. It is very noisy. They'll have to *get used to the noise* .
2 The children got a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her, but this wasn't a problem for the children. They soon _____ .
3 Kate moved from a big house to a much smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to _____ in a much smaller house.
4 Anna has lived in Boston for ten years. She didn't like the weather when she moved there, and she still doesn't like it. She can't _____ .
5 Tony got a new job, but his new salary was much less. So he had less money. He had to _____ .

59.5 Complete the sentences using only one word each time.

1 Rachel had to get used to *driving* on the left.
2 Daniel used to _____ a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.
3 I feel very full after that meal. I'm not used to _____ so much.
4 I wouldn't like to share a room. I'm used to _____ my own room.
5 I used to _____ a car, but I sold it a few months ago.
6 When we were children, we used to _____ swimming very often.
7 There used to _____ a school here, but it was torn down a few years ago.
8 I'm the boss here! I'm not used to _____ told what to do.

→ Additional Exercises 27–29 (pages 312–314)

Unit 60

Verb + Preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / insist on -ing, etc.)

A

We use some verbs + *preposition* + *object*. For example:

Verb + Preposition + Object

We **talked**	**about**	the problem.
I **apologized**	**for**	what I said.

If the *object* is another verb, we use **-ing**:

Verb + Preposition + -ing

We **talked**	**about**	**going** to South America.
You should **apologize**	**for**	not **telling** the truth.

You can use these verbs in the same way:

approve of	He doesn't **approve**	**of**	**swearing**.
decide against	We have **decided**	**against**	**moving** to Chicago.
dream of	I wouldn't **dream**	**of**	**asking** them for money.
feel like	I don't **feel**	**like**	**going** out tonight.
insist on	They **insisted**	**on**	**paying** for the meal.
look forward to	Are you **looking forward**	**to**	**going** away?
succeed in	Has Rob **succeeded**	**in**	**finding** a job yet?
think of/about	I'm **thinking**	**of/about**	**buying** a house.

You can also say "approve of **somebody** doing something," "look forward to **somebody** doing something," etc.:

- I don't approve **of people killing** animals as a sport.
- We are all looking forward **to** Andy **coming** home next week.

B

Some verbs can have the structure *verb + object + preposition* + **-ing**. For example:

Verb + Object + Preposition + **-ing**

accuse ... of	He **accused**	me	**of**	**telling** lies.
congratulate ... for/on	We **congratulated**	Lauren	**for/on**	**winning** the prize.
prevent ... from	What **prevented**	you	**from**	**coming** to see us?
stop ... from	The rain didn't **stop**	us	**from**	**enjoying** our trip.
suspect ... of	Nobody **suspected**	him	**of**	**being** a spy.
thank ... for	I **thanked**	everyone	**for**	**helping** me.

Note this example with **not -ing**:

- He accused me of **not telling** the truth.

Some of these verbs are often used in the *passive*. For example:

- We **were accused** of **telling** lies. (*or* ... **accused** of **lying**.)
- The general **was suspected of being** a spy.

Note that we say "apologize **to somebody** for ...":

- I apologized **to them** for keeping them waiting. (*not* I apologized them)

decide to ... → Unit 52A Preposition + **-ing** → Unit 58 Verb + Preposition → Units 129–133

Exercises

60.1 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1 Our neighbors apologized for making so much noise.
2 I feel lazy. I don't feel like ..... any work.
3 I wanted to go out alone, but Joe insisted on ..... with me.
4 I'm fed up with my job. I'm thinking of ..... something else.
5 We can't afford a car right now, so we've decided against ..... one.
6 It took us a long time, but we finally succeeded in ..... the problem.
7 I've always dreamed of ..... a small house by the ocean.
8 It's great that Amy and Sam are coming to visit us. I'm looking forward to ..... them again.

60.2 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + one of these verbs (in the correct form):

be	eat	try	~~go out~~	take off	
get	use	tell	steal	invite	walk

1 I don't feel like going out this evening. I'm too tired.
2 The police stopped the car because they suspected the driver ..... it.
3 Our flight was delayed. Bad weather prevented the plane ..... .
4 My phone is very old. I'm thinking ..... a new one.
5 I didn't want to hear the story but Dan insisted ..... me anyway.
6 I'm getting hungry. I'm really looking forward ..... something.
7 I think you should apologize to Sarah ..... so rude.
8 There's a fence around the lawn to stop people ..... on the grass.
9 I'm sorry I can't come to your party, but thank you very much ..... me.
10 The man who has been arrested is suspected ..... a false passport.
11 I did my best. Nobody can accuse me ..... not ..... .

60.3 Complete the sentences on the right.

1 

YOU KEVIN
Kevin thanked me for helping him .

2 

ANN TOM
Tom insisted ..... Ann ..... .

3 

YOU DAN
Dan congratulated me ....

4 

SUE JEN
Jen thanked ....

5 

YOU KATE
Kate apologized ....

6 

YOU ANNA
Anna accused ....

→ Additional Exercises 28–29 (pages 313–314)

Unit 61

there's no point in -ing, it's worth -ing, etc.

A

We say:

there's no point in **it's no use** **it's no good**	**doing** something

- **There's no point in having** a car if you never use it.
- **There was no point in waiting** any longer, so we left.
- **It's no use worrying** about what happened. There's nothing you can do about it.
- **It's no good trying** to persuade me. You won't succeed.

We say "**no point in** ..." but "**the point of** ...":

- There's **no point in** having a car.
- What's **the point of** having a car if you never use it?

B

We say:

it's worth **it's not worth**	**doing** something

- It's a nice town. **It's worth spending** a few days there.
- Our flight was very early in the morning, so **it wasn't worth going** to bed.

You can say that something is **worth it** or **not worth it**:

- You should spend a couple of days here. **It's worth it**.
- We didn't go to bed. **It wasn't worth it**.

You can also say that something is **worth doing**, a movie is **worth seeing**, etc.:

- It's a great movie. It's **worth seeing**.
- Thieves broke into the house, but didn't take anything. There was nothing **worth stealing**.
- It's an interesting idea. It's **worth thinking** about.

C

We say:

have	**trouble** **difficulty** **a problem**	**doing** something

- I **had** no **trouble finding** a place to stay. (*not* trouble to find)
- **Did** you **have a problem getting** a visa?
- People sometimes **have difficulty reading** my writing.

D

We say:

spend **waste**	(time)	**doing** something

- He **spent** hours **trying** to repair the clock.
- I **waste** a lot of time **doing** nothing.

We also say "(be) **busy doing** something":

- She said she couldn't meet me. She was too **busy doing** other things.

E

We use **go -ing** for sports and other activities. For example:

go sailing	**go swimming**	**go fishing**	**go hiking**	**go horseback riding**
go surfing	**go scuba diving**	**go skiing**	**go running**	**go camping**

- How often do you **go swimming**?
- We **went skiing** last year.
- Tom isn't here. He **went shopping**.
- I've never **been sailing**.

Exercises

61.1 Which goes with which?

1 It's a nice town.	a I don't believe you're sorry.	1 f
2 It's an interesting idea.	b We'll never find him.	2 .....
3 It's no use standing here talking.	c It's not worth getting a taxi.	3 .....
4 It's not important.	d We have to do something.	4 .....
5 There's no point in looking for him.	e He won't change his opinion.	5 .....
6 It's no good apologizing to me.	f ~~It's worth spending a few days here.~~	6 .....
7 It's not worth arguing with him.	g It's not worth worrying about.	7 .....
8 The hotel is a short walk from here.	h It's worth considering.	8 .....

61.2 Write sentences beginning There's no point ... .

1 Why have a car if you never use it?
There's no point in having a car if you never use it.
2 Why work if you don't need money?
.....
3 Don't try to study if you feel tired.
.....
4 Why hurry if you have plenty of time?
.....

61.3 Complete the sentences.

1 I managed to get a visa, but it was difficult.
I had a problem getting a visa.
2 I find it hard to remember people's names.
I have a problem .....
3 Nicole found a job easily. It wasn't a problem.
She had no trouble .....
4 It will be easy to get a ticket for the game.
You won't have a problem .....
5 It was easy for us to understand each other.
We had no difficulty .....

61.4 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1 I waste a lot of time doing nothing.
2 How much time do you spend ..... to and from work every day?
3 Olivia is going on vacation tomorrow, so she's busy ..... her things ready.
4 I waste too much time ..... TV.
5 There was a beautiful view from the hill. It was worth ..... to the top.
6 We need to stay calm. There's no point in ..... angry.
7 Amy is learning to play the guitar. She spends a lot of time .....
8 James is enjoying his new job. He's busy ..... on a new project.
9 I decided it wasn't worth ..... for the job. I had no chance of getting it.
10 It's no good ..... to escape. You won't be able to get out of here.

61.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from the following and put the verb in the correct form.

go horseback riding **~~go sailing~~** **go shopping** **go skiing** **go swimming**

1 Ben lives by the ocean and he's got a boat, so he often goes sailing.
2 It was a very hot day, so we ..... in the lake.
3 There's plenty of snow in the mountains, so we'll be able to .....
4 Helen has two horses. She ..... regularly.
5 Dan isn't here. He ..... . There were a few things he needed to buy.

→ Additional Exercises 28–29 (pages 313–314)

Unit 62

to ..., for ..., and so that ...

A

We say:

- I called the restaurant **to make** a reservation.
- What do you need **to change** a flat tire?
- We shouted **to warn** everybody of the danger.
- This letter is **to confirm** the decisions we made at our meeting last week.
- The president has a team of bodyguards **to protect** him.

In these examples **to** ... (**to make** ... / **to change** ..., etc.) tells us the *purpose* of something: why somebody does something, has something, needs something, etc., or why something exists.

B

We say "a place **to park**," "something **to eat**," "work **to do**," etc. :

- It's hard to find **a place to park** downtown. (= a place where you can park)
- Would you like **something to eat**? (= something that you can eat)
- Do you have **much work to do**? (= work that you must do)

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (**on**, **with**, etc.) after the verb:

- Is there **a chair to sit on**? (= a chair that I can sit on)
- I get lonely if there's **nobody to talk to**.
- I need **something to write with**.

We also say **money/time/chance/opportunity/energy/courage**, etc. **to** do something:

- They gave us **money to buy** food.
- Do you have **many opportunities to practice** your English?
- I need **a few days to think** about your proposal.

C

Compare **for** ... and **to** ...

for + *noun*

- We stopped **for gas**.
- I had to run **for the bus**.

to + *verb*

- We stopped **to get** gas.
- I had to run **to catch the bus**.

You can say "**for** somebody **to do** something":

- There weren't any chairs **for us to sit on**, so we sat on the floor.

We use **for** (do)**ing** to say what something is used for:

- This brush is **for washing** the dishes.

But we do not use **for -ing** to say why somebody does something:

- I went into the kitchen **to wash** the dishes. (*not* for washing)

You can use **What** ... **for**? to ask about purpose:

- **What** is this switch **for**? (= what is it used for?)
- **What** did you do that **for**? (= why did you do that?)

D

so that

We use **so that** (*not* **to** ...) especially with **can/could** and **will/would**:

- She's learning English **so that** she **can** study in Canada.
- We moved to the city **so that** we **could** see our friends more often.
- I hurried **so that** I **wouldn't** be late. (= because I didn't want to be late)

You can leave out **that**. So you can say:

- I hurried **so that** I wouldn't be late. *or* I hurried **so** I wouldn't be late.

Exercises

62.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make a new sentence with to ... .

A

1 ~~I shouted~~
2 I opened the box
3 I moved to a new apartment
4 I couldn't find a knife
5 I called the police
6 I called the hotel
7 I hired an assistant

B

I wanted to be closer to my friends
I wanted someone to help me with my work
I wanted to report the accident
~~I wanted to warn people of the danger~~
I wanted to see what was in it.
I wanted to chop the onions
I wanted to find out if they had any rooms available

1 I shouted to warn people of the danger.
2 I opened the box .....
3 I .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....

62.2 Complete these sentences using to + an appropriate verb.

1 The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.
2 I don't have enough time ..... all the things I have to do.
3 I took a taxi home. I didn't have the energy ..... .
4 Would you like something ..... ? Coffee? Tea?
5 Can you give me a bag ..... these things in?
6 There will be a meeting next week ..... the problem.
7 Do you need a visa ..... to the United States?
8 I saw Jen at the party, but I didn't have a chance ..... to her.
9 I need some new clothes. I don't have anything nice ..... .
10 They passed their exams. They're going to have a party ..... .
11 I can't do all this work alone. I need somebody ..... me.
12 Why are you so scared? There's nothing ..... afraid of.

62.3 Put in to or for.

1 We stopped for gas.
2 We'll need time ..... make a decision.
3 I went to the dentist ..... a checkup.
4 He's very old. He needs somebody ..... take care of him.
5 Can you lend me money ..... a taxi?
6 Do you wear glasses ..... reading?
7 I put on my glasses ..... read the letter.
8 I wish we had a yard ..... the children ..... play in.

62.4 Make one sentence from two, using so that.

1 I hurried. I didn't want to be late.
I hurried so that I wouldn't be late.
2 I wore warm clothes. I didn't want to get cold.
I wore warm clothes .....
3 I gave Mark my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me.
I gave Mark my phone number .....
4 We spoke very quietly. We didn't want anybody else to hear us.
We spoke very quietly ..... nobody else .....
5 Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
Please arrive early .....
6 We made a list of things to do. We didn't want to forget anything.
We made a list of things to do .....
7 I slowed down. I wanted the car behind me to be able to pass.
I slowed down .....

Unit 63

Adjective + to ...

A hard to understand, interesting to talk to, etc.

Compare sentences (a) and (b):

- James doesn't speak clearly.
  - (a) **It** is hard to **understand** **him**.
  - (b) **He** is hard to **understand**.

Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Note that we say:

- He is hard **to understand**. (*not* He is hard to understand him)

We use other *adjectives* in the same way. For example:

easy **nice** **safe** **cheap** **exciting** **impossible**
difficult **good** **dangerous** **expensive** **interesting**

- Do you think it is **safe to drink this water**?
  Do you think this water is **safe to drink**? (*not* to drink it)
- The exam questions were very hard. It was **impossible to answer them**.
  The exam questions were very hard. They were **impossible to answer**.
  (*not* to answer them)
- Nicole has lots of interesting ideas. It's **interesting to talk** to her.
  Nicole is **interesting to talk to**. (*not* to talk to her)

We also use this structure with *adjective + noun*:

- This is a **difficult question to answer**. (*not* to answer it)

B nice of (you) to ...

We say "It's **nice of** somebody **to** ...":

- It was **nice of** you **to take** me to the airport. Thank you very much.

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

kind **generous** **careless** **stupid** **inconsiderate** **unfair** **typical**

- It's **generous of Abby to let** us stay in her apartment while we're in the city.
- I think it was **unfair of him to criticize** me.

C sorry to ... / surprised to ..., etc.

You can use *adjective* + **to** ... to say how somebody reacts to something:

- I'm **sorry to hear** that your mother isn't well.

We use other adjectives in the same way. For example:

happy **glad** **pleased** **relieved** **surprised** **amazed** **sad** **disappointed**

- Was Julia **surprised to see** you?
- It was a long and tiring trip. We were **glad to get** home.

D

You can use **to** ... after **the next** / **the last** / **the only** / **the first** / **the second**, etc.:

- **The next** plane **to arrive** at Gate 4 will be Flight 268 from Bogotá.
- Everybody was late except me. I was **the only** one **to arrive** on time.
- If I have any more news, you will be **the first to know**. (= the first person to know)

E

You can say that something is **sure/likely/bound to** happen:

- Carla is a very good student. She's **bound to pass** the exam. (= she is sure to pass)
- It's possible I'll win the lottery one day, but it's not **likely to happen**. (= it's not probable)

afraid/interested/sorry → Unit 64 **it** ... → Unit 82C **enough** and **too** + adjective → Unit 101

Exercises

63.1 Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.

1 It's hard to understand some things. Some things *are hard to understand.*
2 It was difficult to open the window. The window .....
3 It's impossible to translate some words. Some words .....
4 It's expensive to maintain a car. A .....
5 It's not safe to eat this meat. This .....
6 It's easy to get to my house from here. My .....

63.2 Make sentences from the words in parentheses.

1 I couldn't answer the question.
(difficult question / answer) *It was a difficult question to answer.*
2 It's a very common mistake.
(easy mistake / make) It's .....
3 I like living in this town.
(great place / live) .....
4 I wonder why she said that.
(strange thing / say) .....

63.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 It's nice of Dan and Kate *to invite* me to their party.
2 I've been traveling a long time. Now I'm ..... to be back home.
3 I heard about Tom's accident. I was relieved ..... that he's OK.
4 It was nice ..... to remember my birthday.
5 Let me know if you need any assistance. I'd be very pleased ..... you.
6 I thought James was about 25. I was ..... to discover he was 40.
7 It was inconsiderate of our neighbors ..... so much noise.
8 My interview went well. I was disappointed ..... to be offered the job.
9 It's ..... of John to leave his wallet at home. He's so disorganized.

to hear
to help
~~to invite~~
to make
not
of you
typical
amazed
glad

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use: **the first** **the second** **the last** **the only**

1 Nobody spoke before me. I was *the first person to speak.*
2 Everybody else arrived before David.
David was .....
3 Emily passed the exam. All the other students failed.
Emily .....
4 I complained to the manager. Another customer had already complained.
I .....
5 Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him.
Neil Armstrong .....

63.5 Complete the sentences using the words in parentheses and an appropriate verb.

1 Carla is a very good student.
(she / bound / pass) *She's bound to pass* the exam.
2 I'm not surprised you're tired after traveling so far.
(you / bound / tired) ..... after such a long trip.
3 Andy has a very bad memory.
(he / sure / forget) ..... anything you tell him.
4 I don't think you'll need an umbrella.
(it / not / likely / rain) .....
5 The holidays begin this weekend.
(there / sure / be) ..... a lot of traffic on the roads.

Unit 64

to ... (afraid **to do**) and Preposition + **-ing** (afraid **of -ing**)

A afraid to (do) and afraid of (do)ing

I am **afraid to do** something =
I don't want to do it because it is dangerous or the result could be bad.

- This part of town is dangerous. People are **afraid to walk** here at night.
  (= they don't walk here at night because it is dangerous)
- James was **afraid to tell** his parents what had happened.
  (= he didn't tell them because he thought they would be angry)

I am **afraid of** something **happening** =
I am afraid that something bad will happen.

- The sidewalk was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were **afraid of falling**.
  (= we were afraid that we would fall—*not* afraid to fall)
- I don't like dogs. I'm always **afraid of being** bitten.
  (= I'm afraid that I will be bitten—*not* afraid to be bitten)

So, you are **afraid to do something** because you are **afraid of something happening** as a result:

- I was **afraid to go** near the dog because I **was afraid of being** bitten.

B interested in (do)ing and interested to (do)

I'm **interested in doing** something = I'm thinking of doing it, I would like to do it:

- Let me know if you're **interested in joining** the club. (*not* to join)
- I tried to sell my car, but nobody was **interested in buying** it. (*not* to buy)

I was **interested to hear/see/know** something = it was interesting for me. For example:

- I was **interested to hear** that Tanya left her job.
  (= I heard this, and it was interesting for me)
- I'll ask Mike for his opinion. I would be **interested to know** what he thinks.
  (= it would be interesting for me to know what he thinks)

This structure is the same as **surprised to** ... / **glad to** ..., etc. (see Unit 63C):

- I was **surprised to hear** that Tanya left her job.

C sorry for ... and sorry to ...

We use **sorry for** (doing) to apologize for something:

- I'm **sorry for shouting** at you yesterday. (*not* sorry to shout)

You can also say:

- I'm **sorry I shouted** at you yesterday.

We use **sorry to** ... to say that we regret something that happens:

- I'm **sorry to hear** that Nicky lost her job. (*not* sorry for)
- I've enjoyed my stay here. I'll be **sorry to leave**.

We also say "**I'm sorry to** ..." to apologize at the time we do something:

- I'm **sorry to bother** you, but I need to ask you a question.

D

We say:		*but*	
	I **want to** (do), I**'d like to** (do)		I'm **thinking of** (do)**ing**
	I **hope to** (do)		I **dream of** (do)**ing**
	I **failed to** (do)		I **succeeded in** (do)**ing**
	I **allowed** them **to** (do)		I **stopped/prevented** them **from** (do)**ing**
	I **plan to** (do)		I'm **looking forward to** (do)**ing**
	I **promised to** (do)		I **insisted on** (do)**ing**

Verb + **to** ... ➜ Units 52–53 Verb + Preposition + **-ing** ➜ Unit 60 **sorry to** ... ➜ Unit 63C
Adjective + Preposition ➜ Units 127–128 **sorry about/for** ➜ Unit 127D

Exercises

64.1 Write sentences using **afraid to ...** or **afraid of -ing.**

1 The streets here are not safe at night.
(a lot of people / afraid / go / out) A lot of people are afraid to go out.
2 We walked very carefully along the icy sidewalk.
(we / afraid / fall) We were afraid of falling.
3 I don't usually carry my passport with me.
(I / afraid / lose / it) .....
4 I thought she would be angry if I told her what had happened.
(I / afraid / tell / her) .....
5 We ran to the train station.
(we / afraid / miss / our train) .....
6 In the middle of the film there was a horrifying scene.
(we / afraid / look) .....
7 The vase was very valuable, so I held it carefully.
(I / afraid / drop / it) .....
8 I was worried because we didn't have much gas.
(I / afraid / run out of gas) .....
9 If there's anything you want to know, you can ask me.
(don't / afraid / ask) .....

64.2 Complete the sentences using **interested in ...** or **interested to ...** . Choose from these verbs:

~~buy~~ know hear look start study

1 I'm trying to sell my car, but nobody is interested in buying it.
2 Nicole is ..... her own business.
3 I saw Joe recently. You'll be ..... that he's getting married soon.
4 I didn't enjoy school. I wasn't ..... .
5 I went to a public meeting to discuss the plans for a new road. I was .....
..... how people felt about the project.
6 Eric doesn't enjoy sightseeing. He's not ..... at old buildings.

64.3 Complete the sentences using **sorry for ...** or **sorry to ...** . Use the verb in parentheses.

1 I'm sorry to bother you, but I need to ask you something. (bother)
2 We were ..... that you can't come to the wedding. (hear)
3 I'm ..... bad things about you. I didn't mean what I said. (say)
4 It's a shame Alex is leaving the company. I'll be ..... him go. (see)
5 I'm ..... so much noise last night. (make)

64.4 Complete each sentence using the verbs in parentheses.

1 a We wanted to leave the building.
b We weren't allowed ..... the building.
c We were prevented ..... the building. } (leave)
2 a Sam and Chris hoped ..... the problem.
b Sam failed ..... the problem.
c Chris succeeded ..... the problem. } (solve)
3 a I'm thinking ..... away next week.
b I'm planning ..... away next week.
c I'd like ..... away next week.
d I'm looking forward ..... away next week. } (go)
4 a Emma wanted ..... me lunch.
b Emma insisted ..... me lunch.
c Emma promised ..... me lunch.
d Emma wouldn't dream ..... me lunch. } (buy)

→ Additional Exercise 27 (pages 312–313)

Unit 65

see somebody do and see somebody doing

A

Study this example situation:

Tom got into his car and drove away. You saw this.
You can say:

- I saw Tom **get** into his car and **drive** away.



We say "I saw him **do** something" (= he did it, and I saw this). In the same way, you can say:

hear **listen to** **watch** **feel**	somebody **do** something something **happen**

- I didn't **hear** you **come** in. (you came in—I didn't hear this)
- Julia suddenly **felt** somebody **touch** her on the shoulder.

B

Study this example situation:

Yesterday you saw Kate. She was waiting for a bus.
You can say:

- I saw Kate **waiting** for a bus.



We say "I saw her **doing** something" (= she was doing it and I saw this). In the same way, you can say:

hear **listen to** **watch** **feel** **smell** **find**	somebody **doing** something something **happening**

- I could **hear** it **raining**. (it was raining—I could hear it)
- **Listen to** the birds **singing**!
- Can you **smell** something **burning**?
- We looked for Brian, and finally we **found** him **sitting** under a tree **eating** an apple.

C

Study the difference in meaning:

I **saw him do** something = he **did** something and I saw this.
I saw the complete action from start to finish:

- He **jumped** over the wall and **ran** away. I saw this.
  → I **saw** him **jump** over the wall and **run** away.
- They **went** out. I heard this. → I **heard** them **go** out.

I saw him doing something = he **was doing** something and I saw this.
I saw him *in the middle* of doing something (not from start to finish):

- I saw Tom as I drove by in my car. He **was walking** along the street.
  → I **saw** Tom **walking** along the street.
- I heard them. They **were talking**. → I **heard** them **talking**.

Sometimes the difference is not important and you can use either form:

- I've never seen her **dance**. *or* I've never seen her **dancing**.
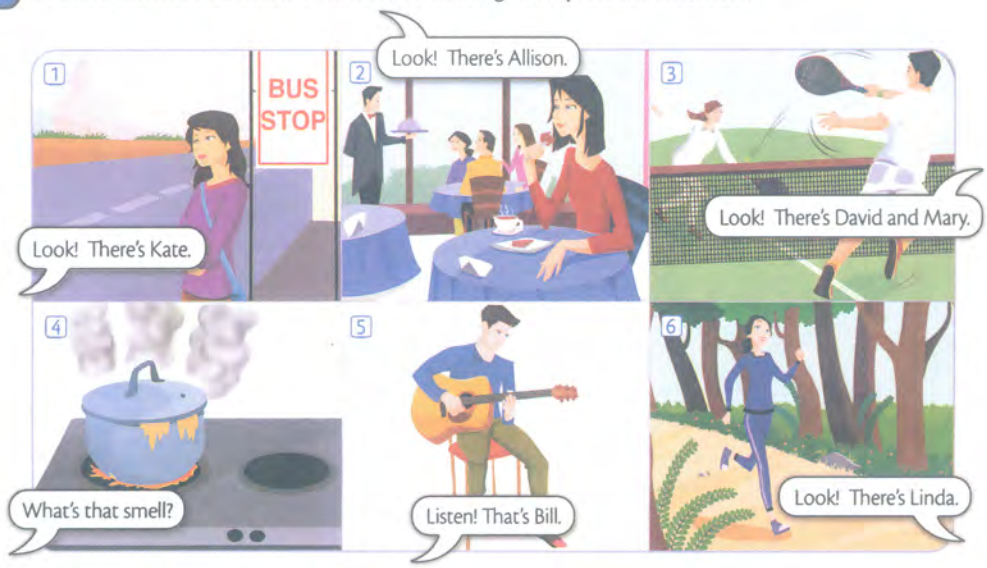
Simple Past (**I did**) → Unit 5 Past Continuous (**I was doing**) → Unit 6

Exercises

65.1 Complete the sentences with the verb in the correct form:

1 a Tom doesn't have the keys. He *gave* them to Liz. (give)
  b Tom doesn't have the keys. I saw him ..... them to Liz. (give)
2 a A car ..... outside our house, and then it drove away again. (stop)
  b We heard a car ..... outside our house, and then it drove away again. (stop)
3 a Ben gave me the envelope and watched me ..... it. (open)
  b Ben gave me the envelope and I ..... it. (open)
4 a Sarah is Canadian. I heard her ..... she's from Toronto. (say)
  b Sarah is Canadian. She ..... she's from Toronto. (say)
5 a A man ..... down in the street, so we went to help him. (fall)
  b We saw a man ..... down in the street, so we went to help him. (fall)

65.2 You and a friend saw, heard, or smelled something. Complete the sentences.



1 *We saw Kate waiting for a bus* .....
2 We saw Allison ..... in a restaurant.
3 We saw David and Mary .....
4 We could smell something .....
5 We could hear .....
6 .....

65.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs (in the correct form):

crawl cry explode ~~get~~ happen lie put ride say slam ~~stand~~ tell

1 The bus stopped at the bus stop but I didn't see anybody *get* off.
2 I saw two people *standing* outside your house. I don't know who they were.
3 I thought I heard somebody ..... "Hi," so I turned around.
4 There was an accident outside my house, but I didn't see it .....
5 Listen. Can you hear a baby ..... ?
6 I know you took the key. I saw you ..... it in your pocket.
7 We listened to the old man ..... his story from beginning to end.
8 Everybody heard the bomb ..... It made a huge noise.
9 Oh! I can feel something ..... up my leg. It must be an insect.
10 I looked out the window and saw Dan ..... his bike along the road.
11 I heard somebody ..... a door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.
12 When I got home, I found a cat ..... on the kitchen table.

Unit 66

-ing Phrases (He hurt his knee **playing football**.)

A

Study this example:



Kate is in the kitchen. She's making coffee.
You can say:

- Kate is in the kitchen **making coffee**.
  └ **-ing** *phrase* ┘

You can use **-ing** in this way when two things happen at the same time:

- A man ran out of the house **shouting**.
  (= he ran out of the house *and* he was shouting)
- Do something! Don't just stand there **doing nothing**!
- Be careful **crossing the road**.

We also use **-ing** when one action happens during another action:

- Joe hurt his knee **playing football**. (= while he was playing)
- Did you cut yourself **shaving**? (= while you were shaving)

You can also say "**while doing** something" and "**when doing** something":

- Joe hurt his knee **while playing** football.
- Be careful **when crossing** the street. (= when you are crossing)

B

When one action happens before something else, we use **having** (**done**) for the first action:

- **Having found** a hotel, we looked for somewhere to eat.
- **Having finished** her work, she went home.

You can also say **after -ing**:

- **After finishing** her work, she went home.

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.
When we begin a sentence with "**Having** (done something)" or "**After** (doing something)," we write a comma (,) after this part of the sentence:

- **Having finished her work,** she went home.
  ↑ *comma*

C

You can also use **-ing** to explain something, or to say why somebody does something.
The sentence usually begins with **-ing**:

- **Feeling tired,** I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired)
  └ **-ing** *phrase* ┘
- **Being** unemployed, he doesn't have much money. (= because he is unemployed)
- **Not having** a car, she finds it difficult to get around.
  (= because she doesn't have a car)

We use **having** (**done**) for something that is complete before something else:

- **Having seen** the movie twice, I didn't want to see it again.
  (= because I had seen it twice)

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.
When we begin a sentence with **-ing** (**Feeling tired** ... / **Not knowing** ... / **Having seen** ..., etc.), we write a comma (,) after this part of the sentence.

- **Not knowing what to do,** I called my friend to ask her advice.

-ing and **-ed** Phrases ➜ Unit 95

Exercises

66.1 Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences. Use -ing.

A		B
1 ~~Kate was in the kitchen.~~		She was trying not to make any noise.
2 Amy was sitting in an armchair.		She looked at the sights and took pictures.
3 Nicole opened the door carefully.		She said she would be back in an hour.
4 Sarah went out.		She was reading a book.
5 Kim worked in Rome for two years.		~~She was making coffee.~~
6 Anna walked around the town.		She was teaching English.

1 Kate was in the kitchen making coffee.
2 Amy was sitting in an armchair .....
3 Nicole .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....

66.2 Put the words in the right order.

1 Joe (knee / football / his / hurt / playing) Joe hurt his knee playing football.
2 I (in the rain / wet / got / very / walking)
I .....
3 Lauren (to work / had / driving / an accident)
Lauren .....
4 My friend (off / slipped / a bus / getting / and fell)
My friend .....
5 Emily (trying / her back / a heavy box / to lift / hurt)
Emily .....
6 Two people were (to put out / by smoke / the fire / overcome / trying)
Two people were .....

66.3 Complete the sentences. Use Having + an appropriate verb.

1 Having finished her work, Katherine left the office and went home.
2 ..... our tickets, we went into the theater and took our seats.
3 ..... the problem, I think we'll be able to find a solution.
4 ..... he was hungry, Joe now says he doesn't want to eat anything.
5 ..... his job recently, James is now unemployed.
6 ..... most of his life in New York, Sam has now gone to live in a small town in the country.

66.4 Make one sentence from two. Begin with -ing or Not -ing. Sometimes you need to begin with Having ... . Don't forget the comma (,).

1 I felt tired. So I went to bed early.
Feeling tired, I went to bed early.
2 I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.
..... I offered them something to eat.
3 Robert is a vegetarian. So he doesn't eat any kind of meat.
..... Robert doesn't eat any kind of meat.
4 I didn't have a phone. So I had no way of contacting anyone.
..... I had no way of contacting anyone.
5 Sarah has traveled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries.
..... Sarah knows a lot about other countries.
6 I wasn't able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.
..... I had trouble communicating.
7 We had spent almost all our money. So we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.
..... we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.

Unit 67

Count and Noncount Nouns 1

A

A noun can be *count* or *noncount*:

Count

- I eat **a banana** every day.
- I like **bananas**.



Banana is a *count* noun.

A count noun can be singular (**banana**) or plural (**bananas**).

We can use numbers with count nouns.
So we can say **one banana**, **two bananas**, etc.

Examples of nouns that are usually count:

- Kate was singing **a song**.
- There's **a** nice **beach** near here.
- Do you have **a** $10 **bill**?
- It wasn't your fault. It was **an accident**.
- There are no **batteries** in the radio.
- We don't have enough **cups**.

Noncount

- I eat **rice** every day.
- I like **rice**.



Rice is a *noncount* noun.

A noncount noun has only one form (**rice**).
There is no plural.

We cannot use numbers with noncount nouns.
We cannot say "one rice," "two rices," etc.

Examples of nouns that are usually noncount:

- Kate was listening to **music**.
- There's **sand** in my shoes.
- Do you have any **money**?
- It wasn't your fault. It was bad **luck**.
- There is no **electricity** in this house.
- We don't have enough **water**.

B

You can use **a/an** with singular count nouns:
a beach **a student** **an umbrella**

We do not use **a/an** with noncount nouns.
We do not say "a sand," "a music," "a rice."

But you can often use **a** ... **of**. For example:
a bowl / **a packet** / **a grain** of rice

You cannot use singular count nouns alone (without **a/the/my**, etc.):

- Do you want **a banana**? (*not* want banana)
- There's been **an accident**. (*not* There's been accident)

You can use noncount nouns alone (without **the/my/some**, etc.):

- I eat **rice** every day.
- There's **blood** on your shirt.
- Can you hear **music**?

You can use *plural* count nouns alone:

- I like **bananas**. (= bananas in general)
- **Accidents** can be prevented.

C

You can use **some** and **any** with plural count nouns:

- We sang **some songs**.
- Did you buy **any apples**?

We use **many** and **few** with plural count nouns:

- We didn't take **many pictures**.
- I have a **few things** to do.

You can use **some** and **any** with noncount nouns:

- We listened to **some music**.
- Did you buy **any** apple **juice**?

We use **much** and **little** with noncount nouns:

- We didn't do **much shopping**.
- I have a **little work** to do.

Count and Noncount Nouns 2 ➜ Unit 68 **children / the children** ➜ Unit 73
some and **any** ➜ Unit 83 **many/much/few/little** ➜ Unit 85

Exercises

67.1 Some of these sentences need a/an. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Joe goes everywhere by bike. He doesn't have car. — He doesn't have a car.
2 Emily was listening to music when I arrived. — OK
3 We went to very nice restaurant last weekend. —
4 I brush my teeth with toothpaste. —
5 I use toothbrush to brush my teeth. —
6 Can you tell me if there's bank near here? —
7 My brother works for insurance company. —
8 I don't like violence. —
9 When we were in Rome, we stayed in big hotel. —
10 If you have problem, I'll try and help you. —
11 I like your suggestion. It's interesting idea. —
12 Can you smell paint? —
13 I like volleyball. It's good game. —
14 Jessica doesn't usually wear jewelry. —
15 Sarah was wearing beautiful necklace. —
16 Does this city have airport? —

67.2 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use a/an where necessary.

~~accident~~	blood	coat	cookie	decision	electricity
ice	interview	key	minute	~~music~~	question

1 The road is closed. There's been an accident.
2 Listen! Can you hear music?
3 I couldn't get into the house. I didn't have ____.
4 It's very warm today. Why are you wearing ____?
5 Would you like ____ in your drink?
6 Are you hungry? Have ____!
7 Our lives would be very difficult without ____.
8 Excuse me, can I ask you ____?
9 I'm not ready yet. Can you wait ____, please?
10 The heart pumps ____ through the body.
11 We can't wait much longer. We have to make ____ soon.
12 I had ____ for a job yesterday. It went quite well.

67.3 Complete the sentences using the following words:

air	day	friend	joke	language	line
meat	patience	people	~~picture~~	space	umbrella

Sometimes the word needs to be plural (-s), and sometimes you need to use a/an.

1 I had a camera with me, but I didn't take any pictures.
2 There are seven ____ in a week.
3 A vegetarian is a person who doesn't eat ____.
4 Outside the theater there was ____ of people waiting to see the movie.
5 I'm not good at telling ____.
6 Last night I went out with some ____ of mine.
7 There were very few ____ in town today. The streets were almost empty.
8 I'm going out for a walk. I need some fresh ____.
9 Mike always wants things quickly. He doesn't have much ____.
10 I think it's going to rain. Do you have ____ I could borrow?
11 How many ____ can you speak?
12 Our apartment is very small. We don't have much ____.

Unit 68

Count and Noncount Nouns 2

A

Many nouns are sometimes count and sometimes noncount. Usually there is a difference in meaning. Compare:

Count

- Did you hear **a noise** just now? (= a specific noise)
- I bought **a paper** to read. (= a newspaper)
- There's **a hair** in my soup! (= one single hair)
- This is **a** nice **room**. (= a room in a house)
- I had some interesting **experiences** while I was traveling. (= things that happened to me)
- Enjoy your trip. Have **a** great **time**!

Noncount

- I can't work here. There's too much **noise**. (= noise in general)
- I need **some paper** to write on. (= material for writing on)
- You've got very long **hair**. (*not* hairs) (= all the hair on your head)
- You can't sit here. There isn't **room**. (= space)
- I was offered the job because I had a lot of **experience**. (*not* experiences) (= experience of that type of job)
- I can't wait. I don't have **time**.

Coffee/tea/juice/beer, etc. (drinks) are normally noncount:

- I don't like **coffee** very much.

But you can say **a coffee** (= a cup of coffee), **two coffees** (= two cups), etc.:

- **Two coffees** and **an orange juice**, please.

B

These nouns are usually noncount:

advice	**bread**	**furniture**	**luggage**	**progress**	**weather**
baggage	**chaos**	**information**	**news**	**scenery**	**work**
behavior	**damage**	**luck**	**permission**	**traffic**	

We do not normally use **a/an** with these nouns:

- I'm going to buy **some bread**. *or* ... **a loaf of bread**. (*not* a bread)
- Enjoy your vacation! I hope you have good **weather**. (*not* a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say "breads," "furnitures," etc.):

- Where are you going to put all your **furniture**? (*not* furnitures)
- Let me know if you need more **information**. (*not* informations)

News is noncount, not plural:

- The **news was** unexpected. (*not* The news were)

Travel (*noun*) means "traveling in general" (noncount). We do not say "a travel" to mean **a trip**:

- They spend a lot of money on **travel**.
- We had a very good **trip**. (*not* a good travel)

Compare these count and noncount nouns:

Count

- I'm looking for **a job**.
- What **a** beautiful **view**!
- It's **a** nice **day** today.
- We had a lot of **bags**.
- **These chairs** are mine.
- That's **a** good **suggestion**.
- There were a lot of **cars**.

Noncount

- I'm looking for **work**. (*not* a work)
- What beautiful **scenery**!
- It's nice **weather** today.
- We had a lot of **baggage/luggage**.
- **This furniture** is mine.
- That's good **advice**.
- There **was** a lot of **traffic**.

Count and Noncount Nouns 1 ➜ Unit 67 British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

68.1 Which is correct?

1 a The engine is making ~~strange noise~~ / a strange noise. What is it? (a strange noise *is correct*)
  b We live near a busy road, so there's a lot of noise / there are a lot of noises.
2 a Light / A light comes from the sun.
  b I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.
3 a I was in a hurry this morning. I didn't have time / a time for breakfast.
  b We really enjoyed our vacation. We had great time / a great time.
4 a Can I have glass of water / a glass of water, please?
  b Be careful. The window was broken, and there's broken glass / a broken glass on the floor.
5 a We stayed at a hotel. We had very nice room / a very nice room.
  b We have a big garage. There's room / a room for two cars.

68.2 Which is correct?

1 Did you have nice weather / ~~a nice weather~~ when you were away? (nice weather *is correct*)
2 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck.
3 Our travel / trip from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.
4 When the fire alarm rang, there was complete chaos / a complete chaos.
5 Bad news don't / doesn't make people happy.
6 There's some lovely scenery / a lovely scenery in this part of the country.
7 I like my job, but it's very hard work / a very hard work.
8 I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers.
9 The trip took a long time. There was heavy traffic / a heavy traffic.
10 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should get it / them cut.
11 "What time is / are the news on Channel 2?" "9:00."

68.3 Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

advice	**damage**	**experience**	**furniture**	**hair**
chair	~~**luggage**~~	**experience**	**permission**	**progress**

1 We didn't have much *luggage*—just two small bags.
2 We have no _____, not even a bed or a table.
3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of _____.
4 Who is that woman with short _____? Do you know her?
5 Carla's English is better than it was. She's made good _____.
6 If you want to take pictures here, you need to ask for _____.
7 I didn't know what I should do, so I asked Chris for _____.
8 I don't think Dan should get the job. He doesn't have enough _____.
9 Kate has done many interesting things. She could write a book about her _____.
10 The _____ caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

68.4 What do you say in these situations? Use the word(s) in parentheses in your sentence.

1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can't see any cases or bags. You ask:
(luggage) Do *you have any luggage*?
2 You go to a tourist office. You want to know about places to visit in the town.
(information) I'd like _____.
3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to take. You say:
(advice) Can you give _____?
4 You applied for a job, and you just heard that you were successful. You call Tom and say:
(good news) Hi, Tom. I _____. I got the job!
5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It's beautiful. You say:
(view) It _____, isn't it?
6 You look out the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy. You say:
(weather) What _____!

Unit 69

Count Nouns with a/an and some

A

Count nouns can be *singular* or *plural*:

a **dog**	a **child**	the **evening**	this **party**	an **umbrella**
dogs	some **children**	the **evenings**	these **parties**	two **umbrellas**

Before singular count nouns you can use **a/an**:

- Bye! Have **a** nice **evening**.
- Do you need **an umbrella**?

You cannot use singular count nouns alone (without **a/the/my**, etc.):

- She never wears **a hat**. (*not* wears hat)
- Be careful of **the dog**.
- What **a** beautiful **day**!
- Did you hurt **your leg**?

B

We use **a/an** ... to say what kind of thing something is, or what kind of person somebody is:

- That's a **nice table**.

In the plural we use the noun alone (*not* some ...):

- Those are **nice chairs**. (*not* some nice chairs)

Compare singular and plural:

- A dog is **an animal**.
- I'm **an optimist**.
- My father is **a doctor**.
- Jen is **a really nice person**.
- What **a beautiful dress**!

- Dogs are **animals**.
- We're **optimists**.
- My parents are both **doctors**.
- Jen and Ben are really **nice people**.
- What awful **shoes**!

We say that somebody has **a long nose / a nice face / blue eyes / long fingers**, etc.:

- Jack has **a long nose**. (*not* the long nose)
- Jack has **blue eyes**. (*not* the blue eyes)

We use **a/an** when we say what somebody's job is:

- Jessica is **a nurse**. (*not* Jessica is nurse)
- Would you like to be **an English teacher**?

C

You can use **some** with plural count nouns. We use **some** in two ways.

(1) **some** = a number (of) / a few (of) / a pair (of):

- I've seen **some** good **movies** recently. (*not* I've seen good movies)
- **Some friends** of mine are coming to stay this weekend.
- I need **some** new **sunglasses**. (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Often you can say the same thing with or without **some**. For example:

- I need (**some**) **new clothes**.
- The room was empty except for a table and (**some**) **chairs**.

Do not use **some** when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75):

- I love **bananas**. (*not* some bananas)
- My aunt is a writer. She writes **books**. (*not* some books)

(2) **some** = some but not all:

- **Some children** learn very quickly. (but not all children)
- Tomorrow there will be rain in **some places**, but most of the country will be dry.

Count and Noncount Nouns ➜ Units 67–68 **a/an** and **the** ➜ Unit 70 **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 83

Exercises

69.1 What are these things? Choose from the box and write a sentence.

1 an eagle — It's a bird.
2 a pigeon, a duck, and a penguin — They're birds.
3 carrots and onions
4 a tulip
5 Earth, Mars, and Jupiter
6 chess
7 a hammer, a saw, and a screwdriver
8 the Nile, the Rhine, and the Mekong
9 a mosquito
10 Hindi, Arabic, and Swahili

~~bird(s)~~
flower(s)
game(s)
insect(s)
language(s)
planet(s)
river(s)
tool(s)
vegetable(s)

69.2 Read about what these people do. What are their jobs? Choose from:

chef **interpreter** **journalist** ~~**nurse**~~ **plumber** **surgeon** **tour guide** **waiter**

1 Sarah looks after patients in a hospital. She's a nurse.
2 Tom works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He
3 Emma writes articles for a newspaper.
4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people.
5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant.
6 Dave installs and repairs water pipes.
7 Anna shows visitors around her city and tells them about it.
8 Julia translates what people are saying from one language into another so that they can understand each other.

69.3 Which is right?

1 Most of my friends are students / ~~some students~~. (students *is correct*)
2 Are you careful driver / a careful driver?
3 I went to the library and borrowed books / some books.
4 Brian works in a bookstore. He sells books / some books.
5 I've been walking for hours. I have sore feet / some sore feet.
6 I don't feel very well. I have sore throat / a sore throat.
7 What lovely present / a lovely present! Thank you very much.
8 I met students / some students in a cafe yesterday. They were from China.
9 It might rain. Don't go out without umbrella / without an umbrella.
10 People / Some people learn languages more easily than others.

69.4 Put in **a/an** or **some** where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I've seen some good movies recently.
2 Are you feeling all right? Do you have a headache?
3 I know lots of people. Most of them are – students.
4 When I was child, I was very shy.
5 birds—for example, the penguin—cannot fly.
6 Would you like to be actor?
7 Questions, questions, questions! You're always asking questions!
8 I didn't expect to see you. What surprise!
9 Do you like staying in hotels?
10 Tomorrow is a holiday. stores will be open, but most of them will be closed.
11 Those are nice shoes. Where did you get them?
12 You need visa to visit countries, but not all of them.
13 Kate is teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
14 I don't believe him. He's liar. He's always telling lies.

Unit
70 a/an and the

A

Study this example:



Joe says "**a** sandwich," "**an** apple" because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says "**the** sandwich," "**the** apple" because we know which sandwich and which apple he means—**the** sandwich and **the** apple he had for lunch.

Compare **a** and **the** in these examples:

- **A man** and **a woman** were sitting across from me. **The man** was American, but I think **the woman** was British.
- When we were on vacation, we stayed in **a hotel**. Sometimes we ate at **the hotel** and sometimes we went to **a restaurant**.

B

We use **the** when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare **a/an** and **the**:

- Tim sat down on **a chair**. (maybe one of many chairs in the room)
  Tim sat down on **the chair next to the door**. (a specific chair)
- Do you have **a car**? (not a specific car)
  I cleaned **the car** yesterday. (= my car)

We use **a/an** when we say what kind of thing or person we mean. Compare:

- We stayed in **a very cheap hotel**. (a type of hotel)
  The hotel where we stayed was very cheap. (a specific hotel)

C

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room, we talk about **the light / the floor / the ceiling / the door / the carpet**, etc.:

- Can you turn off **the light**, please? (= the light in this room)
- I took a taxi to **the station**. (= the station in that town)
- *(in a store)* I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this store)

We also say "(go to) **the bank / the post office**":

- I have to go to **the bank**, and then I'm going to **the post office**.
  (The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

and "(go to) **the doctor / the dentist / the hospital**":

- Mary isn't feeling well. She went to **the doctor**.
- Two people were taken to **the hospital** after the accident.

Compare **the** and **a**:

- I have to go to **the bank** today.
  Is there **a bank** near here?
- I don't like going to **the dentist**.
  My sister is **a dentist**.

D

We say "once **a week** / three times **a day** / $1.50 **a pound**," etc.:

- I go to the movies about once **a month**.
- "How much are those potatoes?" "$3.20 **a pound**."
- Natalie works eight hours **a day**, six days **a week**.

a/an → Unit 69 **the** → Units 71–76

Exercises

70.1 Put in a/an or the.

1 This morning I bought ___a___ book and ___ magazine. ___ book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put ___ magazine.
2 I saw ___ accident this morning. ___ car crashed into ___ tree. ___ driver of ___ car wasn't hurt, but ___ car was badly damaged.
3 There are two cars parked outside: ___ blue one and ___ gray one. ___ blue one belongs to my neighbors. I don't know who ___ owner of ___ gray one is.
4 My friends live in ___ old house in ___ small town. There is ___ beautiful yard behind ___ house. I would like to have ___ yard like that.

70.2 Put in a/an or the.

1 a This house is very nice. Does it have ___ yard?
b It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in ___ yard.
c I like living in this house, but it's a shame that ___ yard is so small.
2 a Can you recommend ___ good restaurant?
b We had dinner in ___ very nice restaurant.
c We had dinner in ___ best restaurant in town.
3 a What's ___ name of that man we met yesterday?
b We stayed at a very nice hotel—I can't remember ___ name now.
c My neighbor has ___ French name, but in fact she's English, not French.
4 a Did Kim get ___ job she applied for?
b It's not easy to get ___ job right now.
c Do you enjoy your work? Is it ___ interesting job?
5 a "Are you going away next week?" "No, ___ week after next."
b I'm going away for ___ week in September.
c Charlie has a part-time job. He works three mornings ___ week.

70.3 Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1 Would you like apple? *Would you like an apple?*
2 How often do you go to dentist? ___
3 Can you close door, please? ___
4 I have problem. I need your help. ___
5 How far is it from here to bus station? ___
6 I'm going to post office. I won't be long. ___
7 Paul plays tennis. He's very good player. ___
8 There isn't airport near where I live. ___
9 Nearest airport is 70 miles away. ___
10 There were no chairs, so we sat on floor ___
11 Have you finished book I lent you? ___
12 Chris just got job in bank in Zurich. ___
13 We live in small apartment downtown. ___
14 There's store at end of street I live on. ___

70.4 Answer these questions. Where possible, use once a week / three times a day, etc.

1 How often do you go to the movies? *Three or four times a year.*
2 How often do you go to the movies? ___
3 How often do you go away on vacation? ___
4 How long do you usually sleep? ___
5 How often do you go out in the evening? ___
6 How many hours of TV do you watch (on average)? ___
7 What's the usual speed limit in towns in your country? ___

→ Additional Exercise 30 (page 314)

Unit 71

the 1

A

We use **the** when there is only one of something:

- Have you ever crossed **the equator**? (there is only one equator)
- Our apartment is on **the tenth floor**.
- Buenos Aires is **the capital of Argentina**.
- I'm going away at **the end of this month**.



We use **the** + *superlative* (**best**, **oldest**, etc.):

- What's **the longest river in Europe**?

Compare **the** and **a/an** (see also Units 69–70):

- **The sun** is **a star**. (= one of many stars)
- **The hotel** where we stayed was **a very old hotel**.
- We live in **an apartment** on **the tenth floor**.
- What's **the best way** to learn **a language**?

B

We say "**the same**":

- Your sweater is **the same** color as mine. (*not* is same color)
- "Are these keys **the same**?" "No, they're different."

C

We say: **the world** **the sun** **the earth** **the sea** **the ground**
the universe **the moon** **the sky** **the ocean** **the country** (= not a town)

- I love to look at the stars in **the sky**. (*not* in sky)
- Do you live in a city or in **the country**?
- **The earth** goes around **the sun**, and **the moon** goes around **the earth**.

We also use **Earth** (without **the**) when we think of it as a planet in space (like **Mars**, **Jupiter**, etc.).

- Which other planet is closest to **Earth**?

We say **space** (without **the**) when we mean "space in the universe." Compare

- There are millions of stars **in space**. (*not* in the space)
- I tried to park my car, but **the space** was too small.

D

We say:

(go to) **the movies**, **the theater**

- I go to **the movies** a lot, but I haven't been to **the theater** for ages.

TV/television (without **the**), but **the radio**

- I watch **TV** a lot, but I don't listen to **the radio** much.

but Can you turn off **the television**, please? (**the** television = the TV set)

the Internet

- **The Internet** has changed the way we live.

E

We usually say **breakfast/lunch/dinner** (without **the**):

- What did you have for **breakfast**?
- We had **lunch** in a very nice restaurant.

But we say "**a big** lunch," "**a wonderful** dinner," "**an early** breakfast," etc.

- We had **a** very **nice lunch**. (*not* We had very nice lunch)

F

We say: **size 43**, **Platform 5**, etc. (without **the**)

- Our train leaves from **Platform 5**. (*not* the Platform 5)
- Do you have these shoes in **size 9**? (*not* the size 9)

In the same way, we say: **Room 126**, **page 29**, **vitamin A**, **section B**, etc.

a/an → Unit 69 **a/an** and **the** → Unit 70 **the** 2–4 → Units 72–74
Names with and without **the** → Units 75–76

Exercises

71.1 Put in the or a where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 A: Our apartment is on the tenth floor.
B: Is it? I hope there's elevator.
2 A: Did you have nice vacation?
B: Yes, it was best vacation I've ever had.
3 A: Where's nearest drugstore?
B: There's one at end of this street.
4 A: It's beautiful day, isn't it?
B: Yes, there isn't cloud in sky.
5 A: We spent all our money because we stayed at most expensive hotel in town.
B: Why didn't you stay at cheaper hotel?
6 A: Would you like to travel in space?
B: Yes, I'd love to go to moon.
7 A: What did you think of movie last night?
B: It was OK, but I thought ending was a bit strange.
8 A: What's Jupiter? Is it star?
B: No, it's planet. It's largest planet in solar system.

71.2 Which is right? (For the, see also Unit 70)

1 I haven't been to ~~movies~~ / the movies for ages. (the movies *is correct*)
2 Sarah spends most of her free time watching TV / the TV.
3 Do you ever listen to radio / the radio?
4 Television / The television was on, but nobody was watching it.
5 Have you had dinner / the dinner yet?
6 It's confusing when two people have same name / the same name.
7 What do you want for breakfast / for the breakfast?
8 Fruit is an important source of vitamin C / the vitamin C.
9 This computer is not connected to Internet / the Internet.
10 I lay down on ground / the ground and looked up at sky / the sky.
11 Next train / The next train to London leaves from Platform 3 / the Platform 3.

71.3 Put in the or a where necessary. (For a and the see also Units 69–70)

1 Sun is star. The sun is a star.
2 I'm fed up with doing same thing every day.
3 Room 25 is on second floor.
4 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year.
5 We had lunch in nice restaurant by ocean.
6 What's playing at movies this week?
7 I had big breakfast this morning.
8 You'll find information you need at top of page 15.

71.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use the where necessary.

breakfast	gate	Gate 24	~~lunch~~	movies	ocean	question	question 3

1 I'm hungry. It's time for lunch.
2 There was no wind, so was very calm.
3 Most of the questions on the test were OK, but I couldn't answer .
4 "I'm going to tonight." "Really? What are you going to see?"
5 I'm sorry, but could you repeat , please?
6 I didn't have this morning because I was in a hurry.
7 (*airport announcement*) Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at .
8 I forgot to shut . Can you shut it for me?

→ Additional Exercise 30 (page 314)

Unit 72

the 2 (school / the school, etc.)

A

Compare **school** and **the school**:



Emily is ten years old. Every day she goes **to school**. She's **at school** now. **School** starts at 9:00 and finishes at 3:00.

We say a child goes **to school** or is **in school** (as a student). We are not thinking of a specific school. We are thinking of **school** as a *general* idea—students learning in a classroom.



Today Emily's mother wants to speak to her daughter's teacher. So she has gone to **the school** to see her. She's at **the school** now.

Emily's mother is not a student. She is not "in school." She doesn't "go to school." If she wants to see Emily's teacher, she goes to **the school** (= Emily's school, a specific building).

B

We use **college**, **class**, **church**, and **prison** (or **jail**) in a similar way. We do not use **the** when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for.

Compare:

- When I finish school, I plan to go **to college**. (as a student)
- I was **in class** for five hours today. (= attending a class or classes)
- Sarah's father goes **to church** every Sunday. (for a religious service)
- Matt's brother is **in prison** for robbery. (He is a prisoner. We are not thinking of a specific prison.)
- I went to **the college** to meet Professor Thomas. (as a visitor, not as a student)
- Who is the youngest student in **the class**? (= a specific group of students)
- Some workmen went to **the church** to repair the roof. (a specific building)
- Matt went to **the prison** to visit his brother. (He went as a visitor, not as a prisoner.)

With most other places, you need **the**. For example, **the hospital**, **the train station**, **the bank** (see Units 70C and 71D).

C

We say **go to bed** / **be in bed**, etc. (*not* the bed):

- I'm going **to bed** now. Good night!
- Do you ever have breakfast **in bed**?

but

- I sat down on **the bed**. (a specific piece of furniture)

go to work / **be at work** / **start work** / **finish work**, etc. (*not* the work):

- Chris didn't go to **work** yesterday.
- What time do you usually finish **work**?

go home / **come home** / **arrive home** / **get home** / **be** (**at**) **home** / do something **at home**, etc.:

- It's late. Let's go **home**.
- I don't leave the house for work. I work **at home**.

the → Units 70–71, 73–76 Prepositions (**at school** / **in the hospital**, etc.) → Units 120–122
home → Unit 123C **British English** → Appendix 7

Exercises

72.1 Complete the sentences with **school** or **the school**.

1 Why aren't your children in *school* today? Are they sick?
2 When he was younger, Ben hated ..., but he enjoys it now.
3 There were some parents waiting outside ... to meet their children.
4 What time does ... start in the morning?
5 How do your children get to and from ...? Do you take them?
6 What was the name of ... you attended?
7 What does Emily want to do when she leaves ...?
8 My children walk to ... . isn't very far.

72.2 Which is right?

1 a Where is ~~college~~ / the college? Is it near here? (the college *is correct*)
b Josh left school and got a job. He didn't want to go to college / the college.
c In your country, what proportion of the population go to college / the college?
d This is a small town, but college / the college is the biggest in the country.

2 a The professor isn't in his office right now. He's in class / the class.
b The teacher asked the students to turn off their cell phones in class / the class.
c I'll buy the textbook on my way to class / the class this afternoon.
d Not even the best student in class / the class could answer the question.

3 a Why is she in prison / the prison? What crime did she commit?
b There was a fire at prison / the prison. Firefighters were called to put it out.
c Do you think too many people are sent to prison / the prison?

4 a John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church / the church every Sunday.
b John himself doesn't go to church / the church.
c The village is very nice. You should visit church / the church. It's interesting.

72.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 How did you get *home* after the party?
2 How do you usually go ... in the morning? By bus?
3 Sam likes to go to ... early and get up early.
4 I don't have my phone. I left it ... .
5 "Have you seen my keys?" "Yes, they're on ... ."
6 Should we meet ... tomorrow evening?
7 I like to read ... before going to sleep.
8 It was a long, tiring trip. We arrived ... very late.
9 Tom usually finishes ... at 5:00.
10 It's nice to travel around, but there's no place ... .

bed
the bed
in bed
~~**home**~~
home
at home
like home
work
to work
after work

72.4 Complete the sentences. Choose **at/in/to + class, school**, etc.

~~**bed**~~ **bed** **class** **college** **home** **prison** **school** **work**

1 Jen is *in bed* . She's not feeling well.
2 In your country, at what age do children have to start going ...?
3 Nick didn't go out last night. He stayed ... .
4 There is a lot of traffic in the morning when people are going ... .
5 When Jessica finishes high school, she wants to go ... .
6 Ben never gets up before 9:00. It's 8:30 now, so he is still ... .
7 Kate is a good student. She goes ... every day.
8 If people commit crimes, they may end up ... .

→ **Additional Exercise 30** (page 314)

Unit 73

the 3 (children / the children, etc.)

A

When we are talking about things or people in general, we do *not* use **the**:

- I'm afraid of **dogs**. (*not* the dogs)
  (**dogs** = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)
- **Doctors** are usually paid more than **teachers**.
- Do you know anybody who collects **stamps**?
- **Life** has changed a lot in the last thirty years.
- Do you like **classical music**/**Chinese food**/**fast cars**?
- My favorite sport is **football**/**skiing**/**athletics**.
- My favorite subject in high school was **history**/**physics**/**English**.



We say "**most** people / **most** stores / **most** big cities," etc. (*not* the most ...):

- **Most stores** accept credit cards. (*not* The most stores)

B

We use **the** when we mean specific things or people.
Compare:

In general (without **the**)

- **Children** learn from playing. (= children in general)
- I couldn't live without **music**.
- All **cars** have wheels.
- **Sugar** isn't very good for you.
- Do **Americans** drink a lot of tea? (= Americans in general)

Specific people or things (with **the**)

- We took **the children** to the zoo. (= a specific group, maybe the speaker's children)
- The movie wasn't very good, but I liked **the music**. (= the music in the movie)
- All **the cars in this parking lot** belong to people who work here.
- Can you pass **the sugar**, please? (= the sugar on the table)
- Do **the Americans you know** drink a lot of tea? (= only the Americans you know, not Americans in general)

C

The difference between "something in general" and "something specific" is not always very clear.
Compare:

In general (without **the**)

- I like working with **people**. (= people in general)
- I like working with **people who say what they think**. (not all people, but "people who say what they think" is still a general idea)
- Do you like **coffee**? (= coffee in general)
- Do you like **strong black coffee**? (not all coffee, but "strong black coffee" is still a general idea)

Specific people or things (with **the**)

- I like **the people I work with**. (= a specific group of people)
- **The coffee we had after dinner** wasn't very good. (= specific coffee)

the 1–2 ➜ Units 71–72 **the** + Adjective (**the old** / **the Japanese**, etc.) ➜ Unit 74

Exercises

73.1 Choose four of these things and write what you think about them:

bananas	**boxing**	**cats**	**crowds**	**fast food**	**horror movies**
~~**hot weather**~~	**math**	**opera**	**snow**	**supermarkets**	**zoos**

Use: I like ... / I don't like ... I think ... is/are ... I don't mind ...
I love ... / I hate ... I'm (not) interested in ...

1 I don't like hot weather very much.
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....

73.2 Which is right?

1 a Apples / ~~The apples~~ are good for you. (Apples *is correct*)
b Look at apples / the apples on that tree. They're very big.
2 a Who are people / the people in this picture?
b It annoys me when people / the people throw trash on the ground.
3 a My memory isn't good. I'm not good at remembering names / the names.
b What were names / the names of those people we met last night?
4 a First World War / The First World War began in 1914 and ended in 1918.
b A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war.
5 a He's lazy. He doesn't like hard work / the hard work.
b Did you finish work / the work you were doing yesterday?

73.3 Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

~~(the) **basketball**~~	(the) **grass**	(the) **patience**	(the) **people**
(the) **questions**	(the) **meat**	~~(the) **information**~~	(the) **hotels**
(the) **biology**	(the) **water**	(the) **spiders**	(the) **lies**

1 My favourite sport is basketball .
2 The information we were given wasn't correct.
3 Some people are afraid of .....
4 A vegetarian is somebody who doesn't eat .....
5 The test wasn't hard. I answered ..... without any problem.
6 Do you know ..... who live in the apartment next to yours?
7 ..... is the study of plants and animals.
8 It's better to tell the truth. Telling ..... often causes problems.
9 We couldn't find anywhere to stay in the town. ..... were all full.
10 Don't swim in this pool. ..... doesn't look very clean.
11 Don't sit on ..... It's wet after the rain.
12 You need ..... to teach young children.

73.4 Which is right?

1 Dan is very good at telling stories / the stories.
2 I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
3 Don't stay in that hotel. It's noisy and rooms / the rooms are very small.
4 I don't have a car, so I use public transportation / the public transportation most of the time.
5 All books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
6 Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.
7 We enjoyed our vacation. Weather / The weather was good.
8 Everybody needs water / the water to live.
9 I don't like films / the films with unhappy endings.

→ Additional Exercise 30 (page 314)

Unit 74

the 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the old, etc.)

A

Study these sentences:

- **The giraffe** is the tallest animal.
- **The bicycle** is an excellent means of transportation.
- When was **the camera** invented?
- **The dollar** is the currency of the United States.



In these examples, **the** ... does not mean one specific thing. **The giraffe** = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe. We use **the** ... in this way to talk about a type of animal, machine, etc.

In the same way we use **the** for musical instruments:

- Can you play **the** guitar?
- **The** piano is my favorite instrument.

Compare **a** and **the**:

- I'd like to have **a piano**. *but* I can't play **the piano**.
- We saw **a giraffe** at the zoo. *but* **The giraffe** is my favorite animal.

B

the old, the rich, etc.

We use **the** + *adjective* (without a noun) to talk about groups of people. For example:

the old = old people, **the rich** = rich people, etc.:

- Do you think **the rich** should pay higher taxes?
- We need to do more to help **the homeless**.

Note that we say: the **old** (*not* the olds), the **poor** (*not* the poors), etc.

The rich, the homeless, etc., are *plural*. For one person, we say:
a rich **man** (*not* a rich) **a** homeless **person** (*not* a homeless)

C

the French, the Chinese, etc.

We use **the** + a few nationality adjectives that end in **-ch** or **-sh**. For example:
the French **the Dutch** **the British** **the English** **the Spanish**

The meaning is *plural*—the people of that country.

- **The French** are famous for their food. (*not* French are ...)

We do not say "a French" or "an English" (*singular*). For example, we say:

- I met **a** French **woman** / **an** English **guy**.

We also use **the** + nationality words ending in **-ese** or **-ss**. For example:
the Chinese **the Portuguese** **the Swiss**
These words can also be singular (**a Chinese, a Swiss**, etc.).

With other nationality words, the plural ends in **-s** (*without* **the**). For example:

an Italian → **Italians** a Mexican → **Mexicans** a Thai → **Thais**

- **Italians** / **Mexicans** / **Thais** are very friendly.

In all cases you can use *adjective* + **people**. For example, you can say:

- **French** / **Chinese** / **Mexican** people are very friendly.

a/an and **the** ➜ Unit 70 **the** ➜ Units 71–73 Names with and without **the** ➜ Units 75–76

Exercises

74.1 Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don't forget the.

1

animals	
tiger	elephant
rabbit	cheetah
giraffe	kangaroo

2

birds	
eagle	penguin
swan	owl
parrot	pigeon

3

inventions	
telephone	wheel
telescope	laser
helicopter	typewriter

4

currencies	
dollar	peso
euro	rupee
ruble	yen

1 a Which of the animals is the tallest? the giraffe
b Which animal can run the fastest? .....
c Which of these animals is found in Australia? .....
2 a Which of these birds has a long neck? .....
b Which of these birds cannot fly? .....
c Which bird flies at night? .....
3 a Which of these inventions is the oldest? .....
b Which one is the most recent? .....
c Which one was especially important for astronomy? .....
4 a What is the currency of India? .....
b What is the currency of Canada? .....
c And the currency of your country? .....

74.2 Put in the or a.

1 When was ___the___ telephone invented?
2 Can you play ___ musical instrument?
3 Jessica plays ___ violin in an orchestra.
4 There was ___ piano in the corner of the room.
5 I wish I could play ___ piano.
6 Our society is based on ___ family.
7 Tony comes from ___ large family.
8 ___ computer has changed the way we live.
9 When was ___ bicycle invented?
10 Do you have ___ car?

74.3 Complete these sentences. Use the + adjective. Choose from:

elderly **injured** **rich** **sick** **unemployed** ~~**young**~~

1 The young have the future in their hands.
2 Jennifer is a nurse. She's spent her life caring for .....
3 Life is all right if you have a job, but things are hard for .....
4 Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took ..... to hospital.
5 More and more people are living longer. How are we going to care for .....?
6 It's nice to have lots of money, but ..... have their problems too.

74.4 What do you call the people of these countries?

	one person (a/an ...)	*the people in general*
1 Canada	a Canadian	Canadians
2 Germany		
3 France		
4 Russia		
5 Japan		
6 Brazil		
7 England		
8 And your country		

Unit 75

Names with and without **the** 1

A

We do *not* use **the** with names of people ("Nicole," "Nicole Taylor," etc.). In the same way, we do *not* use **the** with most names of places. For example:

continents	**Africa** (*not* the Africa), **South America**
countries, states, etc.	**France** (*not* the France), **Japan**, **Texas**
islands	**Sicily**, **Tasmania**
cities, towns, etc.	**Cairo**, **Bangkok**



But we normally use **the** in names with **Republic**, **Kingdom**, **States**, etc.:

the Czech **Republic** — **the** United **Kingdom** (**the** UK)
the Dominican **Republic** — **the** United **States** of America (**the** USA)

Compare:

- Have you been to **Canada** or **the United States**?

B

When we use **Mr./Ms./Captain/Doctor**, etc. + a name, we do not use **the**. So we say:

Mr. Johnson / **Doctor** Johnson / **Captain** Johnson / **President** Johnson, etc. (*not* the ...)
Uncle Robert / **Saint** Catherine / **Queen** Catherine, etc. (*not* the ...)

Compare:

- We called **the doctor**.
  We called **Doctor** Johnson. (*not* the Doctor Johnson)

We use **Mount** (= mountain) and **Lake** before a name in the same way (without **the**):

Mount Everest (*not* the ...) — **Mount** Etna — **Lake** Superior — **Lake** Victoria

- They live near **the lake**.
  They live near **Lake Superior**. (*not* the Lake Superior)

C

We use **the** with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals:

the Atlantic (Ocean) — **the** Red Sea — **the** Amazon
the Indian Ocean — **the** Gulf of Mexico — **the** Nile
the Mediterranean (Sea) — **the** Suez Canal

We use **the** with the names of deserts:

the Sahara (Desert) — **the** Gobi Desert

D

We use **the** with *plural* names of people and places:

people	**the** Taylor**s** (= the Taylor family), **the** Johnson**s**
countries	**the** Netherland**s**, **the** Philippine**s**, **the** United State**s**
groups of islands	**the** Canarie**s** (*or* **the** Canary Island**s**), **the** Bahama**s**
mountain ranges	**the** Ande**s**, **the** Alp**s**, **the** Ural**s**

- The highest mountain in **the Andes** is (**Mount**) **Aconcagua**.

E

We say:

the north (of Brazil) — *but* — **northern** Brazil (*without* the)
the southeast (of Spain) — *but* — **southeastern** Spain

Compare:

- Sweden is in **northern Europe**; Spain is in **the south**.

We also use **north/south** etc. (*without* **the**) in the names of some regions and countries:

North America — **South Africa** — **Southeast Asia**

Note that on maps, **the** is not usually included in the name.

Names with and without **the** 2 ➜ Unit 76

Exercises

75.1 Which is right?

1 Who is Doctor Johnson / ~~the Doctor Johnson~~? (Doctor Johnson *is correct*)
2 I was ill. Doctor / The doctor told me to rest for a few days.
3 Doctor Thomas / The Doctor Thomas is an expert on heart disease.
4 I'm looking for Professor Brown / the Professor Brown. Do you know where she is?
5 In the United States, president / the president is elected for four years.
6 President Kennedy / the President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.
7 The officer I spoke to at the police station was Inspector Roberts / the Inspector Roberts.
8 Do you know Wilsons / the Wilsons? They're a very nice couple.
9 Julia spent three years as a student in United States / the United States.
10 France / the France has a population of about 66 million.

75.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need the (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Mount Everest was first climbed in 1953. OK
2 Milan and Turin are cities in north of Italy. in the north of Italy
3 Africa is much larger than Europe. .....
4 Last year I visited Mexico and United States. .....
5 Southern England is warmer than north. .....
6 Thailand and Cambodia are in Southeast Asia. .....
7 Chicago is on Lake Michigan. .....
8 Next year we're going skiing in Swiss Alps. .....
9 UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. .....
10 Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean. .....
11 I've never been to South Africa. .....
12 Volga River flows into Caspian Sea. .....

75.3 Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and use the if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes.

Continents	*Countries*	*Oceans and Seas*	*Mountains*	*Rivers and Canals*	
Africa	Canada	~~Atlantic~~	Alps	Amazon	Rhine
Asia	Denmark	Indian Ocean	Andes	Danube	Thames
Australia	Indonesia	Pacific	Himalayas	Nile	Volga
Europe	Sweden	Black Sea	Rockies	Suez Canal	
North America	Thailand	Mediterranean	Urals	Panama Canal	
South America	United States	Red Sea			

1 What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? the Atlantic
2 Where is Argentina? .....
3 What is the longest river in Africa? .....
4 Of what country is Stockholm the capital? .....
5 Of what country is Washington the capital? .....
6 What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America? .....
7 What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe? .....
8 What is the smallest continent in the world? .....
9 What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia? .....
10 What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia? .....
11 What river flows through London? .....
12 What river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade? .....
13 Of what country is Bangkok the capital? .....
14 What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans? .....
15 What is the longest river in South America? .....

Unit 76

Names with and without **the** 2

A Names without **the**

We do not use **the** with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks, etc.:

Union Street (*not* the ...) **Fifth Avenue** **Central Park**
Wilshire Boulevard **Broadway** **Times Square**

Names of many public buildings and institutions (airports, stations, universities, etc.), and also some geographical names, are two words:

Manchester Airport **Harvard University**

The first word is the name of a place ("Manchester") or a person ("Harvard"). These names are usually without **the**. In the same way, we say:

Penn Station (*not* the ...) **Grace Cathedral** **Hearst Castle**
Iolani Palace **Stanford University** **Boston Harbor**

Compare:

Buckingham Palace (*not* the ...) *but* **the Royal Palace**
("Royal" is an adjective—it is not a name like "Buckingham.")

B

Most other buildings have names with **the**. For example:

Hotels	**the** Sheraton Hotel, **the** Hilton
Theaters / Movie theaters	**the** Palace Theater, **the** Odeon (movie theater)
Museums	**the** Guggenheim Museum, **the** National Gallery
Other buildings	**the** Empire State (Building), **the** White House, **the** Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun:

the Sheraton (Hotel) **the Palace** (Theater) **the Guggenheim** (Museum)

Some names are only **the** + *noun*, for example:

the Acropolis **the Kremlin** **the Pentagon**

C

Names with **of** usually have **the**. For example:

the Bank **of** New York **the** Museum **of** Modern Art
the Great Wall **of** China **the** Tower **of** London

Note that we say:

the University **of** Michigan *but* **Michigan State University** (*without* **the**)

D

Many shops, restaurants, hotels, etc., are named after people. These names end in **-'s** or **-s**. We do not use **the** with these names:

McDonald's (*not* the ...) **Barclays** (bank)
Joe's Diner (restaurant) **Macy's** (department store)

Churches are often named after saints (St = Saint):

St. John's Church (*not* the ...) **St. Patrick's Cathedral**

E

Most newspapers and many organizations have names with **the**:

the Washington Post **the** Financial Times **the** Sun (newspaper)
the European Union **the** United Nations **the** Red Cross

Names of companies, airlines, etc., are usually without **the**:

Fiat (*not* the Fiat) **Sony** **Singapore Airlines**
Kodak **IBM** **Yale University Press**

Names with and without **the** 1 ➜ Unit 75

Exercises

76.1 Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is on. Use the if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use the.)



1	Is there a movie theater nearby?	Yes, the Odeon on Market Street.
2	Is there a supermarket nearby?	Yes, ... on ..... .
3	Is there a hotel nearby?	Yes, ... on ..... .
4	Is there a church nearby?	Yes, ...
5	Is there a museum nearby?	Yes, ...
6	Is there a bookstore nearby?	Yes, ...
7	Is there a restaurant nearby?	Yes, ...
8	Is there a park nearby?	Yes, ... at the end of ..... .

76.2 Where are the following? Use the where necessary.

Acropolis	**Broadway**	**Buckingham Palace**	**Eiffel Tower**
Kremlin	**White House**	**O'Hare Airport**	~~**Times Square**~~

1 Times Square is in New York.
2 ..... is in Paris.
3 ..... is in London.
4 ..... is in Washington.
5 ..... is in Moscow.
6 ..... is in New York.
7 ..... is in Athens.
8 ..... is near Chicago.

76.3 Which is right?

1 Have you ever been to ~~Science Museum~~ / the Science Museum? (the Science Museum *is correct*)
2 Many tourists in London visit St Paul's Cathedral / the St Paul's Cathedral.
3 The biggest park in New York is Central Park / The Central Park.
4 I'd like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall.
5 O'Hare Airport / The O'Hare Airport is about 26 miles from downtown Chicago.
6 "What movie theater are we going to tonight?" "Classic / The Classic."
7 Jack is a student at McGill University / the McGill University.
8 You should go to National Museum / the National Museum. It's very interesting.
9 If you're looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison's / the Harrison's.
10 Andy is a flight attendant. He works for Cathay Pacific / the Cathay Pacific.
11 "Which newspaper do you want?" "Morning News / The Morning News."
12 We went to Italy and saw Leaning Tower / the Leaning Tower of Pisa.
13 This book is published by Cambridge University Press / the Cambridge University Press.
14 The building across the street is College of Art / the College of Art.
15 Imperial Hotel / The Imperial Hotel is on Baker Street / the Baker Street.
16 Statue of Liberty / The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor / the New York Harbor.

→ Additional Exercise 30 (page 314)

Unit 77

Singular and Plural

A

Sometimes we use a *plural* noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:



pants (*two legs*)
also **jeans/tights/shorts/underpants**



pajamas
(*top and bottom*)



glasses



binoculars



scissors

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:

- My pants **are** too long. (*not* my pants is)

You can also use **a pair of** + these words:

- **Those are** nice **jeans**. *or* That's **a** nice **pair of** jeans. (*not* a nice jeans)
- I need **some** new **glasses**. *or* I need **a** new **pair of** glasses.

B

Some nouns end in **-ics**, but are not usually plural. For example:

gymnastics **economics** **politics** **physics** **electronics** **mathematics**

- **Gymnastics is** my favorite sport. (*not* Gymnastics are)

News is not plural (see Unit 70B):

- I have **some news** for you. **It's** good news!

Some words that end in **-s** can be singular or plural. For example:

means	a **means** of transportation	**many means** of transportation
series	a TV **series**	**two** TV **series**
species	a **species** of fish	**200 species** of fish

C

We use a plural verb with **police**:

- **The police are** investigating the crime but **haven't** arrested anyone yet.
  (*not* The police is ... hasn't)

Note that we say **a police officer** / **a policeman** / **a policewoman** (*not* a police).

D

We do not often use the plural of **person** ("persons"). We normally use **people** (a *plural* word):

- He's **a** nice **person**. *but* They are nice **people**. (*not* nice persons)
- **Many people don't** have enough to eat.
  (*not* Many people doesn't)

E

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance, etc., as *one* thing. So we use a singular verb:

- **Fifty thousand dollars** (= it) **was** stolen in the robbery.
  (*not* were stolen)
- **Three years** (= it) **is** a long time to be without a job.
  (*not* Three years are)
- **Two miles isn't** very far to walk.

British English → Appendix 7

Exercises

77.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

a
are
them
doesn't
pair
it
~~glasses~~
some
don't

1 My eyesight is getting worse. I need glasses.
2 The pants you bought for me ..... fit.
3 The jacket you bought for me ..... fit.
4 I need ..... scissors to cut this piece of material.
5 I can't find my binoculars. Have you seen ..... ?
6 I went shopping and bought a ..... of jeans.
7 Where ..... my sunglasses?
8 I went shopping and bought ..... pair of pajamas.
9 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in .....

77.2 Complete the sentences. Use a word from section B (news, series, etc.).

1 "Have you heard the news ?" "No. What happened?"
2 The bicycle is a ..... of transportation.
3 A lot of American TV ..... are shown in other countries.
4 The tiger is an endangered ..... .
5 There will be a ..... of meetings to discuss the problem.
6 Fortunately, the ..... wasn't as bad as we expected.
7 How many ..... of birds are there in the world?
8 I didn't have my phone, so I had no ..... of contacting you.

77.3 Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural.

1 Gymnastics is / are my favorite sport. (is *is correct*)
2 My new glasses doesn't / don't fit very well.
3 The police want / wants to interview two men about the robbery.
4 Physics was / were my favorite subject in school.
5 It's a nice place to visit. The people is / are very friendly.
6 How much time do we need? Is / Are twenty minutes enough?
7 Does / Do the police know how the accident happened?
8 Your new jeans look / looks really nice.
9 Most people enjoy / enjoys music.
10 I don't understand economics. It's / They're too complicated.

77.4 Complete the sentences. Use is or isn't, and choose from the box.

a lot to carry
enough money
too hot
long enough
~~a long time~~

1 Three years is a long time to be without a job.
2 Thirty degrees Celsius ..... for Tom. He doesn't like hot weather.
3 Ten dollars ..... . We need more than that.
4 Four days ..... for a vacation. You need at least a week.
5 Twenty kilos ..... . Are you sure you can manage it?

77.5 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Three years are a long time to be without a job. Three years is a long time
2 The police are investigating the crime. OK
3 Susan was wearing a black jeans. .....
4 I like Martin and Jane. They're very nice persons. .....
5 I'm going to buy some new pajamas. .....
6 There was a police directing traffic in the street. .....
7 This scissors isn't very sharp. .....
8 This plant is very rare species. .....
9 Twelve hours are a long time to be on a plane. .....

Unit 78

Noun + Noun (a bus driver / a headache)

A

You can use two nouns together (*noun + noun*) to mean *one* thing/person/idea, etc.:

a **bus driver** **income tax** the **water temperature** an **apple tree**

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us the kind of thing/person/idea, etc.:

a bus driver = the driver of a bus
income tax = tax that you pay on your income
the **water temperature** = the temperature of the water
an **apple tree** = a tree that has apples
a **Paris hotel** = a hotel in Paris
my **life story** = the story of my life

So you can say:

a **television** camera a **television** program a **television** studio a **television** producer
(things or people to do with television)
language **problems** marriage **problems** health **problems** work **problems**
(different kinds of problems)

Sometimes the first word ends in **-ing**:

a **frying** pan (= a pan for frying)
a **washing** machine
a **swimming** pool

B

Sometimes there are more than two nouns together:

- I waited at the **hotel reception desk**.
- We watched the **World Swimming Championships** on TV.
- If you want to play table tennis (= a game), you need **a table tennis table** (= a table).

C

When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:

a **headache** **toothpaste** a **weekend** a **tour bus** a **road sign**

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

D

Note the difference between:

a **coffee cup** (maybe empty) and a **cup of coffee** (= a cup with coffee in it)
a **toolbox** (maybe empty) and a **box of tools** (= a box full of tools)

E

When we use *noun + noun*, the first noun is like an *adjective*. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural.

For example: a **bookstore** is a store where you can buy **books**; an **apple tree** is a tree that has **apples**.

In the same way we say:

a **three-hour** trip (= a trip that takes three **hours**)
a **ten-dollar** bill (= a bill with the value of ten **dollars**)
a **four-week** course
a **six-mile** walk
two **14-year**-old girls

Compare:

- It was **a** four-**week** course. (*not* a four weeks course)

but The course lasted four **weeks**.

-'s and **of** ... ➜ Unit 79

Exercises

78.1 What do we call these things and people?

1 Someone who drives a bus is a bus driver.
2 Problems concerning health are health problems.
3 A ticket to travel by train is a .....
4 A machine you use to get a ticket is a .....
5 The staff at a hotel is the .....
6 The scores on your exams are your .....
7 A horse that runs in races is a .....
8 A race for horses is a .....
9 Shoes for running are .....
10 A store that sells shoes is a .....
11 The window of a store is a .....
12 A person who cleans windows is a .....
13 A scandal involving a construction company is .....
14 Workers at a car factory are .....
15 A plan for the improvement of a road is a .....
16 A department store in New York is a .....

78.2 Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

~~accident~~	belt	birthday	~~car~~	card	credit
driver	forecast	machine	number	party	ring
room	seat	truck	washing	weather	wedding

1 This could be caused by bad driving. a car accident
2 You should wear this when you're driving. a .....
3 You can use this to pay for things. a .....
4 This will tell you if it's going to rain or not. the .....
5 This is useful if you have a lot of dirty clothes. a .....
6 This is something you might wear if you're married. a .....
7 If you're staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. your .....
8 This is a way to celebrate getting older. a .....
9 This person transports things by road. a .....

78.3 Put the words in the right order.

1 I spilled coffee on the living room carpet. (room / carpet / living)
2 Jack likes sports. He plays for his ..... . (team / high school / football)
3 Anna works for a ..... . (company / production / film)
4 Many people invest in a ..... . (life / policy / insurance)
5 You can get a map at the ..... . (information / office / tourist)

78.4 Which is correct?

1 It's quite a long book. There are more than ~~500-page~~ / 500 pages in it. (500 pages *is correct*)
2 It's only a two-hour / two hours flight from New York to Detroit.
3 It took only two hour / two hours to fly to Madrid.
4 I don't have any change. I only have a twenty-dollar / twenty dollars bill.
5 I looked down and there were two ten-dollar / ten dollars bills on the ground.
6 At work in the morning, we usually take a 15-minute / 15 minutes break for coffee.
7 There are 60-minute / 60 minutes in an hour.
8 My office is on the tenth floor of a twelve-story / twelve stories building.
9 I work five-day / five days a week. I'm off on Saturday and Sunday.
10 Five-star / Five stars hotels are the most expensive.
11 Sam's daughter is six-year-old / six years old.
12 Sam has a six-year-old / six-years-old daughter.

Unit 79

-'s (your sister's name) and of ... (the name of the book)

A

We use **-'s** (*apostrophe* + **s**) mostly for people or animals:

- **Tom's** computer isn't working. (*not* the computer of Tom)
- How old are **Chris's** children? (*not* the children of Chris)
- What's (= What is) **your sister's** name?
- What's **Tom's sister's** name?
- Be careful. Don't step on **the cat's** tail.

You can use **-'s** without a noun after it:

- This isn't my book. It's **my sister's**. (= my sister's book)

We do not use **-'s** after a long group of words. So we say:

my friend's mother

but the mother **of the man we met yesterday** (*not* the man we met yesterday's mother)

Note that we say **a woman's hat** (= a hat for a woman), **a boy's name** (= a name for a boy), **a bird's egg** (= an egg laid by a bird), etc.

B

With a *singular* noun we use **-'s**:

my **sister's** room (= **her** room—*one sister*)
Mr. Carter's house (= **his** house)

With a *plural* noun (sister**s**, friend**s**, etc.) we put an apostrophe (') after **s**:

my sisters' room (= **their** room—*two or more* sisters)
the Carters' house (= **their** house—*Mr. and Mrs. Carter*)

If a plural noun does not end in **-s** (for example **men/women/children/people**), we use **-'s**:

the **men's** locker room
a **children's** book (= a book for children)

You can use **-'s** after more than one noun:

Jack and Karen's children
Mr. and Mrs. Carter's house

C

For things, ideas, etc., we normally use **of**:

the door **of the garage** (*not* the garage's door)
the name **of the book** the owner **of the restaurant**

We say **the beginning/end/middle of** ... / **the top/bottom of** ... / **the front/back/side of** ... :

the beginning of the month (*not* the month's beginning)
the top of the hill **the back of** the car

D

You can usually use **-'s** or **of** ... for an organization (= a group of people). So you can say:

the government's decision *or* the decision **of the government**
the company's success *or* the success **of the company**

We also use **-'s** for places. So you can say:

the city's streets **the world's** population **Brazil's** largest city

E

We use **-'s** with time words (**yesterday** / **next week**, etc.):

- Do you still have **yesterday's** newspaper?
- **Next week's** meeting has been canceled.

In the same way, you can say **today's** / **tomorrow's** / **this evening's** / **Monday's**, etc.

Noun + Noun (**a bus driver**) ➜ Unit 78 a **three-hour** trip, a **ten-dollar** bill ➜ Unit 78E
-'s (= **is** or **has**) in short forms ➜ Appendix 5.2

Exercises

79.1 In some of these sentences, it is more natural to use -'s or -'. Change the underlined parts where necessary.

1 Who is the owner of this restaurant — OK
2 How old are the children of Chris? — Chris's children
3 Is this the umbrella of your friend?
4 Write your name at the top of the page.
5 I've never met the daughter of James.
6 How old is the son of Helen and Andy?
7 We don't know the cause of the problem.
8 I don't know the words of this song.
9 The friends of your children are here.
10 What is the cost of a new washing machine?
11 The garden of our neighbors is very small.
12 The hair of David is very long.
13 I work on the ground floor of the building.
14 I couldn't go to the party of my best friend.
15 George is the brother of somebody I knew in college.
16 Have you seen the car of the parents of Ben?
17 What is the meaning of this expression?
18 Do you agree with the policy of the government?

79.2 Which is right?

1 Don't step on the *cat's* tail. (cat / cat's / cats')
2 It's my ..... birthday tomorrow. (father / father's / fathers')
3 Those ..... look good. Should we buy some? (apples / apple's / apples')
4 ..... clothes are expensive. (Children / Children's / Childrens')
5 Seoul is ..... largest city. (South Korea / South Korea's / South Koreas')
6 Your ..... parents are your grandparents. (parents / parent's / parents')
7 I took a lot of ..... when I was on vacation. (photos / photo's / photos')
8 This isn't my coat. It's ..... . (someone else / someone else's / someone elses')
9 Have you read any of ..... poems? (Shakespeare / Shakespeare's / Shakespeares')

79.3 What is another way of saying these things? Use -'s or -s'.

1 a hat for a woman — *a woman's hat*
2 a toy for a child
3 a name for a girl
4 a school for boys
5 shoes for women
6 a TV program for children

79.4 Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

1 The meeting tomorrow has been canceled.
Tomorrow's meeting has been canceled.
2 The storm last week caused a lot of damage.
Last .....
3 The only movie theater in the town has closed down.
The .....
4 The weather in Kansas City is very changeable.
.....
5 Tourism is the main industry in the region.
.....

Unit 80

myself / yourself / themselves, etc.

A

Study this example:



Steve **introduced himself** to the other guests.

We use **myself/yourself/himself**, etc. (*reflexive pronouns*) when the *subject* and *object* are the same:

Steve (*subject*) introduced himself (*object*)

The reflexive pronouns are:

singular (**-self**)	**myself**	**yourself** (*one person*)	**himself**/**herself**/**itself**
plural (**-selves**)	**ourselves**	**yourselves** (*more than one*)	**themselves**

- I don't want you to pay for me. **I'll** pay for **myself**. (*not* I'll pay for me)
- Amy had a great vacation. **She** really enjoyed **herself**.
- Do **you** talk to **yourself** sometimes? (*said to one person*)
- If you want more to eat, help **yourselves**. (*said to more than one person*)

Compare:

- **Liz** introduced **me** to the other guests.
- **I** introduced **myself** to the other guests.

B

We do not use **myself**, etc., after **feel/relax/concentrate/meet**:

- I **feel** nervous. I can't **relax**.
- You need to **concentrate**. (*not* concentrate yourself)
- What time should we **meet** tomorrow?

Normally we do not use **myself**, etc., after **wash/shave/dress**:

- He got up, **washed**, **shaved**, and **dressed**. (*not* washed himself, etc.)

You can also say **get dressed** (He **got dressed**).

C

Compare **-selves** and **each other**:

- Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at **themselves**.
  (= *Kate and Joe together* looked at *Kate and Joe*)
- Kate looked at Joe, and Joe looked at Kate. They looked at **each other**.



themselves



each other

You can use **one another** instead of **each other**:

- How long have you and Ben known **each other**? *or* ... known **one another**?
- Sue and Jen don't like **each other**. *or* ... don't like **one another**.
- Do they live near **each other**? *or* ... near **one another**?

D

We also use **myself/yourself**, etc., in another way. For example:

- "Who repaired your bike?" "**I** repaired it **myself**."

I repaired it myself = I repaired it, not another person. Here, we use **myself** to emphasize "I" (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:

- I'm not going to do your work for you. **You** can do it **yourself**. (= you, not me)
- **Let's** paint the house **ourselves**. It will be much cheaper.
- **The movie itself** wasn't very good, but I loved the music.
- I don't think Nicole will get the job she applied for. **Nicole** doesn't think **so herself**. *or* **Nicole herself** doesn't think so.

get dressed / get married, etc. → Unit 42D **by myself / by yourself**, etc. → Unit 81E

Exercises

80.1 Complete the sentences using myself/yourself, etc. + these verbs (in the correct form):

blame **burn** **enjoy** **express** **hurt** ~~**introduce**~~ **put**

1 John *introduced himself* to the other guests at the party.
2 Ben fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn't .....
3 It isn't Sue's fault. She really shouldn't .....
4 Please try and understand how I feel. You have to ..... in my position.
5 The children had a great time at the beach. They really .....
6 Be careful! That pan is hot. Don't .....
7 Sometimes I can't say exactly what I mean. I wish I could ..... better.

80.2 Put in myself/yourself/ourselves, etc., or me/you/us, etc.

1 Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed *herself*.
2 It's not my fault. You can't blame .....
3 What I did was really bad. I'm ashamed of .....
4 We have a problem. I hope you can help .....
5 "Can I have another cookie?" "Of course. Help .....!"
6 I want you to meet Sarah. I'll introduce ..... to her.
7 Don't worry about us. We can take care of .....
8 Don't worry about the children. I'll take care of .....
9 I gave them a key to our house so that they could let ..... in.

80.3 Complete these sentences. Use myself/yourself, etc., where necessary. Choose from:

concentrate **defend** **dry** ~~**enjoy**~~ **feel** **meet** **relax** ~~**shave**~~

1 Tony grew a beard because he was tired of *shaving*.
2 Amy had a great vacation. She *enjoyed herself*.
3 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I ..... much better today.
4 I climbed out of the swimming pool and ..... with a towel.
5 I tried to study, but I couldn't .....
6 If somebody attacks you, you have the right to .....
7 I'm going out with Chris this evening. We're ..... at 7:30.
8 You're always rushing. Why don't you sit down and .....?

80.4 Complete the sentences with ourselves/themselves or each other.

1 How long have you and Ben known *each other*?
2 If people work too hard, they can make ..... sick.
3 I need you, and you need me. We need .....
4 In the United States, friends often give ..... presents at Christmas.
5 Some people are selfish. They only think of .....
6 Abby and I don't see ..... very often these days.
7 We couldn't get back into the house. We had locked ..... out.
8 They had an argument. Now they're not speaking to .....
9 We'd never met before, so we introduced ..... to .....

80.5 Complete the sentences using myself/yourself, etc. Use the verb in parentheses.

1 "Who repaired the bike for you?" "Nobody. I *repaired it myself*." (repair)
2 I didn't buy this cake from a store. I ..... (make)
3 "Who told you Olivia was going away?" "Olivia ....." (tell)
4 I don't know what they're going to do. I don't think they ..... (know)
5 "Who cuts Kevin's hair for him?" "Nobody. He ....." (cut)
6 "Can you call Sam for me?" "Why can't you .....?" (do)

→ Additional Exercise 31 (pages 314–315)

Unit 81

a friend **of mine** **my own** house
on my own / by myself

A **a friend of mine / a friend of yours**, etc.

We say "(a friend) **of mine/yours/his/hers/ours/theirs**."
a friend of mine = one of my friends:

- I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. **A friend of mine** is getting married. (*not* a friend of me)
- We took a trip with **some friends of ours**. (*not* some friends of us)
- Eric had an argument with **a co-worker of his**.
- It was **a good idea of yours** to go to the movies.

In the same way we say "(a friend) **of my sister's** / (a friend) **of Tom's**," etc. :

- That woman over there is **a friend of my sister's**. (= one of my sister's friends)
- It was **a good idea of Tom's** to go to the movies.

B **my own** ... / **your own** ... , etc.

We say **my own** / **your own** / **her own** ... , etc. :
my own house **your own** car **her own** room
(*not* an own house, an own car, etc.)

my own ... / **your own** ... , etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed:

- I don't want to share a room with anybody. I want **my own room**.
- Emma and Brian would like to have **their own house**.
- It's a shame that the apartment building doesn't have **its own parking garage**.
- It's **my own fault** that I have no money. I buy too many things I don't need.
- Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use **your own**? (= your own car)

You can also say "a room **of my own**," "a house **of your own**," "problems **of his own**," etc. :

- I'd like to have a room **of my own**.
- He won't be able to help you with your problems. He has too many problems **of his own**.

C **he cuts his own hair**, etc.

We also use **own** to say that we do something ourselves instead of somebody else doing it for us. For example:

- Adam usually cuts **his own hair**. (= he cuts it himself)
- I'd like to have a garden so that I could grow **my own vegetables**. (= grow them myself instead of buying them in grocery stores)



D **on my own / on your own**, etc. = independently:

- My children are living **on their own**. (= living in their own homes and supporting themselves)
- I traveled around Japan **on my own**. (= not with an organized tour)
- Are you raising children **on your own**? (= without another parent)

E **by myself / by yourself**, etc. = alone:

- I like living **by myself**.
- "Did you go to Hawaii **by yourself**?" "No, with a friend."
- Jack was sitting **by himself** in a corner of the coffee shop.
- Student drivers are not allowed to drive **by themselves**.

myself/yourself/themselves, etc. ➜ Unit 80

Exercises

81.1 Change the underlined words and use the structure ... of mine/yours, etc.

1 I am meeting one of my friends tonight. I'm meeting a friend of mine tonight.
2 We met one of your relatives. We met a .....
3 Jason borrowed one of my books. Jason borrowed .....
4 I met Maria and some of her friends. I met Maria and .....
5 We had dinner with one of our neighbors. We had dinner with .....
6 I went on vacation with two of my friends. I went on vacation with .....
7 I met one of Amy's friends at the party. I met ..... at the party.
8 It's always been one of my ambitions to travel around the world. It's always been ..... to travel around the world.

81.2 Complete the sentences using my own / our own, etc. + the following:

~~bathroom~~ business opinions private beach words

1 I share a kitchen, but I have my own bathroom .
2 Tim doesn't think like me. He has ..... .
3 Julia doesn't want to work for other people. She wants to start ..... .
4 On the test we had to read a story, and then write it in ..... .
5 We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had ..... .

81.3 Complete the sentences using my own / your own, etc.

1 Why do you need to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own car ?
2 How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's ..... .
3 She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use ..... ?
4 Please don't worry about my problems. I'm sure you have ..... .
5 I can't make his decisions for him. He has to make ..... .

81.4 Complete the sentences using my own / your own, etc. Use the verbs in parentheses.

1 Matt never goes to a barber. He cuts his own hair . (cut)
2 Emily doesn't buy clothes very often. She likes to ..... . (make)
3 I'm not going to polish your shoes. You can ..... . (polish)
4 We don't buy bread very often. We usually ..... . (bake)
5 Chris and Joe are singers. They sing songs written by other people, but they also ..... . (write)

81.5 Complete the sentences using my own / myself, etc.

1 I traveled around Japan on my own .
2 The box was too heavy for me to lift by ..... .
3 We had no help decorating the apartment. We did it completely on ..... .
4 I'm glad I live with other people. I wouldn't like to live on ..... .
5 "Who was Tom with when you saw him?" "Nobody. He was by ....." .
6 I think my brothers are too young to make that decision on ..... .
7 Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by ..... ?
8 I went out with Sally because she didn't want to go out by ..... .

81.6 Are these sentences OK? Correct them where necessary.

1 Katherine would like to have the own house. ... to have her own house
2 Sam and Chris are co-workers of me. .....
3 I was scared. I didn't want to go out by my own. .....
4 In my last job I had own office. .....
5 He must be lonely. He's always with himself. .....
6 My parents have gone away with some friends of them. .....
7 Are there any countries that produce all own food? .....

Unit 82

there ... and it ...

A

Study this example:





There's a new restaurant on Hill Street.

Yes, I know. I've heard **it's** very good.



We use **there** ... when we talk about something for the first time, to say that it exists:

- **There's** a new restaurant on Hill Street.
- I'm sorry I'm late. **There was** a lot of traffic. (*not* It was a lot of traffic)
- Things are very expensive now. **There has been** a big increase in the cost of living.

It = a specific thing, place, fact, situation, etc.:

- We went to the new restaurant. **It's** very good. (**It** = the restaurant)
- I wasn't expecting her to call me. **It** was a complete surprise. (**It** = that she called)

Compare **there** and **it**:

- I like this town. **There**'s a lot to do here. **It**'s an interesting place.

There also means "to/at/in that place":

- The house is unoccupied. There's nobody living **there**. (= in the house)

B

You can say:

there will be	**there must have been**	**there is sure to be**	**there is likely to be**
there must be	**there should have been**	**there is bound to be**	**there is supposed to be**
there might be, etc.	**there would have been**, etc.	**there is going to be**	**there used to be**

- "**Is there** a flight to Miami tonight?" "**There might be**. I'll check online."
- If people drove more carefully, **there wouldn't be** so many accidents.
- I could hear music coming from the house. **There must have been** somebody at home.
- **There's bound to be** a cafe somewhere near here. (= There's **sure** to be ...)

Compare **there** and **it**:

- They live on a busy street. **There must be** a lot of noise from the traffic.
  They live on a busy street. **It must be** very noisy. (**It** = living on a busy road)
- **There used to be** a movie theater here, but it closed a few years ago.
  That building is now a supermarket. **It used to be** a movie theater. (**It** = that building)
- **There's sure to be** a flight to Miami tonight.
  There's a flight to Miami tonight, but **it's sure to be** full. (**it** = the flight)

C

We say:

- **It**'s dangerous **to walk in the road**. (*not* To walk in the road is dangerous)

Normally we use **It** ... at the beginning of sentences like this. Some more examples:

- **It** didn't take us long **to get** here.
- **It**'s too bad (**that**) **you can't come to the party**.
- **It**'s not worth **waiting any longer**. Let's go.

We also use **it** to talk about distance, time and weather:

- **How far is it** from here to the airport?
- **It's a long time** since we last saw you.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- **It** was **windy**.
- **There** was **a cold wind**.

supposed to ... ➜ Unit 43B **it's worth / it's no use / there's no point** ➜ Unit 61A
sure to bound to ..., etc. ➜ Unit 63E **there is + -ing/-ed** ➜ Unit 95

Exercises

82.1 Put in there is/was or it is/was. Some sentences are questions (is there? / was it?, etc.) and some are negative (there isn't / it wasn't, etc.).

1 The trip took a long time. There was a lot of traffic.
2 What's the new restaurant like? Is it good?
3 _____ something wrong with the washing machine. It's not working properly.
4 I wanted to visit the museum yesterday, but _____ enough time.
5 What's that new building over there? _____ a hotel?
6 How can we get across the river? _____ a bridge?
7 A few days ago _____ a big storm which caused a lot of damage.
8 I can't find my phone. _____ in my bag—I just looked.
9 _____ anything interesting on TV, so I turned it off.
10 _____ often very cold here, but _____ much snow.
11 I couldn't see anything. _____ completely dark.
12 "_____ a bookstore near here?" "Yes, _____ one on Hudson Street."
13 _____ difficult to get a job right now. _____ a lot of unemployment.
14 When we got to the movie theater, _____ a line outside. _____ a very long line, so we decided not to wait.

82.2 Read the first sentence, and then write a sentence beginning There ... .

1 The roads were busy yesterday. There was a lot of traffic.
2 This soup is very salty. There _____ in the soup.
3 The box was empty. _____ in the box.
4 About 50 people came to the meeting. _____ at the meeting.
5 The movie is very violent. _____
6 I like this town—it's lively. _____

82.3 Complete the sentences. Use there would be, there used to be, etc. Choose from:

won't may ~~would~~ wouldn't should used to is going to

1 If people drove more carefully, there would be fewer accidents.
2 "Do we have any eggs?" "I'm not sure. _____ some in the refrigerator."
3 I think everything will be OK. _____ any problems.
4 Look at those clouds. _____ a storm. I'm sure of it.
5 There isn't a school in the village. _____ one, but it closed a few years ago.
6 People drive too fast on this road. I think _____ a speed limit.
7 If people weren't so aggressive, _____ any wars.

82.4 Are these sentences OK? Change it to there where necessary.

1 They live on a busy road. It must be a lot of noise. There must be a lot of noise.
2 It's a long way from my house to the nearest store. OK
3 After the lecture, it will be an opportunity to ask questions. _____
4 Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason. _____
5 I like where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the ocean. _____
6 How long is it since you last went to the theater? _____
7 It used to be a lot of tourists here, but not many come now. _____
8 My phone won't work here. It's no signal. _____
9 It was Ken's birthday yesterday. We had a party. _____
10 We won't have any problem parking the car. It's sure to be a parking lot somewhere. _____
11 I'm sorry about what happened. It was my fault. _____
12 I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but it wasn't anybody. _____

Unit 83

some and any

A

In general we use **some** (*also* **somebody/someone/something**) in affirmative sentences and **any** (*also* **anybody**, etc.) in negative sentences:

some

- We **bought some** flowers.
- He's busy. He **has some** work to do.
- There**'s somebody** at the door.
- I **want something** to eat.

any

- We **didn't** buy **any** flowers.
- He's lazy. He **never** does **any** work.
- There **isn't anybody** at the door.
- I **don't** want **anything** to eat.

We use **any** in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

- She went out **without any** money. (she **didn't** take **any** money with her)
- He **refused** to eat **anything**. (he **didn't** eat **anything**)
- It's a very easy exam. **Hardly anybody** fails. (= almost **nobody** fails)

B

We use both **some** and **any** in questions. We use **some/somebody/something** to talk about a person or thing that we know exists or we think exists:

- Are you waiting for **somebody**? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use **some** in questions when we ask for or offer things:

- Can I have **some** sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar that I can have)
- Would you like **something** to eat? (there is something to eat)

But in most questions, we use **any**. We do not know if the thing or person exists:

- Do you have **any** luggage? (maybe you do, maybe not)
- Is there **anybody** in the house? (maybe there is, maybe not)

C

You can use **if** + **any**:

- Let me know **if** you need **anything**.
- **If anyone** has **any** questions, I'll be happy to answer them.

The following sentences have the idea of **if**:

- I'm sorry for **any** trouble I've caused. (= **if** I have caused **any** trouble)
- The police want to speak to **anyone** who saw the accident. (= **if** there is **anyone**)

D

We also use **any** with the meaning "it doesn't matter which":

- You can take **any** bus. They all go downtown. (= it doesn't matter which bus you take)
- Come and see me **any** time you want.

We use **anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere** in the same way:

- We forgot to lock the door. **Anybody** could have come in.

Compare **some-** and **any-**:

- A: I'm hungry. I want **something** to eat.
  B: What would you like?
  A: I don't care. **Anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)
- A: Let's go out **somewhere**.
  B: Where should we go?
  A: **Anywhere**. I just want to go out.

E

Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone are singular words:

- **Someone** is here to see you.

But we use **they/them/their** after these words:

- **Someone** has forgotten **their** umbrella. (= his or her umbrella)
- If **anybody** wants to leave early, **they** can. (= he or she can)

not ... any → Unit 84 **some of / any of ...** → Unit 86 **hardly any** → Unit 99C

Exercises

83.1 Put in **some** or **any**.

1 We didn't buy ___any___ flowers.
2 Tonight I'm going out with ___ friends of mine.
3 Have you seen ___ good movies recently?
4 I'd like ___ information about what there is to see in this town.
5 I didn't have ___ money. I had to borrow ___.
6 You can use your card to withdraw money at ___ ATM.
7 Those apples look nice. Should we get ___?
8 With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on ___ train you like.
9 "Can I have ___ more coffee, please?" "Sure. Help yourself."
10 If there are ___ words you don't understand, look them up in a dictionary.
11 We wanted to buy ___ grapes, but they didn't have ___ at the grocery store.

83.2 Complete the sentences with **some-** or **any-** + **-body/-thing/-where**.

1 I was too surprised to say ___anything___.
2 There's ___ at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
3 Does ___ mind if I open the window?
4 I can't drive and I don't know ___ about cars.
5 You must be hungry. Can I get you ___ to eat?
6 Emma is very tolerant. She never complains about ___.
7 There was hardly ___ on the beach. It was almost deserted.
8 Let's go away. Let's go ___ warm and sunny.
9 I'm going out now. If ___ asks where I am, tell them you don't know.
10 Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost ___?
11 This is a no-parking zone. ___ who parks their car here will have to pay a fine.
12 Quick, let's go! There's ___ coming and I don't want ___ to see us.
13 They stay home all the time. They never seem to go ___.
14 Jonathan stood up and left the room without saying ___.
15 "Can I ask you ___?" "Sure. What do you want to ask?"
16 Sarah was upset about ___ and refused to talk to ___.
17 I need ___ to translate. Is there ___ here who speaks English?
18 Sue is very secretive. She never tells ___ ___. (*2 words*)

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** (+ noun) or **anybody/anything/anywhere**.

1	Which bus do I have to take?	___Any bus___. They all go downtown.
2	When should we meet? Monday?	It doesn't matter. ___ next week will be OK for me.
3	What do you want to eat?	___. It doesn't matter. Whatever you have.
4	Who should I invite to the party?	It's your party. You can invite ___ you want.
5	What sort of job are you looking for?	___. It doesn't matter what it is.
6	Where should I sit?	It's up to you. You can sit ___ you like.
7	Is this machine difficult to use?	No, it's easy. ___ can learn to use it very quickly.

Unit 84

no/none/any nothing/nobody, etc.

A no and none

We use **no** + *noun* (**no bus, no stores**, etc.).

no = **not a** or **not any**:

- We had to walk home. There was **no bus**. (= There **wasn't a** bus)
- Sarah will have **no trouble** finding a job. (= Sarah **won't** have **any** trouble ...)
- There were **no stores** open. (= There **weren't any** stores open.)

You can use **no** + *noun* at the beginning of a sentence:

- **No reason** was given for the change in plans.

We use **none** *without* a noun:

- "How much money do you have?" "**None**." (= no money)
- All the tickets have been sold. There are **none** left. (= no tickets left)

Or we use **none of** ... :

- This money is all yours. **None of it** is mine.

Compare **no**, **none** and **any**:

- I have **no luggage**.
- "How much luggage do you have?" "**None**." *or* "I **don't** have **any**."

After **none of** + *plural* (none of **the students**, none of **them**, etc.), the verb can be singular or plural:

- None of the students **were** happy. *or* None of the students **was** happy.

B nothing nobody / no one nowhere

You can use these words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions):

- "What's going to happen?" "**Nobody** knows." / "**No one** knows."
- "What happened?" "**Nothing**."
- "Where are you going?" "**Nowhere**. I'm staying here."

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after **be** and **have**:

- The house is empty. There's **nobody** living there.
- We **had nothing** to eat.

nothing/nobody, etc. = **not** + **anything/anybody**, etc. :

- I said **nothing**. = I **didn't** say **anything**.
- Jane told **nobody** about her plans. = Jane **didn't** tell **anybody** about her plans.
- They have **nowhere** to live. = They **don't** have **anywhere** to live.

With **nothing/nobody**, etc., we do *not* use a negative verb (**isn't, didn't**, etc.):

- I **said** nothing. (*not* I didn't say nothing)

C

After **nobody / no one**, you can use **they/them/their** (see also Unit 83E):

- **Nobody** is perfect, are **they**? (= is he or she perfect?)
- **No one** did what I asked **them** to do. (= him or her)
- **Nobody** in the class did **their** homework. (= his or her homework)

D

Sometimes **any/anything/anybody**, etc., means "it doesn't matter which/what/who" (see Unit 83D).

Compare **no**- and **any**-:

- There was **no** bus, so we walked home.
  You can take **any** bus. They all go downtown. (= it doesn't matter which bus)
- "What do you want to eat?" "**Nothing**. I'm not hungry."
  I'm so hungry. I could eat **anything**. (= it doesn't matter what)
- It's a difficult job. **Nobody** wants to do it.
  It's a very easy job. **Anybody** can do it. (= it doesn't matter who)

some and **any** ➜ Unit 83 **none of** ... ➜ Unit 86 **any bigger / no better**, etc. ➜ Unit 103B

Exercises

84.1 Complete these sentences with **no, none** or **any.**

1 It was a public holiday, so there were ___no___ stores open.
2 I don't have ___any___ money. Can you lend me some?
3 We had to walk home. There were _____ taxis.
4 We had to walk home. There weren't _____ taxis.
5 "How many eggs do we have?" "_____. Should I get some?"
6 There's nowhere to cross the river. There's _____ bridge.
7 We took a few pictures, but _____ of them were very good.
8 "Did you take lots of pictures?" "No, I didn't take _____."
9 I had to do what I did. I had _____ alternative.
10 I don't like _____ of this furniture. It's ugly.
11 We canceled the party because _____ of the people we'd invited were able to come.
12 Everyone knows they are getting married. It's _____ secret.
13 The two books are exactly the same. There isn't _____ difference.
14 "Do you know where Chris is?" "I'm sorry. I have _____ idea."

84.2 Answer these questions using **none/nobody/nothing/nowhere.**

1	What did you do on the weekend?	___Nothing___. It was very boring.
2	Who are you waiting for?	_____. I'm just standing here.
3	How much bread did you buy?	_____. We already have enough.
4	Where are you going?	_____. I'm staying here.
5	How many books have you read this year?	_____. I don't read books.
6	How much does it cost to get into the museum?	_____. It's free.

Now answer the same questions using **any/anybody/anything/anywhere.**

7 (1) ___I didn't do anything.___
8 (2) I'm _____
9 (3) I _____
10 (4) _____
11 (5) _____
12 (6) _____

84.3 Complete these sentences with **no-** or **any-** + **-body/-thing/-where.**

1 I don't want ___anything___ to drink. I'm not thirsty.
2 The bus was completely empty. There was _____ on it.
3 "Where did you go for your vacation?" "_____. I didn't go away."
4 "Do you smell gas?" "No, I don't smell _____."
5 Everybody seemed satisfied. _____ complained.
6 Let's go away. We can go _____ you like.
7 The town is still the same as it was years ago. _____ has changed.
8 "What did you buy?" "_____. I couldn't find _____ I liked."
9 There was complete silence in the room. _____ said _____.

84.4 Which is right?

1 She didn't tell ~~nobody~~ / anybody about her plans. (anybody *is correct*)
2 The accident looked bad, but fortunately nobody / anybody was seriously injured.
3 I looked out the window, but I couldn't see no one / anyone.
4 The exam is very easy. Nobody / Anybody can pass it.
5 "What's in that box?" "Nothing / Anything. It's empty."
6 The future is uncertain. Nothing / Anything is possible.
7 I don't know nothing / anything about economics.
8 I'll try and answer no / any questions you ask me.
9 "Who were you talking to just now?" "No one / Anyone. I wasn't talking to no one / anyone."

→ Additional Exercise 31 (pages 314–315)

Unit 85

much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty

A

We use **much** and **little** with *noncount* nouns:

much luck **much time** **little energy** **little money**

We use **many** and **few** with *plural* nouns:

many friends **many people** **few cars** **few children**

We use **a lot of / lots of / plenty of** with both *noncount* and *plural* nouns:

a lot of luck **lots of time** **plenty of money**
a lot of friends **lots of people** **plenty of ideas**

plenty = more than enough:

- There's no need to hurry. We've got **plenty of time**.
- There's **plenty to do** in this town.

B

We use **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences (affirmative, negative, and questions):

- We **spent a lot of** money. (*affirmative*)
- There **aren't a lot of** tourists here. (*negative*)
- **Do** you **know a lot of** people? (*question*)

We use **much** and **many** in negative sentences and questions, but not so often in affirmative sentences:

- We **didn't** spend **much** money.
- There **aren't many** tourists here.
- **Do** you **see** David **much**?
- **Do** you **know many** people?

Much is especially unusual in affirmative sentences:

- We **spent a lot of** money. (*not usually* We spent much money.)

But we use **too much / so much / too many / so many** in affirmative sentences:

- We **spent too much** money.
- There **are so many** tourists here.

C

little = not much, **few** = not many:

- Tom is very busy with his job. He has **little time** for other things.
  (= not much time, less time than he would like)
- Vicky doesn't like living in Boston. She has **few friends** there.
  (= not many friends, not as many as she would like)

We often use **very little** and **very few**:

- Tom has **very little time** for other things.
- Vicky has **very few friends** in Boston.

D

a little = some, a small amount:

- Let's go and have a coffee. We have **a little** time before the train leaves.
  (**a little time** = some time, enough time to have a coffee)
- "Do you speak English?" "**A little**." (so we can talk a bit)

a few = some, a small number:

- I enjoy my life here. I have **a few friends**, and we see each other quite often.
  (**a few friends** = not many, but enough to have a good time)
- "When was the last time you saw Clare?" "**A few days** ago." (= 3 or 4 days ago)

E

Compare **little** and **a little**, **few** and **a few**:

- He spoke **little English**, so it was difficult to communicate with him.
  He spoke **a little English**, so we were able to communicate with him.
- She's lucky. She has **few problems**. (= not many problems)
  Things are not going so well for her. She has **a few problems**. (= some problems)

We say **only a little** (*not* only little) and **only a few** (*not* only few):

- Hurry! We **only** have **a little** time. (= some, but not much time)
- The village was small. There were **only a few** houses. (= some but not many houses)

Count and Noncount Nouns → Units 67–68

Exercises

85.1 In some of these sentences much is incorrect or unnatural. Change much to many or a lot (of) where necessary. Write "OK" if the sentence is correct and natural.

1 We didn't eat much. OK
2 My mother drinks much tea. My mother drinks a lot of tea.
3 Be quick! We don't have much time. .....
4 It cost much to repair the car. .....
5 Did it cost much to repair the car? .....
6 You have much luggage. Let me help you. .....
7 There wasn't much traffic this morning. .....
8 I don't know much people in this town. .....
9 Do you eat much fruit? .....
10 Mike likes traveling. He travels much. .....

85.2 Complete the sentences using plenty of ... or plenty to ... . Choose from:

hotels **learn** **money** **room** **see** ~~**time**~~

1 There's no need to hurry. There's plenty of time.
2 He has no financial problems. He has .....
3 Come and sit with us. There's .....
4 She knows a lot, but she still has .....
5 It's an interesting town to visit. There .....
6 I'm sure we'll find somewhere to stay. .....

85.3 Put in much/many/little/few (one word only).

1 She isn't popular. She has few friends.
2 Anna is very busy these days. She has ..... free time.
3 Did you take ..... pictures at the wedding?
4 This is a modern city. There are ..... old buildings.
5 The weather has been very dry recently. We've had ..... rain.
6 I don't know London well. I haven't been there for ..... years.
7 The two cars are similar. There is ..... difference between them.
8 I'm not very busy today. I don't have ..... to do.
9 It's a wonderful place to live. There are ..... better places to be.

85.4 Which is right?

1 She's lucky. She has few problems / ~~a few problems~~. (few problems *is correct*)
2 Can you lend me few dollars / a few dollars?
3 It was the middle of the night, so there was little traffic / a little traffic.
4 They got married few years ago / a few years ago.
5 I can't give you a decision yet. I need little time / a little time to think.
6 I don't know much Russian—only few words / only a few words.
7 It was a surprise that he won the game. Few people / A few people expected him to win.

85.5 Put in little / a little / few / a few.

1 Eric is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things.
2 Listen carefully. I'm going to give you ..... advice.
3 Do you mind if I ask you ..... questions?
4 It's not a very interesting place to visit, so ..... tourists visit.
5 I don't think Amy would be a good teacher. She has ..... patience.
6 "Would you like milk in your coffee?" "Yes, ..., please."
7 This is a boring place to live. There's ..... to do.
8 I know Hong Kong pretty well. I've been there ..... times.
9 There were only ..... people at the meeting.
10 "Did you do all this work on your own?" "No, I had ..... help from my friends."

Unit 86

all / all of most / most of no / none of, etc.

A

all	some	any	most	much	many	(a) little	(a) few	no

You can use these words with a noun (**some food** / **few books**, etc.):

- **All cars** have wheels.
- **Some cars** can go faster than others.
- There weren't **many cars** in the parking lot.
- I go away **most weekends**.
- I feel really tired. I've got **no energy**.

We do not say "all of cars," "some of people," etc. (see Section B):

- **Some people** learn more easily than others. (*not* Some of people)

B

all	half	some	any	most	much	many	(a) little	(a) few	none

You can use these words with **of**:

some of	+	**the** ...	**my** ...	
most of		**this** ...	**these** ...	
none of etc.		**that** ...	**those** ...	etc.

So you can say:

some **of the people**, some **of those people** (*but not* some of people)
most **of my time**, most **of the time** (*but not* most of time)

- **Some of the people I work with** are very strange.
- **None of this money** is mine.
- Have you read **any of these books**?
- I was sick yesterday. I spent **most of the day** in bed.

You don't need **of** after **all** or **half**. So you can say:

- **All my friends** live near here. *or* All **of** my friends ...
- **Half this money** is mine. *or* Half **of** this money ...

Compare:

- **All flowers** are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)
  All (of) these flowers are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers)
- **Most problems** have a solution. (= most problems in general)
  We were able to solve **most of the problems we had**. (= a specific group of problems)

C

You can use **all of** / **some of** / **none of**, etc. + **it/us/you/them**:

all of	+	**it**
some of		**us**
any of		**you**
most of		**them**
none of etc.		

- A: Do you like this music?
  B: **Some of it**. Not **all of it**.
- A: How many of these people do you know?
  B: **None of them**. / **A few of them**.
- Do **any of you** want to come to a party tonight?
  (said to more than 2 people)

We say: **all of us** / **all of you** / **half of it** / **half of them**, etc. You need **of** before **it/us/you/them**:

- **All of us** were late. (*not* all us)
- I haven't finished the book yet. I've only read **half of it**. (*not* half it)

D

We also use **some/most**, etc., alone, *without* a noun:

- Some cars have four doors, and **some** have two.
- A few of the stores were open, but **most** (of them) were closed.
- Half this money is mine, and **half** (of it) is yours. (*not* the half)

all ➜ Units 73B, 88, 107D **some** and **any** ➜ Unit 83 **no** and **none** ➜ Unit 84
much/many/little/few ➜ Unit 85 **all of whom** / **most of which**, etc. ➜ Unit 94B

Exercises

86.1 Put in of where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1 All — cars have wheels. (*the sentence is already complete*)
2 None of this money is mine.
3 There were problems at the airport, and some ..... flights were cancelled.
4 Some ..... the movies I've seen recently have been very violent.
5 Joe never goes to museums. He says that all ..... museums are boring.
6 I think some ..... people watch too much TV.
7 Do you want any ..... these magazines, or can I throw them away?
8 Kate has lived in Houston most ..... her life.
9 Joe has lived in Chicago all ..... his life.
10 Most ..... days I get up before 7:00.
11 I usually have a little ..... sugar in my coffee.
12 They won the lottery a few years ago, but they've spent most ..... the money

86.2 Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of (some of / most of, etc.) where necessary.

birds	**the buildings**	**her friends**	**my dinner**
~~**cars**~~	**the players**	**her opinions**	**my spare time**
mistakes	**the population**	~~**these books**~~	**European countries**

1 I haven't read many of these books.
2 All cars have wheels.
3 I spend much ..... gardening.
4 Ana's English is very good. She doesn't make many .....
5 It's a historic town. Most ..... are very old.
6 When Emily got married, she kept it a secret. She didn't tell any .....
7 Not many people live in the north of the country. Most ..... lives in the south.
8 Not all ..... can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.
9 Our team played badly and lost the game. None ..... played well.
10 Emma and I have different ideas. I don't agree with many .....
11 Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most .....
12 I had no appetite. I could only eat half .....

86.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 The building was damaged in the explosion. All the windows were broken.
2 We argue sometimes but get along well most of .....
3 I went to the movies by myself. None of ..... wanted to come.
4 The test was hard. I could only answer half .....
5 Some of ..... you took at the wedding were really good.
6 "Did you spend all ..... I gave you?" "No, there's some left."

86.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them, etc.)

1 These books are all Sarah's. None of them belong to me.
2 "How many of these books have you read?" "..... Every one."
3 We all got wet in the rain because ..... had an umbrella.
4 Some of this money is yours, and ..... is mine.
5 Most of my friends have traveled a lot, but ..... have ever been to Africa.
6 Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. ..... were French.
7 I watched most of the movie, but not .....
8 He told us his life story, but ..... was true. It was all invented.

Unit 87

both / both of neither / neither of either / either of

A

We use **both/neither/either** for *two* things.
You can use these words with a *noun* (**both books**, **neither book**, etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say:

- **Both restaurants** are good. (*not* the both restaurants)
- **Neither restaurant** is expensive.
- We can go to **either restaurant**. I don't care. (= one or the other, it doesn't matter which)
- I haven't been to **either restaurant** before. (= not one or the other)

You can also use **both/neither/either** without a noun:

- "Which do you prefer, basketball or tennis?" "It's hard to say. I like **both**."
- "Is your friend British or American?" "**Neither**. She's Australian."
- "Do you want tea or coffee?" "**Either**. It doesn't matter."

B

both of ... / neither of ... / either of ...

We use **both of / neither of / either of + the/these/my/Tom's ...**, etc. So we say "both of **the** restaurants," "both of **those** restaurants," etc. (*but not* both of restaurants):

- **Both of these** restaurants are good.
- **Neither of the** restaurants we went to was expensive.
- I haven't been to **either of those** restaurants.

You don't need **of** after **both**. So you can say:

- **Both of these** restaurants are good. *or* **Both these** restaurants are good.

We also use **both of / neither of / either of + us/you/them:**

- *(talking to two people)* Can **either of you** speak Russian?
- I asked two people how to get to the train station, but **neither of them** knew.

We say "both **of**" before **us/you/them** (you need to use **of**):

- **Both of us** were tired. (*not* Both us were ...)

After **neither of** ... a verb can be singular or plural:

- Neither of them **is** at home. *or* Neither of them **are** at home.

C

You can say:

both ... and ...

- **Both** Chris **and** Brian were late.
- I was **both** tired **and** hungry when I arrived home.

neither ... nor ...

- **Neither** Chris **nor** Brian came to the party.
- There was an accident outside our house, but we **neither** saw **nor** heard anything.

either ... or ...

- I'm not sure where Maria's from. She's **either** Spanish **or** Italian.
- **Either** you apologize, **or** I'll never speak to you again.

D

Compare **either/neither/both** (two things) and **any/none/all** (more than two):

- There are **two** good hotels here. You could stay at **either** of them.
- We tried **two** hotels.
  - **Neither** of them had a room.
  - **Both** of them were full.

- There are **many** good hotels here. You could stay at **any** of them.
- We tried **a lot of** hotels.
  - **None** of them had a room.
  - **All** of them were full.

neither do I / I don't either → Unit 49C **any** → Units 83–84 **none** → Units 84A, 86
all → Unit 86 **both of whom / neither of which** → Unit 94B **both** → Unit 107D

Exercises

87.1 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either.**

1 "Do you want tea or coffee?" "Either. It really doesn't matter."
2 "What day is it today—the 18th or the 19th?" "_____. It's the 20th."
3 A: Where did you go on your trip—Korea or Japan?
B: We went to _____. A week in Korea and a week in Japan.
4 "Should we sit in the corner or by the window?" "_____. I don't care."
5 "Where's Liz? Is she at work or at home?" "_____. She's out of town."
6 "Is it true that Kate speaks Spanish and Arabic?" "Yes, she speaks _____ fluently."

87.2 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either.** Use **of** where necessary.

1 Both my parents are from Egypt.
2 To get downtown, you can walk along the river or you can walk down the street. You can go _____ way.
3 I went to Adam's house twice, but _____ times he wasn't at home.
4 _____ Tom's parents is English. His father is Polish, and his mother is Italian.
5 I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another. Fortunately, _____ driver was injured, but _____ cars were badly damaged.
6 I have two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but _____ my sisters are still at school.

87.3 Complete the sentences with **both/neither/either + of us / of them.**

1 I asked two people how to get to the train station, but neither of them knew.
2 I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn't go to _____.
3 There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened _____.
4 Sam and I often play tennis, but we're not very good. _____ can play well.
5 I tried two bookstores for the book I wanted to buy, but _____ had it.

87.4 Write sentences with **both ... and ... / neither ... nor ... / either ... or ... .**

1 Chris was late. So was Pat. Both Chris and Pat were late.
2 He didn't say hello, and he didn't smile. He neither said hello nor smiled.
3 It was a boring movie. It was long too.
The movie _____
4 Joe doesn't have a car. Sam doesn't have one either.
_____
5 Emily speaks German, and she speaks Russian too.
_____
6 Ben doesn't watch TV, and he doesn't read newspapers.
Ben _____
7 Is that man's name Richard? Or is it Robert? It's one of the two.
That man's name _____
8 I don't have time to go on vacation. And I don't have the money.
I have _____
9 We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow—whichever you prefer.
We _____

87.5 Complete the sentences with **neither/either/none/any.**

1 We tried a lot of hotels, but none of them had a room.
2 Sam has two sisters, but I haven't met _____ of them.
3 Emily has four brothers, but I haven't met _____ of them.
4 There were a few shops on the street, but _____ of them were open.
5 Spain, Italy, Greece, Turkey—have you been to _____ of these countries?
6 I could meet you next Monday or Thursday. Would _____ of those days work for you?
7 Mark and I couldn't get into the house because _____ of us had a key.

Unit 88

all every whole

A everybody/everyone/everything and all

We say:

- **Everybody** was happy. *or* **Everyone** was happy. (*not* all were happy)
- He thinks he knows **everything**. (*not* knows all)
- Our vacation was a disaster. **Everything** went wrong. (*not* all went wrong)

We do not often use **all** *alone* in this way. We do not say "all were happy," "he knows all," etc.
We use **all** in the following ways:

all + noun (**all cars**, **all my money**, etc.)
all of + **us/you/them**
we/you/they ... **all** ... (see also Unit 107D)
all about ...
all ... = the only thing(s)

- **All my friends** were happy.
- **All of us** were happy.
- **We** were **all** happy.
- He knows **all about computers**.
- **All I've eaten today** is a banana. (= the only thing I've eaten today)

B whole and all

whole = complete, entire. We use **whole** mostly with *singular* nouns:

- Did you read **the whole book**? (= all the book, not just a part of it)
- Emily has lived in the same town **her whole life**.
- I was so hungry I ate **a whole package** of cookies. (= a complete package)

We do not normally use **whole** with *noncount* nouns (**water**, **food**, **money**, etc.).
We say:

- Did you spend **all the money** I gave you? (*not* the whole money)
- I read **all the information** carefully. (*not* the whole information)

We use **the/my/a**, etc., before **whole**. Compare **whole** and **all**:

- I read **the whole** book. *but* I read **all the** information.

C every day / all day / the whole day

We use **every** to say how often something happens (**every day** / **every ten minutes**, etc.):

- When we were on vacation, we went to the beach **every day**. (*not* all days)
- The bus service is excellent. There's a bus **every ten minutes**.
- We don't see each other very often—about **every six months**.

All day *or* **the whole day** = the complete day from beginning to end:

- We spent **all day** on the beach. *or* We spent **the whole day** ...
- Dan was very quiet. He didn't say a word **all evening**. *or* ... **the whole evening**.

Note that we say **all day** (*not* all the day), **all week** (*not* all the week), etc.

Compare **all the time** and **every time**:

- They never go out. They are at home **all the time**. (= always, continuously)
- **Every time** I see you, you look different. (= each time, on every occasion)

D

Every / **everybody** / **everyone** / **everything** are *singular* words, so we use a *singular* verb:

- **Every seat** in the theater **was** taken.
- **Everybody has** arrived. (*not* have arrived)

But we use **they/them/their** after **everybody/everyone**:

- **Everybody** said **they** enjoyed **themselves**. (= everybody enjoyed himself or herself)

Count and Noncount Nouns → Units 67–68 **all** / **all of** → Unit 86 **each** and **every** → Unit 89
every one → Unit 89D **all** → Unit 107D

Exercises

88.1 Complete these sentences with **all**, **everything** or **everybody/everyone**.

1 It was a good party. Everybody had a great time.
2 All I've eaten today is a banana.
3 ..... has their faults. Nobody is perfect.
4 Nothing has changed. ..... is the same as it was.
5 Kate told me ..... about her new job. It sounds interesting.
6 Can ..... write their names on a piece of paper, please?
7 Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't ..... .
8 I'm really exhausted. ..... I want to do is sleep.
9 When the fire alarm rang, ... left the building immediately.
10 Amy didn't say where she was going. ..... she said was that she was going away.
11 We have completely different opinions. I disagree with ..... she says.
12 We all did well on the exam. ..... in our class passed.
13 We all did well on the exam. ..... of us passed.
14 Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do ..... for you?

88.2 Write sentences with **whole**.

1 I read the book from beginning to end. I read the whole book.
2 Everyone on the team played well.
The .....
3 Matt opened a box of chocolates. He started eating. When he finished, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate .....
4 The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They .....
5 Everyone in Ed and Jane's family plays tennis. Ed and Jane play, and so do all their children.
The .....
6 Sarah worked from early in the morning until late in the evening.
.....
7 Jack and Anna had a week's vacation at the beach. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end of the week. It .....

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using **all** instead of **whole**.

8 (6) Sarah ..... .
9 (7) ..... .

88.3 Complete these sentences using **every** with the following:

five minutes **~~ten minutes~~** **four hours** **six months** **four years**

1 The bus service is very good. There's a bus every ten minutes .
2 Tom is sick. He has some medicine. He has to take it ..... .
3 The Olympic Games take place ..... .
4 We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house ..... .
5 Tim goes to the dentist for a check- up ..... .

88.4 Which is right?

1 Did you spend ~~the whole money~~ / all the money I gave you? (all the money *is correct*)
2 Julia works every day / all days except Sunday.
3 I'm tired. I've been working hard all the day / all day.
4 It was a terrible fire. Whole building / The whole building was destroyed.
5 It's a very sad song. Every time / All the time I hear it, it makes me cry.
6 I don't like the weather here. It rains every time / all the time.
7 When I was on vacation, all my luggage / my whole luggage was stolen.

→ Additional Exercise 31 (pages 314–315)

Unit 89

each and every

A

Each and **every** are similar. Often it is possible to use **each** or **every**:

- **Each** time I see you, you look different. *or* **Every** time I see you ...

But **each** and **every** are not exactly the same.

We use **each** when we think of things separately, one by one.

- Study **each sentence** carefully. (= study the sentences one by one)

each = X + X + X + X

Each is more common for a small number:

- There were four books on the table. **Each book** was a different color.
- *(in a card game)* At the beginning of the game, **each player** has three cards.

We use **every** when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to **all**.

- **Every window** in the house was open. (= all the windows in the house)

every = 

Every is more common for a large number:

- Kate loves reading. She has read **every book** in the library. (= all the books)
- I'd like to visit **every country** in the world. (= all the countries)

Each (but not **every**) can be used for two things:

- In soccer, **each team** has eleven players. (*not* every team)

We use **every** (not **each**) to say how often something happens:

- "How often do you use your car?" "**Every day**." (*not* Each day)
- There's a bus **every ten minutes**. (*not* each ten minutes)

B

Compare the structures we use with **each** and **every**:

We use **each** with or without a noun:

- None of the rooms are the same. **Each room** is different. *or* **Each** is different.

Or you can use **each one**:

- **Each one** is different.

We say **each of** (**the** / **these** / **them** ..., etc.):

- **Each of the** books was a different color. (*not* each of books)
- **Each of them** was a different color.
- Read **each of these** sentences carefully.

We use **every** with a noun:

- She's read **every book** in the library.

We don't use **every** alone, but you can say **every one**:

- A: Have you read all these books?
  B: Yes, **every one**.

We say **every one of** ... (*but not* every of):

- I've read **every one of those** books. (*not* every of those books)
- I've read **every one of them**.

C

We also use **each** in the middle of a sentence. For example:

- The students were **each** given a book. (= Each student was given a book.)

We say **a dollar each**, **ten pounds each**, etc.:

- These oranges are **80 cents each**. (**each** = for one orange)

D

everyone and **every one**

Everyone (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

- **Everyone** enjoyed the party. (= **Everybody** ...)

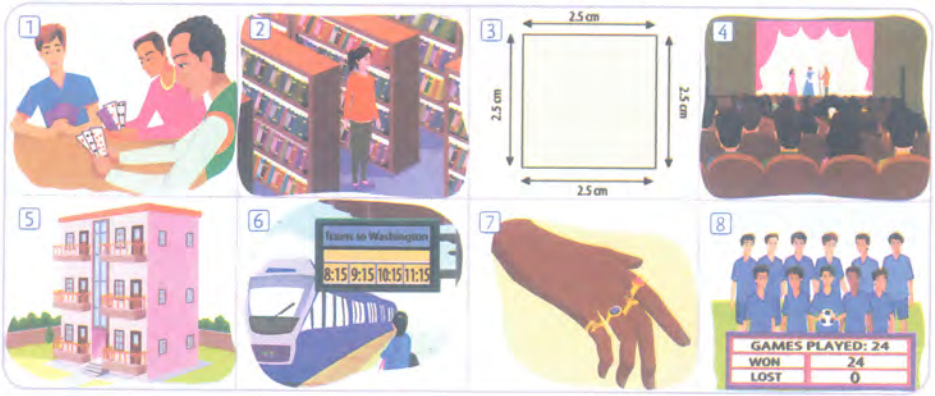
Every one (two words) is for things or people:

- Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to **every one**. (= to **every party**)

each other → Unit 80C **all** and **every** → Unit 88

Exercises

89.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **each** or **every**.



1 ___Each___ player has three cards.
2 Kate has read ___every___ book in the library.
3 _____ side of a square is the same length.
4 _____ seat in the theater was taken.
5 There are six apartments in the building. _____ one has a balcony.
6 There's a train to Washington _____ hour.
7 She was wearing four rings—one on _____ finger.
8 Our soccer team is playing well. We've won _____ game this season.

89.2 Put in **each**, **each of**, or **every**.

1 There were four books on the table. ___Each___ book was a different color.
2 The Olympic Games are held ___every___ four years.
3 _____ parent worries about their children.
4 In a game of tennis there are two or four players. _____ player has a racket.
5 Nicole plays volleyball _____ Thursday evening.
6 I understood most of what they said but not _____ word.
7 The book is divided into five parts and _____ these has three sections.
8 I get paid _____ four weeks.
9 I called the office two or three times, but _____ time it was closed.
10 Car seat belts save lives. _____ driver should wear one.
11 A friend of mine has three children. I always give _____ them a present at Christmas.
12 (*from an exam*) Answer all five questions. Write your answer to _____ question on a separate sheet of paper.

89.3 Complete the sentences using **each**.

1 The price of one of those oranges is 80 cents. ___Those oranges are 80 cents each___.
2 I had ten dollars, and so did Sonia. Sonia and I _____.
3 One of those postcards costs a dollar. Those _____.
4 The hotel was expensive. I paid 300 dollars, and so did you.
We _____.

89.4 Put in **everyone** (1 word) or **every one** (2 words).

1 Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to ___every one___.
2 I remember school very clearly. I remember _____ in my class.
3 I asked her lots of questions, and she answered _____ correctly.
4 Amy is very popular. _____ likes her.
5 I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately, _____ broke.

Unit 90

Relative Clauses 1: Clauses with who/that/which

A

Study this example situation:

Last week we had a party and a lot of people came. Everybody enjoyed it.

Everybody [who came to the party] enjoyed it.
relative clause

A *clause* is a part of a sentence. A *relative clause* tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

the woman **who lives next door to me**
("who lives next door to me" tells us which woman)
people **who complain all the time**
("who complain all the time" tells us what kind of people)

We use **who** in a relative clause for people (not things):

- **The woman who** lives next door to me is a doctor.
- I don't like **people who** complain all the time.
- An architect is **someone who** designs buildings.
- What was the name of **the person who** called?
- Do you know **anyone who** wants to buy a car?

We also use **that** for people, but not **which**:

- The woman **that lives next door to me** is a doctor. (*not* the woman which)

Sometimes you must use **who** (*not* that) for people—see Unit 93.

B

When we are talking about things, we use **that** or **which** (*not* who) in a relative clause:

- I don't like **stories that** have unhappy endings.
  or ... **stories which** have unhappy endings.
- Allison works for **a company that** makes furniture.
  or ... **a company which** makes furniture
- **The machine that** broke down is working again now.
  or **The machine which** broke down ...

In these examples **that** is more usual than **which**, but sometimes you must use **which**. See Unit 93.

C

In relative clauses we use **who/that/which**, not **he/she/they/it**.
Compare:

- I met a Canadian woman at the party. **She** is an English teacher. (*2 sentences*)
  I met **a Canadian woman who** is an English teacher. (*1 sentence*)
- I can't find the keys. **They** were on the table.
  Where are **the keys that** were on the table? (*not* the keys they were)

D

What = the thing(s) that
Compare **what** and **that**:

- **What happened** was my fault. (= the thing that happened)

but

- Everything **that happened** was my fault.
  (*not* Everything what happened)
- The machine **that broke down** is now working again.
  (*not* The machine what broke down)

Relative Clauses 2–5 → Units 91–94

Exercises

90.1 What do these words mean? Choose from the box and write sentences with who.

steals from a store	buys something at a store
~~designs buildings~~	pays rent to live somewhere
doesn't tell the truth	breaks into a house to steal things
is not brave	expects the worst to happen

1 (an architect) An architect is someone who designs buildings.
2 (a customer) .....
3 (a burglar) .....
4 (a coward) .....
5 (a tenant) .....
6 (a shoplifter) .....
7 (a liar) .....
8 (a pessimist) .....

90.2 Make one sentence from two. Use who/that/which.

1 A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in the hospital.
The girl who was injured in the accident is now in the hospital.
2 A waiter served us. He was impolite and impatient.
The .....
3 A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.
The .....
4 Some people were arrested. They have now been released.
The .....
5 A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.
The .....

90.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use who/that/which.

happened in the past	~~makes furniture~~
runs away from home	can support life
cannot be explained	has stayed there
developed the theory of relativity	were hanging on the wall

1 Mary works for a company that makes furniture.
2 The movie is about a girl .....
3 What happened to the pictures .....?
4 A mystery is something .....
5 I've heard it's a good hotel, but I don't know anyone .....
6 History is the study of things .....
7 Albert Einstein was the scientist .....
8 It seems that Earth is the only planet .....

90.4 Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 I don't like stories who have unhappy endings. stories that have
2 What was the name of the person who called? OK
3 Where's the nearest store who sells bread? .....
4 Dan said some things about me they were not true. .....
5 The driver which caused the accident was fined $500. .....
6 Do you know the person that took these pictures? .....
7 We live in a world what is changing all the time. .....
8 Tim apologized for what he said. .....
9 What was the name of the horse what won the race? .....

Unit 91

Relative Clauses 2: Clauses with and without **who/that/which**

A

Look at these example sentences from Unit 90:

- **The woman who lives** next door to me is a doctor. (*or* The woman **that** lives ...)

  The woman lives next door to me — **who** (= the woman) is the *subject*

- Where are **the keys that were** on the table? (*or* ... the keys **which** were ...)

  The keys were on the table — **that** (= the keys) is the *subject*

You must use **who/that/which** when it is the subject of the relative clause. You cannot leave out **who/that/which** in these examples.

B

Sometimes **who/that/which** is the *object* of the verb. For example:

- **The woman who I wanted to see** was away on vacation.

  I wanted to see the woman — **who** (= the woman) is the *object*; **I** is the *subject*

- Did you find **the keys that you lost**?

  you lost the keys — **that** (= the keys) is the *object*; **you** is the *subject*

When **who/that/which** is the object, you can leave it out. So you can say:

- **The woman I wanted to see** was away. *or* The woman **who** I wanted to see ...
- Did you find **the keys you lost**? *or* ... the keys **that** you lost?
- **The dress Natalie bought** doesn't fit her very well. *or* The dress **that** Natalie bought ...
- Is there **anything I can do**? *or* ... anything **that** I can do?

Note that we say:

the keys you lost (*not* the keys you lost them)
the dress Natalie bought (*not* the dress Natalie bought it)

C

Note the position of prepositions (**to/in/for**, etc.) in relative clauses:

Tom is talking to a woman. Who is she? (*2 sentences*)
→ Who is the woman Tom is talking to ? (*or* ... the woman **who/that** Tom is talking to)

I slept in a bed. It wasn't comfortable. (*2 sentences*)
→ The bed I slept in wasn't comfortable. (*or* The bed **that/which** I slept in ...)

- Are these **the books you were looking for**? *or*
  Are these the books **that/which** you were ...
- **The man I was sitting next to on the plane** talked the whole time. *or*
  The man **who/that** I was sitting next to ...

Note that we say:

the books **you were looking for** (*not* the books you were looking for them)
the man **I was sitting next to** (*not* the man I was sitting next to him)

D

We say:

- **Everything** (that) **they said** was true. (*not* Everything what they said)
- I gave her **all the money** (that) **I had**. (*not* all the money what I had)

What = the thing(s) that:

- **What they said** was true. (= The things that they said ...)

Relative Clauses 1 → Unit 90 Relative Clauses 3–5 → Units 92–94 **whom** → Unit 92B

Exercises

91.1 In some of these sentences you need **who** or **that**. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 The woman lives next door is a doctor. — The woman who lives next door
2 Did you find the keys you lost? — OK
3 The people we met last night were very friendly. —
4 The people work in the office are very friendly. —
5 I like the people I work with. —
6 What have you done with the money I gave you? —
7 What happened to the money was on the table? —
8 What's the worst movie you've ever seen? —
9 What's the best thing it has ever happened to you? —

91.2 What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.

1 Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he found them. You say:
Did you find the keys you lost?
2 A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her:
I like the dress .
3 A friend is going to the movies. You want to know the name of the movie. You say:
What's the name of the movie ?
4 You wanted to visit a museum, but it was closed. You tell a friend:
The museum was closed.
5 You invited people to your party. Some of them couldn't come. You tell someone:
Some of the people couldn't come.
6 Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished. You say:
Have you finished the work ?
7 You rented a car. It broke down after a few miles. You tell a friend:
Unfortunately, the car broke down after a few miles.

91.3 These sentences all have a relative clause with a preposition. Put the words in the correct order.

1 Did you find (looking / for / you / the books / were)?
Did you find the books you were looking for?
2 We couldn't go to (we / invited / to / were / the wedding).
We couldn't go to .
3 What's the name of (the hotel / about / me / told / you)?
What's the name of ?
4 Unfortunately I didn't get (applied / I / the job / for).
Unfortunately I didn't get .
5 Did you enjoy (you / the concert / to / went)?
Did you enjoy ?
6 Mike is a good person to know. He's (on / rely / can / somebody / you).
Mike is a good person to know. He's .
7 Who were (the people / with / were / you) in the restaurant yesterday?
Who were in the restaurant yesterday?

91.4 Put in **that** or **what** where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1 I gave her all the money – I had. (all the money **that** I had *is also correct*)
2 Did you hear what they said?
3 She gives her children everything they want.
4 Tell me you want and I'll try to get it for you.
5 Why do you blame me for everything goes wrong?
6 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do I can.
7 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do the best I can.
8 I don't agree with you said.
9 I don't trust him. I don't believe anything he says.

Unit 92

Relative Clauses 3: whose/whom/where

A whose

Study this example situation:

When we were driving home, we saw some people standing by the road. Their car had broken down, so we stopped to help them.

We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.
(= **their** car had broken down)



We use **whose** mostly for people:

- A widow is a woman **whose husband is dead**.
  (**her** husband is dead)
- I met someone **whose brother I went to school with**.
  (I went to school with **his/her** brother)

Compare **who** and **whose**:

- I met a man **who** knows you. (**he** knows you)
- I met a man **whose sister** knows you. (**his sister** knows you)

Do not confuse **whose** and **who's**. The pronunciation is the same, but **who's** = who **is** or who **has**:

- I have a friend **who's learning** Arabic. (**who's** = who **is**)
- I have a friend **who's** just **started** learning Arabic. (**who's** = who **has**)
- I have a friend **whose** sister is learning Arabic.

B whom

Whom is possible instead of **who** when it is the *object* of the verb (see Unit 93B):

- George is a person **whom I admire** very much. (I admire **him**)

You can also use a preposition + **whom** (**to whom / from whom / with whom**, etc.):

- It's important to have friends **with whom** you can relax. (you can relax **with them**)

Whom is a formal word, and we do not often use it in spoken English. We usually prefer to say:

- **a person I admire** a lot *or* a person **who/that** I admire a lot
- **friends you can relax with** *or* friends **who/that** you can relax with

C where

We use **where** in a relative clause to talk about a place:

- I recently went back to **the town where** I grew up. (I grew up **there**)
- **The restaurant where** we had lunch was near the airport.
- I would like to live in **a place where** there is plenty of sunshine.

D the day, the time, the reason ...

We say "**the day** we got married," "**the year** I was born," "**the last** time they met," etc.:

- I can't meet you on Friday. That's **the day I'm going away**.
- **The last time I saw her**, she looked great.

You can also use **that**:

- The last time **that** I saw her, she looked great.

We say "**the reason** I'm calling you," "**the reason** she didn't get the job," etc.:

- **The reason I'm calling you** is to ask your advice.

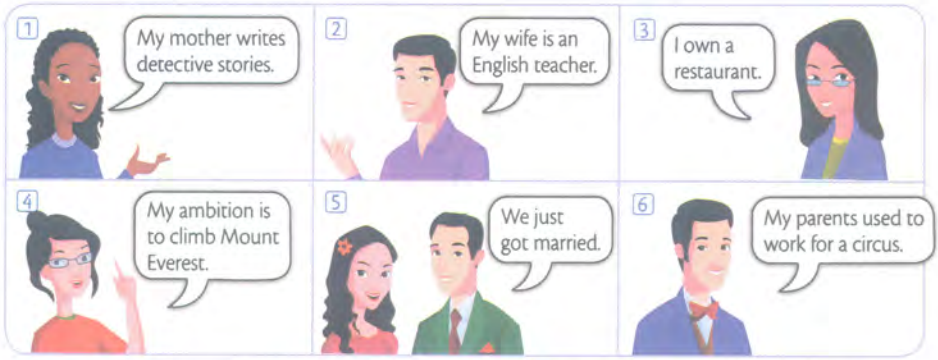
You can also use **that**:

- The reason **that** I'm calling you ... *or* The reason **why** I'm calling you ...

Relative Clauses 1–2 ➜ Units 90–91 Relative Clauses 4–5 ➜ Units 93–94 **whom** ➜ Unit 94

Exercises

92.1 You met these people at a party:



The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using **who** or **whose**.

1 I met somebody *whose mother writes detective stories*.
2 I met a man .....
3 I met a woman .....
4 I met somebody .....
5 I met a couple .....
6 I met somebody .....

92.2 For each situation write a sentence with **whom** (more formal) and without **whom** (less formal).

1 You met a friend. You hadn't seen him for years.
more formal I met a friend *whom I hadn't seen for years*.
less formal I met a friend *I hadn't seen for years*.
2 You needed a lawyer. A friend of yours recommended one.
more formal I went to see a lawyer .....
less formal I went to see a lawyer .....
3 You called your bank with a problem. You spoke to somebody, but he wasn't very helpful.
more formal The person ..... wasn't very helpful.
less formal The person .....
4 Tom was in love with a woman, but she wasn't in love with Tom.
more formal The woman ..... wasn't in love with him.
less formal The woman ..... wasn't in love with him.

92.3 Complete the sentences using **who/whom/whose/where**.

1 We helped some people *whose* car had broken down.
2 A cemetery is a place ..... people are buried.
3 A pacifist is a person ..... believes that all wars are wrong.
4 An orphan is a child ..... parents are dead.
5 What's the name of the hotel ..... your parents are staying?
6 This school is only for children ..... first language is not English.
7 The person from ..... I bought my car is a friend of my father's.
8 I live in a friendly village ..... everybody knows everybody else.

92.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day *I'm going away*.
2 The reason ..... was that the salary was too low.
3 I'll never forget the time .....
4 ..... was the year .....
5 The reason ..... is that neither of them can drive.
6 The last time I ..... was .....
7 Do you remember the day .....?

Unit 93

Relative Clauses 4: Extra Information Clauses (1)

A

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined. Compare:

Type 1

- The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.
- Grace works for a company that makes furniture.
- We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses tell you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

"The woman **who lives next door to me**" tells us *which* woman.
"A company **that makes furniture**" tells us *what kind* of company.
"The hotel (**that**) **you recommended**" tells us *which* hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses:

- We know a lot of people who live in London.

Type 2

- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
- Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying a lot.
- We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: "My brother Ben," "Anna's new job," and "the Park Hotel."

The relative clauses in these sentences give us *extra information* about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:

- My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

B

In both types of relative clause we use **who** for people and **which** for things. But:

Type 1
You can use **that**:

- Do you know anyone **who/that** speaks French and Italian?
- Grace works for a company **which/that** makes furniture.

You can leave out **who/which/that** when it is the object (see Unit 92):

- We stayed at **the hotel** (that/which) **you recommended**.
- This morning I met **somebody I hadn't seen for ages**. (*or* somebody who/that ...)

We do not often use **whom** in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

Type 2
You cannot use **that**:

- John, **who** speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide. (*not* that speaks)
- Anna told me about her new job, **which** she's enjoying a lot.

You cannot leave out **who** or **which**:

- We stayed at the Park Hotel, **which** a friend of ours recommended.
- This morning I met Chris, **who** I hadn't seen for ages.

You can use **whom** for people (when it is the object):

- This morning I met Chris, **whom** I hadn't seen for ages.

C

In both types of relative clause you can use **whose** and **where**:

- We helped some people **whose** car had broken down.
- What's the name of the place **where** you went on vacation?
- Lisa, **whose** car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.
- Kate has just been to Sweden, **where** her daughter lives.

Relative Clauses (Type 1) ➜ Units 90–92 Relative Clauses (Type 2) ➜ Unit 94

Exercises

93.1 Make one sentence from two. Use the information in parentheses to make a relative clause (type 2). You will need to use who/whom/whose/which/where.

1 Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door to us.)
Catherine, who lives next door to us, is very friendly.
2 We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours recommended this hotel.)
We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
3 We drove to the airport. (The airport was not far from the city.)
We drove to the airport, ...
4 Kate's husband is an airline pilot. (I have never met Kate's husband.)
Kate's ..... pilot.
5 Lisa is away from home a lot. (Lisa's job involves a lot of traveling.)
Lisa .....
6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice. (Alice just started school.)
Paul and Emily have .....
7 The new stadium will hold 90,000 spectators. (The stadium will be finished next month.)
.....
8 My brother lives in Alaska. (Alaska is the largest state in the U.S.)
.....
9 Our teacher was very kind. (I have forgotten her name.)
.....
10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. (We saw a lot of interesting things in the museum.)
.....

93.2 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use a relative clause of type 1 or type 2. Use commas where necessary.

1 My brother is an architect. (He lives in Hong Kong.)
My brother, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.
2 The strike at the factory has now ended. (The strike began ten days ago.)
The strike at the factory .....
3 I was looking for a book this morning. (I've found it now.)
I've found .....
4 I've had my car for 15 years. (This car has never broken down.)
My car .....
5 A lot of people applied for the job. (Very few of them had the necessary qualifications.)
Very few of .....
6 Amy showed me a picture of her son. (Her son is a police officer.)
Amy showed me .....

93.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct them (and put in commas) where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write "OK."

1 Anna told me about her new job that she's enjoying very much.
Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying very much.
2 My office that is on the second floor is very small.
.....
3 The office that I'm using at the moment is very small.
.....
4 Sarah's father that used to be in the army now works for a TV company.
.....
5 The doctor that examined me couldn't find anything wrong.
.....
6 The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.
.....

Unit 94

Relative Clauses 5: Extra Information Clauses (2)

A *Prepositions* + **whom/which**

You can use a *preposition* + **whom** (for people) and **which** (for things).
So you can say:

to whom	**with whom**	**about whom**	etc.
of which	**without which**	**from which**	etc.

- Mr. Lee, **to whom I spoke** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.
- Fortunately we had a good map, **without which** we would have gotten lost.

In spoken English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause:

- Katherine told me she works for a company called "Latoma," **which** I'd never **heard of** before.

We do not use **whom** when the preposition is in this position:

- Mr. Lee, **who I spoke to** at the meeting, is interested in our proposal.
  (*not* Mr. Lee, whom I spoke to ...)

For prepositions in relative clauses, see also Unit 91C.

B **all of / most of**, etc. + **whom/which**

You can say:

- Megan has three brothers, **all of whom** are married.
- They asked me a lot of questions, **most of which** I couldn't answer.

In the same way you can say:

many of whom	**some of whom**	**neither of whom**	etc.	(for people)
none of which	**both of which**	**one of which**	etc.	(for things)

- Dan tried on three jackets, **none of which** fit him.
- Two men, **neither of whom** I had seen before, came into the office.
- They have three cars, **two of which** they rarely use.
- Sue has a lot of friends, **many of whom** she was at school with.

You can also say:

the cause of which **the name of which** etc.

- The house was damaged in a fire, **the cause of which** was never established.
- We stayed at a beautiful hotel, **the name of which** I don't remember now.

C **which** (*not* what)

Study this example:

Joe got the job. This surprised everybody. *(2 sentences)*

Joe got the job, which surprised everybody. *(1 sentence)*
relative clause

In this example, **which** = "the fact that Joe got the job." We use **which** (*not* what) in sentences like these:

- Sarah couldn't meet us, **which** was too bad. (*not* what was too bad)
- The weather was good, **which** we hadn't expected. (*not* what we hadn't expected)

For **what** and **that**, see Units 90D and 91D.

all of / most of, etc. ➜ Unit 86 **both of**, etc. ➜ Unit 87 Relative Clauses 1–4 ➜ Units 90–93

Exercises

94.1 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + whom or which. Choose a *preposition* from:

after	for	in	of	of	to	with	~~without~~

1 Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have gotten lost.
2 The accident ..... two people were injured, happened late last night.
3 I share an office with my boss, ... I get along really well.
4 The wedding, ... only family members were invited, was a lovely occasion.
5 Ben showed me his new car, ... he's very proud.
6 Sarah showed us a picture of her son, ... she's very proud.
7 Rachel bought a very nice leather bag, ... she paid thirty dollars.
8 We had lunch, ... we went for a long walk.

94.2 Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second one. Use all of / most of, etc.

1 All of Lauren's brothers are married.
Lauren has three brothers, all of whom are married.
2 Most of the information we were given was useless.
We were given a lot of information, ...
3 None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.
Ten people applied for the job, ...
4 My neighbors have two cars. They never use one of them.
My neighbors have two cars, ...
5 James won a lot of money. He gave half of it to his parents.
James won $100,000, ...
6 Both of Julia's sisters are lawyers.
Julia has two sisters, ...
7 Jane replied to neither of the emails I sent her.
I sent Jane two emails, ...
8 I went to a party—I knew only a few of the people there.
There were a lot of people at the party, ...

Now use the ... of which ....

9 You stayed in a hotel when you were on vacation but you don't remember the name.
We stayed at a very nice hotel, the name of which I don't remember.
10 We drove along the road. The sides of the road were lined with trees.
We drove along the road, the .....
11 The aim of the company's new business plan is to save money.
The company has a new business plan, ...

94.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and use which.

This is good news.	This makes it hard to contact her.
~~This was too bad.~~	This means we can't go away tomorrow.
She apologized for this.	This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
This was nice of her.	This meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.

1 Jen couldn't come to the party, which was too bad.
2 The street I live on is noisy at night, ...
3 Kate let me stay at her house, ...
4 Jane doesn't have a phone, ...
5 Alex passed his exams, ...
6 My flight was delayed, ...
7 Our car has broken down, ...
8 Amy was twenty minutes late, ...

Unit 95

-ing and -ed Phrases (the woman **talking to Tom**, the boy **injured in the accident**)

A

A *phrase* is a part of a sentence. Some phrases begin with **-ing**. For example:

Who is the woman **talking to Tom**?
└─**-ing** *phrase*─┘



We use **-ing** phrases to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

- Who is the woman **talking to Tom**? (the woman **is talking** to Tom)
- Police **investigating the crime** are looking for three men. (police **are investigating** the crime)
- Who were those people **waiting outside**? (they **were waiting**)
- I was woken up by a bell **ringing**. (a bell **was ringing**)

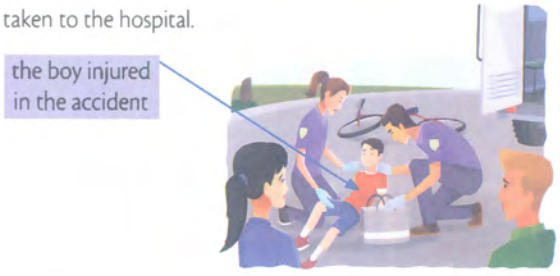
You can also use an **-ing** phrase to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time:

- The road **connecting the two villages** is very narrow. (the road **connects** the two villages)
- I have a large room **overlooking the garden**. (the room **overlooks** the garden)
- Can you think of the name of a flower **beginning with "t"**? (the name **begins** with "t")

B

Some phrases begin with **-ed** (**injured**, **painted**, etc.). For example:

The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to the hospital.
└──**-ed** *phrase*──┘



-ed phrases have a *passive* meaning:

- The boy **injured in the accident** was taken to hospital.
  (he **was injured** in the accident)
- Kevin showed me some pictures **painted by his father**.
  (they **were painted** by his father)
- The gun **used in the robbery** has been found.
  (the gun **was used** in the robbery)

Injured/**painted**/**used** are *past participles*. Most past participles end in **-ed**, but many are irregular (**stolen**/**made**/**built**, etc.):

- The police never found the money **stolen in the robbery**.
- Most of the goods **made in this factory** are exported.

C

You can use **there is** / **there was**, etc. + **-ing** and **-ed** phrases:

- **There were** some children **swimming** in the river.
- **Is there** anybody **waiting**?
- **There was** a big red car **parked** outside the house.

We use **left** in this way, with the meaning "not used, still there":

- We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. **There are** only a few **left**.

see/**hear** somebody **doing** something ➜ Unit 65 **-ing** Phrases ➜ Unit 66 **there** (**is**) ➜ Unit 82
Irregular Past Participles (**made**/**stolen**, etc.) ➜ Appendix 1

Exercises

95.1 Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentence using an -ing phrase.

1 A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.
I was woken up by a bell ringing.
2 A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.
The taxi broke down.
3 There's a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.
At the end of the street there's a path leading to the river.
4 A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.
A factory employing 500 people has just opened in the town.
5 A man was sitting next to me on the plane. He was asleep most of the time.
The man was asleep most of the time.
6 The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.
The company sent me a brochure containing the information I needed.

95.2 Complete the sentence with an -ed phrase. Choose from:

damaged in the storm	**made at the meeting**	~~**injured in the accident**~~
involved in the project	**stolen from the museum**	**surrounded by trees**

1 The boy injured in the accident was taken to the hospital.
2 The paintings stolen from the museum haven't been found yet.
3 We've repaired the gate damaged in the storm.
4 Most of the suggestions made at the meeting were not practical.
5 Our friends live in a beautiful house surrounded by trees.
6 Everybody involved in the project worked hard.

95.3 Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs in the correct form:

blow call cause invite live offer ~~**paint**~~ **read** ~~**ring**~~ **sit study work**

1 I was woken up by a bell ringing.
2 Tony showed me some pictures painted by his father.
3 Some of the people invited to the party can't come.
4 Somebody called Jack came to the house while you were out.
5 Life must be very unpleasant for people living near busy airports.
6 A few days after the interview, I received an email offering me the job.
7 The building was badly damaged in a fire caused by an electrical fault.
8 Did you see the picture of the trees blown down in the storm?
9 The waiting room was empty except for an old man sitting in the corner reading a magazine.
10 Chris has a brother working in a bank in New York and a sister studying economics at a college in Seattle.

95.4 Use the words in parentheses to make sentences with There is / There was, etc.

1 That house is empty. (nobody / live / in it) There's nobody living in it.
2 The accident wasn't serious. (nobody / injure) There was nobody injured.
3 I can hear footsteps. (somebody / come) There is somebody coming.
4 I've spent all the money I had. (nothing / leave) There is nothing left.
5 The train was full. (a lot of people / travel) There was a lot of people travelling.
6 We were the only guests at the hotel. (nobody else / stay there) There was nobody else staying there.
7 The piece of paper was blank. (nothing / write / on it) There was nothing written on it.
8 The college offers English courses in the evening. (a course / begin / next Monday) There is a course beginning next Monday.

Unit 96

Adjectives Ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored, etc.)

A

Many adjectives end in **-ing** and **-ed**, for example: **boring** and **bored**.
Study this example situation:



Nicole has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn't enjoy her job anymore and would like to do something different.

Nicole's job is **boring**.

Nicole is **bored** with her job.

Somebody is **bored** or gets **bored** if something (or somebody else) is **boring**.
If something is **boring**, you get **bored** with it.
So:

- Nicole is **bored** because her job is **boring**.
- Nicole's job is **boring**, so Nicole is **bored**. (*not* Nicole is boring)

If a person is **boring**, this means that they make other people **bored**:

- Sam always talks about the same things. He's really **boring**.

B

Compare adjectives ending in **-ing** and **-ed**:

- My job is **boring**, **interesting**, **tiring**, **satisfying**, **depressing** etc.

In these examples, the **-ing** adjective tells you about the job.

- I'm **bored** with my job.
- I'm not **interested** in my job anymore.
- I get very **tired** doing my job.
- I'm not **satisfied** with my job.
- My job makes me **depressed**. etc.

In these examples, the **-ed** adjective tells you how somebody feels (about the job).

C

Compare these examples

interesting

- Julia thinks politics is **interesting**.
- Did you meet anyone **interesting** at the party?

interested

- Julia is **interested** in politics. (*not* interesting in politics)
- Are you **interested** in buying a car? I'm trying to sell mine.

surprising

- It was **surprising** that he passed the exam.

surprised

- Everybody was **surprised** that he passed the exam.

disappointing

- The movie was **disappointing**. We expected it to be better.

disappointed

- We were **disappointed** with the movie. We expected it to be better.

shocking

- The news was **shocking**.

shocked

- I was **shocked** when I heard the news.

Exercises

96.1 Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in parentheses + -ing or -ed.

1 The movie wasn't as good as we had expected. (**disappoint**...)
   a The movie was *disappointing*.
   b We were *disappointed* with the movie.
2 Donna teaches young children. It's a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (**exhaust**...)
   a She enjoys her job, but it's often ____.
   b At the end of a day's work, she is often ____.
3 It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (**depress**...)
   a This weather is ____.
   b This weather makes me ____.
   c It's silly to get ____ because of the weather.
4 Clare is going to Mexico next month. She's never been there before. (**excit**...)
   a It will be an ____ experience for her.
   b Going to new places is always ____.
   c She is really ____ about going to Mexico.

96.2 Choose the correct word.

1 I was ~~disappointing~~ / disappointed with the movie. I had expected it to be better. (disappointed *is correct*)
2 I'm not particularly interesting / interested in baseball.
3 The new project sounds exciting / excited. I'm looking forward to working on it.
4 It can be embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
5 Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed?
6 I'd never expected to get the job. I was amazing / amazed when I was offered it.
7 She's learned very fast. She's made amazing / amazed progress.
8 I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused.
9 I'm interesting / interested in joining the club. How much does it cost?
10 It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Everybody was shocking / shocked.
11 Why do you always look so boring / bored? Is your life really so boring / bored?
12 He's one of the most boring / bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking, and he never says anything interesting / interested.

96.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

amusing/amused	**annoying/annoyed**	**boring/bored**
confusing/confused	**disgusting/disgusted**	**exciting/excited**
exhausting/exhausted	**interesting/interested**	~~**surprising**~~ **/surprised**

1 You work very hard. It's not *surprising* that you're always tired.
2 Some people get ____ very easily. They always need something new.
3 The teacher's explanation was ____. Nobody understood it.
4 The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really ____.
5 I don't go to art galleries very often. I'm not very ____ in art.
6 There's no need to get ____ just because I'm a few minutes late.
7 The lecture was ____. I fell asleep.
8 I've been working very hard all day, and now I'm ____.
9 I'm starting a new job next week. I'm very ____ about it.
10 Steve is good at telling funny stories. He can be very ____.
11 Stephanie is a very ____ person. She knows a lot, she's traveled a lot, and she's done lots of different things.

Unit 97

Adjectives: a **nice new** house, you look **tired**

A

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:

- My brother lives in a **nice new** house.
- In the kitchen there was a **beautiful large round wooden** table.

Adjectives like **new/large/round/wooden** are *fact* adjectives. They give us information about age, size, color, etc.
Adjectives like **nice/beautiful** are *opinion* adjectives. They tell us what the speaker thinks of something or somebody.
Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

	opinion	*fact*	
a	**nice**	**long**	summer vacation
an	**interesting**	**young**	man
	delicious	**hot**	vegetable soup
a	**beautiful**	**large round wooden**	table

B

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:

1 how big?	→	2 how old?	→	3 what color?	→	4 where from?	→	5 what is it made of?	→	NOUN

a **tall young** man (1 → 2)
big blue eyes (1 → 3)
a **small black plastic** bag (1 → 3 → 5)
a **large wooden** table (1 → 5)
an **old Russian** song (2 → 4)
an **old white cotton** shirt (2 → 3 → 5)

Adjectives of size and length (**big/small/tall/short/long**, etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (**round/fat/thin/slim/wide**, etc.):

a **large round** table a **tall thin** girl a **long narrow** street

When there are two or more color adjectives, we use **and**:

a **black and white** dress a **red, white, and green** flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun:

a **long black** dress (*not* a long and black dress)

C

We use adjectives after **be/get/become/seem**:

- **Be careful**!
- I'**m tired**, and I'**m getting hungry**.
- As the movie went on, it **became** more and more **boring.**
- Your friend **seems** very **nice**.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes, or smells:

- You **look tired**. / I **feel tired**. / She **sounds tired**.
- The dinner **smells good**.
- This tea **tastes** a little **strange**.

But to say *how* somebody *does something* you must use an *adverb* (see Units 98–99):

- Drive **carefully**! (*not* Drive careful)
- Abby plays the piano very **well**. (*not* plays ... very good)

D

We say "the **first two** days," "the **next few** weeks," "the **last ten** minutes," etc.:

- I didn't enjoy the **first two** days of the course. (*not* the two first days)
- They'll be away for the **next few** weeks. (*not* the few next weeks)

Adverbs → Units 98–99 Comparative (**cheaper**, etc.) → Units 102–104
Superlative (**cheapest**, etc.) → Unit 105

Exercises

97.1 Put the adjectives in parentheses in the correct position.

1 a beautiful table (wooden / round) a beautiful round wooden table
2 an unusual ring (gold) .....
3 an old house (beautiful) .....
4 red gloves (leather) .....
5 an Italian movie (old) .....
6 pink flowers (tiny) .....
7 a long face (thin) .....
8 big clouds (black) .....
9 a sunny day (lovely) .....
10 an ugly dress (yellow) .....
11 a wide avenue (long) .....
12 important ideas (new) .....
13 a new sweater (green / nice) .....
14 a metal box (black / small) .....
15 long hair (black / beautiful) .....
16 an old painting (interesting / French) .....
17 a large umbrella (red / yellow) .....
18 a big cat (black / white / fat) .....

97.2 Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

feel	**look**	~~**seem**~~	**awful**	**nervous**	**interesting**
smell	**sound**	**taste**	**nice**	~~**upset**~~	**wet**

1 Olivia seemed upset this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
2 I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it ..... .
3 It's normal to ..... before an exam or an interview.
4 What beautiful flowers! They ..... too.
5 You ..... . Have you been out in the rain?
6 James told me about his new job. It .....—much better than his old job.

97.3 Put in the correct word.

1 This tea tastes a little strange . (strange / strangely)
2 I usually feel ..... when the sun is shining. (happy / happily)
3 The children were playing ..... in the yard. (happy / happily)
4 You look .....! Are you all right? (terrible/terribly)
5 There's no point in doing a job if you don't do it ..... . (proper / properly)
6 The soup tastes ..... . Can you give me the recipe? (good / well)
7 Please hurry up! You're always so ..... . (slow / slowly)
8 A customer in the restaurant was behaving ..... . (bad/badly)
9 The customer became ..... when the manager asked him to leave. (violent/violently)

97.4 Write the following in another way using **the first ... / the next ... / the last ...** .

1 the first day and the second day of the course the first two days of the course
2 next week and the week after the next two weeks
3 yesterday and the day before yesterday .....
4 the first week and the second week of May .....
5 tomorrow and a few days after that .....
6 questions 1, 2, and 3 on the exam .....
7 next year and the year after .....
8 the last day of our vacation and the two days before that .....

→ Additional Exercise 32 (page 315)

Unit 98

Adjectives and Adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)

A

You can say:

- Our vacation was too short—the time passed very **quickly**.
- Two people were **seriously** injured in the accident.

Quickly and **seriously** are *adverbs*. Many adverbs are *adjective* + **-ly**:

adjective	quick	serious	careful	bad	heavy	terrible
adverb	**quickly**	**seriously**	**carefully**	**badly**	**heavily**	**terribly**

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Not all words ending in **-ly** are adverbs. Some *adjectives* end in **-ly** too, for example:

friendly **lively** **elderly** **lonely** **lovely**

- It was a **lovely** day.

B

Adjective or adverb?

Adjectives (**quick**/**careful**, etc.) tell us about a *noun* (somebody or something). We use adjectives before nouns

- Sam is a **careful driver**. (*not* a carefully driver)
- We didn't go out because of the **heavy rain**.

Adverbs (**quickly**/**carefully**, etc.) tell us about a *verb* (*how* somebody does something or *how* something happens):

- Sam **drove carefully** along the narrow road. (*not* drove careful)
- We didn't go out because it was **raining heavily**. (*not* raining heavy)

Compare:

- She speaks **perfect English**.
  adjective + noun
- She **speaks** English **perfectly**.
  verb + noun + adverb

C

We use adjectives after some verbs, especially **be**, and also **look**/**feel**/**sound**, etc.
Compare:

- Please **be quiet**.
- My exam results **were** really **bad**.
- Why do you always **look** so **serious**?
- I **feel happy**.

- Please **speak quietly**.
- I **did** really **badly** on the exam.
- Why don't you ever **take** me **seriously**?
- The children were **playing happily**.

D

You can also use adverbs before *adjectives* and *other adverbs*. For example:

reasonably cheap (*adverb + adjective*)
terribly sad (*adverb + adjective*)
incredibly quickly (*adverb + adverb*)

- It's a **reasonably cheap** restaurant and the food is **extremely good**.
- The ending of the movie was **terribly sad**.
- Maria learns languages **incredibly quickly**.
- The exam was **surprisingly easy**.

You can also use an adverb before a *past participle* (**injured**/**organized**/**written**, etc.):

- Two people were **seriously injured** in the accident. (*not* serious injured)
- The conference was very **badly organized**.

Adjectives after **be**/**look**/**feel**, etc. → Unit 97C Adjectives and Adverbs 2 → Unit 99

Exercises

98.1 Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.

1 We didn't go out because it was raining heavily.
2 I had no problem finding a place to live. I found an apartment quite ea.....
3 We had to wait a long time, but we didn't complain. We waited pat.....
4 Nobody knew that Kevin was coming to see us. He arrived unex.....
5 Mike keeps fit by playing tennis reg.....
6 I don't speak French very well, but I can understand per..... if people speak sl..... and cl.....

98.2 Put in the correct word.

1 Sam drove carefully along the narrow road. (careful / carefully)
2 I think you behaved very ..... (selfish / selfishly)
3 The weather changed ..... (sudden / suddenly)
4 There was a ..... change in the weather. (sudden / suddenly)
5 Liz fell and hurt herself really ..... (bad / badly)
6 I think I have the flu. I feel ..... (awful / awfully)
7 Anna is ..... upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)
8 I could sit in this chair all day. It's very ..... (comfortable / comfortably).
9 I explained everything as ..... as I could. (clear / clearly)
10 Be careful on that ladder. It doesn't look very ..... (safe / safely)
11 Don't lose your passport. Keep it in a ..... place. (safe / safely)
12 I'm glad you had a good trip and got home ..... (safe / safely)

98.3 Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful, etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully, etc.).

~~careful(ly)~~	complete(ly)	dangerous(ly)	financial(ly)	fluent(ly)
frequent(ly)	nervous(ly)	perfect(ly)	permanent(ly)	special(ly)

1 Sam doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always careful.
2 He's late sometimes, but it doesn't happen ..... .
3 Maria's English is very ..... although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
4 I cooked this dinner ..... for you, so I hope you like it.
5 Everything was very quiet. There was ..... silence.
6 I tried on the shoes, and they fit me ..... .
7 I'd like to buy a car, but it's ..... impossible for me at the moment.
8 I'm staying here only a few weeks. I won't be living here ..... .
9 Do you usually feel ..... before exams?
10 Dan likes to take risks. He lives ..... .

98.4 Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.

absolutely	badly	completely
happily	~~reasonably~~	seriously
slightly	unnecessarily	unusually

changed	~~cheap~~	damaged
enormous	ill	long
married	planned	quiet

1 I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was reasonably cheap.
2 Will's mother is ..... in the hospital.
3 This house is so big! It's ..... .
4 It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only ..... .
5 Our children are normally very noisy, but they're ..... today.
6 When I returned home after 20 years, everything had ..... .
7 The movie was ..... It could have been much shorter.
8 I'm surprised Amy and Joe have separated. I thought they were ..... .
9 A lot went wrong during our vacation because it was ..... .

→ Additional Exercise 32 (page 315)

Unit 99

Adjectives and Adverbs 2 (well, fast, late, hard/hardly)

A good and well

Good is an *adjective*. The *adverb* is **well**:

- Your English is **good**. *but* You **speak** English **well**.
- Emily is a **good** pianist. *but* Emily **plays** the piano **well**.

We use **well** (*not* good) with *past participles* (**known**/**educated**, etc.). For example:

well-known **well-educated** **well-paid** **well-behaved**

- Emily's father is a **well-known** writer.

Well is also an adjective meaning "in good health":

- "How are you today?" "I'm **well**, thanks."

B fast, hard, and late

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:

adjective	*adverb*
Mike is a **fast runner**.	Mike can **run fast**.
It's **hard** to find a job right now.	Kate **works hard**. (*not* works hardly)
Sorry I'**m late**.	I **got up late**.

lately = recently:

- Have you seen Kate **lately**?

C hardly

hardly = very little, almost not:

- Sarah wasn't very friendly at the party. She **hardly** spoke to me. (= she spoke to me very little)
- We've only met once or twice. We **hardly** know each other.

Compare **hard** and **hardly**:

- He tried **hard** to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort)
- I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He **hardly** tried. (= he tried very little)

Hardly goes before the verb:

- We **hardly know** each other. (*not* We know each other hardly)

can hardly do something = it's very difficult for me, almost impossible:

- Your writing is terrible. I **can hardly** read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it)
- My leg was hurting. I **could hardly** walk.

D

You can use **hardly** + **any/anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere**:

- A: How much money do we have?
  B: **Hardly any**. (= very little, almost none)
- These two cameras are very similar. There's **hardly any** difference between them.
- The exam results were bad. **Hardly anybody** in our class passed. (= very few students passed)
- She was very quiet. She said **hardly anything**. *or* She **hardly** said **anything**.



hardly ever = almost never:

- I'm almost always at home in the evenings. I **hardly ever** go out.

Hardly also means "certainly not." For example:

- It's **hardly surprising** that you're tired. You haven't slept for three days. (= it's certainly not surprising)
- The situation is serious, but it's **hardly a crisis**. (= it's certainly not a crisis)

Adjectives after Verbs ("**You look tired**," etc.) → Unit 97C Adjectives and Adverbs 1 → Unit 98

Exercises

99.1 Put in good or well.

1 I play tennis but I'm not very *good*.
2 Joe's exam results were very ..... .
3 Joe did ..... on his exams.
4 I didn't sleep ..... last night
5 I like your hat. It looks ..... on you.
6 Can you speak up a little? I can't hear you very ..... .
7 I've met her a few times, but I don't know her ..... .
8 Jessica speaks German ..... . She's ..... at languages.

99.2 Complete these sentences using well + the following words:

~~behaved~~ informed kept known paid written

1 The children were very good. They were *well-behaved*.
2 I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She is quite ..... .
3 Our neighbors' yard is neat and tidy. It is very ..... .
4 I enjoyed the book. It's a great story, and it's very ..... .
5 Hannah knows about everything. She is very ..... .
6 Liz works very hard at her job, but she isn't very ..... .

99.3 Which is right?

1 I'm tired because I've been working hard / ~~hardly~~. (hard *is correct*)
2 I wasn't in a hurry, so I was walking slow / slowly.
3 I haven't been to the movies late / lately.
4 Slow down! You're walking too fast / quick for me.
5 I tried hard / hardly to remember her name, but I couldn't.
6 This coat is practically unused. I've hard / hardly worn it.
7 Megan is a good tennis player. She hits the ball very hard / hardly.
8 It's really dark in here. I can hardly see / see hardly.
9 Ben is going to run a marathon. He's been training hard / hardly.

99.4 Complete the sentences. Use hardly + the following verbs (in the correct form):

change hear ~~know~~ recognize say sleep speak

1 Nick and Rachel have only met once before. They *hardly know* each other.
2 You're speaking very quietly. I can ..... you.
3 I don't feel well this morning. I ..... last night.
4 We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could ..... .
5 Kate was very quiet this evening. She ..... anything.
6 John looks just like he looked 15 years ago. He has ..... .
7 David looked different without his beard. I ..... him.

99.5 Complete these sentences with hardly + any/anybody/anything/anywhere/ever.

1 I have to go shopping. There's *hardly anything* to eat.
2 It was a very warm day and there was ..... wind.
3 "Do you know much about computers?" "No, ..."
4 The hotel was almost empty. There was ..... staying there.
5 I listen to music a lot, but I ..... watch TV.
6 It was very crowded in the room. There was ..... to sit.
7 We used to be good friends, but we ..... see each other now.
8 We invited lots of people to the party, but ..... came.
9 It didn't take us long to drive there. There was ..... traffic.
10 There isn't much to do in this town. There's ..... to go.

→ Additional Exercise 32 (page 315)

Unit
100 so and such

A

Compare **so** and **such**:

We use **so** + *adjective/adverb*:

so stupid **so quick**
so nice **so quickly**

- I didn't like the book. The story was **so stupid**.
- Everything happened **so quickly**.

We use **such** + *noun*:

such a story **such people**

We also use **such** + *adjective* + *noun*:

such a stupid **story** **such** nice **people**

- I didn't like the book. It was **such** a stupid **story**. (*not* a so stupid story)
- I like Liz and Joe. They are **such nice people**. (*not* so nice people)

We say **such a** ... (*not* a such):

such a big **dog**

B

So and **such** make the meaning stronger:

- I've had a busy day. I'm **so tired**. (= really tired)
- It's difficult to understand him. He talks **so quietly**.
- We had a great trip. We had **such a good time**. (= a really good time)
- You always think good things are going to happen. You're **such an optimist**.

You can use **so** ... **that**:

- I was **so tired that** I fell asleep in the armchair.

We usually leave out **that**:

- I was **so tired** I fell asleep.

You can use **such** ... **that**:

- It was **such nice weather that** we spent the whole day on the beach.

We usually leave out **that**:

- It was **such nice weather** we spent ...

C

So and **such** also mean "like this":

- Somebody told me the house was built 100 years ago. I didn't realize it was **so old**. (= as old as it is)
- I'm tired because I got up at six. I don't usually get up **so early**.
- I expected the weather to be cooler. I'm surprised it is **so warm**.
- I didn't realize it was **such an old house**.
- You know that's not true. How can you say **such a thing**? (= a thing like this)

Note the expression **no such** ... :

- You won't find the word "blid" in the dictionary. There's **no such word**. (= this word does not exist)

D

Compare:

so long

- I haven't seen her for **so long** I've forgotten what she looks like.

such a long time

- I haven't seen her for **such a long time**. (*not* so long time)

so far

- I didn't know it was **so far**.

such a long way

- I didn't know it was **such a long way**.

so much, so many

- I'm sorry I'm late—there was **so much** traffic.

such a lot (of)

- I'm sorry I'm late—there was **such a lot** of traffic.

not so ... as → Unit 104A such as → Unit 114A

Exercises

100.1 Put in so, such, or such a.

1 It was a great vacation. We had *such a* good time.
2 Everything is ..... expensive these days, isn't it?
3 He always looks good. He wears ..... nice clothes.
4 I couldn't believe the news. It was ..... shock.
5 What a nice yard! These are ..... beautiful flowers.
6 The party was great. It was ..... shame you couldn't come.
7 I was glad to see that he looked ..... well after his recent illness.
8 I have to go. I didn't realize it was ..... late.
9 Why does it always take you ..... long time to get ready?
10 Everything went wrong. We had ..... bad luck.

100.2 Make one sentence from two. Choose from the box, and then complete the sentences using so or such.

The music was loud.	It was horrible weather.	I have a lot to do.
I had a big breakfast.	~~It was a beautiful day.~~	Her English is good.
The bag was heavy.	I was surprised.	The hotel was a long way.

1 *It was such a beautiful day* we decided to go to the beach.
2 ..... she couldn't lift it.
3 ..... I don't know where to begin.
4 ..... I didn't know what to say.
5 ..... it could be heard from miles away.
6 ..... we spent the whole day indoors.
7 ..... you would think it was her native language.
8 ..... it took us forever to get there.
9 ..... I didn't eat anything for the rest of the day.

100.3 Put the words in the right order.

1 I got up at six this morning. I *don't usually get up so early*.
(get up / early / usually / so / don't)
2 Why ..... ? There's plenty of time.
(a / such / hurry / you / in / are)
3 It took us an hour to get here. I'm .....
(long / it / surprised / so / took)
4 He said he worked for a company called Elcron, but .....
(such / there's / company / no)
5 I regret what I did. I don't know why .....
(such / thing / I / did / a / stupid)
6 Why ..... ? Can't you drive faster?
(driving / so / you / slowly / are)
7 Two months? How did you ..... ?
(English / time / learn / short / a / such / in)
8 Why ..... ? You could have gotten a cheaper one.
(expensive / you / an / phone / did / such / buy)

100.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 We enjoyed our vacation. We had such *a good time*.
2 I like Kate. She's so .....
3 I like Kate. She's such .....
4 It's good to see you again! I haven't seen you for so .....
5 I thought the airport was near the city. I didn't realize it was such .....
6 The streets were crowded. There were so .....

Unit
101 enough and too

A enough



Enough goes *after* adjectives and adverbs:

- I can't run very far. I'm not **fit enough**. (*not* enough fit)
- Let's go. We've waited **long enough**.

Enough normally goes *before* nouns:

- We have **enough money**. We don't need anymore.
- There weren't **enough chairs**. Some of us had to sit on the floor.

We also use **enough** alone (without a noun or adjective):

- We don't need more money. We have **enough**.

B too and enough

Compare **too** ... and **not** ... **enough**:

- You never stop working. You work **too hard**. (= more than is necessary)
- You're lazy. You **don't** work **hard enough**. (= less than is necessary)

Compare **too much/many** and **enough**:

- There's **too much furniture** in this room. There's not **enough space**.
- There were **too many people** and not **enough chairs**.

C enough/too + for ... and to ...

We say **enough/too** ... **for** somebody/something:

- Does Joe have enough experience **for the job**?
- This bag isn't big enough **for all my clothes**.
- That shirt is too small **for you**. You need a larger size.

We say **enough/too** ... **to** do something. For example:

- Does Joe have enough experience **to do** the job?
- Let's get a taxi. It's too far **to walk** home from here.
- She's not old enough **to have** a driver's license.

The next example has both **for** ... and **to** ... :

- The bridge is just wide enough **for two cars to pass** each other.

D too hot to eat, etc.

We say:

	The food was very hot. We couldn't eat **it**.
and	The food was so hot that we couldn't eat **it**.
but	The food was **too hot to eat**. (*not* to eat it)



In the same way we say:

- These boxes are **too heavy to carry**. (*not* to carry them)
- The wallet was **too big to put in my pocket**. (*not* to put it)
- This chair isn't **strong enough to stand on**. (*not* to stand on it)

to ... and **for** ... (Purpose) ➜ Unit 62 Adjective + **to** ... (**difficult to understand**, etc.) ➜ Unit 63

Exercises

101.1 Complete the sentences using enough + the following words:

buses ~~**chairs**~~ **cups** ~~**hard**~~ **room** **tall** **time** **vegetables** **warm** **wide**

1 You're lazy. You don't work *hard enough*.
2 Some of us had to sit on the floor. There weren't *enough chairs*.
3 Public transportation isn't good here. There aren't .....
4 I can't park the car here. The space isn't .....
5 I always have to rush. There's never .....
6 You need to change your diet. You don't eat .....
7 I'm not good at basketball. I'm not .....
8 The car is quite small. Do you think there's ..... for five of us?
9 Are you .....? Or should I turn on the heat?
10 We can't all have coffee at the same time. We don't have .....

101.2 Complete the answers to the questions. Use too or enough + the word(s) in parentheses.

1	Does Jen have a driver's license?	(old)	*No, she's not old enough to have a driver's license.*
2	I need to talk to you about something.	(busy)	Well, I'm afraid I'm ..... to you now.
3	Let's go to the movies.	(late)	No, it's ..... to the movies.
4	Why don't we sit outside?	(warm)	It's not ..... outside.
5	Would you like to be a politician?	(shy)	No, I'm ..... a politician.
6	Would you like to be a teacher?	(patience)	No, I don't have ..... a teacher.
7	Did you hear what he was saying?	(far away)	No, we were ..... what he was saying.
8	Can he read a newspaper in English?	(English)	No, he doesn't know ..... a newspaper.

101.3 Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using too or enough + to ... .

1 We couldn't carry the boxes. They were too heavy.
The boxes were too heavy to carry.
2 I can't drink this coffee. It's too hot.
This coffee is .....
3 Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy.
The piano .....
4 Don't eat these apples. They're not ripe enough.
These apples .....
5 I can't explain the situation. It is too complicated.
The situation .....
6 We couldn't climb over the wall. It was too high.
The wall .....
7 Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't big enough.
This sofa .....
8 You can't see some things without a microscope. They are too small.
Some .....

Unit
102 Comparative 1 (**cheaper, more expensive**, etc.)

A

Look at these examples:

How should we get there? Should we drive or take the train?

Let's drive. It's **cheaper**.
Don't go by train. It's **more expensive**.





Cheaper and **more expensive** are *comparative* forms.

After comparatives you can use **than** (see Unit 104):

- It's **cheaper** to drive **than** go by train.
- Going by train is **more expensive than** driving.

B

The comparative form is **-er** or **more** ... .

We use **-er** for short words (one syllable):

cheap → cheap**er**	**fast** → fast**er**
large → large**r**	**thin** → thin**ner**

We also use **-er** for two-syllable words that end in **-y** (**-y** → **-ier**):

lucky → luck**ier**	early → earl**ier**
easy → eas**ier**	pretty → pretti**er**

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We use **more** ... for longer words (two syllables or more):

more serious	**more expensive**
more often	**more comfortable**

We also use **more** ... for adverbs that end in **-ly**:

more slowly	**more seriously**
more easily	**more quietly**

Compare these examples:

- You're **older** than me.
- The exam was quite easy—**easier** than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit **faster**?
- I'd like to have a **bigger** car.
- Last night I went to bed **earlier** than usual.

- You're **more patient** than me.
- The exam was quite difficult—**more difficult** than I expected.
- Can you walk a bit **more slowly**?
- I'd like to have a **more reliable** car.
- I don't play tennis much these days. I used to play **more often**.

We use both **-er** *or* **more** ... with some two-syllable adjectives, especially:

clever **narrow** **quiet** **shallow** **simple**

- It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere **quieter**? *or* ... somewhere **more quiet**?

C

A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:

good/well → better

- The yard looks **better** since you cleaned it up.
- I know him well—probably **better** than anybody else knows him.

bad/badly → worse:

- "How's your headache? Better?" "No, it's **worse**."
- He did very badly on the exam—**worse** than expected.

far → farther (*or* **further**):

- It's a long walk from here to the park—**farther** than I thought. (*or* **further** than)

Note that **further** (*but not* farther) also means "more" or "additional":

- Let me know if you hear any **further** news. (= any more news)

Comparative 2–3 → Units 103–104 Superlative (**cheapest / most expensive**, etc.) → Unit 105

Exercises

102.1 Complete the sentences using a comparative form (**older / more important**, etc.).

1 This restaurant is very expensive. Let's go somewhere *cheaper*.
2 This coffee is very weak. I like it _____.
3 The town was surprisingly big. I expected it to be _____.
4 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be _____.
5 The weather is too cold here. I'd like to live somewhere _____.
6 Sometimes my job is a bit boring. I'd like to do something _____.
7 It's too bad you live so far away. I wish you lived _____.
8 It was quite easy to find a place to live. I thought it would be _____.
9 Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do _____.
10 Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be _____.
11 You hardly ever call me. Why don't you call me _____?
12 You're too close to the camera. Can you move a little _____ away?

102.2 Complete the sentences. Use the comparative forms of the words in the box. Use **than** where necessary.

big ~~**early**~~ **high important interested peaceful** ~~**reliable**~~ **serious slowly thin**

1 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed *earlier than* usual.
2 I'd like to have a *more reliable* car. The one I have keeps breaking down.
3 Unfortunately the problem was _____ we thought at first.
4 You look _____. Have you lost weight?
5 We don't have enough space here. We need a _____ apartment.
6 James doesn't study very hard. He's _____ in having a good time.
7 Health and happiness are _____ money.
8 I like living in the country. It's _____ living in a city.
9 I'm sorry, I don't understand. Can you speak _____, please?
10 In some parts of the country, prices are _____ in others.

102.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

than more worse quietly ~~**longer**~~ **better careful frequent**

1 Getting a visa was complicated. It took *longer* than I expected.
2 Sorry about my mistake. I'll try and be more _____ in future.
3 Your English has improved. It's _____ than it was.
4 You can take the bus or the train. The buses are more _____ than the trains.
5 You can't always have things immediately. You have to be _____ patient.
6 I'm a pessimist. I always think things are going to get _____.
7 We were busier _____ usual in the office today. It's not usually so busy.
8 You're talking very loudly. Can you speak more _____?

102.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (**-er** or **more ...**).

1 Yesterday the temperature was 6°C. Today it's only 3°C.
It's *colder today than* it was yesterday.
2 Dan and I went for a run. I ran ten miles. Dan stopped after eight miles.
I ran _____ Dan.
3 The trip takes four hours by car and five hours by train.
The trip takes _____ train _____ car.
4 I expected my friends to arrive at about 4:00. In fact they arrived at 2:30.
My friends _____ I expected.
5 There is always a lot of traffic here, but today the traffic is really bad.
The traffic today _____ usual.

Unit 103

Comparative 2 (much better / any better, etc.)

A much / a lot, etc. + comparative

Before comparatives you can use:

much **a lot** **far** (= a lot) **a bit** **a little** **slightly** (= a little)

- I felt sick earlier, but I feel **much better** now. (*or* **a lot better**)
- Don't go by train. It's **a lot more expensive**. (*or* **much more expensive**)
- Could you speak **a little more slowly**? (*or* **a bit more slowly**)
- This bag is **slightly heavier** than the other one.
- The problem is **far more serious** than we thought at first.

B any and no + comparative

You can use **any** and **no** + comparative (**any longer** / **no bigger**, etc.):

- I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting **any longer**. (= not even a little longer)
- We expected their apartment to be very big, but it's **no bigger** than ours.
  or ... it is**n't any bigger** than ours. (= not even a little bigger)
- How do you feel now? Do you feel **any better**?
- This hotel is better than the other one, and it's **no more expensive**.

C better and better, more and more, etc.

We repeat comparatives (**better and better**, etc.) to say that something changes continuously:

- Your English is improving. It's getting **better and better**.
- The city has grown fast in the last few years. It's gotten **bigger and bigger**.
- As I listened to his story, I became **more and more convinced** that he was lying.
- **More and more tourists** are visiting this part of the country.

D the ... the ...

You can say **the sooner the better**, **the more the better**, etc.:

- A: What time should we leave?
  B: **The sooner the better**. (= as soon as possible)
- A: What sort of bag do you want? A big one?
  B: Yes, **the bigger the better**. (= as big as possible)
- When you're traveling, **the less luggage** you have **the better**.

We also use **the** ... **the** ... to say that one thing depends on another thing:

- **The sooner** we leave, **the earlier** we'll arrive. (= if we leave sooner, we'll arrive earlier)
- **The younger** you are, **the easier** it is to learn.
- **The more expensive** the hotel, **the better** the service.
- **The more** I thought about the plan, **the less** I liked it.

E older and elder

The comparative of **old** is **older**:

- David looks **older** than he really is. (*not* looks elder)

We use **elder** mostly when we talk about people in a family (**my elder sister**, **their elder son**, etc.).
You can also use **older**:

- **My elder sister** is a TV producer. (*or* My **older** sister ...)

But we do not say that "somebody is elder":

- My sister is **older** than me. (*not* elder than me)

any/no ➜ Unit 84 Comparative 1, 3 ➜ Units 102, 104 **eldest** ➜ Unit 105C
even + comparative ➜ Unit 109C

Exercises

103.1 Use the words in parentheses to complete the sentences. Use **much / a bit**, etc. + a comparative form. Use **than** where necessary.

1 The problem is *much more serious than* we thought at first. (much / serious)
2 This bag is too small. I need something ..... (much / big)
3 I liked the museum. It was ..... I expected. (a lot / interesting)
4 It was very hot yesterday. Today it's ..... (a little / cool)
5 I'm afraid the problem is ..... it seems. (far / complicated)
6 You're driving too fast. Can you drive ..... ? (a little / slowly)
7 I thought he was younger than me, but in fact he's ..... (slightly / old)

103.2 Complete the sentences using **any/no** + comparative. Use **than** where necessary.

1 I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting *any longer* .
2 I'm sorry I'm a little late, but I couldn't get here ..... .
3 This store isn't expensive. The prices are ..... anywhere else.
4 I need to stop for a rest. I can't walk ..... .
5 The traffic isn't especially bad today. It's ..... usual.

103.3 Complete the sentences using **... and ...** (see section C).

1 It's getting *more and more difficult* to find a job. (difficult)
2 That hole in your sweater is getting ..... . (big)
3 I waited for my interview and became ..... . (nervous)
4 As the day went on, the weather got ..... . (bad)
5 Health care is becoming ..... . (expensive)
6 Since Anna went to Canada, her English has gotten ..... . (good)
7 These days I'm traveling a lot. I'm spending ..... away from home. (time)

103.4 Complete the sentences using **the ... the ...** .

1 You learn things more easily when you're young.
The *younger you are* , the easier it is to learn.
2 It's hard to concentrate when you're tired.
The more tired you are, the ..... .
3 We should decide what to do as soon as possible.
The ..... , the better.
4 I know more, but I understand less.
The ..... , the less I understand.
5 If you use more electricity, your bill will be higher.
The more electricity you use, ...
6 Kate had to wait a long time and became more and more impatient.
The ..... , the more ..... .

103.5 Use the words on the right to complete the sentences.

1 I like to travel light. The *less* luggage, the better.
2 The problem is getting ..... and more serious.
3 The more time I have, the ..... it takes me to do things.
4 I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk ..... faster
5 The higher your income, ... more tax you have to pay.
6 I'm surprised Anna is only 25. I thought she was ..... .
7 Jane's ..... sister is a nurse.
8 I was a little late. The trip took ..... longer than I expected.
9 Applications for the job must be received ..... later than April 15.
10 Don't tell him anything. The ..... he knows, the ..... .

any
better
elder
~~**less**~~
less
longer
more
no
older
slightly
the

Unit
104 Comparative 3 (as ... as / than)

A

Study this example situation:



Sarah, Joe and David are all very rich.
Sarah has $20 million, Joe has $15 million,
and David has $10 million. So:

Joe is rich.

He is **richer than** David.

But he **isn't as rich as** Sarah.
(= Sarah is **richer than** he is)

Some more examples of **not as** ... (**as**):

- Jack **isn't as old as** he looks. (= he looks **older than** he is)
- The shopping mall **wasn't as crowded as** usual. (= it is usually **more crowded**)
- Nicole **didn't** do **as well** on the exam **as** she had hoped. (= she had hoped to do **better**)
- The weather is better today. It's **not as cold**. (= yesterday was **colder than** today)
- **I don't** know **as many** people **as** you do. (= you know **more** people **than** me)
- A: How much was it? Was it expensive?
  B: Not **as much as** I expected. (= **less than** I expected)

You can also say **not so** ... (**as**):

- It's not warm, but it's **not so** cold **as** yesterday. (= it's not **as** cold **as** ...)

Less ... **than** is similar to **not as** ... **as**:

- I spent **less** money **than** you. (= I **didn't** spend **as** much money **as** you)
- The shopping mall was **less** crowded **than** usual. (= it **wasn't as** crowded **as** usual)
- I play tennis **less than** I used to. (= I **don't** play **as** much **as** I used to)

B

We also use **as** ... **as** (*but not* so ... as) in affirmative sentences and in questions:

- I'm sorry I'm late. I got here **as fast as** I could.
- There's plenty of food. You can have **as much as** you want.
- Can you send me the information **as soon as** possible, please?
- Let's walk. It's just **as fast as** taking the bus.

also **twice as** ... **as**, **three times as** ... **as**, etc. :

- Gas is **twice as expensive as** it was a few years ago.
- Their house is about **three times as big as** ours.
  (*or* ... **three times the size of** ours)

C

We say **the same as** (*not* the same like):

- Stephanie's salary is **the same as** mine. *or* Stephanie makes **the same** salary **as** me.
- David is **the same** age **as** James.
- Sarah hasn't changed. She still looks **the same as** she did ten years ago.

D

than me / than I am, etc.

You can say:

- You're taller **than me**. *or* You're taller **than I am**.
  (*not usually* You're taller than I)
- He's not as smart **as her**. *or* He's not as smart **as she is**.
- They have more money **than us**. *or* They have more money **than we have**.
- I can't run as fast as **him**. *or* I can't run as fast **as he can**.

Comparative 1–2 → Units 102–103 **as long as** → Unit 112B **as** and **like** → Unit 114

Exercises

104.1 Complete the sentences using **as ... as.**

1 I'm tall, but you are taller. I'm not as tall as you .
2 My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't .....
3 You know a little about cars, but I know more.
You don't .....
4 We are busy today, but we were busier yesterday.
We aren't .....
5 I still feel bad, but I felt a lot worse earlier.
I don't .....
6 Our neighbors have lived here quite a while, but we've lived here longer.
Our neighbors haven't .....
7 I was a little nervous before the interview, but usually I'm a lot more nervous.
I wasn't .....

104.2 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Jack is younger than he looks. Jack isn't as old as he looks .
2 I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent more money than me .
3 The train station was closer than I thought. The train station wasn't .....
4 The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost .....
5 I watch TV less than I used to. I don't .....
6 Abby's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Abby used to .....
7 I know them better than you do. You don't .....
8 There are fewer students in this class than in the other one.
There aren't .....

104.3 Complete the sentences using **as ... as.** Choose from:

~~fast~~ **hard** **long** **often** **quietly** **soon** **well**

1 I'm sorry I'm late. I got here as fast as I could.
2 It was a difficult question. I answered it ..... I could.
3 "How long can I stay with you?" "You can stay ..... you want."
4 I need the information quickly, so let me know ..... possible.
5 I like to stay in shape, so I go swimming ..... I can.
6 I didn't want to wake anybody up, so I came in ..... I could.
7 You always say how tiring your job is, but I work just ..... you.

104.4 Write sentences using **the same as.**

1 David and James are both 22 years old. David is the same age as James.
2 You and I both have dark brown hair. Your hair ..... mine.
3 I arrived at 10:25, and so did you. I arrived ..... you.
4 My birthday is April 5. It's Tom's birthday too. My birthday ..... Tom's.

104.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from:

as **him** **is** **less** **me** **much** ~~**soon**~~ **than** **twice**

1 I'll let you know as soon as I have any more news.
2 My friends arrived earlier ..... I expected.
3 I live on the same street ..... Katherine. We're neighbors.
4 He doesn't know much. I know more than ..... .
5 This morning there was ..... traffic than usual.
6 I don't watch TV as ..... as I used to.
7 Your bag is quite light. Mine is ..... as heavy as yours.
8 We were born in the same year. I'm a little older than she ..... .
9 I was really surprised. Nobody was more surprised than ..... .

Unit 105

Superlative (the longest / the most enjoyable, etc.)

A

Look at these examples:

What is **the longest** river in the world?
What was **the most enjoyable** vacation you've ever had?

Longest and **most enjoyable** are *superlative* forms.

The superlative form is **-est** or **most** ... . In general, we use **-est** for short words and **most** ... for longer words.

	long → long**est**	**hot** → hot**test**	**easy** → easi**est**	**hard** → hard**est**
but	**most** famous	**most** boring	**most** enjoyable	**most** difficult

A few superlative forms are irregular:

good → **best** bad → **worst** **far** → **furthest** *or* **farthest**

The rules are the same as those for the comparative—see Unit 102.
For spelling, see Appendix 6.

B

We normally use **the** (or **my/your**, etc.) with a superlative:

- Yesterday was **the hottest** day of the year.
- The Louvre in Paris is one of **the most famous** museums in the world.
- She is really nice—one of **the nicest** people I know.
- What's **the best** movie you've ever seen, and what's **the worst**?
- How old is **your youngest** child?

Compare the superlative and the comparative:

- This hotel is **the cheapest** in town. *(superlative)*
  It's **cheaper** than all the others in town. *(comparative)*
- He's **the most patient** person I've ever met.
  He's much **more patient** than I am.

C

oldest and **eldest**

The superlative of **old** is **oldest**:

- That church is **the oldest** building in the city. (*not* the eldest)

We use **eldest** only when we talk about people in a family (you can also use **oldest**):

- **Their eldest son** is 13 years old. (*or* Their **oldest** son)
- Are you **the eldest** in your family? (*or* the **oldest**)

D

After superlatives we normally use **in** with places:

- What's the longest river **in the world**? (*not* of the world)
- We had a nice room. It was one of the best **in the hotel**. (*not* of the hotel)

We also use **in** for organizations and groups of people (a class / a company, etc.):

- Who is the youngest student **in the class**? (*not* of the class)

For a period of time (**day, year**, etc.), we normally use **of**:

- Yesterday was the hottest day **of the year**.
- What was the happiest day **of your life**?

E

We often use the *present perfect* (I **have done**) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A):

- What's **the most important** decision **you've** ever **made**?
- That was **the best** vacation **I've had** in a long time.

Comparative (**cheaper / more expensive**, etc.) → Units 102–104 **elder** → Unit 103E

Exercises

105.1 Complete the sentences. Use the superlative forms (**-est** or **most ...**) of the words in the box.

bad ~~**cheap**~~ **good** **honest** **popular** **short** **tall**

1 We didn't have much money, so we stayed at *the cheapest* hotel in the city.
2 This building is 750 feet high, but it's not ..... in the city.
3 It was an awful day. It was ..... day of my life.
4 What is ..... sport in your country?
5 I like the morning. For me, it's ..... part of the day.
6 Sarah always tells the truth. She's one of ..... people I know.
7 A straight line is ..... distance between two points.

105.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**-est** or **most ...**) or a comparative (**-er** or **more ...**).

1 We stayed at *the cheapest* hotel in the city. (cheap)
2 Our hotel was *cheaper* than all the others in the city. (cheap)
3 I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit ..... today. (good)
4 What's ..... thing you've ever bought? (expensive)
5 I prefer this chair to the other one. It's ..... . (comfortable)
6 Amy and Ben have three daughters. ..... is 14 years old. (old)
7 Who is the ..... person you know? (old)
8 What's ..... way to get to the station? (fast)
9 Which is .....—the bus or the train? (fast)
10 I can remember when I was three years old. It's ..... memory. (early)
11 Mount Everest is ..... mountain in the world. It is ..... than any other mountain. (high)
12 A: This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a ..... one?
B: No, it's ..... one I have. (sharp)

105.3 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (**-est** or **most ...**) + a preposition (**of** or **in**).

1 It's a very good room. It's *the best room in* the hotel.
2 Brazil is a very large country. It's ..... South America.
3 It was a very happy day. It was ..... my life.
4 This is a very valuable painting. It's ..... the museum.
5 Spring is a very busy time for me. It's ..... the year.

In the following sentences use **one of** + a superlative + a preposition.

6 It's a very good room. It's *one of the best rooms in* the hotel.
7 He's a very rich man. He's one ..... the country.
8 She's a very good student. She's ..... the class.
9 It was a very bad experience. It was ..... my life.
10 It's a very famous university. It's ..... the world.

105.4 What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + **ever**.

1 You've just been to the movie theater. The movie was extremely boring. You tell your friend:
(boring / movie / ever / see) That's *the most boring movie I've ever seen* .
2 Someone has just told you a joke, which you think is very funny. You say:
(funny / joke / ever / hear) That's ..... .
3 You're drinking coffee with a friend. It's really good coffee. You say:
(good / coffee / ever / taste) This ..... .
4 You gave up your job. Now you think this was a very bad mistake. You say:
(bad / mistake / ever / make) It ..... .
5 Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:
(famous / person / ever / meet?) Who ..... ?

Unit 106

Word Order 1: Verb + Object; Place and Time

A Verb + object

The *verb* and the *object* normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

	verb	*object*		
I	**like**	**my job**	very much.	(*not* I like very much)
Our guide	**spoke**	**English**	fluently.	(*not* spoke fluently English)
I didn't	**use**	**my phone**	yesterday.	
Do you	**eat**	**meat**	every day?	

Two more examples:

- I lost all my money, and I also **lost** **my passport**.
  (*not* I lost also my passport)
- At the end of this street, you'll **see** **a supermarket** on your left.
  (*not* see on your left a supermarket)

B Place

The *verb* and *place* (where?) normally go together:
go home **live in a city** **walk to work**, etc.

If the verb has an *object*, the order is:

	verb	*object*	*place*	
We	**took**	**the children**	**to the zoo**.	(*not* took to the zoo the children)
Don't	**put**	**anything**	**on the table**.	
Did you	**learn**	**English**	**at school**?	

C Time

Normally *time* (when? / how often? / how long?) goes after *place*:

	place	*time*	
Ben walks	**to work**	**every morning**.	(*not* every morning to work)
I'm going	**to Paris**	**on Monday**.	
They've lived	**in the same house**	**for a long time**.	
We need to be	**at the airport**	**by 8:00**.	
Sarah gave me a ride	**home**	**after the party**.	
You really shouldn't go	**to bed**	**so late**.	

Sometimes we put *time* at the beginning of the sentence:

- **On Monday** I'm going to Paris.
- **After the party**, Sarah gave me a ride home.

Some time words (for example, **always/never/usually**) go with the verb in the middle of the sentence. See Unit 107.

Word Order in Questions ➜ Units 47–48 Adjective Order ➜ Unit 97 Word Order 2 ➜ Unit 107

Exercises

106.1 Is the word order OK or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Did you see your friends yesterday? OK
2 Ben walks every morning to work. Ben walks to work every morning.
3 Joe doesn't like very much football.
4 Dan won easily the race.
5 Olivia speaks German pretty well.
6 Have you seen recently Chris?
7 I borrowed from a friend some money.
8 Please don't ask that question again.
9 I ate quickly my breakfast and went out.
10 Did you invite to the party a lot of people?
11 Sam watches all the time TV.
12 Does Kevin play football every weekend?

106.2 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

1 We (the children / to the zoo / took) We took the children to the zoo.
2 I (a friend of mine / on the way home / met) I .
3 I (to put / on the envelope / a stamp / forgot) I .
4 We (a lot of fruit / bought / at the market) We .
5 Did you (at school / today / a lot / learn) Did you ?
6 They (across from the park / a new hotel / built)
They .
7 We (some interesting books / found / in the library)
We .
8 Please (at the top / write / of the page / your name)
Please .

106.3 Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

1 They (for a long time / have lived / in the same house)
They have lived in the same house for a long time.
2 I (to the supermarket / every Friday / go)
I .
3 Why (home / did you come / so late)?
Why ?
4 Sarah (her children / takes / every day / to school)
Sarah .
5 I haven't (been / recently / to the movies)
I haven't .
6 I (her name / after a few minutes / remembered)
I .
7 We (around the town / all morning / walked)
We .
8 My brother (has been / since April / in Canada)
My brother .
9 I (on Saturday night / didn't see you / at the party)
I .
10 Emma (her umbrella / last night / in a restaurant / left)
Emma .
11 The moon (around the earth / every 27 days / goes)
The moon .
12 Anna (Italian / for the last three years / has been teaching / in Chicago)
Anna .

Unit 107

Word Order 2: Adverbs with the Verb

A Some adverbs (for example, **always**, **also**, **probably**) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- Emily **always drives** to work.
- We were feeling very tired and we **were also** hungry.
- The meeting **will probably be canceled**.

B If the verb is one word (**drives/cooked**, etc.), the adverb goes *before* the verb:

	adverb	*verb*	
Emily	**always**	**drives**	to work.
I	**almost**	**fell**	as I was going down the stairs.

- I cleaned the house and **also cooked** dinner. (*not* cooked also)
- Julia **hardly ever watches** TV and **rarely reads** newspapers.
- "Should I give you my address?" "No, I **already have** it."

Note that these adverbs (**always/usually/also**, etc.) go before **have to** ... :

- Joe never calls me. I **always have** to call him. (*not* I have always to phone)

But adverbs go *after* **am/is/are/was/were**:

- We were feeling very tired, and we **were also** hungry. (*not* also were)
- You**'re always** late. You**'re never** on time.
- The traffic **isn't usually** as bad as it was this morning.

C If the verb is two or more words (for example, **can remember / will be canceled**), the adverb usually goes *after the first verb* (**can/doesn't/will**, etc.):

	verb 1	*adverb*	*verb 2*	
I	**can**	**never**	**remember**	her name.
Allison	**doesn't**	**usually**	**drive**	to work.
	Are you	**definitely**	**going**	away next week?
The meeting	**will**	**probably**	**be**	canceled.

- You**'ve always been** very kind to me.
- Jack can't cook. He **can't even boil** an egg.
- **Do** you **still work** for the same company?
- The house **was only built** a year ago, and it**'s already falling** down.

Note that **probably** goes before a negative (**isn't/won't**, etc.). So we say:

- I **probably won't see** you. *or*
  I **will probably not** see you. (*but not* I won't probably)

D We also use **all** and **both** with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- We **all felt** sick after the meal. (*not* felt all sick)
- My parents **are both** teachers.
- Sarah and Mary **have both applied** for the job.
- My friends **are all going** out tonight.

E Sometimes we use **is/will/did**, etc. instead of repeating part of a sentence (see Unit 49):

- Tom says he isn't smart, but I think he is. (= he **is smart**)

When we do this, we put **always/never**, etc. *before* the verb:

- He always says he won't be late, but he **always is**. (= he **is always** late)
- I've never done it, and I **never will**. (= I **will never** do it)

Word Order 1 ➜ Unit 106

Exercises

107.1 Is the word order OK or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Emily drives always to work. Emily always drives to work.
2 I cleaned the house and also cooked dinner. OK
3 I take usually a shower in the morning.
4 I'm usually hungry when I get home from work.
5 Steve gets hardly ever angry.
6 I called him, and I sent also an email.
7 You don't listen! I have always to repeat things.
8 I never have worked in a factory.
9 I never have enough time. I'm always busy.
10 When I arrived, my friends already were there.

107.2 Rewrite the sentences to include the word in parentheses.

1 Jessica doesn't drive to work. (usually) Jessica doesn't usually drive to work.
2 Katherine is very generous. (always)
3 I don't have to work on Sundays. (usually)
4 Do you watch TV in the evenings? (always)
5 Mike is learning Spanish, and he is learning Japanese. (also)
Mike is learning Spanish, and he
6 a We were on vacation in Spain. (all)
b We were staying at the same hotel. (all)
c We had a great time. (all)
7 a The new hotel is expensive. (probably)
b It costs a lot to stay there. (probably)
8 a I can help you. (probably)
b I can't help you. (probably)

107.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses in the correct order.

1 What's her name again? I can never remember (remember / I / never / can) it.
2 Our cat (usually / sleeps) under the bed.
3 There are plenty of hotels here. (usually / it / easy / is) to find a place to stay.
4 Matt and Amy (both / were / born) in Chicago.
5 Sarah is a good pianist. (sing / she / also / can) very well.
6 How do you get to work? (usually / you / do / take) the bus?
7 I see them every day, but (never / I / have / spoken) to them.
8 We haven't moved. (we / still / are / living) in the same place.
9 This store is always busy. (have / you / always / to wait) a long time to be helped.
10 This could be the last time I see you. (meet / never / we / might) again.
11 Thanks for the invitation, but (probably / I / be / won't) able to come to the party.
12 I'm going out for an hour. (still / be / you / will) here when I get back?
13 Hannah goes away a lot. (is / hardly ever / she) at home.
14 If we hadn't taken the same train, (never / met / we / would / have) each other.
15 The trip took a long time today. (doesn't / take / it / always) so long.
16 (all / were / we) tired, so (all / we / fell) asleep.
17 Liz (says / always) that she'll call me, but (does / she / never).

Unit
108 still anymore yet already

A

We use **still** to say that a situation or action is continuing. It hasn't changed or stopped:

- It's 10:00, and Joe is **still** in bed.
- When I went to bed, Chris was **still** working.
- Do you **still** want to go away or have you changed your mind?

Still also means "in spite of this." For example:

- He has everything he needs, but he's **still** unhappy.

Still usually goes in the middle of the sentence with the verb. See Unit 107.

B

We use **not** ... **anymore** or **not** ... **any longer** to say that a situation has changed.
Anymore and **any longer** go at the end of a sentence:

- Megan **doesn't** work here **anymore**. She left last month. *or*
  Megan **doesn't** work her **any longer**.
- We used to be good friends, but we **aren't anymore**. *or* ... we aren't **any longer**.

You can also use **no longer**. **No longer** goes in the middle of the sentence:

- Megan **no longer** works here.

We do not normally use **no more** in this way:

- We are **no longer** friends. (*not* we are no more friends)

Compare **still** and **not** ... **anymore**:

- Rachel **still** works here, but Megan **doesn't** work here **anymore**.

C

We use **yet** mainly in negative sentences (**He isn't** here **yet**) and questions (**Is he** here **yet**?).
Yet (= until now) shows that the speaker expects something to happen.

Yet usually goes at the end of a sentence:

- It's 10:00, and Joe **isn't** here **yet**.
- **Have** you **decided** what to do **yet**?
- "Where are you going on vacation?" "We **don't** know **yet**."

We often use **yet** with the *present perfect* (**Have** you **decided** ... **yet**?). See Unit 8D.

Compare **yet** and **still**:

- Mike lost his job six months ago and **is still** unemployed.
  Mike lost his job six months ago and **hasn't found** another job **yet**.
- **Is** it **still** raining?
  Has it **stopped** raining **yet**?

Still is also possible in *negative* sentences (before the negative):

- She said she would be here an hour ago, and she **still hasn't** come.

This is similar to "she hasn't come **yet**." But **still** ... **not** shows a stronger feeling of surprise or impatience. Compare:

- I sent him an invitation last week. He **hasn't** replied **yet**. (but I expect he will reply soon)
- I sent him an invitation weeks ago, and he **still hasn't** replied. (he should have replied before now)

D

We use **already** to say that something happened sooner than expected.

- "What time is Sue leaving?" "She has **already** left." (= sooner than you expected)
- Should I tell Joe what happened, or does he **already** know?
- I just had lunch, and I'm **already** hungry.

Already usually goes in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 107) or at the end:

- She **already** left. *or* She left **already**.

Simple Past and Present Perfect + **already/yet** ➜ Unit 8D Word Order ➜ Unit 107

Exercises

108.1 Compare what Dan said a few years ago with what he says now. Some things are the same as before, and some things have changed. Write sentences with **still** and **anymore**.



Dan a few years ago

I travel a lot.
I work in a store.
I write poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm interested in politics.
I'm single.
I go fishing a lot.



Dan now

I travel a lot.
I work in a hospital.
I gave up writing poems.
I want to be a teacher.
I'm not interested in politics.
I'm single.
I haven't been fishing for years.

1 (travel) He still travels a lot.
2 (store) He doesn't work in a store anymore.
3 (poems) He .....
4 (teacher) .....
5 (politics) .....
.....
6 (single) .....
7 (fishing) .....
8 (beard) .....

Now write three sentences about Dan, using **no longer**.

9 He no longer works in a store.
10 .....
11 .....
12 .....

108.2 For each sentence (with **still** write a sentence with a similar meaning using **not ... yet**. Choose from these verbs:

decide **find** **finish** **leave** ~~**stop**~~ **take off** **wake up**

1 It's still raining. It hasn't stopped raining yet.
2 David is still here. He .....
3 They're still repairing the road. They .....
4 The children are still asleep. They .....
5 Kate is still looking for a job. She .....
6 I'm still wondering what to do. I .....
7 The plane is still waiting on the runway. It .....

108.3 Put in **still**, **yet**, **already** or **anymore**.

1 Mike lost his job a year ago, and he is still unemployed.
2 Should I tell Joe what happened or does he already know?
3 Do you ..... live in the same place, or have you moved?
4 I'm hungry. Is dinner ready .....?
5 I was hungry earlier, but I don't feel hungry ..... .
6 Can we wait a few minutes? I don't want to go out ..... .
7 Amy used to work at the airport, but she doesn't work there ..... .
8 I used to live in Osaka. I ..... have a lot of friends there.
9 There's no need to introduce me to Joe. We've ..... met.
10 John is 80 years old, but he's ..... very fit and healthy.
11 Would you like something to eat, or did you ..... eat?
12 "Where's Nicole?" "She's not here ..... . She'll be here soon."
13 Tony said he'd be here at 8:30. It's 9:00 now, and he ..... isn't here.
14 Do you want to join the club, or are you ..... a member?
15 It happened a long time ago, but I ..... remember it very clearly.
16 I've put on weight. These pants don't fit me ..... .

Unit
109 even

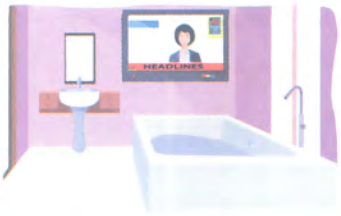
A

Study this example situation:

Anna loves watching TV.

She has a television in every room of the house, **even the bathroom**.

We use **even** to say that something is unusual or surprising. It is not usual to have a television in the bathroom.



Some more examples:

- These pictures are really awful. **Even I** take better pictures than these. (and I'm certainly not a good photographer)
- He always wears a coat, **even in hot weather**.
- The print was very small. I couldn't read it, **even with glasses**.
- Nobody would help her, **not even her best friend**. *or* **Not even** her best friend would help her.

B

You can use **even** with the verb in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 107):

- Abby has traveled all over the world. She's **even** been to Antarctica.
- They are very rich. They **even** have their own private jet.

You can use **even** with a negative (**not even**, **can't even**, **don't even**, etc.):

- I can't cook. I **can't even** boil an egg. (and boiling an egg is very easy)
- They weren't very friendly to us. They **didn't even** say hello.
- Jessica is very fit. She's been running quite fast and she's **not even** out of breath.

C

You can use **even** + *comparative* (**cheaper** / **more expensive**, etc.):

- I got up very early, but Jack got up **even earlier**.
- I knew I didn't have much money, but I have **even less** than I thought.
- We were very surprised to get an email from her. We were **even more surprised** when she came to see us a few days later.

D

even though / **even when** / **even if**

We use **even though** / **even when** / **even if** + *subject* + *verb*:

- **Even though Emma can't** drive, she has a car.
  subject + verb
- He never shouts, **even when he's** angry.
- This river is dangerous. It's dangerous to swim in it, **even if you're** a strong swimmer.

We do not use **even** + *subject* + *verb*. We say:

- **Even though she can't** drive, she has a car. (*not* even she can't drive)
- I can't reach the shelf **even if I stand** on a chair. (*not* even I stand)

Compare **even if** and **even** (without **if**):

- It's dangerous to swim here **even if you're** a strong swimmer. (*not* even you are)
- The river is dangerous, **even for strong swimmers**.

Compare **even if** and **if**:

- We're going to the beach tomorrow. It doesn't matter what the weather is like. We're going **even if** the weather is bad.
- We want to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go **if** the weather is bad.

if and **when** → Unit 24C **though** / **even though** → Unit 110E

Exercises

109.1 Amy, Kate and Julia are three friends who went on vacation together. Use the information given about them to complete the sentences using **even** or **not even**.

Amy	*Kate*	*Julia*
		
is usually happy	doesn't really like art	is almost always late
is usually on time	is usually miserable	is a good photographer
likes to get up early	usually hates hotels	loves staying in hotels
is very interested in art	doesn't use her camera much	isn't good at getting up early

1 They stayed at a hotel. Everybody liked it, *even Kate*.
2 They arranged to meet. They all arrived on time, ...
3 They went to an art gallery. Nobody enjoyed it, ...
4 Yesterday they had to get up early. They all managed to do this, ...
5 They were together yesterday. They were all in a good mood, ...
6 None of them took any pictures, ...

109.2 Make sentences with **even**. Use the words in parentheses.

1 Abby has been all over the world. (Antarctica) *She has even been to Antarctica.*
2 We painted the whole room. (the floor) We .....
3 Rachel has met lots of famous people. (the president)
She .....
4 You could hear the noise from a long way away. (from the next street)
You .....

Now make sentences with a negative + **even** (**didn't even, can't even,** etc.).

5 They didn't say anything to us. (hello) *They didn't even say hello.*
6 I can't remember anything about her. (her name)
I .....
7 There isn't anything to do in this town. (a movie theater)
.....
8 He didn't tell anybody where he was going. (his wife)
.....
9 I don't know anyone on our street. (my neighbors)
.....

109.3 Complete the sentences using **even** + comparative.

1 It was very hot yesterday, but today it's *even hotter*.
2 The church is 200 years old, but the house next to it is .....
3 That's a very good idea, but I've got an ..... one.
4 The first question was very difficult to answer. The second one was .....
5 I did very badly on the exam, but most of my friends did .....
6 Neither of us were hungry. I ate very little, and my friend ate .....

109.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from: **if** **even** **even if** **even though**

1 *Even though* she can't drive, she has a car.
2 The bus leaves in five minutes, but we can still catch it ..... we run.
3 The bus leaves in two minutes. We won't catch it now ..... we run.
4 Mike's Spanish isn't very good, ... after three years in Spain.
5 Mike's Spanish isn't very good ..... he lived in Spain for three years.
6 ..... with the heat on, it was cold in the house.
7 I couldn't sleep ..... I was very tired.
8 I won't forgive them for what they did ..... they apologize.
9 ..... I hadn't eaten anything for 24 hours, I wasn't hungry.

→ Additional Exercise 33 (pages 315–316)

Unit 110

although though even though in spite of despite

A

Study this example situation:



Last year Josh and Sarah had a vacation at the beach. It rained a lot, but they had a good time.

You can say:

Although it rained a lot, they had a good time.
(= It rained a lot, but they ...)
or
In spite of / **Despite** **the rain**, they had a good time.

B

After **although** we use a *subject + verb*:

- **Although it rained** a lot, they had a good time.
- I didn't apply for the job **although I was** well qualified.

Compare the meaning of **although** and **because**:

- We went out **although** it was raining heavily.
- We didn't go out **because** it was raining heavily.

C

After **in spite of** or **despite**, we use a *noun*, a *pronoun* (**this**/**that**/**what**, etc.) or **-ing**:

- **In spite of the rain**, we had a good time.
- She wasn't feeling well, but **in spite of this**, she continued working.
- **In spite of what** I said yesterday, I still love you.
- I didn't apply for the job **in spite of being** well qualified.

Despite is the same as **in spite of**. We say **in spite of**, but **despite** (*without* of):

- She wasn't feeling well, but **despite this**, she continued working. (*not* despite of this)

You can say "**in spite of the fact** (that) ..." and "**despite the fact** (that) ...":

- I didn't apply for the job **in spite of the fact** (that) / **despite the fact** (that) I was well qualified.

Compare **in spite of** and **because of**:

- We went out **in spite of the rain**. **despite the rain**.)
- We didn't go out **because of the rain**.

D

Compare **although** and **in spite of** / **despite**:

- **Although the traffic was** bad, / **In spite of the traffic**, we arrived on time. (*not* in spite of the traffic was bad)
- I couldn't sleep **although I was** very tired. / **despite being** very tired. (*not* despite I was tired)

E

though = **although**:

- I didn't apply for the job **though** I was well qualified.

In spoken English we often use **though** at the end of a sentence:

- The house isn't so nice. I like the yard, **though**. (= but I like the yard)
- I see them every day. I've never spoken to them, **though**. (= but I've never spoken to them)

Even though (*but not* "even" alone) is similar to **although**:

- **Even though** I was really tired, I couldn't sleep. (*not* even I was really tired)

even → Unit 109

Exercises

110.1 Complete the sentences. Use **although** + a sentence from the box.

I didn't speak the language well	~~she has a very important job~~
I had never seen her before	we don't like them very much
it was quite cold	the heat was on
I'd met her twice before	we've known each other for a long time

1 Although she has a very important job, she isn't well paid.
2 ..... , I recognized her from a photo.
3 Sarah wasn't wearing a coat .....
4 We decided to invite them to the party .....
5 ..... , I managed to make myself understood.
6 ..... , the room wasn't warm.
7 I didn't recognize her .....
8 We're not close friends .....

110.2 Complete the sentences with **although** / **in spite of** / **because** / **because of**.

1 Although it rained a lot, we had a good time.
2 a ..... all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
b ..... we'd planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
3 a I went home early ..... I wasn't feeling well.
b I went to work the next day ..... I still wasn't feeling well.
4 a Chris only accepted the job ..... the salary, which was very high.
b Sam accepted the job ..... the salary, which was fairly low.
5 a ..... there was a lot of noise, I slept quite well.
b I couldn't get to sleep ..... the noise.

Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:

6 a He passed the exam although .....
b He passed the exam because .....
7 a I didn't eat much although .....
b I didn't eat much in spite of .....

110.3 Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in parentheses in your sentences.

1 I couldn't sleep. I was very tired. (despite)
I couldn't sleep despite being very tired.
2 We played quite well. We lost the game. (in spite of)
In spite .....
3 I'd hurt my foot. I managed to walk home. (although)
.....
4 I enjoyed the movie. The story was silly. (in spite of)
.....
5 We live in the same building. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)
.....
6 They came to the party. They hadn't been invited. (even though)
.....

110.4 Use the words in parentheses to make a sentence with **though** at the end.

1 The house isn't very nice. (like / yard) I like the yard, though.
2 I enjoyed reading the book. (very long) .....
3 We didn't like the food. (ate) .....
4 Liz is very nice. (don't like / husband) I .....

→ Additional Exercise 33 (pages 315–316)

Unit
111 in case

A Study this example situation:



Your car should have a spare tire **in case** you have a flat tire.
(= because it is possible you will have a flat tire)

in case something happens =
because it is possible it will happen

Some more examples of **in case**:

- I'd better write down my password **in case I forget it**.
  (= because it is possible I will forget it)
- Should I draw a map for you **in case you have a problem** finding our house?
  (= because it is possible you will have a problem finding it)
- I'll remind them about the meeting **in case they've forgotten**.
  (= because it is possible they have forgotten)

We use **just in case** for a smaller possibility:

- I don't think it will rain, but I'll take an umbrella **just in case**. (= **just in case** it rains)

We do not use **will** after **in case** (see also Unit 24):

- I'll write down my password **in case** I **forget** it. (*not* in case I will forget)

B **In case** and **if** are not the same. We use **in case** to say *why* somebody does (or doesn't do) something. You do something *now* **in case** something happens *later*.

Compare:

in case

- We'll buy some more food **in case** Tom comes.
  (= Maybe Tom will come. We'll buy some more food now whether he comes or not. Then we'll *already* have the food *if* he comes.)
- I'll give you my phone number **in case** you need to contact me.
- You should insure your bike **in case** it is stolen.

if

- We'll buy some more food **if** Tom comes.
  (= Maybe Tom will come. If he comes, we'll buy some more food. If he doesn't come, we won't buy any more food.)
- You can call me at this number **if** you need to contact me.
- You should inform the police **if** your bike is stolen.

C You can use **in case** + *past* to say why somebody did something:

- I gave him my phone number **in case he needed** to contact me.
  (= because it was possible that he would need to contact me)
- I drew a map for Sarah **in case she had** a problem finding our house.
- We rang the doorbell again **in case they hadn't heard** it the first time.

D **in case of** = if there is ... (especially on notices, instructions, etc.):

- **In case of fire**, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- **In case of emergency**, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)

if → Units 24, 36–38

Exercises

111.1 Sophie is going for a long walk in the country. You're worried about her because:

maybe she'll get thirsty	she might need to call somebody	maybe she'll get lonely
~~it's possible she'll get lost~~	maybe she'll get hungry	maybe it will rain

You advise her to take some things with her. Complete the sentences using **in case**.

1 Take a map *in case you get lost*.
2 You should take some chocolate .....
3 You'll need a rain jacket .....
4 Take plenty of water .....
5 Don't forget your phone .....
6 Should I come with you .....?

111.2 What do you say in these situations? Use **in case**.

1 It's possible that Jane will need to contact you, so you give her your phone number.
You say: I'll give you my phone number *in case you need to contact me*.
2 A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won't see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.
You say: I'll say goodbye now .....
3 You are buying food in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need, but maybe you've forgotten something. Your friend has the list. You ask her to check it.
You say: Can you .....?
4 You're shopping with a friend. She just bought some jeans, but she didn't try them on. Maybe they won't fit her, so you advise her to keep the receipt.
You say: Keep .....

111.3 Complete the sentences using **in case**.

1 It was possible that it would rain, so I took an umbrella.
I took an umbrella *in case it rained*.
2 I thought that I might forget the name of the book. So I wrote it down.
I wrote down the name of the book .....
3 I thought my parents might be worried about me. So I called them.
I called my parents .....
4 I sent an email to Emma, but she didn't reply. So I sent another email because maybe she didn't get the first one.
I sent her another email .....
5 I met some people when I was on vacation in France. They said they might come to New York one day. I live in New York, so I gave them my phone number.
I gave them my phone number .....

111.4 Put in **in case** or **if**.

1 I'll draw a map for you *in case* you have a problem finding our house.
2 You should tell the police *if* you have any information about the crime.
3 I hope you'll come to Chicago sometime. ..... you come, you can stay with us.
4 I made a copy of the document ..... something happens to the original.
5 This book belongs to Kate. Can you give it to her ..... you see her?
6 Write your name and phone number on your bag ..... you lose it.
7 The burglar alarm will ring ..... somebody tries to break into the house.
8 You should lock your bike to something ..... somebody tries to steal it.
9 I was advised to get insurance ..... I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.

→ Additional Exercise 33 (pages 315–316)

Unit
112 unless as long as provided

A unless

Study this example situation:

The club is for members only.

You can't go in **unless you are a member**.

This means:
You can't go in *except if* you are a member.
You can go in *only if* you are a member.

unless = except if



Some more examples of **unless**:

- I'll see you tomorrow **unless I have to work late**.
  (= except if I have to work late)
- There are no buses to the beach. **Unless you have a car**, it's difficult to get there.
  (= except if you have a car)
- A: Should I tell Jessica what happened?
  B: **Not unless** she asks you. (= tell her only if she asks you)
- Ben hates to complain. He wouldn't complain about something **unless it was really bad**.
  (= except if it was really bad)
- We can take a taxi to the restaurant—**unless you'd prefer to walk**. (= except if you'd prefer to walk)

Instead of **unless** it is often possible to say **if** ... **not**:

- **Unless we leave now**, we'll be late. *or* **If we don't leave now**, we'll ...

B as long as / so long as and provided

You can say **as long as** or **so long as** (= if, on condition that):

- You can borrow my car { **as long as** / **so long as** } you promise not to drive too fast.
  (= You can borrow my car, but you must promise not to drive too fast. This is a condition.)

You can also say **provided (that)**:

- Traveling by car is convenient **provided (that)** you have somewhere to park.
  (= It's convenient, but only if you have somewhere to park)
- **Provided that** the room is clean, I don't care which hotel we stay at.
  (= The room must be clean, but otherwise I don't care.)

C unless / as long as, etc., for the future

When we are talking about the future, we do *not* use **will** after **unless / as long as / so long as / provided**. We use a *present* tense (see Unit 24):

- I'm not going out **unless** it **stops** raining. (*not* unless it will stop)
- **Provided** the weather **is** good, we're going to have a picnic tomorrow.
  (*not* provided the weather will be good)

if → Units 24, 36–38

Exercises

112.1 Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use **unless** in your sentence.

1 You must try a little harder, or you won't pass the exam.
You won't pass the exam unless you try a little harder.
2 Listen carefully, or you won't know what to do.
You won't know what to do .....
3 She has to apologize to me, or I'll never speak to her again.
.....
4 You have to speak very slowly, or he won't understand you.
.....
5 Business must improve soon, or the company will have to close.
.....
6 We need to do something soon, or the problem will get worse.
.....

112.2 Write sentences with **unless**

1 The club isn't open to everyone. You're allowed in only if you're a member.
You aren't allowed in the club unless you're a member.
2 I don't want to go to the party alone. I'm going only if you go too.
I'm not going .....
3 Don't worry about the dog. It will chase you only if you move suddenly.
The dog .....
4 Ben isn't very talkative. He'll speak to you only if you ask him something.
Ben .....
5 Today is a public holiday. The doctor will see you only if it's an emergency.
The doctor .....

112.3 Which is correct?

1 You can borrow my car ~~unless~~ / as long as you promise not to drive too fast.
(as long as *is correct*)
2 We're going to the beach tomorrow unless / provided the weather is bad.
3 We're going to the beach tomorrow unless / provided the weather is good.
4 I don't mind if you come home late unless / as long as you come in quietly.
5 I'm going now unless / provided you want me to stay.
6 I don't watch TV unless / as long as I have nothing else to do.
7 Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless / provided they are with an adult.
8 Unless / Provided they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.
9 We can sit here in the corner unless / as long as you'd rather sit by the window.
10 A: Our vacation cost a lot of money.
B: Did it? Well, that doesn't matter unless / as long as you enjoyed yourselves.

112.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 We'll be late unless *we take a taxi.*
2 I like hot weather as long as .....
3 It takes 20 minutes to drive to the airport provided .....
4 I don't mind walking home as long as .....
5 I like to walk to work in the morning unless .....
6 We can meet tomorrow unless .....
7 I'll lend you the money provided .....
8 I'll tell you a secret as long as .....
9 You won't achieve anything unless .....

→ Additional Exercise 33 (pages 315–316)

Unit 113

as (as I walked ... / as I was ..., etc.)

A

as = at the same time as

You can use **as** when two things happen together at the same time:

- We all waved goodbye to Liz **as she drove away**. (we **waved** and she **drove** away at the same time)
- **As I walked along the street**, I looked in the store windows.
- Can you turn off the light **as you go out**, please?



Or you can say that something happened **as you were doing** something else (in the middle of doing something else):

- Kate slipped **as she was getting off the bus**.
- We met Paul **as we were leaving the hotel**.

For the *past continuous* (**was getting** / **were going**, etc.), see Unit 6.



You can also use **just as** (= exactly at that moment):

- **Just as I sat down**, the doorbell rang.
- I had to leave **just as** the conversation was getting interesting.

We also use **as** when two things happen together in a longer period of time:

- **As the day went on**, the weather got worse.
- I began to enjoy the job more **as I got used to it**.

the day went on

the weather got worse

Compare **as** and **when**:

We use **as** only if two things happen at the same time.

- **As I drove home**, I listened to music. (= at the same time)

Use **when** (*not* as) if one thing happens after another.

- **When I got home**, I had something to eat. (*not* as I got home)

B

as = because

As also means "because":

- **As I was hungry**, I decided to find somewhere to eat. (= because I was hungry)
- **As it's late and we're tired**, let's get a taxi home. (= because it's late ...)
- We watched TV all evening **as we didn't have anything better to do**.
- **As I don't watch TV anymore**, I gave my television to a friend of mine.

You can also use **since** in this way:

- **Since** it's late and we're tired, let's get a taxi home.

Compare **as** (= because) and **when**:

- David wasn't in the office **as he was on a business trip**. (= because he was on a trip)
- **As they lived near us**, we used to see them quite often. (= because they lived near us)
- David lost his passport **when he was on a business trip**. (= during the time he was away)
- **When they lived near us**, we used to see them quite often. (= at the time they lived near us)

as ... **as** → Unit 104 **like** and **as** → Unit 114 **as if** → Unit 115

Exercises

113.1 In this exercise **as** means "at the same time as." Use **as** to join sentences from the boxes.

1 ~~We all waved goodbye to Liz~~	we were driving along the road.
2 I listened	I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
3 I burned myself	~~she drove away~~.
4 The spectators cheered	she told me her story.
5 A dog ran out in front of the car	the two teams came onto the field.

1 We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....

113.2 In this exercise **as** means "because." Join sentences from the boxes beginning with **as**.

1 ~~I was hungry~~	we went for a walk by the river
2 today is a public holiday	I tried to be very quiet
3 I didn't want to disturb anybody	~~I decided to find somewhere to eat~~
4 I can't go to the concert	all government offices are closed
5 it was a nice day	you can have my ticket

1 As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat.
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....

113.3 What does **as** mean in these sentences?

	because	*at the same time as*
1 **As** they lived near us, we used to see them quite often	✓	
2 Kate slipped **as** she was getting off the bus.		✓
3 **As** I was tired, I went to bed early.		
4 Unfortunately, **as** I was parking the car, I hit the car behind me.		
5 **As** we climbed the hill, we got more and more tired.		
6 We decided to go out to eat **as** we had no food at home.		
7 **As** we don't use the car very often, we've decided to sell it.		

113.4 In some of these sentences, **as** is not correct. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Julia got married as she was 22. — when she was 22
2 As the day went on, the weather got worse. — OK
3 He dropped the glass as he was taking it out of the cupboard. — .....
4 I lost my phone as I was in Boston. — .....
5 As I left school, I didn't know what to do. — .....
6 The train slowed down as it approached the station. — .....
7 I used to live near the ocean as I was a child. — .....
8 We can walk to the hotel as it isn't far from here. — .....

113.5 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 Just as I sat down, the doorbell rang.
2 I saw you as .....
3 It started to rain just as .....
4 As she doesn't have a phone, ...
5 Just as I took the picture, ...

→ Additional Exercise 33 (pages 315–316)

Unit 114

like and as

A

like = similar to, the same as:

- What a beautiful house! It's **like a palace**. (*not* as a palace)
- Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's **like walking on ice**. (*not* as walking)
- It's raining again. I hate weather **like this**. (*not* as this)
- "What's that noise?" "It sounds **like a baby crying**." (*not* as a baby crying)

In these examples, **like** is a *preposition*. So it is followed by a *noun* (like **a palace**), a *pronoun* (like **this**) or **-ing** (like walk**ing**).

Sometimes **like** = for example. You can also use **such as**:

- I enjoy water sports, **like** surfing, scuba diving, and water-skiing. *or*
  I enjoy water sports, **such as** surfing ...

B

as = in the same way as, in the same condition as:

We use **as** with *subject* (*S*) + *verb* (*V*):

- I didn't move anything. I left everything **as it was**.
- You should have done it **as I showed** you.

S + V
as **it was**
as **I showed**

We also use **like** in this way (+ *subject* + *verb*):

- I left everything **like it was**.

Compare **as** and **like**. You can say:

- You should have done it **as I showed you**. *or* ... **like I showed you**.

but You should have done it **like this**. (*not* as this)

We say **as usual** / **as always**:

- You're late **as usual**.
- **As always**, Nick was the first to complain.

We say **the same as** ... :

- Your phone is **the same as** mine. (*not* the same like)

C

Sometimes **as** (+ *subject* + *verb*) has other meanings. For example, after **do**:

- You can do **as you like**. (= do what you like)
- They did **as they promised**. (= They did what they promised.)

We also say **as you know** / **as I said** / **as she expected** / **as I thought**, etc. :

- **As you know**, it's Emma's birthday next week. (= you know this already)
- Andy failed his driving test, **as he expected**. (= he expected this before)

Like is not usual in these expressions, except with **say** (**like I said**):

- **As I said** yesterday, I'm sure we can solve the problem. *or* **Like I said** yesterday ...

D

As can also be a *preposition* (**as** + *noun*), but the meaning is different from **like**.

Compare:

- **As a taxi driver**, I spend most of my working life in a car. (I am a taxi driver. It's my job)
- Everyone in the family wants me to drive them places. I'm **like a taxi driver**. (I'm not a taxi driver, but I'm like one.)

as (*preposition*) = in the position of, in the form of, etc. :

- Many years ago I worked **as a photographer**. (so I was a photographer)
- Many words—for example, "work" and "rain"—can be used **as verbs or nouns**.
- New York is fine **as a place to visit**, but I wouldn't want to live there.
- The news of the tragedy came **as a great shock**.

as ... **as** ➜ Unit 104 **as** (= at the same time as / because) ➜ Unit 113 **as if** ➜ Unit 115

Exercises

114.1 In some of these sentences, you need **like** (not **as**). Correct the sentences where necessary. Write "OK" if the sentence is correct.

1 It's raining again. I hate weather as this. — I hate weather like this.
2 You should have done it as I showed you. — OK
3 Do you think James looks as his father? ....
4 He gets on my nerves. I can't stand people as him. ....
5 Why didn't you do it as I told you to do it? ....
6 As her mother, Katherine has a very good voice. ....
7 You never listen. Talking to you is as talking to the wall. ....
8 I prefer the room as it was before we decorated it. ....
9 I'll phone you tomorrow as usual, OK? ....
10 She's a very good swimmer. She swims as a fish. ....

114.2 Which goes with which?

1 I won't be able to come to the party.	a It was full, as I expected.	1 c
2 I like Tom's idea.	b As I've told you before, it's boring.	2 ....
3 I'm fed up with my job.	c ~~As you know, I'll be away.~~	3 ....
4 You drive too fast.	d You can do as you like.	4 ....
5 You don't have to take my advice.	e Let's do as he suggests.	5 ....
6 I couldn't get a seat on the train.	f You should be more careful, as I keep telling you.	6 ....

114.3 Complete the sentences using **like** or **as** + the following:

a beginner	**blocks of ice**	~~**a palace**~~	**a birthday present**
a child	**a theater**	**winter**	**a tour guide**

1 This house is beautiful. It's like a palace.
2 My feet are really cold. They're ....
3 I've been playing tennis for years, but I still play ....
4 Emily once had a part-time job ....
5 I wonder what that building is. It looks ....
6 My brother gave me this watch .... a long time ago.
7 It's very cold for the middle of summer. It's ....
8 He's 22 years old, but he sometimes behaves ....

114.4 Put in **like** or **as**. Sometimes either word is possible.

1 We heard a noise like a baby crying.
2 I wish I had a car .... yours.
3 Jessica has been working .... a waitress for the last two months.
4 We saw Kevin last night. He was very cheerful, ... always.
5 You waste a lot of time doing things .... sitting in cafes all day.
6 .... you can imagine, we were very tired after such a long trip.
7 Tom showed us some photos of the city .... it was thirty years ago.
8 My neighbor's house is full of interesting things. It's .... a museum.
9 In some countries in Asia, ... Japan, Indonesia, and Thailand, cars drive on the left.
10 The weather hasn't changed. It's the same .... yesterday.
11 You're different from the other people I know. I don't know anyone else .... you.
12 The news that they are getting married came .... a complete surprise to me.
13 This tea is awful. It tastes .... water.
14 Suddenly there was a terrible noise. It was .... a bomb exploding.
15 Right now I'm working in a store. It's not great, but it's OK .... a temporary job.
16 Brian is a student, ... most of his friends.

Unit 115

like as if

A

We use **like** or **as if** to say how somebody/something looks, sounds, or feels:

- That house **looks like** it's going to fall down. *or*
  That house **looks as if** it's going to fall down.
- Amy **sounded like** she had a cold, didn't she? *or*
  Amy **sounded as if** she had a cold, didn't she?
- I've just had a vacation, but I feel very tired.
  I don't **feel like** I've had a vacation. *or*
  I don't **feel as if** I've had a vacation.



You can also use **as though** in these examples:

- I don't **feel as though** I've had a vacation.

Compare:

- You **look tired**. (+ *adjective*)
- You **look like you haven't slept**.
  You **look as if you haven't slept**. } (**look like** / **as if** + *subject* + *verb*)

B

We say: **it looks like** ... *or* **it looks as if** ...
it sounds like ... *or* **it sounds as if** ...

- Sarah is very late. **It looks like** she isn't coming.
  or **It looks as if** she isn't coming.
- **It looked like** it was going to rain, so we took an umbrella.
  or **It looked as if** it was going to rain ...
- The noise is very loud next door.
  It sounds like they're having a party.
  or **It sounds as if** they're ...



You can also use **as though**:

- **It sounds as though** they're having a party.

C

You can use **like** / **as if** / **as though** with other verbs to say how somebody does something:

- He ran **like he was running for his life**.
- After the interruption, the speaker went on talking **as if nothing had happened**.
- When I told them my plan, they looked at me **as though I was crazy**.

D

After **as if**, we sometimes use the *past* when we are talking about the *present*.
For example:

- I don't like him. He talks **as if** he **knew** everything.

The meaning is not past. We use the past (as if he **knew**) because the idea is not real: he does *not* know everything. We use the past in the same way with **if** and **wish** (see Unit 37). We do not normally use **like** in this way.

Some more examples:

- She's always asking me to do things for her—**as if I didn't** have enough to do already.
  (I *have* enough to do already)
- Joe's only 40. Why do you talk about him **as if he was** an old man? (he *isn't* an old man)

When you use the past in this way, you can use **were** instead of **was**:

- Why do you talk about him **as if he were** an old man?
- They treat me **as if I were** their own son. *or* ... **as if I was** their own son.
  (I'm *not* their son)

if I was/were → Unit 37C **look/sound**, etc. + adjective → Unit 97C **like** and **as** → Unit 114

Exercises

115.1 What do you say in these situations? Use the words in parentheses to make your sentence.

1 You meet Bill. He has a black eye and blood on his face. (look / like / be / a fight)
You say to him: You look like you've been in a fight.

2 Julia comes into the room. She looks absolutely terrified. (look / as if / see / a ghost)
You say to her: What's the matter? You .....

3 You have just run one mile, but you are exhausted. (feel / like / run / a marathon)
You say: I .....

4 Joe is on vacation. He's talking to you on the phone and sounds happy. (sound / as if / have / a good time)
You say to him: You .....

115.2 Make sentences beginning **It looks like ...** or **It sounds like ...**.

you should see a doctor	**there's been an accident**	**they're having an argument**
it's going to rain	~~**she isn't coming**~~	**they don't have any**

1 Sarah said she would be here an hour ago.
You say: It looks like she isn't coming.

2 The sky is full of black clouds.
You say: It .....

3 You hear two people shouting at each other next door.
You say: .....

4 You see an ambulance, some police officers, and two damaged cars at the side of the road.
You say: .....

5 You and a friend are in a supermarket. You're looking for bananas, but without success.
You say: .....

6 Dave isn't feeling well. He tells you all about it.
You say: .....

115.3 Complete the sentences with **as if**. Choose from the box, putting the verbs in the correct form.

she / enjoy / it	**I / be / crazy**	**he / not / eat / for a week**
~~**he / need / a good rest**~~	**she / hurt / her leg**	**he / mean / what he / say**
I / not / exist	**she / not / want / come**	

1 Josh looks very tired. He looks as if he needs a good rest.
2 I don't think Paul was joking. He looked .....
3 What's the matter with Anna? She's walking .....
4 Dan was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.
He ate .....
5 I looked at Sarah during the movie. She had a bored expression on her face.
She didn't look .....
6 I told my friends about my plan. They were amazed.
They looked at me .....
7 I called Kate and invited her to the party, but she wasn't very enthusiastic.
She sounded .....
8 I went into the office, but nobody spoke to me or looked at me.
Everybody ignored me .....

115.4 These sentences are like the ones in Section D. Complete each sentence using **as if**.

1 Andy is a terrible driver. He drives as if he were the only driver on the road.
2 I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to me ..... a child.
3 Steve has never met Nicole, but he talks about her ..... his best friend.
4 We first met a long time ago, but I remember it ..... yesterday.

Unit 116

during for while

A during

during = at a time between the start and end of something:

- I fell asleep **during the movie**. (= at a time between the start and end of the movie)
- We met some really nice people **during our vacation**.
- The ground is wet. It must have rained **during the night**.

With "time words" (**the morning, the night, the summer,** etc.), you can usually say **in** or **during**:

- It rained **in the night**. *or* ... **during the night**.
- It's nice here **during the summer**. *or* ... **in the summer**.



I fell asleep **during the movie**.

B for and during

We use **for** (+ a period of time) to say how long something goes on:

- We watched TV **for two hours** last night.
- Jess is going away **for a week** in September.
- How are you? I haven't seen you **for ages**.
- Are you going away **for the weekend**?

We do not use **during** to say *how long* something goes on. We do not say "during two hours," "during five years," etc.:

- It rained **for** three days without stopping. (*not* during three days)

We use **during** to say *when* something happens (*not* how long). Compare **during** and **for**:

- **"When** did you fall asleep?" **"During the movie."**
- **"How long** were you asleep?" **"For half an hour."**

C during and while

Compare:

We use **during** + *noun*:

- I fell asleep **during the movie**.
  noun
- We met a lot of interesting people **during our vacation**.
- Robert suddenly began to feel sick **during the exam.**

We use **while** + *subject* + *verb*:

- I fell asleep **while I was watching** TV.
  subject + verb
- We met a lot of interesting people **while we were on vacation**.
- Robert suddenly began to feel sick **while he was taking the exam**.

Some more examples of **while**:

- We saw Clare **while we were waiting** for the bus.
- **While you were** out of the office, there was a phone call for you.
- Alex read a book **while Amy watched** TV.

When we are talking about the future, we use the *present* after **while**. Do not use "will" (see Unit 24):

- I'm going to Toronto next week. I hope the weather will be good **while I'm** there. (*not* while I will be)
- What are you going to do **while you're** waiting? (*not* while you'll be waiting)



Alex read a book **while Amy watched** TV.

for and **since** → Unit 12A **while** + **-ing** → Unit 66A

Exercises

116.1 Put in **for** or **during**.

1 It rained *for* three days without stopping.
2 I fell asleep *during* the movie.
3 I went to the theater last night. I met Sue ..... the intermission.
4 I felt really sick last week. I could hardly eat anything ..... three days.
5 The traffic was bad. We were stuck in a traffic jam ..... two hours.
6 Production at the factory was seriously affected ..... the strike.
7 Sarah was very angry with me. She didn't speak to me ..... a week.
8 I don't have much free time ..... the week, but I relax on weekends.
9 I need a break. I think I'll go away ..... a few days.
10 The president gave a short speech. She spoke ..... only ten minutes.
11 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything ..... the trip.
12 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything ..... eight hours.

116.2 Put in **during** or **while**.

1 We met a lot of interesting people *while* we were on vacation.
2 We met a lot of interesting people *during* our vacation.
3 I met Mike ..... I was shopping.
4 ..... I was on vacation, I didn't use my phone at all.
5 I learned a lot ..... the course. The teachers were very good.
6 There was a lot of noise ..... the night. What was it?
7 I'd been away for many years. Many things had changed ..... that time.
8 What did they say about me ..... I was out of the room?
9 Whenever I fly somewhere, I never eat anything ..... the flight.
10 Please don't interrupt me ..... I'm speaking.
11 ..... the festival, it's almost impossible to find a hotel room here.
12 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't eaten anything ..... we were traveling.

116.3 Put in **during**, **for**, or **while**.

1 I used to live in Berlin. I lived there ..... five years.
2 One of the runners fell ..... the race but managed to get up and continue.
3 Nobody came to see me ..... I was in the hospital.
4 Try to avoid traveling ..... the busy periods of the day.
5 I was very tired. I slept ..... ten hours.
6 Can you hold my bag ..... I try on this jacket?
7 I'm not sure when we'll arrive, but it will be sometime ..... the afternoon.
8 I wasn't well last week. I hardly ate anything ..... three days.
9 My phone rang ..... we were having dinner.
10 Nobody knows how many people were killed ..... the war.

116.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I fell asleep while *I was watching TV.*
2 I fell asleep during *the movie.*
3 Can you wait for me while .....
4 Most of the students looked bored during .....
5 I was asked a lot of questions during .....
6 Don't open the car door while .....
7 The lights suddenly went out while .....
8 What are you going to do while .....
9 It started to rain during .....
10 It started to rain while .....

→ Additional Exercise 34 (page 316)

Unit 117

by and until by the time ...

A

by ... = not later than:

- I sent the documents today, so they should arrive **by Monday**.
  (= on or before Monday, no later than Monday)
- We'd better hurry. We have to be home **by 5:00**.
  (= at or before 5 o'clock, no later than 5 o'clock)
- Where's Sarah? She should be here **by now**.
  (= now or before now—so she should already be here)



This milk should be sold **by August 14**.

B

We use **until** (*or* **till**) to say *how long* a situation continues:

- A: Should we go now?
  B: No, let's **wait until** it stops raining. *or* ... **till** it stops raining.
- I was very tired this morning. { I **stayed in bed until** 10:30. / I **didn't get up until** 10:30.

Compare **until** and **by**:

Something *continues* **until** a time in the future:

- Joe **will be away until** Monday.
  (so he'll be back *on* Monday)
- **I'll be working until** 11:30.
  (so I'll stop working *at* 11:30)

Something *happens* **by** a time in the future:

- Joe **will be back by** Monday.
  (= not later than Monday)
- **I'll have finished my work by** 11:30.
  (= I'll finish it not later than 11:30.)

C

You can say "**by the time** something happens":

- It's too late to go to the bank now. **By the time we get there**, it will be closed.
  (= it will close between now and the time we get there)
- You'll need plenty of time at the airport. **By the time you check in and go through security**, it will be time for your flight.
  (= check-in and security will take a long time)
- Hurry up! **By the time we get to the theater**, the movie will already have started.

You can say "**by the time** something happened" (for the past):

- Megan's car broke down on the way to the party last night. **By the time she arrived**, most of the other guests had left.
  (= it took her a long time to get there and most of the guests left during this time)
- I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. I was very tired **by the time I finished**.
  (= it took me a long time to do the work, and I became more and more tired)
- We went to the movies last night. It took us a long time to find a place to park the car. **By the time we got to the theater**, the movie had already started.

You can say **by then** *or* **by that time**:

- Megan finally got to the party at midnight, but **by** then most of the other guests had left.
  or ...but **by that time**, most of the other guests had left.

will be doing and **will have done** ➜ Unit 23 **by** (other uses) ➜ Units 40B, 58B, 125

Exercises

117.1 Complete the sentences with **by**.

1 We have to be home no later than 5:00.
We have to be home by 5:00.
2 I have to be at the airport no later than 8:30
I have to be at the airport .....
3 Let me know no later than Saturday whether you can come to the party.
..... whether you can come to the party.
4 Please make sure that you're here no later than 2:00.
Please make sure that .....
5 If we leave now, we should arrive no later than lunchtime.
If we leave now, ...

117.2 Put in **by** or **until**.

1 Steve has gone away. He'll be away until Monday.
2 Sorry, but I have to go. I have to be home ..... 5:00.
3 According to the forecast, the bad weather will continue ..... the weekend.
4 I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. I have to decide ..... Friday.
5 I think I'll wait ..... Thursday before making a decision.
6 I'm still waiting for Tom to call me. He should have called me ..... now.
7 I need to pay this bill. It has to be paid ..... tomorrow.
8 Don't pay the bill today. Wait ..... tomorrow.
9 We haven't finished painting the house yet. We hope to finish ..... Tuesday.
10 "Will you still be in the office at 6:30?" "No, I'll have gone home ..... then."
11 I'm moving into my new apartment next week. I'm staying with a friend ..... then.
12 I've got a lot of work to do. ..... the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.
13 We have plenty of time. The movie doesn't start ..... 8:30.
14 It is hoped that the new bridge will be completed ..... the end of the year.

117.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use **by** or **until**.

1 David is away at the moment. He'll be away until Monday
2 David is away at the moment. He'll be back by Monday
3 I'm just going out. I won't be long. Wait here .....
4 I'm just going out. It's 4:30 now. I won't be long. I'll be back .....
5 If you want to apply for the job, your application must be received .....
6 My passport is valid .....
7 I missed the last bus and had to walk home. I didn't get home .....

117.4 Read the situations and complete the sentences using **By the time ... .**

1 I was invited to a party, but I got there much later than I planned.
By the time I got to the party, most of the other guests had left.
2 I planned to catch a train, but it took me longer than expected to get to the station.
....., my train had already left.
3 I wanted to go shopping after work. But I finished work much later than expected.
....., it was too late to go shopping.
4 I saw two men who looked as if they were trying to steal a car. I called the police, but it was some time before they arrived.
....., the two men had disappeared.
5 We climbed a mountain, and it took us a long time to get to the top. There wasn't much time to enjoy the view.
....., we had to come down again.

→ Additional Exercise 34 (page 316)

Unit
118 at/on/in (Time)

A

Compare **at**, **on** and **in**:

- They arrived **at 5:00**.
- They arrived **on Friday**.
- They arrived **in June**. / They arrived **in 2012**.

We use:

at for the time of day
at 5:00 **at 11:45** **at midnight** **at lunchtime** **at sunset**, etc.

on for days and dates
on Friday / on Fridays **on May 16, 2012** **on New Year's Day** **on my birthday**
also **on the weekend, on weekends**

in for longer periods (months/years/seasons, etc.)
in June **in 2012** **in the 1990s** **in the 20th century** **in the past** **in the winter**

B

We say:

at the moment / at present / at this time (= now):
- Can you come back later? Mr. Brown is busy **at the moment**.

at the same time
- Kate and I arrived **at the same time**.

at Christmas (*but* **on Christmas Day**)
- Do you give each other presents **at Christmas**?

at night (= during nights in general), **in the night** (= during a particular night):
- I don't like working **at night**.
  but It had snowed **in the night**, and the yard looked beautiful.

C

We say:

in the morning(s)
in the afternoon(s)
in the evening(s)

but

on Friday morning(s)
on Sunday afternoon(s)
on Monday evening(s), etc.

- I'll see you **in the morning**.
- Do you work **in the evenings**?

- I'll see you **on Friday morning**.
- Do you work **on Saturday evenings**?

D

We do not use **at/on/in** before **last/next/this/every**:
- I'll see you **next Friday**. (*not* on next Friday)
- They got married **last June**.

We often leave out **on** before days and dates. So you can say:
- I'll see you **on Friday**. *or* I'll see you **Friday**.
- I don't work **on Monday mornings**. *or* I don't work **Monday mornings**.
- We're having a picnic **on July 15**. *or* We're having a picnic **July 15**.

E

We say that something will happen **in a few minutes / in six months**, etc. :
- The train will be leaving **in a few minutes**. (= a few minutes from now)
- Andy has gone away. He'll be back **in a week**. (= a week from now)
- They'll be here **in a moment**. (= a moment from now, very soon)

We also use **in** ... to say how long it takes to do something:
- I learned to drive **in four weeks**. (= it took me four weeks to learn)

on/in time, at/in the end ➜ Unit 119 **in/at/on** (Position) ➜ Units 120–122
in/at/on (other uses) ➜ Unit 124 British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

118.1 Put in **at**, **on**, or **in**.

1 Mozart was born in Salzburg ___in___ 1756.
2 I've been invited to a wedding ___ February 14.
3 Amy's birthday is ___ May, but I don't know which date.
4 This park is popular and gets very busy ___ weekends.
5 I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her ___ Tuesday.
6 Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job ___ two years.
7 I'm busy right now. I'll be with you ___ a moment.
8 Sam isn't here ___ the moment, but he'll be here this afternoon.
9 There are usually a lot of parties ___ New Year's Eve.
10 I don't like the dark. I try to avoid going out ___ night.
11 It rained very hard ___ the night. Did you hear it?
12 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready ___ two hours.
13 The bus station was busy. A lot of buses were leaving ___ the same time.
14 Hannah and David always go out for dinner ___ their wedding anniversary.
15 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it ___ a day.
16 ___ noon, the sun is at its highest point in the sky.
17 This building is very old. It was built ___ the seventeenth century.
18 The office is closed ___ Wednesday afternoons.
19 In the U.S., many people go home to see their families ___ Christmas.
20 My flight arrives ___ 5:00 ___ the morning.
21 The course begins ___ January 7 and ends sometime ___ April.
22 I might not be at home ___ Tuesday morning, but I'll be there ___ the afternoon.

118.2 Complete the sentences. Use **at**, **on**, or **in** + the following:

the evening	**about 20 minutes**	**~~1756~~**	**the same time**	**the 1920s**
the moment	**July 21, 1969**	**night**	**Saturdays**	**11 seconds**

1 Mozart was born ___in 1756___
2 If the sky is clear, you can see the stars ___
3 After working hard during the day, I like to relax ___
4 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon ___
5 It's difficult to listen if everyone is talking ___
6 Jazz became popular in the United States ___
7 I'm just going out to the store. I'll be back ___
8 I don't think we need an umbrella. It's not raining ___
9 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 meters ___
10 Anna works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works ___

118.3 Which is correct: **a**, **b**, or **both** of them?

1	a I'll see you on Friday.	b I'll see you Friday.	___both___
2	a I'll see you on next Friday.	b I'll see you next Friday.	___b___
3	a Paul got married in April.	b Paul got married April.	___
4	a I play tennis on Sunday mornings.	b I play tennis Sunday mornings.	___
5	a We were sick at the same time.	b We were sick in the same time.	___
6	a What are you doing in the weekend?	b What are you doing on the weekend?	___
7	a Matthew was born at May 10, 1993.	b Matthew was born on May 10, 1993.	___
8	a He left school last June.	b He left school in last June.	___
9	a Will you be here on Tuesday?	b Will you be here Tuesday?	___
10	a I don't like driving in night.	b I don't like driving at night.	___

→ **Additional Exercise 34** (page 316)

Unit
119 on time and in time at the end and in the end

A on time and in time

on time = punctual, not late
If something happens **on time**, it happens at the time that was planned:

- The 11:45 train left **on time**. (= it left at 11:45)
- Please be **on time**. Don't be late.
- The conference was well-organized. Everything began and finished **on time**.

in time (for something / to do something) = soon enough

- Will you be home **in time for dinner**? (= soon enough for dinner)
- I sent Amy a birthday present. I hope it arrives **in time**. (= on or before her birthday)
- I'm in a hurry. I want to get home **in time to watch** the game on TV. (= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of **in time** is **too late**:

- I got home **too late** to watch the game on TV.

You can say **just in time** (= almost too late):

- We got to the station **just in time** for our train.
- A child ran into the road in front of the car, but I managed to stop **just in time**.

B at the end and in the end

at the end (of something) = at the time when something ends
For example:

at the end of the month	**at the end of January**	**at the end of the game**
at the end of the movie	**at the end of the course**	**at the end of the concert**

- I'm going away **at the end of January / at the end of the month**.
- **At the end of the concert**, everyone applauded.
- The players shook hands **at the end of the game**.

We do not say "**in** the end of ... ." For example, we do not say "in the end of January."

The opposite of **at the end** is **at the beginning**:

- I'm going away **at the beginning of January**. (*not* in the beginning)

in the end = finally

We use **in the end** when we say what the final result of a situation was:

- We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it **in the end**. (= finally we sold it)
- He got more and more angry. **In the end**, he just walked out of the room.
- Alan couldn't decide where to go for his vacation. He didn't go anywhere **in the end**. (*not* at the end)

The opposite of **in the end** is **at first**:

- **At first** we didn't get along very well, but **in the end** we became good friends.

at/on/in (Time) → Unit 118

Exercises

119.1 Complete the sentences with **on time** or **in time**.

1 The bus is usually *on time*, but it was late this morning.
2 The movie was supposed to start at 8:30, but it didn't begin .....
3 The train service isn't very good. The trains are rarely .....
4 We nearly missed our train. We got to the station just .....
5 We want to start the meeting ....., so please don't be late.
6 I just washed this shirt. I want to wear it tonight, so I hope it will be dry .....
7 I almost forgot that it was Joe's birthday. Fortunately, I remembered .....
8 Why are you never ..... ? You always keep everybody waiting.
9 It is hoped that the new stadium will be ready ..... for the tournament later this year.

119.2 Read the situations and make sentences using **just in time**.

1 A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment.
(manage / stop) *I managed to stop just in time.*
2 You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily.
(get / home) I .....
3 Your friend was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, "Don't sit on that chair!" so he didn't. (stop / him) I .....
4 You and a friend went to the movies. You were late, and you thought you would miss the beginning of the movie. But the movie began just as you sat down in the theater.
(get / theater / beginning / movie)
We .....

119.3 Complete the sentences using **at the end** + the following:

the course **~~the game~~** **the interview** **the month** **the race**

1 The players shook hands *at the end of the game*.
2 I get paid .....
3 The students had a party .....
4 Two of the runners collapsed .....
5 I was surprised when I was offered the job .....

119.4 Write sentences with **in the end**. Use the verb in parentheses.

1 We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) *In the end, we sold it.*
2 Anna got more and more fed up with her job.
(resign) .....
3 I tried to learn Japanese, but I found it too difficult.
(give up) .....
4 We couldn't decide whether to go to the party or not.
(not/go) .....

119.5 Put in **at** or **in**.

1 I'm going away *at* the end of the month.
2 It took Gary a long time to find work. ..... the end, he got a job as a bus driver.
3 I couldn't decide what to buy Amy for her birthday. I didn't buy her anything ..... the end.
4 I'm going away ..... the end of this week.
5 We waited ages for a bus. ..... the end, we had to get a taxi.
6 ..... the end of the lesson, all the students left the classroom.
7 We had a few problems at first, but ..... the end everything was OK.
8 You were in a difficult position. What did you do ..... the end?
9 The trip took a very long time, but we got there ..... the end.
10 Are you going away ..... the beginning of August or ..... the end?

Unit
120 in/at/on (Position) 1

A in



in a room
in a building
in a box
etc.



in a yard/garden
in a town/city
in a country
etc.



in a pool
in the ocean
in a river
etc.

There's no one **in the room / in the building / in the yard**.
What do you have **in your hand / in your mouth**?
When we were **in Chile**, we spent a few days **in Santiago**.
I have a friend who lives **in a small village in the mountains**.
There were some people swimming **in the pool / in the ocean / in the river**.

B at



at the bus stop



at the door



at the intersection



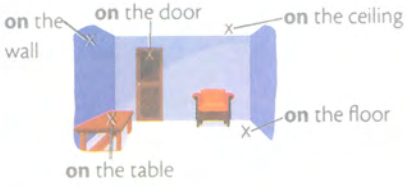
at his desk

Who is that man standing **at the bus stop / at the door / at the window**?
Turn left **at the traffic light / at the next intersection / at the church**.
We have to get off the bus **at the next stop**.
I can't find Dan. He's not **at his desk**.

Compare **in** and **at**:

There were a lot of people **in the store**. It was crowded.
Continue on this road. Then turn left **at the store**.
I'll meet you **in the hotel lobby**. (= in the building)
I'll meet you **at the entrance to the hotel**. (= outside the building)

C on





on her nose



on a page

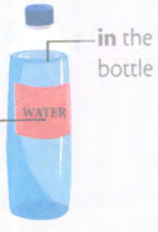


on an island

- ☐ I sat **on the floor / on the ground / on the grass / on the beach / on a chair**.
- ☐ There's a dirty mark **on the ceiling / on your nose / on your shirt**.
- ☐ Did you see the notice **on the wall / on the door**?
- ☐ You'll find movie reviews **on page 23** of the newspaper.
- ☐ The hotel is **on a small island** in the middle of a lake.

Compare **in** and **on**:

- ☐ There is some water **in the bottle**.
  There is a label **on the bottle**.



Compare **at** and **on**:

- ☐ There is somebody **at the door**. Should I go and see who it is?
  There is a notice **on the door**. It says "Do not disturb."

in/at/on (Position) 2–3 ➜ Units 121–122

Exercises

120.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use **in**, **at**, or **on** with the words below the pictures.



(bottle) (arm) (traffic light) (door)

(wall) (Paris) (gate) (beach)

1 Where's the label? *On the bottle.*
2 Where's the fly? .....
3 Where's the car waiting? .....
4 Where's the notice? ..... Where's the key? .....
5 Where are the shelves? .....
6 Where's the Eiffel Tower? .....
7 Where's the man standing? ..... Where's the bird? .....
8 Where are the children playing? .....

120.2 Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at**, or **on** + the following:

the window	**his hand**	**the mountains**	**that tree**
my guitar	~~**the river**~~	**the island**	**the next gas station**

1 There were some people swimming *in the river* .
2 One of the strings ..... is broken.
3 There's something wrong with the car. We'd better stop ..... .
4 He was holding something ....., but I couldn't see what it was.
5 The leaves ..... are a beautiful color.
6 You can go skiing ..... nearby. There's plenty of snow.
7 There's nobody living ..... . It's uninhabited.
8 He spends most of the day sitting ..... and looking outside.

120.3 Complete the sentences with **in**, **at**, or **on**.

1 There was a long line of people *at* the bus stop.
2 Nicole was wearing a silver ring ..... her little finger.
3 There was a security guard standing ..... the entrance to the building.
4 I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name ..... the door.
5 There are some beautiful trees ..... the park.
6 You'll find the weather forecast ..... the back page of the newspaper.
7 The headquarters of the company is ..... California.
8 I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting ..... a desk.
9 The man the police are looking for has a scar ..... his right cheek.
10 If you come here by bus, get off ..... the stop after the traffic light.
11 Have you ever been camping? Have you ever slept ..... a tent?
12 Emily was sitting ..... the balcony reading a book.
13 My brother lives ..... a small town ..... eastern Tennessee.
14 I like that picture hanging ..... the wall ..... the kitchen.

→ Additional Exercise 35 (pages 316–317)

Unit 121

in/at/on (Position) 2

A

We say that somebody/something is:

in a line, in a row	**in an office, in a department**
in a picture, in a photo(graph)	**in the sky, in the world**
in a newspaper, in a magazine, in a book	**in the country** (= not in a city or town)

- When I go to the movies, I like to sit **in the front row**.
- Amy works **in the sales department**.
- Who is the woman **in that picture**?
- Do you live in a city or **in the country**?
- It's a beautiful day. There isn't a cloud **in the sky**.



They're standing **in a row**.

B

We say that somebody/something is:

on the left, on the right (*or* **on the left-hand side, on the right-hand side**)

- Do you drive **on the left** or **on the right** in your country?

on the ground floor, on the first floor, on the second floor, on the top floor, etc.

- Our apartment is **on the second floor** of the building.

on a map, on a menu, on a list, on a page, on a website

- Here's the shopping list. Don't buy anything that's not **on the list**.
- You'll find the information you need **on our website**.

We say that a place is **on a river / on a road / on a street / on the coast**:

- Vienna is **on the Danube River**.
- The town where you live—is it **on the coast** or is it inland?



We say **on the way** (from one place to another):

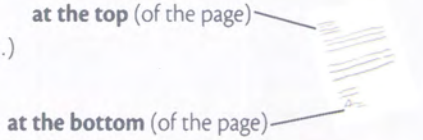
- We stopped at a store **on the way** home.

C

We say:

at the top (of ...), **at the bottom** (of ...), **at the end** (of ...)

- Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- Jen lives **at the other end of the street**.



D

We say:

in the front, in the back of a group of people:

- Let's sit **in the front** (in a movie theater).
- We were **in the back of the crowd**. We couldn't see very well.

in the front, in the back of a car:

- I was **in the back** (of the car) when we had the accident.

on the front, on the back of an envelope / a piece of paper, etc.

- I wrote the date **on the back of the photo**.



E

We say:

in the corner of a room

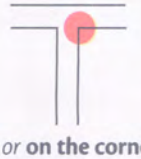
- The TV is **in the corner** of the room.

at the corner *or* **on the corner** of a street

- There is a small store **at the corner** (of the street).
  or ... **on the corner** (of the street).



in the corner



at *or* **on the corner**

in the world → Unit 105D **in/at/on** (Position) → Units 120, 122 British English → Appendix 7

Exercises

121.1 Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at, or on with the words below the pictures.



(sales department) (second floor) (corner) (corner) (top / stairs)

(back / car) (front) (left) (back row) (end / street)

1 Where does Amy work? In the sales department.
2 Amy lives in this building. Where's her apartment exactly? .....
3 Where is the woman standing? .....
4 Where is the man standing? .....
5 Where's the cat? .....
6 Where's the dog? .....
7 Anna is in this group of people. Where is she? .....
8 Where's the post office? .....
9 John is at the movies. Where is he sitting? .....
10 Where is the bank? .....

121.2 Complete the sentences. Use in, at, or on + the following:

the West Coast	**the world**	**the back of the class**	~~**the sky**~~
the front row	**the right**	**the back of this card**	**the way to work**

1 It's a lovely day. There isn't a cloud in the sky.
2 In most countries, people drive .....
3 What is the tallest building .....?
4 I met a friend of mine ..... this morning.
5 San Francisco is ..... of the United States.
6 We went to the theater last night. We had seats .....
7 I couldn't hear the teacher. She spoke quietly, and I was sitting .....
8 I don't have your address. Could you write it .....?

121.3 Complete the sentences with in, at, or on.

1 We stopped at a store on the way home.
2 Is your sister ..... this photo? I don't recognize her.
3 They live in a small house ..... the bottom of the hill.
4 We had to wait ..... a line for an hour to check in at the airport.
5 There was a list of names, but my name wasn't ..... the list.
6 Is there anything interesting ..... your magazine?
7 I love to look up at the stars ..... the sky at night.
8 When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit ..... the front.
9 There was a man ..... the top of a ladder cleaning windows.
10 I live in a very small town. You probably won't find it ..... your map.
11 Joe works ..... the furniture department of a large store.
12 Paris is ..... the Seine River.
13 I don't like cities. I'd much prefer to live ..... the country.
14 My office is ..... the top floor. It's ..... your left as you come out of the elevator.

→ Additional Exercise 35 (pages 316–317)

Unit 122

in/at/on (Position) 3

A

We say that somebody is **in bed** / **in prison** / **in the hospital**:

- James isn't up yet. He's still **in bed**.
- Anna's mother is **in the hospital**.

We say **at school/college** or **in school/college**.

We use **at school/college** to say where someone is:

- Kim isn't living at home. She's away **at college**. (= that's where she is)

We use **in school/college** to say that someone is a student.

- Liz works at a bank, and her brother is **in college**. (= he's a college student)

B

We say that somebody is **at** an event (**at a party**, **at a conference**, etc.):

- Were there many people **at the party** / **at the meeting** / **at the wedding**?
- I saw Steve **at a conference** / **at a concert** on Saturday.

We say that someone is **at work**:

- I'll be **at work** until 5:30.

We say **be at home** or **be home** (with or without **at**), but **do something at home** (with **at**):

- I'll **be home** all evening. *or* I'll **be at home** all evening.
- Should we go to a restaurant or **eat at home**?

C

You can often use **in** or **at** with buildings. For example, you can eat **in a restaurant** or **at a restaurant**; you can buy food **in a supermarket** or **at a supermarket**.

We usually say **at** when we say where an event takes place (a concert, a party, a meeting, etc.):

- We went to a concert **at Lincoln Center**.
- The meeting took place **at the company's headquarters** in New York.
- There was a robbery **at the supermarket**

We say **at** somebody's house:

- I was **at Hannah's house** last night. *or* I was **at Hannah's** last night.

In the same way we say **at the doctor's**, **at the hairdresser's**, etc.

We use **in** when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare **at** and **in**:

- I was **at Hannah's** (house) last night.
  It's always cold **in Hannah's house**. The heat doesn't work well. (*not* at Hannah's house)
- We had dinner **at the hotel**.
  All the rooms **in the hotel** have air conditioning. (*not* at the hotel)

We say **at the station** / **at the airport**:

- There's no need to meet me **at the station**. I can get a taxi.

D

We normally use **in** with cities, towns and villages:

- The Louvre is a famous art museum **in Paris**. (*not* at Paris)
- Sam's parents live **in St. Louis**. (*not* at St. Louis)

We use **at** or **in** when we think of the place as a point or station on a trip:

- We stopped **at** (*or* **in**) **a small town** on the way to Denver.

E

We usually say **on a bus** / **on a train** / **on a plane** / **on a ship** *but* **in a car** / **in a taxi**:

- **The bus** was very full. There were too many people **on it**.
- Lauren arrived **in a taxi**.

We say **on a bike** (= bicycle) / **on a motorcycle** / **on a horse**:

- Rachel passed me **on her bike**.

at school / **in prison**, etc. ➜ Unit 72 **in/at/on** (Position) ➜ Units 120–121 **to/at/in/into** ➜ Unit 123
by car / **by bike**, etc. ➜ Unit 125B

Exercises

122.1 Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use **in**, **at**, or **on** with the words below the pictures.



(the airport) (a train) (a conference) (the hospital)

(the hairdresser's) (his bike) (New York) (the Apollo Theater)

1 You can rent a car *at the airport*.
2 Dave is ..... .
3 Amy is ..... .
4 Chris ..... .
5 Abby is ..... .
6 I saw Kevin ..... .
7 We spent a few days ..... .
8 We went to a show ..... .

122.2 Complete the sentences. Use **in**, **at**, or **on** + the following:

the plane	**the station**	**a taxi**	**the art museum**
Tokyo	**school**	~~**prison**~~	**the gym**

1 Some people are *in prison* for crimes that they did not commit.
2 We can get coffee ..... while we're waiting for our train.
3 We walked to the restaurant, but we went home ..... .
4 I play basketball ..... on Friday evenings.
5 I enjoyed the flight, but the food ..... was awful.
6 Vicky has gone to Japan. She's living ..... .
7 "Does your sister have a job?" "No, she's only 16. She's still ..... ."
8 There's a new exhibition of paintings ..... . Let's go and see it.

122.3 Complete these sentences with **in**, **at**, or **on**.

1 We went to a concert *at* Lincoln Center.
2 There isn't a store ..... the village where I live. It's very small.
3 Joe wasn't ..... the party. I don't know why he didn't go.
4 There were about ten tables ..... the restaurant, and four tables outside.
5 I don't know where my umbrella is. Maybe I left it ..... the bus.
6 What do you want to study ..... college?
7 I didn't feel well when I woke up, so I stayed ..... bed.
8 We were ..... Sarah's house last night. She invited us to dinner.
9 It was a very slow train. It stopped ..... every station.
10 Should we go ..... your car or mine?
11 We took a taxi, and Ben followed ..... his motorcycle.
12 I'd like to see a movie. What's on ..... the movie theater this week?
13 We went to see a movie last night. It was really cold ..... the theater.
14 Two people were injured in the accident and are still ..... the hospital.
15 Our flight was delayed. We had to wait ..... the airport for three hours.
16 I didn't expect you to be ..... home. I thought you'd be ..... work.

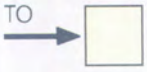
→ Additional Exercise 35 (pages 316–317)

Unit
123 to, at, in, and into

A

We say **go/come/travel**, etc., **to** a place or event. For example:

go to China	**go to** work	**come to** my house
go back to Italy	**go to** the bank	**drive to** the airport
return to Boston	**go to** a party	**be taken to** the hospital



- When are your friends **going back to Italy**? (*not* going back in Italy)
- Three people were injured in the accident and **taken to the hospital**.

In the same way we say: **Welcome to** ... , a **trip to** ... , a **visit to** ... , on **my way to** ..., etc. :

- **Welcome to our country**! (*not* Welcome in)
- We had to cancel **our trip to Paris**.

Compare **to** (for *movement*) and **in/at** (for *position*):

- They are **going to** France. *but* They **live in** France.
- Can you **come to** the party? *but* I'll **see you at** the party.

We say "(I've) **been to**" a place or an event:

- I've **been to Italy** four times, but I've never **been to Rome**.
- Amanda has never **been to a football game** in her life.

B

get and **arrive**

We say **get to** a place:

- They **got to the hotel** at midnight.
- What time did you **get to the party**?

We say **arrive in** ... or **arrive at** ... (*not* arrive to).
We say **arrive in** a town or country:

- They **arrived in Rio de Janeiro** / **in Brazil** a week ago.

For other places (buildings, etc.) or events, we say **arrive at**:

- What time did you **arrive at the hotel** / **at the airport** / **at the party**?

C

home

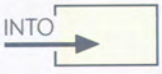
We say: **go home**, **come home**, **get home**, **arrive home**, **on the way home**, etc. (no preposition).
We do not say "to home":

- What time did you **get home**? (*not* get to home)
- I met Liz **on my way home**.

D

into

go into, **get into** ..., etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car, etc.):



- I opened the door, **went into the room**, and sat down.
- A bird **flew into the kitchen** through the window.
- Every month my salary **is paid** directly **into my bank account**.

With some verbs (especially **go**/**get**/**put**) we often use **in** (instead of **into**):

- She **got in the car** and drove away. *or* She **got into** the car ...
- I read the letter and **put it** back **in the envelope**.

The opposite of **into** is **out of**:

- She **got out of** the car and **went into** a store.

For buses, trains and planes, we usually say **get on** and **get off**:

- She **got on the bus**, and I never saw her again.
- You need to **get off** (the train) at the next station.

been to ➜ Unit 7 **in/at/on** (Position) ➜ Units 120–122 **at home** ➜ Unit 122A
into and **in** ➜ Unit 135A

Exercises

123.1 Put in **to/at/in/into** where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 Three people were taken to the hospital after the accident.
2 I'm tired. Let's go – home now. *(no preposition)*
3 We left our luggage ..... the hotel and went to find something to eat.
4 Should we take a taxi ..... the train station, or should we walk?
5 I have to go ..... the bank today. What time does it open?
6 The Amazon flows ..... the Atlantic Ocean.
7 I missed the bus, so I walked ..... home.
8 Have you ever been ..... China?
9 I lost my key, but I managed to climb ..... the house through a window.
10 We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way ..... the airport.
11 We had lunch ..... the airport while we were waiting for our plane.
12 It took us four hours to get ..... the top of the mountain.
13 Welcome ..... the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
14 I had a flat tire, so I turned ..... a parking lot and changed it.
15 Did you enjoy your visit ..... the zoo?
16 I did some shopping on my way ..... home.
17 Marcel is French. He has just returned ..... France after two years ..... Japan.
18 Eric was born ..... Chicago, but his family moved ..... Boston when he was three.

123.2 Write sentences about places you have been to. Use **I've been to / I've never been to** + the words in parentheses.

1 (never) I've never been to Egypt.
2 (once) .....
3 (never) .....
4 (a few times) .....
5 (many times) .....

123.3 Put in **to/at/in** where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 What time does this train get to Vancouver?
2 They arrived ..... Tokyo a few days ago.
3 What time did you get ..... home last night?
4 What time do you usually arrive ..... work in the morning?
5 When we got ..... the movie theater, there was a long line outside.
6 We were delayed and arrived ..... home very late.

123.4 Write sentences using **got + into / out of / on / off**.

1 You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a ride. She opened the door. What did you do? I got into the car.
2 You were waiting at the bus stop. At last your bus came and stopped. The doors opened. What did you do then? I ..... the bus.
3 You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car. What did you do then? .....
4 You were traveling by train to Chicago. When the train got to Chicago, what did you do? .....
5 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes, a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then? .....
6 You were flying across the country. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened. You took your bag and stood up. What did you do then? .....

→ Additional Exercise 35 (pages 316–317)

Unit 124

in/on/at (Other Uses)

A in

in the rain / in the sun / in the shade / in the dark / in bad weather, etc.

- We sat **in the shade**. It was too hot to sit **in the sun**.
- Don't go out **in the rain**. Wait until it stops.

in a language / **in** a currency, etc.

- How do you say "thank you" **in Russian**?
- How much is a hundred pounds **in dollars**?

(be/fall) **in love** (**with** somebody)

- They're very happy together. They're **in love**.

in a (good/bad) **mood**

- You seem to be **in a bad mood**. What's the matter?

in (my) **opinion**

- **In my opinion**, the movie wasn't very good.



in the shade

B on

on TV / on television
on the radio
on the phone
on fire
on purpose (= intentionally)
on the whole (= in general)

- I didn't see the news **on TV**.
- I heard the weather forecast **on the radio**.
- I've never met her, but I've spoken to her **on the phone**.
- Look! That car is **on fire**.
- I'm sorry. I didn't mean to hurt you. I didn't do it **on purpose**.
- Sometimes I have problems at work, but **on the whole** I enjoy my job.

C on vacation / on a trip, etc.

(be/go) **on vacation**
(be/go) **on a trip / on a tour / on a cruise**, etc.
(be/go to a place) **on business**
(be/go) **on strike**
(be/go) **on a diet**

- I'm going **on vacation** next week.
- One day I'd like to go **on a world tour**.
- Emma's away **on business** right now.
- There are no trains today. The drivers are **on strike**.
- I've put on weight. I have to go **on a diet**.

We also say "go somewhere **for a vacation**":

- Steve has gone to France **for a vacation**.

D at the age of ..., etc.

at the age of 16 / at a speed of 90 miles per hour / at 100 degrees, etc.:

- Tracy left school **at 16**. *or* Tracy left school **at the age** of 16.
- Some trains can travel **at speeds of 200 miles per hour** and even faster.
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.



in/at/on (Time) ➜ Unit 118 **in/at/on** (Position) ➜ Units 120–122

Exercises

124.1 Complete the sentences using **in** + the following:

the mood	cold weather	love	my opinion
French	~~the rain~~	kilometers	the shade

1 Don't go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.
2 Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn't go out much _____.
3 The movie was _____ with English subtitles.
4 They fell _____ almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.
5 I don't feel like going to a party tonight. I'm not _____.
6 It's too hot here. I'm going to sit _____ under that tree.
7 Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but _____ it wasn't very good.
8 Fifty miles? What's that _____?

124.2 Complete the sentences using **on** + the following:

business	a cruise	a diet	fire	vacation	her phone
~~the radio~~	purpose	strike	TV	a tour	the whole

1 I heard the weather forecast on the radio. It's going to get warmer.
2 Workers at the company have gone _____ for better pay and conditions.
3 Don't go _____ if you don't like being at sea.
4 There was panic when people realized that the building was _____.
5 Soon after we arrived, we were taken _____ of the city.
6 Emma has lots of useful apps _____.
7 I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching _____?
8 I'm sorry. It was an accident. I didn't do it _____.
9 If you are _____, there are certain things you're not allowed to eat.
10 We're going _____ on Friday. We're going to the mountains.
11 Mary's job involves a lot of traveling. She often has to go away _____.
12 Some of the exam questions were hard, but _____ it was OK.

124.3 Complete the sentences with **in**, **on**, or **at**.

1 Water boils at 212 degrees Fahrenheit.
2 When I was 14, I went _____ a trip to France organized by my high school.
3 Julia's grandmother died recently _____ the age of 90.
4 Can you turn the light on, please? I don't want to sit _____ the dark.
5 We didn't go away _____ vacation last year. We stayed home.
6 I hate driving _____ fog. You can't see anything.
7 Technology has developed _____ great speed.
8 David got married _____ 19, which is really young to get married.
9 I listened to an interesting program _____ the radio this morning.
10 I wouldn't like to go _____ a cruise. I think I'd get bored.
11 The earth travels around the sun _____ 107,000 kilometers an hour.
12 I shouldn't eat too much. I'm supposed to be _____ a diet.
13 A lot of houses were damaged _____ the storm last week.
14 I won't be here next week. I'll be _____ vacation.
15 I wouldn't like his job. He spends most of his time talking _____ the phone.
16 "Did you enjoy your vacation?" "Not every minute, but _____ the whole, yes."
17 _____ your opinion, what should I do?
18 Ben is a happy sort of person. He always seems to be _____ a good mood.
19 I don't think violent movies should be shown _____ TV.
20 The museum guidebook is available _____ several languages.

→ Additional Exercise 35 (pages 316–317)

Unit 125 by

A

You can say that something happens **by mistake** / **by accident** / **by chance**:

- We hadn't arranged to meet. We met **by chance**.

But we say "do something **on purpose**" (= you mean to do it):

- I didn't do it **on purpose**. It was an accident.

Note that we say **by chance**, **by accident**, etc. (*not* by the chance / by an accident). In these expressions we use **by** + *noun* without **the** or **a**.

B

We use **by** ... to say how somebody travels. For example, you can travel:

by car **by train** **by plane** **by boat** **by ship** **by bus** **by bike**, etc.

- Jess usually goes to work **by bus** / **by bike** / **by car**.

We do not use **by** if we say **my car** / **the train** / **a taxi**, etc. We say:

by car *but* **in my** car (*not* by my car)
by train *but* **on the** train (*not* by the train)

We use **in** for cars and taxis:

- They didn't come **in their car**. They came **in a taxi**.

We use **on** for bikes and public transportation (buses, trains, etc.):

- We traveled **on the 6:45 train**, which arrived at 8:30.

Note that we usually say **on foot** (*not usually* by foot):

- Did you come here **by car** or **on foot**?

We also use **by** to say how we do other things. For example, you can:

send something **by mail** pay **by credit card** / **by check** do something **by hand**

- Can I pay **by credit card**?

But note that we say **pay cash** or **pay in cash** (*not usually* by cash).

C

We say that "something is done **by** ..." (*passive*):

- Have you ever been bitten **by a dog**?
- The show was watched **by millions of people**.

Compare **by** and **with**:

- The door must have been opened **with a key**. (*not* by a key)
  (= somebody used a key to open it)
- The door must have been opened **by somebody** with a key.

We say: a play **by Shakespeare**, a painting **by Rembrandt**, a novel **by Tolstoy**, etc.

- Have you read any poems **by Shakespeare**?
- "**Who** is this painting **by**? Picasso?" "I have no idea."

D

By also means "next to / beside":

- The light switch is **by the door**.
- Come and sit **by me**. (= next to me)



E

You can also use **by** ... to show the difference between two things:

- Clare's salary has increased **by 10 percent**.
  (= it's now 10 percent more than before)
- Carl won the race **by five meters**.
  (= he was five meters in front of the next runner)



Passive + **by** ➜ Unit 40B **by** + **-ing** ➜ Unit 58B **by myself** ➜ Unit 81E **by** (time) ➜ Unit 117

Exercises

125.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

1 We don't need cash. We can pay by credit card.
2 Kate and James keep in touch with one another mostly _____.
3 I didn't mean to take your umbrella. I took it _____.
4 I think he arrived late _____. He wanted to keep us waiting.
5 Some things are planned. Other things happen _____.
6 Don't put my sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed _____.

by mistake
by hand
~~**by credit card**~~
by chance
by email
on purpose

125.2 Put in by, in, or on.

1 Jess usually goes to work by bus.
2 I saw Megan this morning. She was _____ the bus.
3 How did you get here? Did you come _____ train?
4 I couldn't find a seat _____ the train. It was full.
5 How much will it cost to get to the airport _____ taxi?
6 Did you come here _____ Sarah's car or yours?
7 The injured man was taken to the hospital _____ ambulance.
8 How long does it take to cross the Atlantic _____ ship?
9 He doesn't drive much. He goes everywhere _____ bike or _____ foot.

125.3 Complete these sentences. Use by and choose from the box.

1 I was woken up in the night by a strange noise.
2 These pictures were taken _____.
3 I hate getting bitten _____.
4 *Mona Lisa* is a famous painting _____.
5 We lost the game because of a mistake _____.
6 The plane was damaged _____, but landed safely.
7 This music is _____. I think it's beautiful.

mosquitoes
one of our players
lightning
Beethoven
~~**a strange noise**~~
Leonardo da Vinci
a professional photographer

125.4 Put in by, in, on, or with.

1 Have you ever been bitten by a dog?
2 We managed to put the fire out _____ a fire extinguisher.
3 Who's that man standing _____ the window?
4 Do you travel much _____ bus?
5 We traveled _____ my friend's car because it is larger and more comfortable than mine.
6 It was only _____ accident that I discovered the error.
7 I took these pictures _____ a very good camera.
8 My friends live in a beautiful house _____ the ocean.
9 There were only a few people _____ the plane. It was almost empty.
10 The new railway line will reduce the travel time _____ two hours (from five hours to three).
11 There was a small table _____ the bed _____ a lamp and a clock _____ it.

125.5 Complete the sentences using by.

1 Carl won the race. He was five meters in front of the next runner.
Carl won by five meters.
2 Ten years ago the population of the country was 50 million. Now it is 56 million.
In the last ten years the population has _____
3 There was an election. Anna won. She got 25 votes, and James got 23.
Anna won _____
4 I went to Kate's office to see her, but she had left work five minutes before I arrived.
I missed _____

→ Additional Exercise 30 (pages 316–317)

Unit
126 Noun + Preposition (**reason for, cause of**, etc.)

A *noun* + **for** ...

a **check FOR** (a sum of money)
- They sent me **a check for** $200.

a **demand** / **a need FOR** ...
- The company went out of business. There was no **demand for** its product anymore.
- There's no excuse for behavior like that. There's no **need for** it.

a **reason FOR** ...
- The train was late, but nobody knew the **reason for** the delay. (*not* reason of)

B *noun* + **of** ...

a **cause OF** ...
- The **cause of** the explosion is unknown.

a **picture** / a **photo** / a **photograph** / a **map** / a **plan** / a **drawing**, etc. **OF** ...
- Rachel showed me some **pictures of** her family.
- I had a **map of** the town, so I was able to find my way around.

an **advantage** / a **disadvantage OF** ...
- The **advantage of living alone** is that you can do what you like.

but
there is an advantage **TO** doing something *or* **IN** doing something:
- **There are** many advantages **to** living alone. *or* ... many advantages **in** living alone.

C *noun* + **in** ...

an **increase** / a **decrease** / a **rise** / a **drop IN** (prices, etc.)
- There has been an **increase in** the number of road accidents recently.
- Last year was a bad one for the company. There was a big **drop in** sales.

D *noun* + **to** ...

damage TO ...
- The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the **damage to** the other car.

an **invitation TO** ... (a party / a wedding, etc.)
- Did you get an **invitation to** the wedding?

a **solution TO** a problem / a **key TO** a door / an **answer TO** a question / a **reply TO** a letter / a **reaction TO** something
- I hope we find a **solution to** the problem. (*not* a solution of the problem)
- I was surprised at her **reaction to** my suggestion.

an **attitude TOWARD/TOWARDS** ... *or* an **attitude ABOUT** ... *or* an **attitude TO** ...
- His **attitude toward** his job is very negative. *or* His **attitude about** his job ... *or* His **attitude to** his job ...

E *noun* + **with** ... / **between** ...

a **relationship** / a **connection** / **contact WITH** ...
- Do you have a good **relationship with** your parents?
- The police want to question a man in **connection with** the robbery.

a **relationship** / a **connection** / **contact** / a **difference BETWEEN** two things or people
- The police believe that there is no **connection between** the two crimes.
- There are some **differences between** British and American English.

Exercises

126.1 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1 What caused the explosion?
What was the cause *of the explosion*?
2 We're trying to solve the problem.
We're trying to find a solution .....
3 Sue gets along well with her brother.
Sue has a good relationship .....
4 The cost of living has gone up a lot.
There has been a big increase .....
5 I don't know how to answer your question.
I can't think of an answer .....
6 I don't think that a new road is necessary.
I don't think there is any need .....
7 I think that living in a big city has many advantages.
I think that there are many advantages .....
8 Food prices fell last month.
Last month there was a drop .....
9 Nobody wants shoes like these anymore.
There is no demand .....
10 In what way is your job different from mine?
What is the difference .....?

126.2 Complete the sentences using these nouns + a preposition:

cause	**connection**	**contact**	**damage**	**invitation**
key	~~**map**~~	**photos**	**reason**	**reply**

1 On the classroom wall, there were some pictures and a *map of* the world.
2 Thank you for the ..... your birthday party.
3 Anna has very little ..... her family these days. She rarely sees them.
4 I can't open this door. Do you have a ..... the other door?
5 The ..... the fire at the hotel is still unknown.
6 Did you get a ..... the email you sent?
7 The two companies are separate. There is no ..... them.
8 Lauren showed me some ..... the city as it looked 100 years ago.
9 Emily has decided to give up her job. I don't know her ..... doing this.
10 It wasn't a bad accident. The ..... the car wasn't serious.

126.3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1 There are some differences *between* British and American English.
2 Money isn't the solution ..... every problem.
3 There has been an increase ..... the amount of traffic on this road.
4 The advantage ..... having a car is that you don't have to rely on public transportation.
5 There are many advantages ..... being able to speak a foreign language.
6 Everything can be explained. There's a reason ..... everything.
7 When Nick left home, his attitude ..... many things seemed to change.
8 Ben and I used to be good friends, but I don't have much contact ..... him now.
9 James did a very good drawing ..... his father. It looks just like him.
10 What was Sarah's reaction ..... the news?
11 Nicole took a picture ..... me holding the baby.
12 The show is very popular, and there has been a great demand ..... tickets.
13 There has been a lot of debate about the causes ..... climate change.
14 The fact that Jane was offered a job in the company has no connection ..... the fact that she is a friend of the company's president.

→ Additional Exercise 36 (page 317)

Unit
127 Adjective + Preposition 1

A nice of you, nice to me

nice / kind / good / generous / polite / honest / stupid / silly, etc. **OF** somebody (to do something)

- Thank you. It was very **nice of** you to help me.
- It was **stupid of** me to go out without a coat in such cold weather.

(be) **nice / kind / good / generous / polite / rude / friendly / cruel**, etc. **TO** somebody

- They have always been very **nice to** me. (*not* with me)
- Why were you so **unfriendly to** Lucy?

B *Adjective* + about / with / at

angry / excited / worried / upset / nervous / happy, etc. **ABOUT** something

- Are you **nervous about** the exam?
- Emma is **upset about** not being invited to the party.

mad AT somebody **FOR** doing something

- My parents are **mad at** me **for** disobeying them.

angry / annoyed / furious WITH / AT somebody **FOR** doing something

- Natalie is **furious with** me **for** telling her secret. *or* Natalie is **furious at** me ...

pleased / satisfied / happy / delighted / disappointed WITH something you get or experience

- They were **delighted with** the present I gave them.
- Were you **happy with** your exam results?

C *Adjective* + at / by / with / of

surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished AT / BY something

- Everybody was **surprised at** the news. *or* ... **by** the news.
- I hope you weren't **shocked by** what I said. *or* ... **at** what I said.

impressed WITH / BY somebody/something

- I'm very **impressed with** (*or* **by**) her English. It's very good.

fed up / bored WITH something

- I don't enjoy my job anymore. I'm **fed up with** it. / I'm **bored with** it.

tired OF something

- Come on, let's go! I'm **tired of** waiting.

D sorry about / for

sorry ABOUT a situation or something that happened

- I'm **sorry about** the mess. I'll clean it up later.
- **Sorry about** last night. (= Sorry about something that happened last night)

sorry FOR / ABOUT something you did or caused

- I'm **sorry for** shouting at you yesterday. (*or* **sorry about** shouting)
- **Sorry for** the delay. (*or* **Sorry about** the delay)

You can also say "I'm sorry I (did something)":

- I'm **sorry I shouted** at you yesterday.

feel / be sorry FOR somebody in a bad situation

- I **feel sorry for** Mark. He's had a lot of bad luck. (*not* I feel sorry about Mark)

Preposition + -ing → Unit 58 Adjective + to → Unit 63 sorry to / sorry for → Unit 64C
Adjective + Preposition 2 → Unit 128

Exercises

127.1 Complete the sentences using nice of ..., kind of ..., etc.

1	Tom offered to drive me to the airport.	(nice) That was nice of him.
2	I needed money and Lisa gave me some.	(generous) That ..... her.
3	They didn't invite us to their party.	(not very nice) That wasn't .....
4	Can I help you with your luggage?	(very kind) That's .....
5	Kevin never says "thank you."	(not very polite) That isn't .....
6	They've had an argument, and now they refuse to speak to each other.	(a little childish) That's a little .....

127.2 Complete the sentences using an adjective + preposition. Choose from:

amazed **bored** **careless** **excited** **impressed** **kind** **mad** ~~**nervous**~~

1 Are you nervous about the exam?
2 Thank you for all you've done. You've been very ..... me.
3 What have I done wrong? Why are you ..... me?
4 You must be very ..... your trip next week. It sounds really great.
5 I wasn't ..... the service in the restaurant. We had to wait ages.
6 Ben isn't very happy at college. He says he's ..... the courses he's taking.
7 I'd never seen so many people before. I was ..... the crowds.
8 It was ..... you to leave the car unlocked while you were shopping.

127.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1 They were delighted with the present I gave them.
2 It was nice ..... you to come and see me when I was sick.
3 Why are you always so rude ..... people? Why can't you be more polite?
4 We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up ..... it.
5 We had a good vacation, but we were disappointed ..... the hotel.
6 I can't understand people who are cruel ..... animals.
7 I was surprised ..... the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.
8 I've been trying to learn Japanese, but I'm not very satisfied ..... my progress.
9 Megan doesn't look very well. I'm worried ..... her.
10 I'm sorry ..... yesterday. I completely forgot we'd arranged to meet.
11 There's no point in feeling sorry ..... yourself. It won't help you.
12 Are you still upset ..... what I said to you yesterday?
13 Some people say Kate is unfriendly, but she's always been very nice ..... me.
14 I'm tired ..... doing the same thing every day. I need a change.
15 We interviewed ten people for the job, and we weren't impressed ..... any of them.
16 Vicky is annoyed ..... me because I didn't agree with her.
17 I'm sorry ..... the smell in this room. I just finished painting it.
18 I was shocked ..... what I saw. I'd never seen anything like it before.
19 Jack is sorry ..... what he did. He won't do it again.
20 The hotel was incredibly expensive. I was amazed ..... the price of a room.
21 Dan made the wrong decision. It was honest ..... him to admit it.
22 You've been very generous ..... me. You've helped me a lot.
23 Our neighbors were very angry ..... the noise we made.
24 Our neighbors were furious ..... us ..... making so much noise.

→ Additional Exercise 36 (page 317)

Unit
128 Adjective + Preposition 2

A *adjective* + **of**

afraid / scared / frightened / terrified OF ...

- "Are you **afraid of** spiders?" "Yes, I'm **terrified of** them."

fond / proud / ashamed / jealous / envious OF ...

- Why is he so **jealous of** other people?

suspicious / critical / tolerant OF ...

- They didn't trust me. They were **suspicious of** my motives.

aware / conscious OF ...

- "Did you know he was married?" "No, I wasn't **aware of** that."

capable / incapable OF ...

- I'm sure you are **capable of** doing the job well.

full / short OF ...

- Amy is a very active person. She's always **full of** energy.
- I'm a bit **short of** money. Can you lend me some?

typical OF ..

- He's late again. It's **typical of** him to keep everybody waiting.

certain / sure OF *or* **ABOUT ...**

- I think she's arriving this evening, but I'm not **sure of** that. *or* ... not **sure about** that.

B *adjective* + **at / to / from / in / on / with / for**

good / bad / excellent / better / terrible, etc. **AT ...**

- I'm not very **good at** repairing things. (*not* good in repairing things)

married / engaged TO ...

- Louise is **married to** an American. (*not* married with)

but Louise is married **with three children**. (= she is married and has three children)

similar TO ...

- Your handwriting is **similar to** mine.

different FROM *or* **different THAN ...**

- The movie was **different from** what I'd expected. *or* ... **different than** what I'd expected.

interested IN ...

- Are you **interested in** art?

dependent ON ... (*but* **independent OF ...**)

- I don't want to be **dependent on** anybody.

crowded WITH (people, etc.)

- The streets were **crowded with** tourists. (*but* ... **full of** tourists)

famous FOR ...

- The Italian city of Florence is **famous for** its art treasures.

responsible FOR ...

- Who was **responsible for** all that noise last night?

Preposition + **-ing** ➜ Unit 58 **afraid of/to ...** ➜ Unit 64A Adjective + Preposition 1 ➜ Unit 127
British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

128.1 Complete the sentences using a preposition + of. Choose from:

ashamed **aware** **capable** **envious** **proud** **scared** ~~**short**~~ **typical**

1 I'm a little short of money. Can you lend me some?
2 My children have done very well. I'm ..... them.
3 What I did was very bad. I'm ..... myself.
4 She always behaves like that. It's ..... her.
5 He wouldn't be able to run his own business. He's not ..... it.
6 I don't like going up ladders. I'm ..... heights.
7 Nobody told me she was sick. I wasn't ..... it.
8 I wish I had what Sarah has. I'm ..... her.

128.2 Write sentences about yourself. Are you good at these things or not? You can use:

good **pretty good** **not very good** **terrible**

1 (repairing things) I'm not very good at repairing things.
2 (telling jokes) .....
3 (math) .....
4 (remembering names) .....
5 (making decisions) .....

128.3 Complete the sentences using an adjective + preposition. Choose from:

afraid **capable** **different** **interested** **proud** **responsible** **similar** ~~**sure**~~

1 I think she's arriving tonight, but I'm not sure of that.
2 Your camera is ..... mine, but it isn't exactly the same.
3 Don't worry. I'll look after you. There's nothing to be .....
4 I never watch the news on TV. I'm not ..... the news.
5 The editor is the person who is ..... what appears in a newspaper.
6 Sarah is an enthusiastic gardener and is very ..... her garden.
7 I was surprised when I first met Liz. She was ..... what I expected.
8 Ben could become world champion one day. He's ..... it.

128.4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 There were lots of tourists in the streets. The streets were crowded with tourists.
2 There was a lot of furniture in the room. The room was full .....
3 I don't like sports very much. I'm not very interested .....
4 We don't have enough time. We're short .....
5 Megan does her job very well Megan is very good .....
6 Steven's wife is a doctor. Steven is married .....
7 I don't trust Robert. I'm suspicious .....
8 My problem is not the same as yours. My problem is different .....

128.5 Put in the correct preposition.

1 Amy is always full of energy.
2 My hometown is not a very interesting place. It's not famous ..... anything.
3 Kate is very fond ..... her younger brother.
4 You look bored. You don't seem interested ..... what I'm saying.
5 "Our flight departs at 10:35." "Are you sure ..... that?"
6 She's very honest. I don't think she's capable ..... telling a lie.
7 The station platform was crowded ..... people waiting for the train.
8 These days everybody is aware ..... the dangers of smoking.
9 Mark has no money of his own. He's completely dependent ..... his parents.
10 We're short ..... staff in our office right now. We need more people to do the work.

→ Additional Exercise 36 (page 317)

Unit 129

Verb + Preposition 1 **to** and **at**

A *verb* + **to**

talk / speak TO somebody (**talk/speak with** is also possible)
- Who were you **talking to**?

listen TO ...
- When I'm driving, I like to **listen to** the radio. (*not* listen the radio)

apologize TO somebody (for ...)
- They **apologized to me** for their mistake. (*not* apologized me)

explain something **TO** somebody
- Can you **explain** this word **to me**? (*not* explain me this word)

explain / describe (**to** somebody) what/how/why ...
- I **explained to them** why I was worried. (*not* I explained them)
- Let me **describe to you** what I saw. (*not* Let me describe you)

B **call** somebody, **ask** somebody, etc. (without **to**)

call / phone / email / text somebody
- I **called the airline** to cancel my flight. (*not* called to the airline)

answer somebody/something
- You didn't **answer my email**. (*not* answer to my email)

but **reply to** an email / a letter, etc.

ask somebody
- If there's anything you want to know, you can **ask me**. (*not* ask to me)

thank somebody (**for** ...)
- He **thanked me** for helping him. (*not* He thanked to me)

C *verb* + **at**

look / stare / glance AT ... , **take a look / have a look AT** ...
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?

laugh AT ...
- I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will **laugh at** me.

aim / point (something) **AT** ... , **shoot / fire** (a gun) **AT** ...
- Don't **point** that knife **at** me. It's dangerous.
- We saw someone with a gun **shooting at** birds, but he didn't hit any.

D Some verbs can be followed by **at** or **to**, with a difference in meaning. For example:

shout AT somebody (when you are angry or aggressive)
- He got very angry and started **shouting at** me.

shout TO somebody (so that they can hear you)
- He **shouted to** me from the other side of the street.

throw something **AT** somebody/something (to hit them)
- Somebody **threw** an egg **at** the politician.

throw something **TO** somebody (for somebody to catch)
- Lisa shouted "Catch!" and **threw** the keys **to** me from the window.

Verb + Preposition 2–5 ➜ Units 130–133 **ask for** ➜ Unit 130B
apologize for / thank somebody for ➜ Unit 132B Other Verbs + **to** ➜ Unit 133D

Exercises

129.1 Which is correct?

1 a Can you explain this word to me? (a *is correct*)
b ~~Can you explain me this word?~~
2 a I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologized to him.
b I got angry with Mark. Afterwards I apologized him.
3 a Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking to her.
b Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking her.
4 a I need somebody to explain me what I have to do.
b I need somebody to explain to me what I have to do.
5 a They didn't understand the system, so I explained it to them.
b They didn't understand the system, so I explained it them.
6 a I like to sit on the beach and listen to the sound of the ocean.
b I like to sit on the beach and listen the sound of the ocean.
7 a I asked them to describe me exactly what happened.
b I asked them to describe to me exactly what happened.
8 a We'd better call the restaurant to make a reservation.
b We'd better call to the restaurant to make a reservation.
9 a It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer to it.
b It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer it.
10 a I explained everybody the reasons for my decision.
b I explained to everybody the reasons for my decision.
11 a I thanked everybody for all the help they had given me.
b I thanked to everybody for all the help they had given me.
12 a My friend texted to me to let me know she was going to be late.
b My friend texted me to let me know she was going to be late.

129.2 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs + the correct preposition:

~~explain~~ ~~laugh~~ listen look point reply speak throw throw

1 I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will *laugh at* me.
2 I don't understand this. Can you *explain* it *to* me?
3 We live in the same building, but we've never ..... each other.
4 Be careful with those scissors! Don't ..... them ..... me!
5 You shouldn't ..... directly ..... the sun. You'll damage your eyes.
6 Please ..... me! I have something important to tell you.
7 Don't ..... stones ..... the birds!
8 If you don't want that sandwich, ... it ..... the birds. They'll eat it.
9 I tried to contact Rachel, but she didn't ..... my emails.

129.3 Put in **to** or **at**.

1 They apologized *to* me for what happened.
2 I glanced ..... my watch to see what time it was.
3 Please don't shout ..... me! Try to calm down.
4 I saw Liz and shouted ..... her, but she didn't hear me.
5 Don't listen ..... what he says. He doesn't know what he's talking about.
6 What's so funny? What are you laughing ..... ?
7 Is it all right if I take a look ..... your magazine?
8 I'm lonely. I need somebody to talk ..... .
9 She was so angry she threw a book ..... the wall.
10 The woman sitting across from me on the train kept staring ..... me.
11 Do you have a minute? I need to speak ..... you.

→ Additional Exercise 37 (pages 317–318)

Unit 130

Verb + Preposition 2 about/for/of/after

A *verb* + **about**

talk / read / know ABOUT ...
- We **talked about** a lot of things at the meeting.

have a discussion ABOUT something
- We had **a discussion about** what we should do.

But we say "**discuss** something" (no preposition):
- We **discussed** what we should do. (*not* discussed about)

do something/nothing **ABOUT** something = *do something/nothing to improve a situation*
- If you're worried about the problem, you should **do** something **about** it.

B *verb* + **for**

ask (somebody) **FOR** ...
- I sent an email to the company **asking** them **for** more information about the job.

But we say "ask somebody **the way / the time**," etc. (no preposition):
- I **asked** somebody **the way to the train station**.

apply (**TO** a company etc.) **FOR** a job, etc.
- I think you could do this job. Why don't you **apply for** it?

wait FOR somebody, **wait FOR** something (to happen)
- Don't **wait for** me. I'll join you later.
- I'm not going out yet. I'm **waiting for** the rain to stop.

search (a person / a place / a bag, etc.) **FOR** ...
- I've **searched** the house **for** my keys, but I can't find them.

leave (a place) **FOR** another place
- I haven't seen her since she **left** (home) **for** work. (*not* left to work)

C **take care of**, **care for**, and **care about**

take care OF ... = *keep safe, take responsibility for*
- Don't worry about me. I can **take care of** myself.
- I'll **take care of** the travel arrangements. You don't need to do anything.

care FOR somebody = *make sure somebody is safe and well*
- Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to **care for** him.

I don't **care FOR** something = *I don't like it*
- I don't **care for** hot weather. (= I don't like ...)

care ABOUT ... = *think that somebody/something is important*
- He's very selfish. He doesn't **care about** other people.

care what/where/how ..., etc. (*without* about)
- You can do what you like. I don't **care what** you do.

D **look for** and **look after**

look FOR ... = *search for, try to find*
- I lost my keys. Can you help me **look for** them?

look AFTER ... = *take care of, keep safe or in good condition*
- Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to **look after** him. (*not* look for)
- Can you **look after** the house for us while we're away?

Verbs + **about/of** (**think/hear**, etc.) ➜ Unit 131 Other Verbs + **for** ➜ Unit 132B

Exercises

130.1 Which is right?

1 We ~~searched everywhere Joe~~ / searched everywhere for Joe, but we couldn't find him. (searched everywhere for Joe *is correct*)
2 I sent her an email. Now I'm waiting for her to reply / waiting her to reply.
3 A security guard searched my bag / searched for my bag as I entered the building.
4 I paid the taxi driver and asked him a receipt / asked him for a receipt.
5 I wanted to get downtown, so I stopped a man to ask the way / to ask for the way.
6 We discussed about the problem / discussed the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.
7 There are so many problems, but the government does nothing for them / nothing about them.
8 My flight is at 9:30. What time do I need to leave the hotel to the airport / for the airport?

130.2 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting *for* the rain to stop.
2 I've applied ..... three colleges. I hope one of them accepts me.
3 If you don't want the job, there's no point in applying ..... it.
4 I don't want to talk ..... what happened last night. Let's forget it.
5 I don't want to discuss ..... what happened last night. Let's forget it.
6 We had an interesting discussion ..... the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.
7 My friends are in Italy. They're in Rome now, and tomorrow they leave ..... Milan.
8 The roof of the house is in bad condition. We need to do something ..... it.

130.3 Put in the correct preposition after care. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 He's very selfish. He doesn't care *about* other people.
2 Who's going to take care ..... you when you are old?
3 She doesn't care ..... the exam. She doesn't care whether she passes or fails.
4 I don't like this coat very much. I don't care ..... the color.
5 Don't worry about the shopping. I'll take care ..... that.
6 He gave up his job to care ..... his elderly father.
7 I want to have a good vacation. I don't care ..... the cost.
8 I want to have a good vacation. I don't care ..... how much it costs.

130.4 Complete the sentences with look for or look after. Use the correct form of look (looks/looked/looking).

1 I *looked for* my keys, but I couldn't find them anywhere.
2 Kate is ..... a job. I hope she finds one soon.
3 Who ..... you when you were sick?
4 The parking lot was full, so we had to ..... somewhere else to park.
5 A babysitter is somebody who ..... other people's children.
6 I'm ..... Megan. I need to ask her something. Have you seen her?

130.5 Complete the sentences with these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

apply **ask** **do** **leave** ~~**search**~~ **take** **talk** **wait**

1 Police are *searching for* a man who escaped from prison.
2 Sarah wasn't ready. We had to ..... her.
3 I think Amy likes her job, but she doesn't ..... it much.
4 Don't ..... me ..... money. I don't have any.
5 Ben is unemployed. He has ..... several jobs but hasn't had any luck.
6 If something is wrong, why don't you ..... something ..... it?
7 Lauren's car is very old, but she ..... care ..... it. It's in excellent condition.
8 Jen is from Boston, but now she lives in Paris. She ..... Boston ..... Paris when she was 19.

→ Additional Exercise 37 (pages 317–318)

Unit 131

Verb + Preposition 3 **about** and **of**

A

hear ABOUT ... = *be told about something*

- Did you **hear about** the fire at the hotel?

hear OF ... = *know that somebody/something exists*

- A: Who is Tom Hart?
  B: I have no idea. I've never **heard of** him. (*not* heard from him)

hear FROM ... = *be in contact with somebody*

- A: Have you **heard from** Nicole recently?
  B: Yes, she called me a few days ago.

B

think ABOUT something = *consider it, concentrate your mind on it*

- I've **thought about** what you said, and I've decided to take your advice.
- A: Will you lend me the money?
  B: I'll **think about** it. (*not* think of it)

think OF something = *produce an idea*

- It was my idea. I **thought of** it first. (*not* thought about it)
- I felt embarrassed. I couldn't **think of** anything to say. (*not* think about anything)

We also use **think of** when we ask for or give an opinion:

- A: What did you **think of** the movie?
  B: I didn't **think** much **of** it. (= I didn't like it much)

Sometimes the difference is very small, and you can use **of** or **about**:

- When I'm alone, I often **think of** you. *or* ... **think about** you.

You can say **think of** *or* **think about** doing something (for possible future actions):

- My sister is **thinking of** going to Canada. *or* ... **thinking about** going ...

C

dream ABOUT ... (when you are asleep)

- I **dreamed about** you last night.

dream OF/ABOUT being something / doing something = *imagine*

- Do you **dream of** being rich and famous? *or* ... **dream about** being rich ...

I **wouldn't dream OF** doing something = *I would never do it*

- "Don't tell anyone what I said." "No, I **wouldn't dream of** it."

D

complain (**TO** somebody) **ABOUT** ... = *say that you are not satisfied*

- We **complained to** the manager of the restaurant **about** the food.

complain OF a pain, an illness, etc. = *say that you have a pain, etc.*

- We called the doctor because Alex was **complaining of** a pain in his stomach.

E

remind somebody **ABOUT** ... = *tell somebody not to forget*

- It's good you **reminded** me **about** the meeting. I'd completely forgotten about it.

remind somebody **OF** ... = *cause somebody to remember*

- This house **reminds** me **of** the one I lived in when I was a child.
- Look at this photograph of Richard. Who does he **remind** you **of**?

remind somebody **to** ... ➜ Unit 53B

Exercises

131.1 Complete the sentences using **hear** or **heard** + a preposition (**about**/**of**/**from**).

1 I'm surprised you haven't *heard of* her. She's quite famous.
2 "Did you ..... the accident last night?" "No, what happened?"
3 Sarah used to call me quite often, but I haven't ..... her for a long time now.
4 "Have you ..... William Hudson?" "No. Who is he?"
5 Thanks for your email. It was good to ..... you.
6 "Do you want to ..... our trip?" "Not now. Tell me later."
7 I live in a very small town. You've probably never ..... it.

131.2 Complete the sentences using **think about** or **think of**. Sometimes both **about** and **of** are possible. Use the correct form of **think** (**think**/**thinking**/**thought**).

1 I've *thought about* what you said, and I've decided to take your advice.
2 I need time to make decisions. I like to ..... things carefully.
3 You look serious. What are you ..... ?
4 That's a good idea. Why didn't I ..... that?
5 I don't really want to meet Tom tonight. I'll have to ..... an excuse.
6 I'm ..... buying a new car. What would you advise me to buy?
7 When I was offered the job, I didn't accept immediately. I went away and ..... it for a while. In the end, I decided to take the job.
8 A: I've just finished reading the book you lent me.
B: What did you ..... it? Did you like it?
9 A: Will you be able to help me?
B: I'm not sure. I'll ..... it.
10 I don't ..... much ..... this coffee. It's like water.
11 Katherine is homesick. She's always ..... her family back home.
12 A: Do you think I should apply for the program?
B: I can't ..... any reason why not.

131.3 Put in the correct preposition.

1 Did you hear *about* the fire at the hotel yesterday?
2 I love living here. I wouldn't dream ..... going anywhere else.
3 A: I had a strange dream last night.
B: Did you? What did you dream ..... ?
4 I love this music. It reminds me ..... a warm day in spring.
5 A: We've got no money. What are we going to do?
B: Don't worry. I'll think ..... something.'
6 Our neighbors complained ..... us ..... the noise we made.
7 Eric was complaining ..... pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.
8 He loves his job. He thinks ..... it all the time, he dreams ..... it, he talks ..... it, and I'm fed up with hearing ..... it.

131.4 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

complain **dream** **hear** **remind** **remind** ~~**think**~~ **think**

1 It was my idea. I *thought of* it first.
2 Ben is never satisfied. He's always ..... something.
3 I can't make a decision yet. I need time to ..... your proposal.
4 He's not a well-known singer. Not many people have ..... him.
5 A: You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you?
B: Of course not. I wouldn't ..... it.
6 I would have forgotten my appointment if you hadn't ..... me ..... it.
7 Do you see that man over there? Does he ..... you ..... anybody you know?

→ Additional Exercise 37 (pages 317–318)

Unit 132

Verb + Preposition 4 of/for/from/on

A *verb* + **of**

accuse / **suspect** somebody **OF** ...

- Abby **accused** me **of** being selfish.
- Some students were **suspected of** cheating on the exam.

approve / **disapprove OF** ...

- His parents don't **approve of** what he does, but they can't stop him.

die OF *or* **die FROM** an illness, etc.

- "What did he **die of**?" "A heart attack."

consist OF ...

- We had an enormous meal. It **consisted of** seven courses.

B *verb* + **for**

pay (somebody) **FOR** ...

- We didn't have enough money to **pay for** the meal. (*not* pay the meal)

But we say "**pay** a bill / a fine / a fee / tax / rent / a sum of money," etc. (no preposition)

- We didn't have enough money to **pay the rent**.

thank / **forgive** somebody **FOR** ...

- I'll never **forgive** them **for** what they did.

apologize (**TO** somebody) **FOR** ...

- When I realized I was wrong, I **apologized** (**to** them) **for** my mistake.

blame somebody/something **FOR** ... , somebody is **to blame FOR** ...

- Everybody **blamed** me **for** the accident.
- Everybody said that I was **to blame for** the accident.

blame (a problem, etc.) **ON** ...

- It wasn't my fault. Don't **blame** it **on** me.

C *verb* + **from**

suffer FROM an illness, etc.

- There's been an increase in the number of people **suffering from** heart disease.

protect somebody/something **FROM** ...

- Sunscreen **protects** the skin **from** the sun.

D *verb* + **on**

depend ON **rely ON**

- I don't know what time we'll arrive. It **depends on** the traffic.
- You can **rely on** Anna. She always keeps her promises.

You can use **depend** + **when**/**where**/**how**, etc., with or without **on**:

- "Are you going to buy it?" "It **depends how much** it is." (*or* "It depends **on** how much ...")

live ON money/food

- Michael's salary is very low. It isn't enough to **live on**.

congratulate / **compliment** somebody **FOR**/**ON** ...

- I **congratulated** her **for** doing so well on her exams. *or*
  I **congratulated** her **on** doing ...
- The meal was really good. I **complimented** Mark **on** his cooking skills. *or*
  I **complimented** Mark **for** his cooking skills.

Verb + Preposition + **-ing** → Unit 60 Other Verbs + **for** → Unit 130 Other Verbs + **on** → Unit 133E

Exercises

132.1 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 Some students were suspected *of* cheating on the exam.
2 Are you going to apologize ____ what you did?
3 The apartment consists ____ a bedroom, a living room, a kitchen, and a bathroom.
4 I was accused ____ lying, but I was telling the truth.
5 We finished our meal, paid ____ the bill, and left the restaurant.
6 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay ____ the repairs.
7 Some people are dying ____ hunger, while others eat too much.
8 I called Olivia to thank her ____ the present she sent me.
9 The government is popular. Most people approve ____ its policies.
10 Do you blame the government ____ our economic problems?
11 When something goes wrong, you always blame it ____ other people.
12 Forgive me ____ interrupting, but I'd like to ask you something.

132.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 Sue said that I was selfish.
Sue accused me *of being selfish*.
2 The misunderstanding was my fault, so I apologized.
I apologized ____.
3 Anna won the tournament, so I congratulated her.
I congratulated ____.
4 He has enemies, and he has a bodyguard to protect him.
He has a bodyguard to protect ____.
5 Emma eats only bread and eggs.
Emma lives ____.
6 You can't say that the bad weather is my fault.
You can't blame ____.
7 The police thought my friend had stolen a car.
The police suspected ____.

132.3 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

accuse **apologize** ~~**approve**~~ **congratulate** **depend** **live** **pay** **suffer**

1 His parents don't *approve of* what he does, but they can't stop him.
2 When you went to the theater with Brian, who ____ the tickets?
3 It's not pleasant when you are ____ something you didn't do.
4 We hope to go to the beach tomorrow, but it ____ the weather.
5 Things are cheap there. You can ____ very little money.
6 You were rude to Liz. I think you should ____ her.
7 Alex ____ back pain. He spends too much time working at his desk.
8 I called Jack to ____ him ____ passing his driving test.

132.4 Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I'll never forgive them *for* what they did.
2 Vaccinations may protect you ____ a number of diseases.
3 You know you can always rely ____ me if you need any help.
4 Julia had to pay ____ a fine for driving too fast.
5 Sue hasn't been doing so well lately. She suffers ____ very bad headaches.
6 I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends ____ how I feel.
7 Anna doesn't have a job. She depends ____ her parents for money.
8 My usual breakfast consists ____ fruit, cereal, and coffee.
9 I complimented her ____ her English. It was really good.

→ Additional Exercise 37 (pages 317–318)

Unit
133 Verb + Preposition 5

A *verb* + **in**

believe IN ... = *believe that something exists, believe that it's good to do something*

- Do you **believe in** God? (= do you believe that God exists?)
- I **believe in** saying what I think. (= I believe it is right to say what I think)

But we say "**believe** something" (= believe that it is true), "**believe** somebody" (= believe that they are telling the truth):

- The story can't be true. I don't **believe it**. (*not* believe in it)

specialize IN ...

- Helen is a lawyer. She **specializes in** corporate law.

succeed IN ...

- I hope you **succeed in** finding the job you want.

B *verb* + **into**

break INTO ...

- Our house was **broken into** a few days ago, but nothing was stolen.

crash / drive / bump / run INTO ...

- He lost control of the car and **crashed into** a wall.

divide / cut / split something **INTO** two or more parts

- The book is **divided into** three parts.

translate a book, etc., **FROM** one language **INTO** another

- She's a famous writer. Her books have been **translated into** many languages.

C *verb* + **with**

collide WITH ...

- There was an accident this morning. A bus **collided with** a car.

fill something **WITH** ... (*but* **full of**—see Unit 128A)

- Take this saucepan, and **fill** it **with** water.

provide / supply somebody **WITH**

- The school **provides** all its students **with** books.

D *verb* + **to**

happen TO ...

- What **happened to** that gold watch you used to have? (= where is it now?)

invite somebody **TO** a party / a wedding, etc.

- They only **invited** a few people **to** their wedding.

prefer one thing **TO** another

- I **prefer** tea **to** coffee.

E *verb* + **on**

concentrate ON ...

- I tried to **concentrate on** my work, but I kept thinking about other things.

insist ON ...

- I wanted to go alone, but some friends of mine **insisted on** coming with me.

spend (money) **ON** ...

- How much do you **spend on** food each week?

Verb + Preposition + **-ing** ➜ Unit 60 Other Verbs + **to** ➜ Unit 129 Other Verbs + **on** ➜ Unit 132D

Exercises

133.1 Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

believe break concentrate divide drive fill happen ~~insist~~ invite succeed

1 I wanted to go alone, but my friends insisted on coming with me.
2 I haven't seen Mike for ages. I wonder what has ..... him.
3 It's a very large house. It's ..... four apartments.
4 We've been ..... the party, but unfortunately we can't go.
5 I don't ..... ghosts. I think people imagine that they see them.
6 Steve gave me an empty bucket and told me to ..... it ..... water.
7 A burglar is someone who ..... a house to steal things.
8 Don't try and do two things together. ..... one thing at a time.
9 It wasn't easy, but in the end we ..... finding a solution to the problem.
10 The car in front of me stopped suddenly. Unfortunately, I couldn't stop in time and ..... the back of it.

133.2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 There was a collision between a bus and a car.
A bus collided with a car.
2 I don't mind big cities, but I prefer small towns.
I prefer .....
3 I got all the information I needed from the company.
The company provided me .....
4 This morning I bought a pair of shoes which cost $120.
This morning I spent .....
5 There are ten districts in the city.
The city is divided .....

133.3 Put in the correct preposition. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1 The school provides all its students with books.
2 A strange thing happened ..... me a few days ago.
3 Mike decided to give up sports to concentrate ..... his studies.
4 Money should be used well. I don't believe ..... wasting it.
5 My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it ..... what I did before.
6 I hope you succeed ..... getting what you want.
7 Ben was injured playing football when he collided ..... another player.
8 There was an awful noise as the car crashed ..... a tree.
9 Tim is a photographer. He specializes ..... sports photography.
10 Joe doesn't spend much money ..... clothes.
11 I was amazed when I heard the news. I couldn't believe ..... it.
12 Somebody broke ..... my car and stole my bag.
13 I was pretty cold, but Tom insisted ..... having the window open.
14 The teacher decided to split the class ..... four groups.
15 I filled the tank, but unfortunately I filled it ..... the wrong kind of fuel.
16 Some things are difficult to translate ..... one language ..... another.

133.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use a preposition.

1 I wanted to go out alone, but my friend insisted on coming with me.
2 I spend a lot of money .....
3 I saw an accident. A car crashed .....
4 Chris prefers basketball .....
5 The restaurant we went to specializes .....
6 Shakespeare's plays have been translated .....

→ Additional Exercise 37 (pages 317–318)

Unit 134

Phrasal Verbs 1 Introduction

A

We often use verbs with:

in	**on**	**up**	**away**	**by**	**about**	**over**	**around**
out	**off**	**down**	**back**	**through**	**along**	**forward**	

So you can say **look out** / **get on** / **take off** / **run away**, etc. These are *phrasal verbs*.

We often use **on/off/out**, etc., with verbs of movement. For example:

- **get on** — The bus was full. We couldn't **get on**.
- **drive off** — A woman got into the car and **drove off**.
- **come back** — Sarah is leaving tomorrow and **coming back** on Saturday.
- **turn around** — When I touched him on the shoulder, he **turned around**.

B

Often the second word (**on/off/out**, etc.) gives a special meaning to the verb. For example:

- **break down** — Sorry I'm late. The car **broke down**. (= the engine stopped working)
- **find out** — I never **found out** who sent me the flowers. (= I never discovered)
- **take off** — It was my first flight. I was nervous as the plane **took off**. (= went into the air)
- **give up** — I tried many times to contact her. In the end I **gave up**. (= stopped trying)
- **get along** — My brother and I **get along** well. (= we have a good relationship)
- **get by** — My French isn't good, but it's enough to **get by**. (= enough to manage)

For more phrasal verbs, see Units 135–142.

C

Sometimes a phrasal verb is followed by a *preposition*. For example:

phrasal verb	*preposition*	
look up	**at**	We **looked up at** the plane as it flew above us.
run away	**from**	Why did you **run away from** me?
keep up	**with**	You're walking too fast. I can't **keep up with** you.
look forward	**to**	Are you **looking forward to** your trip?
get along	**with**	Do you **get along with** your boss?

D

Sometimes a phrasal verb has an *object*. For example:

- I turned on **the light**. (**the light** is the *object*)

Usually there are two possible positions for the object. You can say:

- I **turned on** the light. (*object*) *or* I **turned** the light **on**. (*object*)

But if the object is a *pronoun* (**it/them/me/him**, etc.), only one position is possible:

- I turned **it** on. (*not* I turned on it)

In the same way, you can say:

- I'm going to { **take off** my shoes / **take** my shoes **off** }

but These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to **take them off**. (*not* take off them)

- Don't { **wake up** the baby / **wake** the baby **up** }

but The baby is asleep. Don't **wake her up**. (*not* wake up her)

- Don't { **throw away** this box / **throw** this box **away** }

but I want to keep this box, so don't **throw it away**. (*not* throw away it)

Phrasal Verbs 2–9 → Units 135–142 British English → Appendix 7

Exercises

134.1 Complete each sentence using a verb from **A** (in the correct form) + a word from **B**.

A				B			
be	fly	get	sit	along	back	down	out
break	go	get	speak	away	by	up	off
~~come~~	look	get	take	~~back~~	down	up	around

1 Sarah is leaving tomorrow and coming back on Saturday.
2 I've been standing a long time. I'm going to ..... for a while.
3 It's a very busy airport. There are planes landing and ..... all the time.
4 A cat tried to catch the bird, but it ..... just in time.
5 We were trapped in the building. We couldn't ..... .
6 I can't hear you very well. Can you ..... a little?
7 Ben's salary is very low, but it's enough to ..... .
8 Everything is so expensive now. Prices have ..... a lot.
9 I heard a noise behind me, so I ..... to see what it was.
10 I'm going out now to do some shopping. I'll ..... in about an hour.
11 Our car ..... on the highway, and we had to call for help.
12 I really like working with my co-workers. We all ..... really well.

134.2 Complete each sentence using a word from **A** and a word from **B**.

A					B				
away	in	~~up~~	back		at	to	~~with~~	about	
out	up	up	forward		at	to	with	through	

1 You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.
2 My vacation is almost over. Next week I'll be ..... work.
3 We went ..... the top floor of the building to admire the view.
4 The meeting tomorrow is going to be difficult. I'm not looking ..... it.
5 There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got ..... $50,000.
6 I love to look ..... the stars at night.
7 I was sitting in the kitchen when a bird flew ..... the open window.
8 How do you know about the plan? How did you find ..... it?

134.3 Complete the sentences. Use these phrasal verbs + **it**/**them**/**me**:

get out	give back	take off	~~throw away~~	turn on	wake up

1 I want to keep this box. Don't throw it away .
2 I'm going to bed now. Can you ..... at 6:30?
3 I've got something in my eye, and I can't ..... .
4 I don't like it when people borrow things and don't ..... .
5 I want to use the hair dryer. How do I ..... ?
6 My shoes are dirty. I'd better ..... before going into the house.

134.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses.

1 Don't throw away this box I want to keep it. (away)
2 I don't want this newspaper. You can throw it away . (away)
3 These books are Allison's. I have to give ..... to her. (back)
4 We can turn ..... . Nobody is watching it. (off)
5 Shh! My mother is asleep. I don't want to wake ..... . (up)
6 It's cold today. You should put ..... if you go out. (on)
7 It was only a small fire. I was able to put ..... easily. (out)
8 It's a bit dark in this room. Should I turn ..... ? (on)
9 I took ..... because they were uncomfortable, and my feet hurt. (off)
10 A: How did the vase get broken?
B: I'm afraid I knocked ..... while I was cleaning. (over)

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit 135

Phrasal Verbs 2 in/out

A

Compare **in** and **out**:

in = into a room, a building, a car, etc.

- How did the thieves **get in**?
- Here's a key, so you can **let yourself in**.
- Liz walked up to the edge of the pool and **dived in**. (= into the water)
- I've got a new apartment. I'm **moving in** on Friday.
- As soon as I got to the airport, I **checked in**.

In the same way you can say **go in**, **come in**, **walk in**, **break in**, etc.

Compare **in** and **into**:

- I'm moving **in** on Friday.
- I'm moving **into my new apartment** on Friday.

out = out of a room, building, a car, etc.

- Stay in the car. Don't **get out**.
- I had no key, so I was **locked out**.
- She swam up and down the pool, and then **climbed out**.
- Andy opened the window and **looked out**.
- We paid the hotel bill and **checked out**.

In the same way you can say **go out**, **get out**, **move out**, **let** somebody **out**, etc.

Compare **out** and **out of**:

- She climbed **out**.
- She climbed **out of the pool**.

B

Other verbs + **in**

drop in = *visit somebody at home without arranging to do this*

- I **dropped in** to see Chris on my way home.

join in = *take part in something that is already going on*

- They were playing cards, so I **joined in**.

plug in an electrical machine = *connect it to the electricity supply*

- The fridge isn't working because you haven't **plugged** it **in**.



PLUG IN

hand in / **turn in** homework, a report, a resignation, etc. = *give something written to a teacher, boss, etc.*

- Your report is due this week. Please **hand** it **in** by Friday at 3:00 p.m.

fit in = *feel you belong to or are accepted by a group*

- Some children have trouble **fitting in** at a new school.

C

Other verbs + **out**

eat out = *eat at a restaurant, not at home*

- There wasn't anything to eat at home, so we decided to **eat out**.

drop out of college / a course / a race = *stop before you have completely finished*

- Eric went to college but **dropped out** after a year.

get out of something that you arranged to do = *avoid doing it*

- I promised I'd go to the wedding. I don't want to go, but I can't **get out** of it now.

leave something **out** = *omit it, not include it*

- In the sentence "She said that she was sick," you can **leave out** the word "that."

fill out a form, a questionnaire, etc. = *write the necessary information on a form*

- I have to **fill out** this application by the end of the week.

hand out / **give out** = *give to each person*

- At the end of the lecture, the speaker **handed out** information sheets to the audience.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ Unit 134 More Verbs + **out** ➜ Unit 136

Exercises

135.1 Complete the sentences.

1 Here's a key so that you can ___let___ yourself in.
2 Liz doesn't like cooking, so she _____ out a lot.
3 If you're in our part of town, you should _____ in and say hello.
4 Could you _____ out this questionnaire? It will only take five minutes.
5 Amy isn't living in this house anymore. She _____ out a few weeks ago.
6 After breakfast, we _____ out of the hotel and got a taxi to the airport.
7 I wanted to charge my phone, but there was nowhere to _____ the charger in.
8 Jason started taking a Spanish course, but he _____ out after a few weeks.
9 Be careful! The water isn't very deep here, so don't _____ in.

135.2 Complete the sentences with **in**, **into**, **out**, or **out of**.

1 I have a new apartment. I'm moving ___in___ on Friday.
2 We arrived at the hotel and checked _____.
3 When are you moving _____ your new apartment?
4 The car stopped, and the driver got _____.
5 Thieves broke _____ the house and stole some jewelry.
6 How did the thieves break _____? Through a window?
7 He opened his wallet, and something fell _____.
8 Kate was angry and walked _____ the meeting.

135.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + **in** or **out (of)**.

1 Lisa walked to the edge of the pool, ___dived in___, and swam to the other end.
2 Not all the runners finished the race. Three of them _____.
3 I went to see Joe and Mary in their new house. They _____ last week.
4 I've told you everything you need to know. I don't think I've _____ anything.
5 Some people in the crowd started singing. Then a few more people _____, and soon everybody was singing.
6 Sam's co-workers at his new job like him a lot. Everybody agrees that he _____ well.
7 I _____ to see Laura a few days ago. She was fine.
8 Somebody was _____ leaflets on the street, but I didn't take one.

135.4 Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses in the correct form.

1 A: The fridge isn't working.
B: That's because you didn't ___plug it in___. (plug)
2 A: What do I have to do with these forms?
B: _____ and send them to this address. (fill)
3 A: Your book report is better than mine, but you got a lower grade.
B: That's because I _____ late. (hand)
4 A: Have you been to the new club I told you about?
B: No. We went there, but they wouldn't _____ because we weren't members. (let)
5 A: Can we meet tomorrow at ten?
B: Probably. I have another meeting, but I think I can _____. (get)

135.5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use a verb from Section B or C.

1 Let's go to a restaurant tonight. — Let's ___eat out___ tonight.
2 Why didn't you finish college? — Why did you _____?
3 Please complete the application form. — Please _____ form.
4 I can't avoid going to the party. — I can't _____ to the party.
5 You must come and see us sometime. — You must _____ sometime.
6 Steve was upset because he wasn't chosen for the team. — Steve was upset because he _____ the team.

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit 136

Phrasal Verbs 3 **out**

A

out = not burning, not shining

go out
put out a fire / a cigarette / a light
turn out a light
blow out a candle

- Suddenly all the lights in the building **went out**.
- I **put** the fire **out** with a fire extinguisher.
- I **turned** the lights **out** before leaving.
- We don't need the candle. You can **blow** it **out**.

B

work out

work out = *do physical exercises*

- Rachel **works out** at the gym three times a week.

work out = *develop, progress*

- Good luck for the future. I hope everything **works out** well for you.
- A: Why did James leave the company?
  B: Things didn't **work out**. (= things didn't work out well)

work out (for calculations)

- The total bill for three people is $97.35. That **works out** to $32.45 each.

work (something) **out** = *calculate*

- 345 × 76? I need a calculator. I can't **work** that **out** in my head.

work out a problem / difficulties, etc. = *solve, put right*

- The family has been having some problems, but I'm sure they'll **work** things **out**.

work out a plan / an agreement / a contract, etc. = *produce a plan, etc.*

- The two sides in the conflict are trying to **work out** a peace plan.

C

Other verbs + **out**

carry out an order / an experiment / a survey / an investigation / a plan, etc.

- Soldiers are expected to **carry out** orders.
- An investigation into the accident will be **carried out**.

check something **out** = *see what something is like*

- For more information, you can **check out** our website. (= visit our website)
- **Check out** my new shirt. I bought it when I was in New York. (= look at my new shirt)

figure out something/somebody = *understand*

- Can you help me **figure out** why my answer to this math problem is wrong?
- Why did Emily do that? I can't **figure** her **out**.

find out that/what/when, etc. ... , **find out about** ... = *get information about*

- The police never **found out** who committed the crime.
- I just **found out** that it's Jessica's birthday today.
- I checked a few websites to **find out** about hotels in the town.

point something **out** (**to** somebody) = *draw attention to it*

- As we drove through the city, the tour guide **pointed out** all the sights.
- I didn't realize I'd made a mistake until somebody **pointed** it **out to** me.

run out (of something)

- We **ran out of** gas on the highway. (= we used all our gas)

turn out to be ... / **turn out** good/nice, etc. / **turn out** that ...

- Nobody believed Matt at first, but he **turned out** to be right. (= it became clear in the end that he was right)
- The weather wasn't so good in the morning, but it **turned out** nice later.
- I thought they knew each other, but it **turned out** that they'd never met.

try out a machine, a system, a new idea, etc. = *test it to see if it is OK*

- The company is **trying out** some new software right now.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ Unit 134 More Verbs + **out** ➜ Unit 135

Exercises

136.1 Which words can go together? Choose from the list.

a fire	an order	~~a light~~	a problem	a candle	a new product

1 turn out a light
2 blow out .....
3 carry out .....
4 put out .....
5 try out .....
6 figure out .....

136.2 Complete the sentences using a verb + out.

1 The company is trying out a new computer system right now.
2 Steve is in great shape. He plays a lot of sports and ..... regularly.
3 The road will be closed for two days while building work is .....
4 We didn't manage to discuss everything at the meeting. We ..... of time.
5 My father helped me ..... a plan to save money.
6 I called the station to ..... what time the train arrived.
7 The new drug will be ..... on a small group of patients.
8 I thought the two books were the same until someone ..... the difference.
9 They got married a few years ago, but it didn't ..... and they separated.
10 There was a power outage, and all the lights .....
11 We thought she was American at first, but she ..... to be Swedish.
12 Should we ..... the new club downtown tonight? I've heard it's good.
13 How did you ..... about the project? Did somebody tell you?
14 It took firefighters two hours to ..... the fire.
15 I can't ..... how the water is getting into the house.
16 We traveled 2,400 miles in 16 days. That ..... to 150 miles a day.

136.3 For each picture, complete the sentence using a verb + out.



They've run out of gas.



John ..... all 40 candles on his birthday cake.



The weather has .....



Sally and Kim are ..... at the gym.



Joe has ..... water.



Jen is trying to ..... how .....

136.4 Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + out.

1 A: Was the fire serious?
B: No, we were able to put it out .....
2 A: This recipe looks interesting.
B: Yes, let's .....
3 A: How much money do I owe you exactly?
B: Just a moment. I'll have to .....
4 A: You've written the wrong date on this form.
B: Oh, so I have. Thanks for .....
5 A: I heard that Julia got a new car.
B: It's beautiful. You should .....

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit 137

Phrasal Verbs 4 on/off (1)

A

on and **off** for lights, machines, etc.

We say: the light **is on**, turn the light **on**, turn the light **off**, etc.

- Should **I leave** the lights **on** or **turn** them **off**?
- "**Is** the heat **on**?" "No, I **turned** it **off**."

also

- Let's **turn** some music **on**. What would you like to hear? (*or* Let's **put** some music **on**.)

B

on and **off** for events, etc.

go on = *happen*

- What's all that noise? What's **going on**? (= what's happening)

call something **off** = *cancel it*

- The concert in the park had to be **called off** because of the weather.

put something **off**, **put off** doing something = *delay it*

- The election has been **put off** until January.
- We can't **put off** making a decision. We have to decide now.

C

on and **off** for clothes, etc.

have something **on** = *be wearing (clothes, jewelry, perfume, etc.)*

- I like the perfume you **had on** yesterday.

put on clothes, glasses, makeup, a seat belt, etc.

- My hands were cold, so I **put** my gloves **on**.

try on clothes (to see if they fit)

- I **tried on** a jacket in the store, but it didn't look right.

take off clothes, glasses, etc.

- It was warm, so I **took off** my coat.

put on weight = *get heavier*

- I've **put on** five pounds in the last month.

D

off = away from a person or place

be off (to a place)

- Tomorrow I'**m off** to Paris. / I'**m off** to the store. (= I'm going to Paris / I'm going to the store)

walk off / **run off** / **drive off** / **ride off** / **go off** (similar to **walk away** / **run away**, etc.)

- Anna got on her bike and **rode off**.
- Mark left home at the age of eighteen and **went off** to Canada.

take off = *leave the ground (for planes)*

- After a long delay, the plane finally **took off**.

see somebody **off** = *go with them to the airport/station to say goodbye*

- Helen was going away. We went to the train station with her to **see her off**.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) → Unit 134 More Verbs + **on/off** → Unit 138

Exercises

137.1 Complete the sentences using turn(ed) on or turn(ed) off + the following:

some music **the heat** **the TV** ~~**the light**~~ **the oven**

1 It was getting dark, so I *turned the light on*.
2 I wanted to bake a cake, so I .....
3 It's too warm in the house. Should I .....?
4 When the program finished, I .....
5 Let's relax. I'll .....

137.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + on or off.

1 It was hot in the movie theater, so I *took off* my jacket.
2 What are all these people doing? What's .....?
3 The weather was too bad for the plane to ....., so the flight was delayed.
4 Rachel got into her car and ..... incredibly fast.
5 Are you cold? Should I get you a sweater to .....?
6 The clothes Eric ..... weren't warm enough, so he borrowed my jacket.
7 Don't ..... until tomorrow what you can do today.
8 They've changed their minds about getting married. The wedding has been .....
9 Tim is too thin. He needs to ..... some weight.
10 I ..... some jeans in the store, but they were too tight.
11 When I go away, I prefer to be alone at the train station or airport. I don't like it when people come to ..... me .....
12 I need to make an appointment to see the dentist, but I keep ..... it .....

137.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1



Her hands were cold, so she *put her gloves on*.

2



The plane ..... at 10:55.

3



Maria ....., but it was too big for her.

4



The game ..... because of the weather.

5



Mark's parents went to the airport to .....

6



He took his sunglasses out of his pocket and .....

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit 138

Phrasal Verbs 5 on/off (2)

A verb + on = continue doing something

go on = *continue*
- The party **went on** until 4:00 in the morning.

go on doing something = *continue doing it*
- We can't **go on** spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.

go on with something = *continue it*
- Don't let me disturb you. Please **go on with** what you're doing.

keep on doing (*or* **keep** doing) something = *do it continuously or repeatedly*
- He **keeps on** criticizing me. It's not fair! (*or* He **keeps** criticizing me.)

drive on / walk on / play on = *continue driving/walking/playing, etc.*
- Should we stop at this gas station, or should we **drive on** to the next one?

drag on = *continue for too long*
- Let's make a decision now. I don't want this problem to **drag on**.

B Other verbs + on

hold on / hang on = *wait*
- (*on the phone*) **Hold on** a minute. Josh is with me. I'll ask him what he thinks.

move on = *start a new activity, start talking about a new topic*
- (*in a lecture*) That's enough about the political situation. Let's **move on** to the economy.

take on a job / extra work / a responsibility = *accept it and do what is necessary*
- When Hannah was sick, a friend **took on** her work at the office.

C verb + off

doze off / drop off / nod off = *fall asleep*
- **dozed off** during the lecture. It was very boring.

drop somebody/something **off** = *take to a place by car and leave there*
- Sarah **drops** her children **off** at school before she goes to work every morning.

go off = *make an alarm sound*
- Did you hear the alarm **go off**?

lay somebody **off** = *stop employing someone because there isn't enough work*
- My brother was **laid off** two months ago and still hasn't found another job.

rip somebody **off** / be **ripped off** = *cheat somebody / be cheated*
- Did you really pay $2,000 for that painting? I think you were **ripped off**. (= you paid too much)

show off = *try to impress people with your ability, your knowledge, etc.*
- Look at that boy on the bike riding with no hands. He's just **showing off**.

tell somebody **off** = *criticize somebody, speak angrily to somebody because they did something wrong*
- John **told** his brother **off** for using his bike without asking.

go on / keep on ➜ Unit 51B Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ Unit 134
More Verbs + **on/off** ➜ Unit 137 British English ➜ Appendix 7

Exercises

138.1 What do these sentences mean?

1 I went on studying. (b *is correct*)
a ~~I started studying.~~ b I continued studying. c ~~I put off studying.~~
2 I nodded off.
a I agreed. b I felt sick. c I fell asleep.
3 We were ripped off.
a We were attacked. b We paid too much. c Our clothes were torn.
4 I told them off.
a I criticized them. b I was satisfied with them. c I told them to go away.
5 The movie dragged on.
a The movie was interesting. b The movie was scary. c The movie was boring.
6 He was showing off.
a He was joking. b He was trying to impress us. c He wasn't telling the truth.

138.2 Complete each sentence using a verb + on or off.

1 We can't *go on* spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.
2 If business doesn't improve, my company may have to ..... some employees.
3 "Should I stop the car here?" "No, ... a bit further."
4 Dan paid too much for the car he bought. I think he was .....
5 A: Michael seems very busy at work these days.
B: Yes, he's ..... too much extra work, I think.
6 The fire alarm ....., and everybody had to leave the building.
7 Ben was ..... by his boss for being late for work repeatedly.
8 The meeting has only just finished. It ..... longer than expected.
9 I hate talking about work. Can we ..... to something more fun?
10 I ..... making the same mistake. It's very frustrating.
11 Peter likes people to know how smart he is. He's always .....
12 "Are you ready to go yet?" "Almost. Can you ..... just a while longer?"
13 Jack paused for a moment and then ..... with his story.
14 I was so tired at work today. I nearly ..... at my desk a couple of times.

138.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + on or off. Sometimes you will need other words as well. Choose from:

drag	drop	go	go	~~hold~~	keep	move	rip	tell

1 A: Why is it taking you so long?
B: *Hold on*! I'll be ready in a minute!
2 A: Are you still working on that project? I can't believe it isn't finished.
B: I know. I'm fed up with it. It's really .....
3 A: Is Gary going to retire soon?
B: No, he likes his job and wants to ..... working.
4 A: Have we discussed this point enough?
B: I think so. Let's ..... to the next item on our agenda.
5 A: We took a taxi to the airport. It cost $80.
B: $80! Normally it costs about $40. You .....
6 A: Why were you late for work this morning?
B: I overslept. My alarm clock didn't .....
7 A: Anna has been gossiping about me.
B: She has? Why don't you ..... ? She deserves it!
8 A: Is Kate good at making decisions?
B: No, she isn't. ..... changing her mind.
9 A: Did you come home by bus?
B: No, Jen .....

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit 139

Phrasal Verbs 6 up/down

A

Compare **up** and **down**:

put something **up** (on a wall, etc.)
- I **put** a picture **up** on the wall.

pick something **up**
- There was a letter on the floor. I **picked** it **up** and looked at it.

stand up
- Alan **stood up** and walked out.

turn something **up**
- I can't hear the TV. Can you **turn** it **up** a little?

take something **down** (from a wall, etc.)
- I didn't like the picture, so I **took** it **down**.

put something **down**
- I stopped writing and **put down** my pen.

sit down / bend down / lie down
- I **bent down** to tie my shoes.

turn something **down**
- The oven is too hot. **Turn** it **down** to 165 degrees.

B

tear down, cut down, etc.

tear down a building / **cut** something **down** / **blow** something **down**, etc.
- Some old houses were **torn down** to make way for the new shopping mall.
- A: Why did you **cut down** the tree in your yard?
  B: I didn't. It was **blown down** in the storm last week.

burn down = *be destroyed by fire*
- They were able to put out the fire before the house **burned down**.

C

down = becoming less or having less

slow down = *go more slowly*
- You're driving too fast. **Slow down**.

calm (somebody) **down** = *become calmer, make somebody calmer*
- **Calm down**. There's no point in getting angry.

cut down (**on** something) = *eat, drink, or do something less often*
- I'm trying to **cut down on** coffee. I drink too much of it.

D

Other verbs + **down**

break down = *stop working (for machines, cars, etc.)*
- The car **broke down**, and I had to phone for help.

break down = *fail (for discussions, talks, etc.)*
- Talks between the two groups **broke down** without a solution being reached.

close down = *stop doing business*
- There used to be a store at the end of the street. It **closed down** a few years ago.

let somebody **down** = *disappoint them because you didn't do what they hoped*
- You can always rely on Nick. He'll never **let** you **down**.

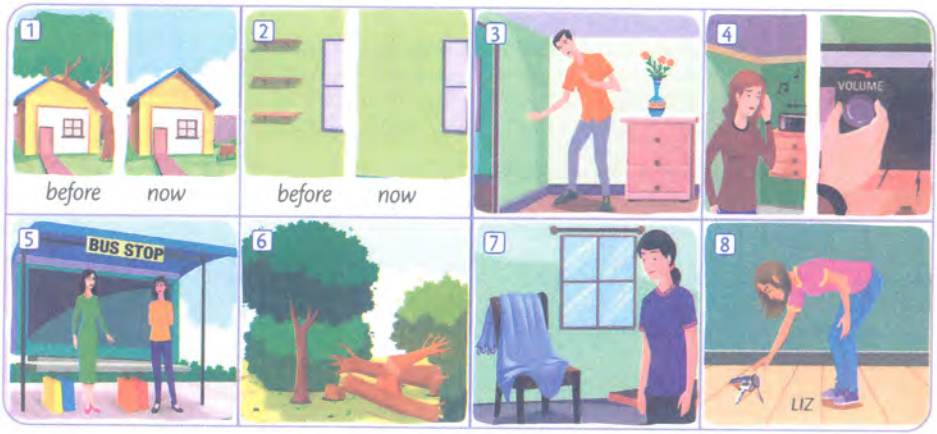
turn somebody/something **down** = *refuse an application, an offer, etc.*
- I applied for several jobs, but I was **turned down** for all of them.
- Rachel was offered the job, but she decided to **turn** it **down**.

write something **down** = *write something on paper because you may need the information later*
- I can't remember Ben's address. **wrote** it **down**, but I can't find it.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) → Unit 134 More Verbs + **up** → Units 140–141

Exercises

139.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + up or down.



1 There used to be a tree next to the house, but we *cut it down*.
2 There used to be some shelves on the wall, but I _____.
3 The ceiling was so low, he couldn't _____ straight.
4 She couldn't hear the radio very well, so she _____.
5 While they were waiting for the bus, they _____ on the ground.
6 A few trees _____ in the storm last week.
7 We have some new curtains, but we haven't _____ yet.
8 Liz dropped her keys, so she _____ and _____.

139.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + down. Choose from:

calm **cut** **let** ~~**take**~~ **turn** **write**

1 I don't like this picture on the wall. I'm going to *take it down*.
2 The music was too loud, so I _____?
3 David was very angry. I tried to _____.
4 I promised I would help Anna. I don't want to _____.
5 I've forgotten my password. I should have _____.
6 Those trees are beautiful. Please don't _____.

139.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + down.

1 I stopped writing and *put down* my pen.
2 I was really angry. It took me a long time to _____.
3 The train _____ as it approached the station.
4 Sarah applied to medical school, but she _____.
5 Our car is very reliable. It has never _____.
6 I spend too much money. I'm going to _____ on things I don't need.
7 I didn't play well. I felt that I had _____ the other players on the team.
8 The store _____ because it was losing money.
9 It's a very ugly building. Many people would like it to _____.
10 I can't understand why you _____ the chance of working in another country for a year. It would have been a great experience for you.
11 Unfortunately, the house _____ before the fire department got there, but no one was hurt.
12 The strike is going to continue. Talks between the two sides have _____ without agreement.

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit
140 Phrasal Verbs 7 up (1)

A

go up, **come up**, **walk up** (**to** ...) = *approach*
- A man **came up to** me in the street and asked me for money.

catch up (**with** somebody) = *move faster than people in front of you so that you reach them*
- I'm not ready to go yet. You go on, and I'll **catch up with** you.

keep up (**with** somebody) = *continue at the same speed or level*
- You're walking too fast. I can't **keep up** (**with** you).
- You're doing well. **Keep** it **up**!

B

set up an organization, a company, a business, a system, a website, etc. = *start it*
- The government has **set up** a committee to investigate the problem.

take up a hobby, a sport, an activity, etc. = *start doing it*
- Megan **took up** photography a few years ago. She takes really good pictures.

C

grow up = *become an adult*
- Amy was born in Mexico but **grew up** in the United States.

bring up a child = *raise, look after a child*
- Her parents died when she was a child, and she was **brought up** by her grandparents.

D

back someone **up** = *support someone*
- Will you **back** me **up** if I tell the police what happened? (= say I'm telling the truth)

back up computer files = *make a copy*
- You've spent a long time on that document; you'd better **back up** your files.

back up a car = *go backward*
- I couldn't turn around on the narrow street. I had to **back** the car **up** a block.

E

end up somewhere, **end up** doing something, etc.
- There was a fight in the street, and three men **ended up** in the hospital. (= that's what happened to these men in the end)
- I couldn't find a hotel and **ended up** sleeping on a bench at the station. (= that's what happened to me in the end)

give up = *stop trying*, **give** **up** = *stop doing it*
- Don't **give up**. Keep trying!
- Josh **gave up** his job to take care of his sick mother.

make up something, be **made up of** something
- Children under 16 **make up** half the population of the city. (= half the population are children under 16)
- Air is **made up** mainly **of** nitrogen and oxygen. (= Air consists of ...)

take up space or time = *use space or time*
- Most of the space in the room was **taken up** by a large table.

turn up, **show up** = *arrive, appear*
- We arranged to meet David last night, but he didn't **show up**.

use something **up** = *use all of it so that nothing is left*
- I'm going to make soup. We have a lot of vegetables, and I want to **use them up**.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) → Unit 134 More Verbs + **up** → Units 139, 141

Exercises

140.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use three words each time, including a verb from Section A.





A man *came up to* me in the street and asked me the way to the train station.





Kate ..... the front door of the house and rang the doorbell.





Tom was a long way behind the other runners, but he managed to ..... them.





Lauren was running too fast for Paul. He couldn't ..... her.

140.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb (in the correct form) + up. Choose from:

back ~~end~~ end give give grow make show take take use

1 I couldn't find a hotel and *ended up* sleeping on a bench at the station.
2 I'm feeling very tired now. I've ..... all my energy.
3 I hadn't ..... my files, and my computer crashed. I lost everything I was working on.
4 People often ask children what they want to be when they ..... .
5 We arranged to meet Tom, but he didn't ..... .
6 Two years ago James ..... his studies to be a professional football player.
7 I don't play any sports right now, but I'm thinking of ..... tennis.
8 You don't have enough determination. You ..... too easily.
9 Karen traveled a lot for a few years and ..... in Canada, where she still lives.
10 I do a lot of gardening. It ..... most of my free time.
11 There are two colleges in the city. Students ..... 20 per cent of the population.

140.3 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + up (with any other necessary words). Choose from:

back bring ~~catch~~ ~~give~~ give go keep keep make set

1 Josh *gave up* his job to take care of his sick mother.
2 I'm not ready yet. You go ahead, and I'll *catch up with* you.
3 Our team started the game well, but we couldn't ....., and in the end we lost.
4 A: I agree with your solution and will give you my support.
B: Thanks for ..... .
5 Steven is having problems at school. He can't ..... the rest of the class.
6 I ..... in the country, but I have always preferred cities.
7 I saw Mike at the party, so I ..... him and said hello.
8 Helen has her own website. A friend of hers helped her to ..... .
9 Ben was learning to play the guitar, but he found it hard and in the end he ..... .
10 When I was on vacation, I joined a tour group. The group ..... two Americans, three Italians, five Germans and myself.

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit 141

Phrasal Verbs 8 **up** (2)

A

bring up a topic, etc. = *introduce it in a conversation*
- I don't want to hear anymore about this. Please don't **bring** it **up** again.

come up = *be introduced in a conversation*
- Some interesting things **came up** in our discussion yesterday.

come up with an idea, a suggestion, etc. = *produce an idea*
- Sarah is very creative. She's always **coming up with** new ideas.

make something **up** = *invent something that is not true*
- What Kevin told you about himself wasn't true. He **made** it all **up**

B

cheer up = *be happier*, **cheer** somebody **up** = *make somebody feel happier*
- You look so sad! **Cheer up**!
- Hannah is depressed. What can we do to **cheer** her **up**?

save up for something / to do something = *save money to buy something*
- Dan is **saving up** for a trip to New Zealand.

clear up = *become bright (for weather)*
- It was raining when I got up, but it **cleared up** later.

C

blow up = *explode*, **blow** something **up** = *destroy it with a bomb, etc.*
- The engine caught fire and **blew up**.
- The bridge was **blown up** during the war.

tear something **up** = *tear it into pieces*
- I didn't read the letter. I just **tore** it **up** and threw it away.

beat somebody **up** = *hit someone repeatedly so that they are badly hurt*
- A friend of mine was attacked and **beaten up**. He had to go to the hospital.

D

break up, **split up** (**with** somebody) = *separate*
- I'm surprised to hear that Kate and John have **split up**. They seemed very happy together.

clean something **up** = *make it clean, neat, etc.*
- Look at this mess! Who is going to **clean** it **up**?

fix up a building, a room, a car, etc. = *repair and improve it*
- I love how you've **fixed up** this room. It looks so much nicer.

look something **up** in a dictionary/encyclopedia, etc.
- If you don't know the meaning of a word, you can **look** it **up** (in a dictionary).

put up with something = *tolerate a difficult situation or person*
- We live on a busy street, so we have to **put up with** a lot of noise from the traffic.

hold up a person, a plan, etc. = *delay*
- Don't wait for me. I don't want to **hold** you **up**.
- Plans to build a new factory have been **held up** because of financial problems.

mix up people/things, **get** people/things **mixed up** = *you think one is the other*
- The two brothers look very similar. People often **mix** them **up**.
  or ... People often **get** them **mixed up**.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ **Unit 134** More Verbs + **up** ➜ **Units 139–140**
British English ➜ **Appendix 7**

Exercises

141.1 Which goes with which?

1 He was angry and tore up	a a motorcycle	1 f
2 Julia came up with	b a lot of bad weather	2 .....
3 Matt is always making up	c the two medicines	3 .....
4 Be careful not to mix up	d a good suggestion	4 .....
5 I don't think you should bring up	e excuses	5 .....
6 I'm saving up for	f ~~the letter~~	6 .....
7 We had to put up with	g that subject	7 .....

141.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. You will need two or three words each time.





The weather was horrible this morning, but it's cleared up now.





Liz was late because she was ..... in the traffic.





They bought an old house and ..... . It's really nice now.





Joe was really depressed. We took him out for dinner to ..... .

141.3 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. Sometimes you will need other words as well.

1 Some interesting things came up in our discussion yesterday.
2 The ship ..... and sank. The cause of the explosion was never discovered.
3 James was attacked and ..... by three men he'd never seen before.
4 Robert and Jen aren't together anymore. They've ..... .
5 An interesting question ..... in class today.
6 It's been raining all morning. Let's hope it ..... this afternoon.
7 I showed up for the party on the wrong day. I got the dates ..... .

141.4 Complete the sentences using a verb + up. You will need other words as well.

1 Don't wait for me. I don't want to hold you up .
2 I don't know what this word means. I'll have to ..... .
3 I'm fed up with the way my boss treats me. I don't see why I should ..... it.
4 I don't believe the story you're telling me. I think you're ..... .
5 The problem was complicated, but we managed to ..... a solution.
6 Before you throw these documents away, you should ..... .
7 I'm trying to spend less money right now. I'm ..... a vacation.
8 Mary doesn't like talking about the accident, so it's better not to ..... .
9 The words "there" and "their" sound the same, so it's easy to ..... .
10 After the party, my place was a mess. Some friends helped me ..... .

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Unit 142

Phrasal Verbs 9 away/back

A

Compare **away** and **back**:

away = away from home
- We're **going away** on a trip today.

away = away from a place, a person, etc.
- Sarah got into her car, started the engine, and **drove away**.
- I tried to take a picture of the bird, but it **flew away**.
- I dropped the ticket, and it **blew away** in the wind.
- The police searched the house and **took away** a computer.

In the same way you can say:
walk away, **run away**, **look away**, etc.

back = back home
- We'll **be back** in three weeks.

back = back to a place, a person, etc.
- A: I'm going out now.
  B: What time will you **be back**?
- After eating at a restaurant, we **walked back** to our hotel.
- I've still got Jane's keys. I forgot to **give** them **back** to her.
- When you've finished with that book, can you **put** it **back** on the shelf?

In the same way you can say:
go back, **come back**, **get back**, **take** something **back**, etc.

B

Other verbs + **away**

get away = *escape, leave with difficulty*
- We tried to catch the thief, but she **got away**.

get away with something = *do something wrong without being caught*
- I parked in a no-parking zone, but I **got away with** it. I didn't have to pay a fine.

keep away (**from** ...) = *don't go near*
- **Keep away from** the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

give something **away** = *give it to somebody else because you don't want it anymore*
- "Did you sell your bike?" "No, I **gave** it **away** to a friend."

put something **away** = *put it in the place where it is usually kept*
- When the children finished playing with their toys, they **put** them **away**.

throw something **away** = *put it in the trash*
- I kept the letter, but I **threw away** the envelope.

C

Other verbs + **back**

wave back / **smile back** / **shout back** / **hit** somebody **back**
- I waved to her, and she **waved back**.

call/phone (somebody) **back** = *return a phone call*
- I can't talk to you now. I'll **call** you **back** in ten minutes.

get back to somebody = *reply to them by phone, etc.*
- I sent him an email, but he never **got back to** me.

look back (**on** something) = *think about what happened in the past*
- My first job was at a travel agency. I didn't like it much at the time but, **looking back on** it, I learned a lot and it was a useful experience.

pay back money, **pay** somebody **back**
- If you borrow money, you have to **pay** it **back**.
- Thanks for lending me the money. I'll **pay** you **back** next week.

Phrasal Verbs 1 (Introduction) ➜ Unit 134

Exercises

142.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



She waved to him and he *waved back*.



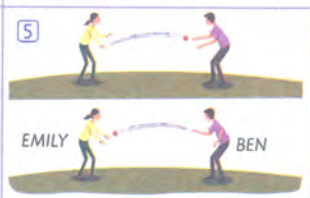
It was windy. I dropped a $20 bill, and it _____.



She opened the letter, read it, and _____ in the envelope.



He tried to talk to her, but she just _____.



Emily threw the ball to Ben, and he _____.



His shoes were worn out, so he _____.

142.2 Complete the sentences. Use a verb + **away** or **back**.

1 I was away all day yesterday. I *got back* very late.
2 I haven't seen our neighbors for a while. I think they must _____.
3 "I'm going out now." "OK. What time will you _____?"
4 I saw a man trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he _____.
5 If you cheat on the exam, you might _____ with it or you might get caught.
6 Be careful! That's an electric fence. Make sure you _____ from it.
7 He wasn't very friendly. I smiled at him, but he didn't _____.

142.3 Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1 The woman got into her car, started the engine, and *drove* away.
2 This box could be useful, so I won't _____ it away.
3 Julia doesn't do anything at work. I don't know how she _____ away with it.
4 I'm going out now. I'll _____ back in about an hour.
5 You should think more about the future. Don't _____ back all the time.
6 Sam is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and _____ it all away.
7 I'll _____ back to you as soon as I have the information you need.
8 I washed the dishes, dried them, and _____ them away.

142.4 Complete the sentences. Use the verb in parentheses + **away** or **back**.

1 A: Do you still have my keys?
B: No. Don't you remember? I *gave them back* to you yesterday? (give)
2 A: Do you want this magazine?
B: No, I've finished with it. You can _____. (throw)
3 A: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?
B: No, they're too tight. I'm going to _____ to the store. (take)
4 A: Here's the money you asked me to lend you.
B: Thanks. I'll _____ as soon as I can. (pay)
5 A: What happened to all the books you used to have?
B: I didn't want them anymore, so I _____. (give)
6 A: Did you phone Sarah?
B: Yes, I left a message for her, but she hasn't _____. (call)

→ Additional Exercises 38–42 (pages 318–320)

Appendix 1
Regular and Irregular Verbs

1.1 *Regular Verbs*

If a verb is regular, the *simple past* and *past participle* end in **-ed**. For example:

Base Form	**clean**	**finish**	**use**	**paint**	**stop**	**carry**
Simple Past / *Past Participle*	**cleaned**	**finished**	**used**	**painted**	**stopped**	**carried**

For spelling rules, see Appendix 6.

For the *simple past* (I **cleaned** / they **finished** / she **carried,** etc.), see Unit 5.

We use the *past participle* to make the perfect tenses and all the passive forms.

Perfect tenses (**have/has/had** cleaned):

- I **have cleaned** the windows. (*present perfect*—see Units 7–8)
- They were still working. They **had**n't **finished**. (*past perfect*—see Unit 14)

Passive (**is** clean**ed** / **was** clean**ed,** etc.):

- He **was carried** out of the room. (*simple past passive*)
- This gate has just **been painted**. (*present perfect passive*)

} see Units 40–42

1.2 *Irregular Verbs*

When the simple past and past participle do *not* end in **-ed** (for example, **I saw** / **I have seen**), the verb is *irregular*.

With some irregular verbs, all three forms (*base form*, *simple past*, and *past participle*) are the same. For example, **hit**:

- Don't **hit** me. (*base form*)
- Somebody **hit** me as I came into the room. (*simple past*)
- I've never **hit** anybody in my life. (*past participle—present perfect*)
- George was **hit** on the head by a stone. (*past participle—passive*)

With other irregular verbs, the simple past is the same as the past participle (but different from the base form). For example, **tell → told**:

- Can you **tell** me what to do? (*base form*)
- She **told** me to come back the next day. (*simple past*)
- Have you **told** anybody about your new job? (*past participle—present perfect*)
- I was **told** to come back the next day. (*past participle—passive*)

With other irregular verbs, all three forms are different. For example, **wake → woke/woken**:

- I'll **wake** you up. (*base form*)
- I **woke** up in the middle of the night. (*simple past*)
- The baby has **woken** up. (*past participle—present perfect*)
- I was **woken** up by a loud noise. (*past participle—passive*)

1.3 List of irregular verbs

(* *pronunciation*)

Base Form	*Simple Past*	*Past Participle*
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fit	fit	fit
flee	fled	fled
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain

Base Form	*Simple Past*	*Past Participle*
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read [red]*	read [red]*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown/showed
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
strike	struck	struck
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weep	wept	wept
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Appendix 2
Present and Past Tenses

	Simple	*Continuous*
Present	I **do** *simple present* (→ Units 2–4) ○ Anna often **plays** tennis. ○ I **work** in a bank, but I **don't enjoy** it much. ○ **Do** you **like** parties? ○ It **doesn't rain** so much in the summer.	I **am doing** *present continuous* (→ Units 1, 3–4) ○ "Where's Anna?" "She**'s playing** tennis." ○ Please don't disturb me now. I**'m working**. ○ Hello! **Are** you **enjoying** the party? ○ It **isn't raining** right now.
Present Perfect	I **have done** *present perfect simple* (→ Units 7, 8, 10–13) ○ Anna **has played** tennis many times. ○ I**'ve lost** my key. **Have** you **seen** it anywhere? ○ How long **have** you and Sam **known** each other? ○ A: Is it still raining? B: No, it **has stopped**. ○ The house is dirty. I **haven't cleaned** it for weeks.	I **have been doing** *present perfect continuous* (→ Units 9–12) ○ Anna is tired. She **has been playing** tennis. ○ You're out of breath. **Have** you **been running**? ○ How long **have** you **been learning** English? ○ It's still raining. It **has been raining** all day. ○ I **haven't been feeling** well recently. Maybe I should go to the doctor.
Past	I **did** *simple past* (→ Units 5–6, 8, 13) ○ Anna **played** tennis yesterday afternoon. ○ I **lost** my key a few days ago. ○ There was a movie on TV last night, but we **didn't watch** it. ○ What **did** you **do** when you finished work yesterday?	I **was doing** *past continuous* (→ Unit 6) ○ I saw Anna at the park yesterday. She **was playing** tennis. ○ I dropped my key when I **was trying** to open the door. ○ The TV was on, but we **weren't watching** it. ○ What **were** you **doing** at this time yesterday?
Past Perfect	I **had done** *past perfect* (→ Unit 14) ○ It wasn't her first game of tennis. She **had played** many times before. ○ They couldn't get into the house because they **had lost** the key. ○ The house was dirty because I **hadn't cleaned** it for weeks.	I **had been doing** *past perfect continuous* (→ Unit 15) ○ Anna was tired yesterday evening because she **had been playing** tennis in the afternoon. ○ James decided to go to the doctor because he **hadn't been feeling** well.

For the passive, see Units 40–42.

Appendix 3
The Future

3.1 *List of future forms:*

○ I'**m leaving** tomorrow.	*Present Continuous*	(→ Unit 18A)
○ My train **leaves** at 9:30.	*Simple Present*	(→ Unit 18B)
○ I'**m going to leave** tomorrow.	(be) **going to**	(→ Units 19, 22)
○ I'**ll leave** tomorrow.	**will**	(→ Units 20–22)
○ I'**ll be leaving** tomorrow.	*Future Continuous*	(→ Unit 23)
○ I'**ll have left** by this time tomorrow.	*Future Perfect*	(→ Unit 23)
○ I hope to see you before I **leave** tomorrow.	*Simple Present*	(→ Unit 24)

3.2 *Future actions*

We use the present continuous (**I'm doing**) for arrangements:

- ○ I'**m leaving** tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket. (already planned and arranged)
- ○ "When **are** they **getting** married?" "On July 24."

We use the simple present (**I leave** / it **leaves**, etc.) for schedules, programs, etc.:

- ○ My train **leaves** at 11:30. (according to the timetable)
- ○ What time **does** the movie **begin**?

We use (**be**) **going to** ... to say what somebody has already decided to do:

- ○ I've decided not to stay here any longer. I'**m going to leave** tomorrow. (*or* I'**m leaving** tomorrow.)
- ○ "Your shoes are dirty." "Yes, I know. I'**m going to clean** them."

We use **will** (**'ll**) when we decide or agree to do something at the time of speaking:

- ○ A: I don't want you to stay here any longer.
  B: OK. I'**ll leave** tomorrow. (*B* decides this at the time of speaking)
- ○ That bag looks heavy. I'**ll help** you with it.
- ○ I **won't tell** anybody what happened. I promise. (**won't** = **will not**)

3.3 *Future happenings and situations*

Most often we use **will** to talk about future happenings ("something **will happen**") or situations ("something **will be**"):

- ○ I don't think John is happy at work. I think he'**ll leave** soon.
- ○ This time next year I'**ll be** in Japan. Where **will** you **be**?

We use (**be**) **going to** when the situation *now* shows what **is going to happen** *in the future*:

- ○ Look at those black clouds. It'**s going to rain**. (you can see the clouds *now*)

3.4 *Future continuous and future perfect*

Will be (do)**ing** = will be in the middle of (doing something):

- ○ This time next week I'll be on vacation. I'**ll be lying** on a beach or **swimming** in the ocean.

We also use **will be -ing** for future actions (see Unit 23C):

- ○ What time **will** you **be leaving** tomorrow?

We use **will have** (**done**) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future:

- ○ I won't be here this time tomorrow. I'**ll have** already **left**.

3.5 We use the *present* (*not* will) after **when**/**if**/**while**/**before**, etc. (see Unit 24):

- ○ I hope to see you **before I leave** tomorrow. (*not* before I will leave)
- ○ **When** you **are** in New York again, come and see us. (*not* When you will be)
- ○ **If** we **don't hurry**, we'll be late.

Appendix 4
Modal Verbs (**can/could/will/would**, etc.)

This appendix is a summary of modal verbs. For more information, see Units 25–35.

4.1 Compare **can/could**, etc., for actions:

can	☐	I **can go** out tonight. (= there is nothing to stop me)
	☐	I **can't go** out tonight.
could	☐	I **could go** out tonight, but I don't feel like it.
	☐	I **couldn't go** out last night. (= I wasn't able)
can *or* **may**	☐ **Can** / ☐ **May**	I **go** out tonight? (= do you allow me?)
will/won't	☐	I think **I'll go** out tonight.
	☐	I promise I **won't go** out.
would	☐	I **would go** out tonight, but I have too much to do.
	☐	I promised I **wouldn't go** out.
should	☐	I **should go** out tonight. (= it would be a good thing to do)
	☐	**Should I go** out tonight? (= do you think it is a good idea?)

Compare **could have** ... / **would have** ..., etc.:

could	☐	I **could have gone** out last night, but I decided to stay at home.
would	☐	I **would have gone** out last night, but I had too much to do.
should	☐	I **should have gone** out last night. I'm sorry I didn't.

4.2 We use **will/would/may**, etc., to say whether something is possible, impossible, probable, certain, etc. Compare:

will / **would**	☐	"What time **will** she **be** here?" "She**'ll be** here soon." / She **would be** here now, but she's been delayed.
should	☐	She **should be** here soon. (= I expect she will be here soon)
may *or* **might** *or* **could**	☐	She **may** / **might** / **could** **be** here now. I'm not sure. (= it's possible that she is here)
must	☐	She **must be** here. I saw her come in.
can't	☐	She **can't be** here. I know for sure that she's away on vacation.

Compare **would have** ... / **should have** ..., etc.:

will / **would**	☐	She **will have arrived** by now. (= before now) / She **would have arrived** earlier, but she was delayed.
should	☐	I wonder where she is. She **should have arrived** by now.
may *or* **might** *or* **could**	☐	She **may** / **might** / **could** **have arrived**. I'm not sure. (= it's possible that she has arrived)
must	☐	She **must have arrived** by now. (= I'm sure—there is no other possibility)
couldn't	☐	She **couldn't have arrived** yet. It's much too early. (= it's impossible)

Appendix 5
Short Forms (**I'm / you've / didn't**, etc.)

5.1 In spoken English we usually say **I'm / you've / didn't**, etc. (*short forms* or *contractions*) rather than **I am / you have / did not**, etc. We also use these short forms in informal writing (for example, a letter or message to a friend).

When we write short forms, we use an *apostrophe* (') for the missing letter(s):

I'm = I a**m** you've = you ha**v**e didn't = did no**t**

5.2 List of short forms:

'm = am	**I'm**						
's = is *or* has		he**'s**	she**'s**	it**'s**			
're = are					you**'re**	we**'re**	they**'re**
've = have	**I've**				you**'ve**	we**'ve**	they**'ve**
'll = will	**I'll**	he**'ll**	she**'ll**		you**'ll**	we**'ll**	they**'ll**
'd = would *or* had	**I'd**	he**'d**	she**'d**		you**'d**	we**'d**	they**'d**

's can be **is** or **has**:

- She**'s** sick. (= She **is** sick)
- She**'s** gone away. (= She **has** gone)

but **let's** = let **us**:

- Let**'s** go now. (= Let **us** go)

'd can be **would** or **had**:

- I**'d** see a doctor if I were you. (= I **would** see)
- I**'d** never seen her before. (= I **had** never seen)

We use some of these short forms (especially **'s**) after question words (**who/what**, etc.) and after **that/there/here**:

who**'s** what**'s** where**'s** how**'s** that**'s** there**'s** here**'s** who**'ll** there**'ll** who**'d**

- **Who's** that woman over there? (= who **is**)
- **What's** happened? (= what **has**)
- Do you think **there'll** be many people at the party? (= there **will**)

We also use short forms (especially **'s**) after a noun:

- **Katherine's** going out tonight. (= Katherine **is**)
- **My best friend's** just gotten married. (= My best friend **has**)

You cannot use **'m / 's / 're / 've / 'll / 'd** at the end of a sentence (because the verb is stressed in this position):

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**." (*not* Yes, I'm.)
- Do you know where she **is**? (*not* Do you know where she's?)

5.3 Negative short forms

isn't	(= is not)	**don't**	(= do not)	**haven't**	(= have not)
aren't	(= are not)	**doesn't**	(= does not)	**hasn't**	(= has not)
wasn't	(= was not)	**didn't**	(= did not)	**hadn't**	(= had not)
weren't	(= were not)				
can't	(= cannot)	**couldn't**	(= could not)		
won't	(= will not)	**wouldn't**	(= would not)		
		shouldn't	(= should not)		

Negative short forms for **is** and **are** can be:

he **isn't** / she **isn't** / it **isn't** *or* he**'s not** / she**'s not** / it**'s not**

you **aren't** / we **aren't** / they **aren't** *or* you**'re not** / we**'re not** / they**'re not**

Appendix 6
Spelling

6.1 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives can have the following endings:

noun + **-s/-es** *(plural)*	book**s**	idea**s**	match**es**
verb + **-s/-es** (after **he/she/it**)	work**s**	enjoy**s**	wash**es**
verb + **-ing**	work**ing**	enjoy**ing**	wash**ing**
verb + **-ed**	work**ed**	enjoy**ed**	wash**ed**
adjective + **-er** *(comparative)*	cheap**er**	quick**er**	bright**er**
adjective + **-est** *(superlative)*	cheap**est**	quick**est**	bright**est**
adjective + **-ly** *(adverb)*	cheap**ly**	quick**ly**	bright**ly**

When we use these endings, there are sometimes changes in spelling. These changes are listed below.

6.2 Nouns and verbs + **-s/-es**

The ending is **-es** when the word ends in **-s/-ss/-sh/-ch/-x**:

bu**s**/bu**ses** mi**ss**/mi**sses** wa**sh**/wa**shes**
ma**tch**/ma**tches** sear**ch**/sear**ches** bo**x**/bo**xes**

Note also:

potato/potato**es** tomato/tomato**es**
do/do**es** go/go**es**

6.3 Words ending in **-y** (bab**y**, carr**y**, eas**y**, etc.)

If a word ends in a *consonant** + **y** (**-by/-ry/-sy/-vy**, etc.)

y changes to **i** before the ending **-s**:

bab**y**/bab**ies** stor**y**/stor**ies** countr**y**/countr**ies** secretar**y**/secretar**ies**
hurr**y**/hurr**ies** stud**y**/stud**ies** appl**y**/appl**ies** tr**y**/tr**ies**

y changes to **i** before the ending **-ed**:

hurr**y**/hurr**ied** stud**y**/stud**ied** appl**y**/appl**ied** tr**y**/tr**ied**

y changes to **i** before the endings **-er** and **-est**:

eas**y**/eas**ier**/eas**iest** heav**y**/heav**ier**/heav**iest** luck**y**/luck**ier**/luck**iest**

y changes to **i** before the ending **-ly**:

eas**y**/eas**ily** heav**y**/heav**ily** temporar**y**/temporar**ily**

y does *not* change before **-ing**:

hurr**ying** stud**ying** appl**ying** try**ing**

y does *not* change if the word ends in a *vowel** + **y** (**-ay/-ey/-oy/-uy**):

pl**ay**/pl**ays**/pl**ayed** monk**ey**/monk**eys** enj**oy**/enj**oys**/enj**oyed** b**uy**/b**uys**

An exception is: d**ay**/d**aily**
Note also: p**ay**/p**aid** l**ay**/l**aid** s**ay**/s**aid**

6.4 Verbs ending in **-ie** (d**ie**, l**ie**, t**ie**)

If a verb ends in **-ie**, **ie** changes to **y** before the ending **-ing**:

d**ie**/d**ying** l**ie**/l**ying** t**ie**/t**ying**

---

* **a e i o u** are *vowel* letters.
The other letters (**b c d f g**, etc.) are *consonant* letters.

6.5 Words ending in **-e** (hop**e**, danc**e**, wid**e** etc.)

Verbs

If a verb ends in **-e**, we leave out **e** before the ending **-ing**:

hop**e**/hop**ing** smil**e**/smil**ing** danc**e**/danc**ing** confus**e**/confus**ing**

Exceptions are **be**/**being** *and* verbs ending in **-ee**:

see/see**ing** agr**ee**/agree**ing**

If a verb ends in **-e**, we add **-d** for the past (of regular verbs):

hop**e**/hop**ed** smil**e**/smil**ed** danc**e**/danc**ed** confus**e**/confus**ed**

Adjectives and adverbs

If an adjective ends in **-e**, we add **-r** and **-st** for the comparative and superlative:

wid**e**/wid**er**/wid**est** late/late**r**/late**st** large/large**r**/large**st**

If an adjective ends in **-e**, we *keep* **e** before **-ly** in the adverb:

polit**e**/polit**ely** extrem**e**/extrem**ely** absolut**e**/absolut**ely**

If an adjective ends in **-le** (simp**le**, terrib**le**, etc.), the adverb ending is **-ply**, **-bly**, etc.:

simp**le**/simp**ly** terrib**le**/terrib**ly** reasonab**le**/reasonab**ly**

6.6 Doubling consonants (**stop/stopping/stopped**, **wet/wetter/wettest**, etc.)

Sometimes a word ends in *vowel + consonant*. For example:

st**o**p pl**a**n r**u**b b**i**g w**e**t th**i**n pref**e**r regr**e**t

Before the endings **-ing/-ed/-er/-est**, we double the consonant at the end. So **p** → **pp**, **n** → **nn**, etc. For example:

sto**p**	p → **pp**	sto**pp**ing	sto**pp**ed
pla**n**	n → **nn**	pla**nn**ing	pla**nn**ed
ru**b**	b → **bb**	ru**bb**ing	ru**bb**ed
bi**g**	g → **gg**	bi**gg**er	bi**gg**est
we**t**	t → **tt**	we**tt**er	we**tt**est
thi**n**	n → **nn**	thi**nn**er	thi**nn**est

If the word has more than one syllable (**prefer**, **begin**, etc.), we double the consonant at the end *only if the final syllable is stressed*:

preFER / prefe**rr**ing / prefe**rr**ed perMIT / permi**tt**ing / permi**tt**ed

reGRET / regre**tt**ing / regre**tt**ed beGIN / begi**nn**ing

If the final syllable is not stressed, we do *not* double the final consonant:

HAPpen / happe**n**ing / happe**n**ed deVELop / develo**p**ing / develo**p**ed

TRAVel / trave**l**ing / trave**l**ed reMEMber / remembe**r**ing / remembe**r**ed

For British spelling, see Appendix 7.

Note that

we do *not* double the final consonant if the word ends in *two* consonants (**-rt**, **-lp**, **-ng**, etc.):

sta**rt** / sta**rt**ing / sta**rt**ed he**lp** / he**lp**ing / he**lp**ed lo**ng** / lo**ng**er / lo**ng**est

we do *not* double the final consonant if there are *two* vowel letters before it (**-oil**, **-eed**, etc.):

boil / boi**l**ing / boi**l**ed n**eed** / nee**d**ing / nee**d**ed expl**ain** / explai**n**ing / explai**n**ed

ch**eap** / cheape**r** / cheape**st** l**oud** / loude**r** / loude**st** qu**iet** / quiete**r** / quiete**st**

we do *not* double **y** or **w** at the end of words. (At the end of words **y** and **w** are not consonants.)

sta**y** / sta**y**ing / sta**y**ed gro**w** / gro**w**ing ne**w** / ne**w**er / ne**w**est

Appendix 7
British English

There are a few grammatical differences between North American English and British English:

Unit	NORTH AMERICAN	BRITISH
8	The *simple past* is used for new or recent happenings. The *present perfect* is less common: ○ I **lost** my keys. **Did** you **see** them? The *simple past* is used with **just**. The *present perfect* is less common: ○ I'm not hungry. I **just had** lunch.	The *present perfect* is more common for new or recent happenings: ○ I**'ve lost** my keys. **Have** you **seen** them? The *present perfect* is more common with **just**: ○ I'm not hungry. I**'ve just had** lunch.
27	North American speakers use **must not** to say they feel sure something is not true: ○ Their car isn't outside their house. They **must not be** at home. ○ Sarah hasn't contacted me. She **must not have gotten** my message.	British speakers usually use **can't** in this situation: ○ Their car isn't outside their house. They **can't be** at home. ○ Sarah hasn't contacted me. She **can't have got** my message.
31B	**Should I** ... ? **Should we** ... ? ○ Where **should we** have lunch?	**Shall I** ... ? **Shall we** ... ? ○ Where **shall we** have lunch?
32	**demand**, **insist**, etc. + *subjunctive* ○ I insisted he **have** dinner with us.	**demand**, **insist**, etc. + **should** (or the *simple present/past*) ○ I **insisted** he **should have** dinner with us. (*or* I **insisted** he **had** dinner with us.)
49B	**You have? / She isn't?**, etc. ○ A: Liz isn't feeling well today. B: **She isn't?** What's wrong with her?	**Have you? / Isn't she?**, etc. ○ A: Liz isn't very well today. B: **Isn't she?** What's wrong with her?
57D	I**'d rather** you **do** something ○ Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or would you rather I **tell** her?	I**'d rather** you **did** something ○ Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or would you rather I **told** her?
70C, 122A	to/in **the hospital** ○ Two people were taken to **the hospital** after the accident.	to/in **hospital** (without **the**) ○ Two people were taken to **hospital** after the accident.
118A	**on the weekend / on weekends**: ○ Will you be here **on the weekend**?	**at the weekend / at weekends**: ○ Will you be here **at the weekend**?
121D	**in** the front / **in** the back (of a group, etc.) ○ *(in a movie theater)* Let's sit **in the front**.	**at** the front / **at** the back (of a group, etc.) ○ *(in a cinema)* Let's sit **at the front**.
128B	**different from** or **different than** ○ The movie was **different from/than** what I'd expected.	**different from** or **different to** ○ The film was **different from/to** what I'd expected.
134A	**around** (not usually "round") ○ He turned **around**.	**round** or **around** ○ He turned **round**. *or* He turned **around**.

Unit	NORTH AMERICAN	BRITISH
134B–C	**get along** (**with** somebody) ○ Do you **get along with** your boss?	**get on** or **get along** (**with** somebody) ○ Do you **get on/along with** your boss?
135C	**fill out** (a form, etc.) ○ Could you **fill out** this form?	**fill in** or **fill out** ○ Could you **fill in** this form? *or* ... **fill out** this form?
139B	**tear down** (a building) ○ Some old houses were **torn down** to make room for a new shopping mall.	**knock down** (a building) ○ Some old houses were **knocked down** to make room for a new shopping centre.
141D	**fix up** a house, etc. ○ That old house looks great now that it has been **fixed up**.	**do up** a house, etc. ○ That old house looks great now that it has been **done up**.

Appendix	NORTH AMERICAN	BRITISH
1.3	The following verbs are regular in North American English: **burn → burned** **dream → dreamed** **lean → leaned** **learn → learned** **smell → smelled** **spell → spelled** **spill → spilled** **spoil → spoiled** The past participle of **get** is **gotten**: ○ Your English has **gotten** much bette (= has become much better) **Have got** (*not* gotten) means the same as **have**: ○ **I've got** two brothers. (= I have two brothers.)	In British English, these verbs can be regular or irregular: **burn → burned** *or* **burnt** **dream → dreamed** *or* **dreamt** **lean → leaned** *or* **leant** **learn → learned** *or* **learnt** **smell → smelled** *or* **smelt** **spell → spelled** *or* **spelt** **spill → spilled** *or* **spilt** **spoil → spoiled** *or* **spoilt** The past participle of **get** is **got**: ○ Your English has **got** much better. **Have got** = have (as in North American English): ○ **I've got** two brothers.
6.6	North American spelling: travel → traveling / traveled cancel → canceling / canceled	British spelling: travel → travelling / travelled cancel → cancelling / cancelled

Additional Exercises

These exercises are divided into the following sections:

Present and Past (Units 1–6)	Exercise 1
Present and Past (Units 1–13)	Exercises 2–4
Present and Past (Units 1–16, 107)	Exercises 5–8
Past Continuous and **used to** (Units 6, 17)	Exercise 9
The Future (Units 18–24)	Exercises 10–13
Past, Present, and Future (Units 1–24)	Exercises 14–15
Modal Verbs (**can/must/would,** etc.) (Units 25–35)	Exercises 16–19
if (Conditional) (Units 24, 36–38)	Exercises 20–22
Passive (Units 40–43)	Exercises 23–25
Reported Speech (Units 45–46, 48)	Exercise 26
-ing and **to** ... (Units 51–64)	Exercises 27–29
a/an and **the** (Units 67–76)	Exercise 30
Pronouns and Determiners (Units 80–89)	Exercise 31
Adjectives and Adverbs (Units 96–105)	Exercise 32
Conjunctions (Units 24, 36, 109–115)	Exercise 33
Prepositions (Time) (Units 12, 116–119)	Exercise 34
Prepositions (Position, etc.) (Units 120–125)	Exercise 35
Noun/Adjective + Preposition (Units 126–128)	Exercise 36
Verb + Preposition (Units 129–133)	Exercise 37
Phrasal Verbs (Units 134–142)	Exercises 38–42

Present and Past

Units 1–6, Appendix 2

1 **Put the verb into the correct form: simple present (I do), present continuous (I am doing), simple past (I did), or past continuous (I was doing).**

1 We can go out now. It isn't raining (it/not/rain) anymore.
2 Katherine was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (I/arrive).
3 ..... (I/get) hungry. Let's go and get something to eat.
4 What ..... (you / do) in your spare time? Do you have any hobbies?
5 The weather was horrible when ..... (we/arrive). It was cold, and ..... (it/rain) hard.
6 Emily usually ..... (call) me on Fridays, but ..... (she/not/call) last Friday.
7 A: When I last saw you, ... (you/think) of moving to a new apartment.
B: That's right, but in the end ..... (I/decide) to stay where I was.
8 Why ..... (you/look) at me like that? What's the matter?
9 It's usually dry here at this time of year. ..... (it/not/rain) much.
10 I waved to Ben, but he didn't see me. ..... (he/not/look) in my direction.
11 Jessica was busy when ..... (we/go) to see her yesterday. ..... (she/study) for an exam. ..... (we/not/want) to bother her, so ..... (we/not/stay) very long.
12 When I ..... (tell) Tom what happened, ... (he/not/believe) me at first. ..... (he/think) that ..... (I/joke).

Present and Past

Units 1–13, Appendix 2

2 Which is correct?

1 Everything is going well. We ~~didn't have~~ / haven't had any problems so far. (haven't had *is correct*)
2 Julia didn't go / hasn't gone to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well.
3 Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.
4 I went / have been to New Zealand last year.
5 I didn't hear / haven't heard from Jess recently. I hope she's OK.
6 I wonder why James is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that.
7 Emma had a book open in front of her, but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.
8 I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.
9 It begins / It's beginning to get dark. Should I turn on the light?
10 After leaving school, Mark worked / has worked in a hotel for a while.
11 When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.
12 This is a nice hotel, isn't it? Is this the first time you stay / you've stayed here?
13 I need a new job. I'm doing / I've been doing the same job for too long.
14 "Anna has gone out." "She has? What time did she leave / has she left?"
15 "You look tired." "Yes, I've played / I've been playing basketball."
16 Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?
17 I'd like to see Hannah again. It's been a long time since I saw her / that I didn't see her.
18 Robert and Maria have been married since 20 years / for 20 years.

3 Complete each question using an appropriate verb.

1 A: I'm looking for Paul. Have you seen him?
B: Yes, he was here a minute ago.
2 A: Why did you go to bed so early last night?
B: I was feeling very tired.
3 A: Where ..... ?
B: Just to the grocery store at the end of the street. I'll be back in ten minutes.
4 A: ..... TV every day?
B: No, only if there's something special on.
5 A: Your house is beautiful. How long ..... here?
B: Almost ten years.
6 A: How was your parents' vacation? ..... a nice time?
B: Yes, they really enjoyed it.
7 A: ..... Sarah recently?
B: Yes, we had lunch together a few days ago.
8 A: Can you describe the woman you saw? What ..... ?
B: A red sweater and black jeans.
9 A: I'm sorry to keep you waiting. ..... long?
B: No, only about ten minutes.
10 A: How long ..... to get from here to the airport?
B: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.
11 A: ..... this song before?
B: No, this is the first time. I like it.
12 A: ..... to Mexico?
B: No, never, but I went to Costa Rica a few years ago.

4 Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1 A: What's Chicago like? Is it a good place to visit?
B: I have no idea. I've never been there.
2 A: How well do you know Ben?
B: Very well. We ..... since we were children.
3 A: Did you enjoy your vacation?
B: Yes, it was really good. It's the best vacation .....
4 A: Is David still here?
B: No, I'm afraid he isn't. ..... about ten minutes ago.
5 A: I like your suit. I haven't seen it before.
B: It's new. It's the first time .....
6 A: How did you cut your knee?
B: I slipped and fell when ..... tennis.
7 A: Do you ever go swimming?
B: Not recently. I haven't ..... a long time.
8 A: How often do you go to the movies?
B: Hardly ever. It's been almost a year ..... to the cinema.
9 A: I bought some new shoes. Do you like them?
B: Yes, they're very nice. Where ..... them?

Present and Past

Units 1–16, 107, Appendix 2

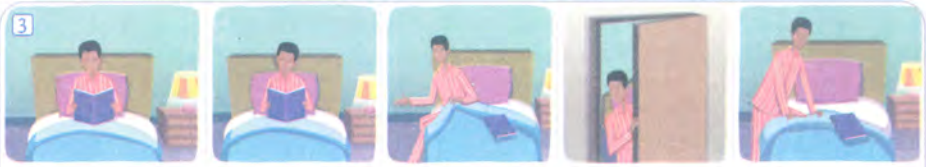
5 Put the verb into the correct form: simple past (I did), past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done), or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).



Yesterday afternoon Sarah went (go) to the train station to meet Matt. When she ..... (get) there, Matt ..... (already/wait) for her. His train ..... (arrive) early.



When I got home, Ben ..... (lie) on the sofa. The TV was on, but he ..... (not/watch) it. He ..... (fall) asleep and ..... (snore) loudly. I ..... (turn) the TV off, and just then he ..... (wake) up.



Last night I ..... (just/go) to bed and ..... (read) a book when suddenly I ..... (hear) a noise. I ..... (get) up to see what it was, but I ..... (not/see) anything, so I ..... (go) back to bed.



Liz had to go to New York last week, but she almost ..... (miss) the plane. She ..... (stand) in line at the check-in desk when she suddenly ..... (realize) that she ..... (leave) her passport at home. Fortunately, she lives near the airport, so she ..... (have) time to take a taxi home to get it. She ..... (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.



I ..... (meet) Dan and Lucy yesterday as I ..... (walk) through the park. They ..... (be) to the gym where they ..... (play) tennis. They ..... (go) to a coffee shop and ..... (invite) me to join them, but I ..... (arrange) to meet another friend and ..... (not/have) time.

6 **Make sentences from the words in parentheses. Put the verb into the correct form: present perfect (I have done), present perfect continuous (I have been doing), past perfect (I had done), or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).**

1 Amanda is sitting on the ground. She's out of breath.
(she / run) She has been running.

2 Where's my bag? I left it under this chair.
(somebody / take / it) .....

3 We were all surprised when Jess and Nick got married last year.
(they / only / know / each other / a few weeks)
.....

4 It's still raining. I wish it would stop.
(it / rain / all day) .....

5 Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn't know where I was.
(I / dream) .....

6 It was lunchtime, but I wasn't hungry. I didn't want to eat anything.
(I / have / a big breakfast) .....

7 Every year Robert and Megan spend a few days at the same hotel in Hawaii.
(they / go / there for years) .....

8 I have a headache.
(I / have / it / since I got up) .....

9 Next month Dave is going to run a marathon.
(he / train / very hard for it) .....

7 **Put the verb into the correct form.**

Sarah and Joe are old friends. They meet by chance at a train station.



SARAH: Hello, Joe. (1) ..... (I / not / see) you for ages. How are you?
JOE: I'm fine. How about you?
(2) ..... (you / look) good.
SARAH: Thanks. You too.
So, (3) ..... (you / go) somewhere or (4) ..... (you / meet) somebody?
JOE: (5) ..... (I / go) to New York for a business meeting.
SARAH: Oh. (6) ..... (you / travel) a lot on business?
JOE: Fairly often, yes. And you? Where (7) ..... (you / go)?
SARAH: Nowhere. (8) ..... (I / meet) a friend. Unfortunately, her train (9) ..... (be) delayed—
(10) ..... (I / wait) here for almost an hour.
JOE: How are your children?
SARAH: They're all fine, thanks. The youngest (11) ..... (just / start) school.
JOE: How (12) ..... (she / do)?
(13) ..... (she / like) it?
SARAH: Yes, (14) ..... (she / think) it's great.
JOE: (15) ..... (you / work) these days? The last time I (16) ..... (speak) to you, (17) ..... (you / work) for an insurance company.
SARAH: That's right. Unfortunately, the company (18) ..... (go) out of business a couple of months after (19) ..... (I / start) working there, so (20) ..... (I / lose) my job.
JOE: And (21) ..... (you / not / have) a job since then?
SARAH: Not a permanent job. (22) ..... (I / have) a few temporary jobs. By the way, (23) ..... (you / see) Matt recently?
JOE: Matt? He's in Canada.
SARAH: Really? How long (24) ..... (he / be) in Canada?
JOE: About a year now. (25) ..... (I / see) him a few days before (26) ..... (he / leave). (27) ..... (he / be) unemployed for months, so (28) ..... (he / decide) to try his luck somewhere else. (29) ..... (he / really / look forward) to going.
SARAH: So, what (30) ..... (he / do) there?
JOE: I have no idea. (31) ..... (I / not / hear) from him since (32) ..... (he / leave). Anyway, I have to go and catch my train. It was really good to see you again.
SARAH: You too. Bye! Have a good trip!
JOE: Thanks. Bye!

8 Put the verb into the most appropriate form.

1 Who _____ (invent) the bicycle?
2 "Do you still have that class on Wednesdays?" "No, _____ (it / end)."
3 I was the last to leave the office last night. Everybody else _____ (go) home when I _____ (leave).
4 What _____ (you / do) last weekend? _____ (you / go) anywhere?
5 I like your car. How long _____ (you / have) it?
6 It's a shame the trip was canceled. I _____ (look) forward to it.
7 Jen is an experienced teacher and loves her job. _____ (she / teach) for 15 years.
8 Emily _____ (buy) a new dress last week, but _____ (she / not / wear) it yet.
9 A few days ago, _____ (I / see) a man at a party whose face _____ (look) very familiar. At first, I couldn't think of where _____ (I / see) him before. Then suddenly _____ (I / remember) who _____ (he / be).
10 _____ (you / hear) of Agatha Christie? _____ (she / be) a writer who _____ (die) in 1976. _____ (she / write) more than 70 detective novels, but _____ (I / not / read) any of them.
11 A: What _____ (this word / mean)?
B: I have no idea. _____ (I / never / see) it before. Look it up in the dictionary.
12 A: _____ (you / get) to the theater in time for the play last night?
B: No, we were late. By the time we got there, _____ (it / already / start).
13 I went to Sarah's room and _____ (knock) on the door, but there _____ (be) no answer. Either _____ (she / go) out or _____ (she / not / want) to see anyone.
14 John asked me how to use the photocopier. _____ (he / never / use) it before, so _____ (he / not / know) what to do.
15 Lauren _____ (go) for a swim after work yesterday. _____ (she / need) some exercise because _____ (she / sit) in an office all day in front of a computer.

Past Continuous and used to

Units 6, 17

9 Complete the sentences using the past continuous (was/were -ing) or used to ... . Use the verb in parentheses.

1 I haven't been to the movies for ages now. We used to go a lot. (go)
2 Anna didn't see me wave to her. She was looking in the other direction. (look)
3 I _____ a lot, but I don't use my car very much these days. (drive)
4 I asked the taxi driver to slow down. She _____ too fast. (drive)
5 Rachel and Jonathan met for the first time when they _____ in the same bank. (work)
6 When I was a child, I _____ a lot of bad dreams. (have)
7 I wonder what Joe is doing these days. He _____ in Spain when I last heard from him. (live)
8 "Where were you yesterday afternoon?" "I _____ volleyball." (play)
9 "Do you play any sports?" "Not these days, but I _____ volleyball." (play)
10 Sam looked great at the party. He _____ a very nice suit. (wear)

The Future

Units 18–24, Appendix 3

10 What do you say to Joe in these situations? Use the words given in parentheses. Use the present continuous (I am doing), going to, or will (I'll).

1 You have made all your vacation arrangements. Your destination is Jamaica.
JOE: Have you decided where to go for your vacation yet?
YOU: I'm going to Jamaica. (I / go)

2 You have made an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning.
JOE: Should we get together on Friday morning?
YOU: I can't on Friday. _____ (I / go)

3 You and some friends are planning a vacation in Mexico. You have decided to rent a car, but you haven't arranged this yet.
JOE: How do you plan to travel around Mexico? By train?
YOU: No, _____ (we / rent)

4 Joe reminds you that you have to call your sister. You completely forgot.
JOE: Did you call your sister?
YOU: No, I forgot. Thanks for reminding me. _____ (I / call / now)

5 You have already arranged to have lunch with Sue tomorrow.
JOE: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?
YOU: No, _____ (have lunch)

6 You are in a restaurant. You and your friend are looking at the menu. Maybe your friend has decided what to have. You ask her/him.
YOU: What _____ ? (you / have)
JOE: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.

7 Joe is reading, but it's getting dark. He's having trouble reading. You turn on the light.
JOE: It's getting dark and it's hard to read.
YOU: Yes, _____ (I / turn on)

8 You and Joe are sitting in a room with the window open. It's getting cold. You decide to close the window. You stand up and walk towards it.
JOE: What are you doing?
YOU: _____ (I / close)

11 Choose the best alternative.

1 "Are you doing anything tomorrow evening?" "No, why?"
A Do you do **B** Are you doing **C** Will you do (B *is the best alternative*)

2 "I can't open this bottle." "Give it to me. _____ it."
A I open **B** I'll open **C** I'm going to open

3 "Is Emily here yet?" "Not yet. I'll let you know as soon as _____ ."
A she arrives **B** she's arriving **C** she'll arrive

4 "Are you free tomorrow afternoon?" "No, _____ ."
A I work **B** I'm working **C** I'll work

5 "What time is the movie tonight?" "_____ at 8:40."
A It starts **B** It's going to start **C** It will start

6 "Are you going to the beach tomorrow?" "Yes, if the weather ..... good."
A is going to be **B** will be **C** is

7 "..... to the party?" "No, I haven't been invited."
A Do you go **B** Will you go **C** Are you going

8 "When .....?" "Tomorrow."
A does the festival finish **B** is the festival finished **C** is the festival finishing

12 **Put the verb into the most appropriate form. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.**

1 *A has decided to learn a language.*

A: I've decided to try and learn a foreign language.
B: You have? Which language (1) ..... (you / learn)?
A: Spanish.
B: (2) ..... (you / take) a class?
A: Yes, (3) ..... (it / start) next week.
B: That's great. I'm sure (4) ..... (you / enjoy) it.
A: I hope so. But I think (5) ..... (it / be) difficult.

2 *A wants to know about B's vacation plans.*

A: I hear (1) ..... (you / go) on vacation soon.
B: That's right. (2) ..... (we / go) to Brazil.
A: I hope (3) ..... (you / have) a nice time.
B: Thanks. (4) ..... (I / get) in touch with you when (5) ..... (I / get) back, and maybe we can get together sometime.

3 *A invites B to a party.*

A: (1) ..... (I / have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?
B: On Saturday? I'm not sure. Some friends of mine (2) ..... (come) to stay with me next week, but I think (3) ..... (they / leave) by Saturday. But if (4) ..... (they / be) still here, (5) ..... (I / not / be) able to come to the party.
A: OK. Well, tell me as soon as (6) ..... (you / know).
B: All right. (7) ..... (I / call) you during the week.

4 *A and B are two secret agents arranging a meeting. They are talking on the phone.*



A: Well, what time should we meet?
B: Come to the coffee shop by the station at 4:00. (1) ..... (I / wait) for you when (2) ..... (you / arrive). (3) ..... (I / sit) by the window and (4) ..... (I / wear) a bright green sweater.
A: OK. (5) ..... (Agent 307 / come) too?
B: No, she can't be there.
A: Oh. Should I bring the documents?
B: Yes. (6) ..... (I / explain) everything when (7) ..... (I / see) you. And don't be late.
A: OK. (8) ..... (I / try) to be on time.

13 Put the verb into the correct form. Choose from the following:

present continuous (I am doing) will ('ll) / won't
simple present (I do) will be doing
going to (I'm going to do)

1 I'm a little hungry. I think _____ (I / have) something to eat.
2 Why are you putting on your coat? _____ (you / go) somewhere?
3 Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. _____ (it / land).
4 We have to do something soon before _____ (it / be) too late.
5 I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company. _____ (I / miss) you when _____ (you / go).
6 _____ (I / give) you my phone number if you like. If _____ (I / give) it to you, _____ (you / call) me?
7 I'm really fed up with my job. _____ (I / resign).
8 Are you still watching that program? What time _____ (it / finish)?
9 _____ (I / go) to a wedding next weekend. My cousin _____ (get) married.
10 I'm not ready yet. _____ (I / tell) you when _____ (I / be) ready. I promise _____ (I / not / be) very long.
11 _____ (I / get) my hair cut tomorrow. I just made an appointment.
12 She was very rude to me. I won't speak to her again until _____ (she / apologize).
13 I wonder where _____ (we / live) in ten years.
14 What are you planning to do when _____ (you / finish) college?

Past, Present, and Future

Units 1–24

14 Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1 A: How did the accident happen?
B: I was going too fast and couldn't stop in time.
2 A: Is that a new coat?
B: No, I _____ it for a long time.
3 A: Is that a new phone?
B: Yes, I _____ it a few weeks ago.
4 A: I can't talk to you right now. You can see I'm very busy.
B: OK. I _____ back in about half an hour.
5 A: This is a nice restaurant. Do you come here often?
B: No, this is the first time I _____ here.
6 A: Do you play any sports?
B: No, I _____ football, but I gave it up.
7 A: I'm sorry I'm late.
B: That's OK. I _____ long.
8 A: When you went to the U.S. last year, was it your first visit?
B: No, I _____ there twice before.
9 A: Do you have any plans for the weekend?
B: Yes, I _____ to a party on Saturday night.
10 A: Do you know what Steve's doing these days?
B: No, I _____ him for ages.
11 A: Will you still be here by the time I get back?
B: No, I _____ by then.

15 Robert is traveling in North America. He sends an email to a friend in Winnipeg (Canada). Put the verb into the most suitable form.



Hi!

(1) ..... (I / just / arrive) in Minneapolis. (2) .....
(I / travel) for more than a month now, and (3) ..... (I / begin) to think about coming home. Everything (4) ..... (I / see) so far (5) ..... (be) really interesting, and (6) ..... (I / meet) some really nice people.

(7) ..... (I / leave) Kansas City a week ago. (8) .....
(I / stay) there with Emily, the aunt of a friend from college. She was really helpful and hospitable, and although (9) ..... (I / plan) to stay only a couple of days, (10) ..... (I / end up) staying there more than a week.
(11) ..... (I / enjoy) the trip from Kansas City to Minneapolis.
(12) ..... (I / take) the Greyhound bus and (13) ..... (meet) some really interesting people—everybody was really friendly.

So now I'm here, and (14) ..... (I / stay) here for a few days before (15) ..... (I / continue) up to Canada. I'm not sure exactly when (16) ..... (I / get) to Winnipeg—it depends what happens while (17) ..... (I / be) here. But (18) ..... (I / let) you know as soon as (19) ..... (I / know) myself.

(20) ..... (I / stay) with a family here—they're friends of some people I know at home. Tomorrow (21) ..... (we / visit) some people they know who (22) ..... (build) a house by a lake. It isn't finished yet, but (23) ..... (it / be) interesting to see what it's like. Anyway, that's all for now. (24) ..... (I / be) in touch again soon.
Robert

Modal Verbs (can/must/would, etc.)

Units 25–35, Appendix 4

16 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two of the alternatives are possible.

1 "What time will you be home tonight?" "I'm not sure. I ___A or B___ late."
(A) may be (B) might be C can be (*both* A *and* B *are correct*)

2 I can't find the theater tickets. They ___ out of my pocket.
A must have fallen B should have fallen C had to fall

3 Somebody ran in front of the car as I was driving. Luckily, I ___ just in time.
A could stop B could have stopped C managed to stop

4 We have plenty of time. We ___ yet.
A must not go B don't have to go C don't need to go

5 I didn't go out yesterday. I ___ out with my friends, but I didn't feel like it.
A could go B could have gone C must have gone

6 I looked everywhere for Rachel, but I ___ her.
A couldn't find B couldn't have found C wasn't able to find

7 "What do you think of my theory?" "You ___ right, but I'm not sure."
A could be B must be C might be

8 Our flight was delayed. We ___ for two hours.
A must wait B must have waited C had to wait

9 I'm not sure whether I'll be free on Saturday. I ___.
A must have to work B may have to work C might have to work

10 At first they didn't believe me when I told them what had happened, but in the end I ___ them that I was telling the truth.
A was able to convince B managed to convince C could convince

11 I promised I'd call Amy this evening. I ___
A can't forget B don't forget C don't have to forget

12 Why did you leave without me? You ___ for me.
A must have waited B had to wait C should have waited

13 Nicole called me this morning. She suggested ___ lunch together.
A we have B having C to have

14 That jacket looks good on you. ___ it more often.
A You'd better wear B You should wear C You would wear

15 Do you think I should buy a car? What ___ in my position?
A will you do B would you do C should you do

17 Complete the sentences using the words in parentheses.

1 Don't phone them now. (might / have)
They ___might be having___ lunch.
2 We had a great day at the beach yesterday. (should / come)
You _____ with us.
3 I ate too much, and now I feel sick. (shouldn't / eat)
I _____ so much.
4 I wonder why Tom didn't call me. (must / forget)
He _____.
5 You've signed the contract. (can't / change)
It _____ now.
6 I'm not sure where the children are. (may / watch)
They _____ TV.
7 Why are you so late? (should / be)
You _____ here an hour ago.
8 I saw Stephanie standing outside the movie theater. (must / wait)
She _____ for somebody.
9 He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed. (couldn't / do)
He _____ it.
10 Why didn't you contact me? (could / call)
You _____ me.
11 I'm surprised you weren't told that the road was dangerous. (should / warn)
You _____ about it.

18 Complete B's sentences using **can/could/might/must/should/would** + the verb in parentheses. In some sentences you need to use **have**: **must have ... / should have ...**, etc. In some sentences, you need the negative (**can't/couldn't**, etc.).

1 A: I'm hungry.
B: But you've just had lunch. You ___can't be___ hungry already. (be)
2 A: I haven't seen our neighbors for ages.
B: No. They ___must have gone___ away. (go)
3 A: What's the weather like? Is it raining?
B: Not right now, but it _____ later. (rain)
4 A: Where's Julia?
B: I'm not sure. She _____ out. (go)
5 A: I didn't see you at Michael's party last week.
B: No, I had to work that night, so I _____. (go)
6 A: I think I saw Ben downtown this morning.
B: No, you _____ him this morning. He's away on vacation. (see)
7 A: What time will we get to Sarah's house?
B: Well, it takes about one and a half hours, so if we leave at 3:00, we _____ there by 4:30. (get)
8 A: When was the last time you saw Max?
B: Years ago. I _____ him if I saw him now. (recognize)
9 A: Did you hear the explosion?
B: What explosion?
A: There was a loud explosion about an hour ago. You _____ it. (hear)
10 A: We weren't sure which way to go. In the end, we turned right.
B: You went the wrong way. You _____ left. (turn)

19 What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with **should I ... ?** or **should we ... ?**

1 You and a friend want to do something tonight, but you don't know what.
You say: What should we do tonight? Do you want to go somewhere?
2 You and a friend are going on vacation together, but you have to decide where.
You ask your friend: _____?
3 You try on a jacket in a store. You are not sure whether to buy it or not.
You ask a friend for advice: _____?
4 You and a friend are going out. You have to decide whether to take a taxi or walk.
You ask your friend: _____?
5 It's Olivia's birthday soon. You want to give her a present, but what?
You ask a friend: What _____? Any ideas?
6 You're meeting a friend tomorrow, but you have to decide what time.
You say: _____? Is 10:30 OK for you?

if (Conditional)

Units 24, 36–38

20 Put the verb into the correct form.

1 If you found a wallet in the street, what would you do with it? (you / find)
2 I'd better hurry. My friend will be annoyed if I'm not on time. (I / not / be)
3 I didn't realize that Alex was in the hospital. If I'd known he was in the hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (I / know)
4 If the doorbell _____, don't answer it. (ring)
5 I can't decide what to do. What would you do if _____ me? (you / be)
6 A: What should we do tomorrow?
B: Well, if _____ a nice day, we can go to the beach. (it / be)
7 A: Let's go to the beach.
B: No, it's not warm enough. If _____ warmer, I'd go. (it / be)
8 A: Did you go to the beach yesterday?
B: No, it was too cold. If _____ warmer, we might have gone. (it / be)
9 If _____ enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go? (you / have)
10 I didn't have my phone with me, so I couldn't call you. I would have called you if _____ my phone. (I / have)
11 The accident was your fault. If you'd been driving more carefully, _____. (it / not / happen)
12 A: Why do you watch the news every day?
B: Well, if _____ it, I wouldn't know what was happening in the world. (I / not / watch)

21 Complete the sentences.

1 Kate is tired all the time. She shouldn't go to bed so late.
If Kate *didn't go* to bed so late, she *wouldn't be* tired all the time.
2 It's getting late. I don't think Sarah will call me now.
I'd be surprised if Sarah ..... now.
3 I'm sorry I disturbed you. I didn't know you were busy.
If ..... you were busy, I ..... you.
4 There are a lot of accidents on this road. There is no speed limit.
There ..... so many accidents if ..... a speed limit.
5 You didn't tell me about the problem, so I didn't try to help you.
If ..... the problem, ... you.
6 It started to rain, but fortunately I had an umbrella.
I ..... very wet if ..... an umbrella.
7 Mark failed his driving test. He was very nervous, and that's why he failed.
If he ..... so nervous, he ..... the test.

22 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.

1 I'd go out tonight if .....
2 I'd have gone out last night if .....
3 If you hadn't reminded me, ...
4 If I had more free time, ...
5 If you give me the camera, ...
6 Who would you call if .....?
7 We wouldn't have been late if .....
8 If I'd been able to get a ticket, ...
9 If I'd done better at the interview, ...
10 You wouldn't be hungry now if .....
11 Cities would be nicer places if .....
12 If there were no Internet, ...

Passive

Units 40–43

23 Put the verb into the most appropriate passive form.

1 There's somebody behind us. I think *we're being followed* (we / follow).
2 A mystery is something that *can't be explained* (can't / explain).
3 We didn't play football yesterday. The game ..... (cancel).
4 The TV ..... (repair). It's working again now.
5 The village church ..... (restore). The work is almost finished.
6 The tower is the oldest part of the church. ..... (it / believe) to be over 200 years old.
7 If I didn't do my job well, ... (I / would / fire).
8 A: I left a newspaper on the desk last night and it isn't there now.
B: ..... (it / might / throw) away.
9 Joe learned to swim when he was very young. ..... (he / teach) by his mother.
10 After ..... (arrest), I was taken to the police station.
11 " ..... (you / ever / arrest)?" "No, never."
12 Two people ..... (report) to ..... (injure) in an accident at a factory in New Jersey early this morning.

24 Put the verb into the correct form, active or passive.

1 This house is very old. It was built (build) over 100 years ago.
2 My grandfather was a builder. He built (build) this house many years ago.
3 "Is your car still for sale?" "No, I ..... (sell) it."
4 A: Is the house at the end of the street still for sale?
B: No, it ..... (sell).
5 Sometimes mistakes ..... (make). It's inevitable.
6 It's not a good idea to leave your car unlocked. It ..... (might / steal).
7 My bag has disappeared. It ..... (must / steal).
8 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody ..... (must / take) it by mistake.
9 It's a serious problem. I don't know how it ..... (can / solve).
10 We didn't leave early enough. We ..... (should / leave) earlier.
11 Very often when I travel by plane, my flight ..... (delay).
12 A new bridge ..... (build) across the river. Work started last year and the bridge ..... (expect) to open next year.

25 Read these newspaper reports, and put the verbs into the most appropriate form.

1

Fire at City Hall

City Hall (1) was damaged (damage) in a fire last night. The fire, which (2) ..... (discover) at about 9:00, spread very quickly. Nobody (3) ..... (injure), but two people had to (4) ..... (rescue) from an upstairs room. A large number of documents (5) ..... (believe/ destroy). It (6) ..... (not / know) how the fire started.

2

Convenience Store Robbery

A convenience store clerk (1) ..... (force) to hand over $500 after (2) ..... (threaten) by a man with a knife. The man escaped in a car which (3) ..... (steal) earlier in the day. The car (4) ..... (later / find) in a parking lot where it (5) ..... (abandon) by the thief. A man (6) ..... (arrest) in connection with the robbery and (7) ..... (still / question) by the police.

3

Road Delays

Repair work started yesterday on Route 22. The road (1) ..... (resurface), and there will be long delays. Drivers (2) ..... (ask) to use an alternative route if possible. The work (3) ..... (expect) to last two weeks. Next Sunday, the road (4) ..... (close), and traffic (5) ..... (divert).

4

Accident

A woman (1) ..... (take) to the hospital after her car collided with a truck on the highway yesterday. She (2) ..... (allow) to go home later in the day after treatment. The road (3) ..... (block) for an hour after the accident, and traffic had to (4) ..... (reroute). A police officer said afterwards: "The woman was lucky. She could (5) ..... (kill)."

Reported Speech

Units 45–46, 48

26 Complete the sentences using reported speech.

1



A woman called at lunchtime yesterday and asked if she could speak to Paul. I told ..... and ..... . I asked ..... , but she said ..... later. But she never did.

2



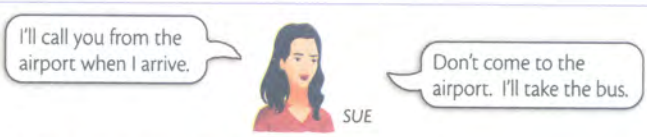
I went to New York recently, but my trip didn't begin well. I had made a hotel reservation, but when I got to the hotel, they told ..... . When I asked ..... , they said ..... , but ..... . There was nothing I could do. I just had to look for somewhere else to stay.

3



After getting off the plane, we had to stand in line for an hour to get through immigration. Finally, it was our turn. The immigration officer asked us ..... , and we told ..... . Then he wanted to know ..... and ..... . He seemed satisfied with our answers, checked our passports, and wished us a pleasant stay.

4



A: What time is Sue arriving this afternoon?
B: About 3:00. She said ..... .
A: Aren't you going to meet her?
B: No, she said not ..... . She said that ..... .

5



A few days ago a man called from a marketing company and started asking me questions. He wanted to know _____ and asked _____. I don't like people calling and asking questions like that, so I told _____ and ended the call.

6



Sarah and Anna are in a restaurant waiting for Sam.

SARAH: I wonder where Sam is. He said _____.
ANNA: Maybe he got lost.
SARAH: I don't think so. He said _____.
And I told _____.

7



Five minutes later

JOE: Is there anything to eat?
JEN: You just said _____.
JOE: Well, I am now. I'd love a banana.
JEN: A banana? But you said _____.
You told _____.

-ing and to ...

Units 51–64

27 Put the verbs into the correct form.

1 How old were you when you learned *to drive* ? (drive)
2 I don't mind *walking* home, but I'd rather *take* a taxi. (walk, take)
3 I can't make a decision. I keep _____ my mind. (change)
4 He had made his decision and refused _____ his mind. (change)
5 Why did you change your decision? What made you _____ your mind? (change)
6 It was a really good vacation. I really enjoyed _____ by the ocean again. (be)

7 Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember _____ that. (say)
8 "Remember _____ Tom tomorrow." "OK. I won't forget." (call)
9 The water here is not very good. I'd avoid _____ it if I were you. (drink)
10 I pretended _____ interested in the conversation, but it was really very boring. (be)
11 I got up and looked out the window _____ what the weather was like. (see)
12 I don't have far to go. It's not worth _____ a taxi. (take)
13 I have a friend who claims _____ able to speak five languages. (be)
14 I like _____ carefully about things before _____ a decision. (think, make)
15 I had an apartment downtown, but I didn't like _____ there, so I decided _____. (live, move)
16 Steve used _____ a football player. He had to stop _____ because of an injury. (be, play)
17 After _____ by the police, the man denied _____ 100 miles an hour. (stop, drive)
18 A: How do you make this machine _____? (work)
B: I'm not sure. Try _____ that button and see what happens. (push)

28 **Make sentences from the words in parentheses.**

1 I can't find the tickets. (I / seem / lose / them)
I seem to have lost them.
2 I don't have far to go. (it / not / worth / take / a taxi)
It's not worth taking a taxi.
3 The game was getting boring. (we / stop / watch / after a while)
4 James isn't very reliable. (he / tend / forget / things)
5 I've got a lot of luggage. (you / mind / help / me?)
6 There's nobody at home. (everybody / seem / go out)
7 We don't like our apartment. (we / think / move)
8 The vase was very valuable. (I / afraid / touch / it)
9 I wanted to get to the station in plenty of time. (I / afraid / miss / my train)
10 I don't recommend the movie. (it / not / worth / see)
11 I'm very tired after that long walk. (I / not / used / walk / so far)
12 Sue is on vacation. She called me yesterday and sounded happy. (she / seem / enjoy / herself)
13 Dan took lots of pictures while he was on vacation. (he / insist / show / them to me)
14 I don't want to do the shopping. (I'd rather / somebody else / do / it)

29 Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first.

1 I was surprised I passed the exam.
I didn't expect to pass the exam.
2 Did you manage to solve the problem?
Did you succeed in solving the problem?
3 I don't eat candy anymore.
I've given up .
4 I'd prefer not to go out tonight.
I'd rather .
5 He finds it difficult to sleep at night.
He has trouble .
6 Should I call you tonight?
Do you want ?
7 Nobody saw me come in.
I came in without .
8 Some people said I was a liar.
I was accused .
9 It will be good to see them again.
I'm looking forward .
10 What do you think I should do?
What do you advise me ?
11 It's too bad I couldn't go out with you last night.
I'd like .
12 I wish I'd taken your advice.
I regret .

a/an and the

Units 67–76

30 Put in a/an or the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1 I don't usually like staying at - hotels, but last summer we spent two weeks at a very nice hotel on the ocean.
2 If you go to live in ... foreign country, you should try and learn ... language.
3 Anna is ... economist. She lives in ... United States and works for ... investment company.
4 ... tennis is my favorite sport. I play two or three times ... week if I can, but I'm not ... very good player.
5 I won't be home for ... dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after ... work and we're going to ... movies.
6 When ... unemployment is high, it's difficult for ... people to find ... work. It's ... big problem.
7 There was ... accident as I was going ... home last night. Two people were taken to ... hospital. I think ... most accidents are caused by ... people driving too fast.
8 A: What's ... name of ... hotel where you're staying?
B: ... Ambassador. It's on ... West Street in ... suburbs. It's near ... airport.
9 I have two brothers. ... older one is training to be ... pilot. ... younger one is still in ... high school. When he leaves ... school, he wants to go to ... college to study ... engineering.

Pronouns and Determiners

Units 80–89

31 Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible.

1 I don't remember ..A.. about the accident. (*A is correct*)
(A) anything **B** something **C** nothing

2 Chris and I have known ..... for quite a long time.
A us **B** each other **C** ourselves

3 "How often do the buses run?" "..... twenty minutes."
A All **B** Each **C** Every

4 I shouted for help, but ..... came.
A nobody **B** no one **C** anybody

5 Last night we went out with some friends of .....
A us **B** our **C** ours

6 It didn't take us a long time to get here. ..... traffic.
A It wasn't much **B** There wasn't much **C** It wasn't a lot

7 Can I have ..... milk in my coffee, please?
A a little **B** any **C** some

8 Sometimes I find it difficult to .....
A concentrate **B** concentrate me **C** concentrate myself

9 There's ..... on at the movies that I want to see, so there's no point in going.
A something **B** anything **C** nothing

10 I drink ..... water every day.
A much **B** a lot of **C** lots of

11 ..... in the mall are open on Sunday.
A Most of stores **B** Most of the stores **C** The most of the stores

12 There were about twenty people in the photo. I didn't recognize ..... of them.
A any **B** none **C** either

13 I've been waiting ..... for Sarah to call.
A all morning **B** the whole morning **C** all the morning

14 I can't afford to buy anything in this store. ..... so expensive.
A All is **B** Everything is **C** All are

Adjectives and Adverbs

Units 96–105

32 There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write "OK" if the sentence is already correct.

1 The building was total destroyed in the fire. ..totally destroyed..
2 I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story. ..OK..
3 The city is very polluted. It's the more polluted place I've ever been to. .....
4 I was disappointing that I didn't get the job. I was well-qualified, and the interview went well. .....
5 Could you walk a little more slowly? .....
6 Joe works hardly, but he doesn't get paid very much. .....
7 The company's offices are in a modern large building. .....
8 Dan is a very fast runner. I wish I could run as fast as him. .....

9 I missed the three last days of the course because I was sick. .....
10 You don't look happy. What's the matter? .....
11 The weather has been unusual cold for this time of year. .....
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in it. .....
13 I got impatient because we had to wait so long time. .....
14 Is this box big enough, or do you need a bigger one? .....
15 This morning I got up more early than usual. .....

Conjunctions

Units 24, 36, 109–115

33 Which is correct?

1 I'll try to be on time, but don't worry if / ~~when~~ I'm late. (if *is correct*)
2 Don't throw that bag away. If / When you don't want it, I'll take it.
3 Please go to the reception desk if / when you arrive at the hotel.
4 We've arranged to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if / when it's raining.
5 Emma is in her final year at school. She still doesn't know what she's going to do if / when she leaves.
6 What would you do if / when you lost your keys?
7 I hope I'll be able to come to the party, but I'll let you know if / unless I can't.
8 I don't want to be disturbed, so don't call me if / unless it's something important.
9 Please sign the contract if / unless you're satisfied with the conditions.
10 I like traveling by ship as long as / unless the water is not rough.
11 You might not remember the name of the hotel, so write it down if / in case you forget it.
12 It's not cold now, but take your coat with you if / in case it gets cold later.
13 Take your coat with you, and then you can put it on if / in case it gets cold later.
14 They always have the TV on, even if / if nobody is watching it.
15 Even / Although I left home early, I got to work late.
16 Despite / Although we've known each other a long time, we're not particularly close friends.
17 "When did you leave school?" "As / When I was 17."
18 I think Amy will be very pleased as / when she hears the news.

Prepositions (Time)

Units 12, 116–119

34 Put in one of the following: **at on in during for since by until**

1 Jack has gone away. He'll be back ...in... a week.
2 We're having a party ..... Saturday. Can you come?
3 I have an interview next week. It's ..... Tuesday morning ..... 9:30.
4 The road is busy all the time, even ..... night.
5 The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always ..... time.
6 It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening ..... the same time.
7 I couldn't decide whether or not to buy the sweater. ..... the end, I decided not to.
8 Sue isn't usually here ..... weekends. She goes away.
9 I met a lot of nice people ..... my stay in New York.
10 I saw Mary ..... Friday, but I haven't seen her ..... then.
11 Robert has been doing the same job ..... five years.
12 Kim's birthday is ..... the end of March. I'm not sure exactly which day it is.
13 We have friends staying with us ..... the moment. They're staying ..... Friday.
14 If you're interested in applying for the job, your application must be received ..... Friday.
15 I'm just going out. I won't be long—I'll be back ..... ten minutes.

Prepositions (Position and Other Uses)

Units 120–125

35 Put in the missing preposition.

1 I'd love to be able to visit every country _____ the world.
2 Jessica White is my favorite author. Have you read anything _____ her?
3 There's a grocery store _____ the end of this road.
4 Tom is away at the moment. He's _____ vacation.
5 We live _____ the country, a long way from the nearest town.
6 I've got a stain _____ my jacket. I'll have to have it cleaned.
7 We went _____ a party _____ Emily's house on Saturday.
8 Boston is _____ the East Coast of the United States.
9 Look at the leaves _____ that tree. They're a beautiful color.
10 I've never been _____ Japan, but I'd really like to go.
11 Mozart died _____ Vienna in 1791 _____ the age of 35.
12 "Are you _____ this photo?" "Yes, that's me, _____ the left."
13 We went _____ the theater last night. We had seats _____ the front row.
14 If you want to turn the light on, the switch is _____ the wall _____ the door.
15 It was late when we arrived _____ the hotel.
16 I couldn't decide what to eat. There was nothing _____ the menu that I liked.
17 We live _____ a high rise. Our apartment is _____ the fifteenth floor.
18 Some parts of the movie were a bit stupid, but _____ the whole I enjoyed it.
19 "When you paid the restaurant bill, did you pay cash?" "No, I paid _____ credit card."
20 "How did you get here? _____ the bus?" "No, _____ car."
21 I watched a really interesting program _____ TV last night.
22 Jessica works for a large company. She works _____ the customer service department.
23 Anna spent two years working _____ London before returning _____ Italy.
24 How was your trip _____ the beach? Did you have a good day?
25 Next summer we're going _____ a trip to Canada.

Noun/Adjective + Preposition

Units 126–128

36 Put in the missing preposition.

1 The plan has been changed, but nobody seems to know the reason _____ this.
2 Don't ask me to decide. I'm not very good _____ making decisions.
3 Some people say that Sue is unfriendly, but she's always very nice _____ me.
4 What do you think is the best solution _____ the problem?
5 There has been a big increase _____ the number of tourists visiting the city.
6 He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn't have much contact _____ other people.
7 Paul is a great photographer. He likes taking pictures _____ people.
8 Michael got married _____ a woman he met when he was in college.
9 He's very brave. He's not scared _____ anything.
10 I'm surprised _____ the traffic today. I didn't think it would be so heavy.
11 Thank you for lending me the guidebook. It was full _____ useful information.
12 Please come in and sit down. I'm sorry _____ the mess.

Verb + Preposition

Units 129–133

37 Complete each sentence with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 She works quite hard. You can't accuse her ..... being lazy.
2 Who's going to look ..... your children while you're at work?
3 The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss ..... it.
4 The problem is becoming serious. We have to do something ..... it.
5 I prefer this chair ..... the other one. It's more comfortable.
6 I need to call ..... the office to tell them I won't be at work today.
7 The river divides the city ..... two parts.
8 "What do you think ..... your new boss?" "She's all right, I guess."
9 Can somebody please explain ..... me what I have to do?
10 I said hello to her, but she didn't answer ..... me.
11 "Do you like staying at hotels?" "It depends ..... the hotel."
12 "Have you ever been to Borla?" "No, I've never heard ..... it. Where is it?"
13 You remind me ..... somebody I knew a long time ago. You look just like her.
14 This is wonderful news! I can't believe ..... it.
15 George is not an idealist—he believes ..... being practical.
16 What's so funny? What are you laughing .....?
17 What did you do with all the money you had? What did you spend it .....?
18 If Alex asks ..... you ..... money, don't give him any.
19 I apologized ..... Sarah ..... keeping her waiting so long.
20 Hannah was very helpful. I thanked ..... her ..... everything she'd done.

Phrasal verbs

Units 134–142

38 A says something and B replies. Which goes with which?

A

1 I'm glad we have a plan.
2 I'm too warm with my coat on.
3 This jacket looks nice.
4 Your reference number is 318044BK.
5 I don't think my car will fit in that space.
6 I don't know what this word means.
7 How was the mistake discovered?
8 I'm not sure whether to accept their offer or not.
9 I don't know how to put this toy together.
10 It's a subject he doesn't like to talk about.

B

a I can back up and give you more room.
b Let me try. I'm sure I can figure it out.
c Kate pointed it out.
d ~~Yes, now let's work out the details.~~
e Yes, why don't you try it on?
f OK, I won't bring it up.
g Just a minute. I'll write it down.
h Why don't you take it off then?
i You can look it up.
j I think you should turn it down.

1 d
2 .....
3 .....
4 .....
5 .....
6 .....
7 .....
8 .....
9 .....
10 .....

39 Only one alternative is correct. Which is it?

1 Nobody believed Chris at first but he ___B___ to be right. (B *is correct*)
A came out **B** turned out **C** worked out **D** carried out

2 Here's some good news. It will _____.
A turn you up **B** put you up **C** blow you up **D** cheer you up

3 Nick and Dan were behaving badly, so Josh _____.
A told them up **B** told them off **C** told them out **D** told them over

4 The club committee is _____ of the president, the secretary, and seven other members.
A set up **B** made up **C** set out **D** made out

5 When you are finished with those board games, please _____.
A put them away **B** put them out **C** turn them off **D** turn them away

6 We moved the table to another room. It _____ too much space here.
A took in **B** took up **C** took off **D** took over

7 Liz started taking classes in college, but she _____ after six months.
A went out **B** fell out **C** turned out **D** dropped out

8 You can't predict everything. Often things don't _____ as you expect.
A make out **B** break out **C** turn out **D** get out

9 What's all that noise? What's _____?
A going off **B** getting off **C** going on **D** getting on

10 It's a very busy airport. There are planes _____ or landing every few minutes.
A going up **B** taking off **C** getting up **D** driving off

11 The road was blocked by a bus that had _____.
A broken down **B** dropped out **C** driven off **D** held up

12 Megan feels different from other kids at her school. She doesn't think she _____.
A hands in **B** turns in **C** drops in **D** fits in

40 Complete the sentences. Use two words each time.

1 Keep ___away from___ the edge of the pool. You might fall in.
2 I didn't notice that the two pictures were different until Amy pointed it _____ me.
3 I asked Dave if he had any suggestions about what we should do, but he didn't come _____ anything.
4 I'm glad Sarah is coming to the party. I'm really looking _____ seeing her again.
5 Things are changing all the time. It's difficult to keep _____ all these changes.
6 I don't want to run _____ food for the party. Are you sure we have enough?
7 Don't let me interrupt you. Go _____ your work.
8 I've had enough of being treated like this. I'm not going to put _____ it anymore.
9 I didn't enjoy the trip very much at the time, but when I look _____ it now, I realize it was a good experience and I'm glad I went on it.
10 The wedding was supposed to be a secret, so how did you find _____ it? Who told you?
11 There is a very nice atmosphere in the office where I work. Everybody gets _____ everybody else.

41 Complete each sentence using a phrasal verb that has a similar meaning to the words in parentheses.

1 The concert in the park had to be called off because of the weather. (canceled)
2 The story Kate told wasn't true. She made it up. (invented it)
3 James finally _____ an hour late. (arrived)
4 Here's an application form. Can you _____ and sign it, please? (complete it)
5 Some houses will have to be _____ to make way for the new road. (demolished)
6 Be positive! You must never _____! (stop trying)
7 I was very tired and _____ in front of the TV. (fell asleep)
8 After eight years together, they've decided to _____. (separate)
9 The noise is terrible. I can't _____ any longer. (tolerate it)
10 We don't have a lot of money, but we have enough to _____. (manage)
11 I'm sorry I'm late. The meeting _____ longer than I expected. (continued)
12 We need to make a decision today at the latest. We can't _____ any longer. (delay it)

42 Complete the sentences. Use one word each time.

1 You're driving too fast. Please slow down.
2 It was only a small fire, and I managed to _____ it out with a bucket of water.
3 The house is empty right now, but I think the new tenants are _____ in next week.
4 I've _____ on weight. My clothes don't fit anymore.
5 Their house is really nice now. They've _____ it up really well.
6 I was talking to the woman next to me on the plane, and it _____ out that she works for the same company as my brother.
7 I don't know what happened yet, but I'm going to _____ out.
8 There's no need to get angry. _____ down!
9 Come and see us more often. You can _____ in any time you like.
10 Sarah just called to say that she'll be late. She's been _____ up.
11 You've written my name wrong. It's Martin, not Marin—you _____ out the T.
12 My mom wants me to take her downtown and _____ her off at city hall this morning.
13 We had a really interesting discussion, but Lauren didn't _____ in. She just listened.
14 Jonathan is pretty fit. He _____ out at the gym every day.
15 Jen said she would help me move, but she never came. I can't believe that she _____ me down.
16 We are still discussing the contract. There are still a couple of things to _____ out.
17 My alarm clock _____ off in the middle of the night and _____ me up.

Study Guide

This guide is to help you decide which units you need to study. The sentences in the guide are grouped together (*Present and Past, Articles and Nouns,* etc.) in the same way as the units in the *Contents* (pages iii–vi).

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C, etc.). There are between two and five alternatives each time. IN SOME SENTENCES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS POSSIBLE.

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, then you probably need to study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will also find the correct sentence in this unit. (If two or three units are listed, you will find the correct sentence in the first one.)

There is a key to this study guide on page 367.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
Present and Past	
1.1 At first I didn't like my job, but ..... to enjoy it now. **A** I'm starting **B** I start	1, 3
1.2 I don't understand this sentence. What ..... ? **A** does mean this word **B** does this word mean **C** means this word	2, 47
1.3 Michael ..... tennis two or three times a week. **A** is playing usually **B** is usually playing **C** usually plays **D** plays usually	2, 3, 107
1.4 How ..... now? Better than before? **A** you are feeling **B** do you feel **C** are you feeling	4
1.5 It was a boring weekend. ..... anything. **A** I didn't **B** I don't do **C** I didn't do	5
1.6 Matt ..... while we were having dinner. **A** called **B** was calling **C** has called	6, 13
Present Perfect and Past	
2.1 Everything is going well. There ..... any problems so far. **A** weren't **B** have been **C** haven't been	7
2.2 Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this ..... . **A** has happened **B** happens **C** happened **D** is happening	7
2.3 "Are you hungry?" "No, ... lunch." **A** I just had **B** I just have **C** I've just had	8
2.4 It ..... raining for a while, but now it's raining again. **A** stopped **B** has stopped **C** was stopped	8
2.5 My mother ..... in Chile. **A** grew up **B** has grown up **C** had grown up	8, 14
2.6 Why are you out of breath? ..... ? **A** Are you running **B** Have you run **C** Have you been running	9
2.7 Where's the book I gave you? What ..... with it? **A** have you done **B** have you been doing **C** are you doing	10

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT		STUDY UNIT
2.8	"How long ..... Jane?" "A long time. Since we were in school." **A** do you know **B** have you known **C** have you been knowing	11, 10
2.9	Emily has been working here ..... . **A** for six months **B** since six months **C** six months ago **D** six months	12
2.10	It's been two years ..... Joe. **A** that I don't see **B** that I haven't seen **C** since I didn't see **D** since I saw	12
2.11	..... a lot of candy when you were a child? **A** Have you eaten **B** Had you eaten **C** Did you eat	13
2.12	Jack ..... in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles. **A** lived **B** has lived **C** has been living	13
2.13	The people sitting next to me on the plane were nervous. ..... before. **A** They haven't flown **B** They didn't fly **C** They hadn't flown **D** They'd never flown **E** They weren't flying	14
2.14	Katherine was lying on the sofa. She was tired because ..... very hard. **A** she was working **B** she's been working **C** she'd been working	15
2.15	..... a car when you were living in Miami? **A** Had you **B** Were you having **C** Have you had **D** Did you have	16, 13
2.16	I ..... tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now. **A** was playing **B** was used to play **C** used to play	17
Future		
3.1	I'm tired. ..... to bed now. Good night. **A** I go **B** I'm going	18
3.2	..... tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere. **A** I'm not working **B** I don't work **C** I won't work	18, 20
3.3	That bag looks heavy. ..... you with it. **A** I'm helping **B** I help **C** I'll help	20
3.4	I think the weather ..... nice later. **A** will be **B** is **C** is going to be **D** would be	22, 21
3.5	"Anna is in the hospital." "Yes, I know. ..... her this evening." **A** I visit **B** I'm going to visit **C** I'll visit	22, 19
3.6	We're late. The movie ..... by the time we get to the theater. **A** will already start **B** will be already started **C** will already have started	23
3.7	Don't worry ..... late tonight. **A** if I'm **B** when I'm **C** when I'll be **D** if I'll be	24

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

Modals

4.1 The fire spread quickly, but everybody _____ from the building. — 25
A was able to escape **B** managed to escape **C** could escape

4.2 I'm so tired I _____ for a week. — 26
A can sleep **B** could sleep **C** could have slept

4.3 The story _____ be true, but I don't think it is. — 26, 28
A might **B** can **C** could **D** may

4.4 Why did you stay at a hotel? You _____ with me. — 26
A can stay **B** could stay **C** could have stayed

4.5 I lost one of my gloves. I _____ it somewhere. — 27
A must drop **B** must have dropped **C** must be dropping
D must have been dropping

4.6 "Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?" "She _____ about it." — 28
A might not know **B** may not know **C** might not have known
D may not have known

4.7 What _____ to get a new driver's license? — 30
A have I to do **B** do I have to do **C** I must do **D** I have to

4.8 You missed a great party last night. You _____. Why didn't you? — 31
A must have come **B** should have come **C** might have come
D had to come

4.9 Liz suggested _____ some new clothes. — 32
A that Mary buy **B** that Mary buys **C** Mary to buy **D** Mary buy

4.10 You're always at home. You _____ out more often. — 33
A should go **B** had better go **C** had better to go

4.11 It's late. It's time _____ home. — 33
A we go **B** we must go **C** we should go **D** we went **E** to go

4.12 _____ a little longer, but I really have to go now. — 34
A I'd stay **B** I'll stay **C** I can stay **D** I'd have stayed

if and wish

5.1 I'm not tired enough to go to bed. If I _____ to bed now, I wouldn't sleep. — 36
A go **B** went **C** had gone **D** would go

5.2 If I were rich, _____ a lot. — 37
A I'll travel **B** I can travel **C** I would travel **D** I traveled

5.3 I wish I _____ have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do. — 37, 39
A don't **B** didn't **C** wouldn't **D** won't

5.4 The view was wonderful. I would have taken some pictures if _____ a camera with me. — 38
A I had **B** I would have **C** I would have had **D** I'd had

5.5 The weather is horrible. I wish it _____ raining. — 39
A would stop **B** stopped **C** stops **D** will stop

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

Passive

6.1 We ..... by a loud noise during the night. — 40
A woke up **B** are woken up **C** were woken up **D** were waking up

6.2 A new supermarket is going to ..... next year. — 41
A build **B** be built **C** be building **D** building

6.3 There's somebody walking behind us. I think ..... . — 41
A we are following **B** we are being following **C** we are followed
D we are being followed

6.4 "Where ..... ?" "In Chicago." — 42
A were you born **B** are you born **C** have you been born **D** did you born

6.5 There was a fight, but nobody ..... . — 42
A was hurt **B** got hurt **C** hurt

6.6 Jen ..... to call me last night, but she didn't. — 43
A supposed **B** is supposed **C** was supposed

6.7 Where ..... ? Which hairdresser did you go to? — 44
A did you cut your hair **B** have you cut your hair
C did you have cut your hair **D** did you have your hair cut

Reported Speech

7.1 John left the room suddenly. He said he ..... to go. — 46, 45
A had **B** has **C** have

7.2 (*You meet Joe on the street*) — 46, 45
Joe, this is a surprise. Lauren said you ..... in the hospital.
A are **B** were **C** was

7.3 Anna ..... and left. — 46
A said goodbye to me **B** said me goodbye **C** told me goodbye

Questions and Auxiliary Verbs

8.1 "What time ..... ?" "At 8:30." — 47
A starts the movie **B** does start the movie **C** does the movie start

8.2 "Do you know where ..... ?" "No, he didn't say." — 48
A Tom has gone **B** has Tom gone **C** has gone Tom

8.3 The police officer stopped us and asked us where ..... . — 48
A were we going **B** are we going **C** we are going **D** we were going

8.4 "Do you think it will rain?" "..... " — 49
A I hope not. **B** I don't hope. **C** I don't hope so.

8.5 "You don't know where Lauren is, ... ?" "Sorry, I have no idea." — 50
A don't you **B** do you **C** is she **D** are you

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT

-ing and to ...

9.1 Suddenly, everybody stopped _____. There was silence. — 51
A talking **B** from talking **C** to talk **D** that they talked

9.2 I'd better go now. I promised _____ late. — 52, 34
A not being **B** not to be **C** to not be **D** I wouldn't be

9.3 Do you want _____ with you, or do you want to go alone? — 53
A me coming **B** me to come **C** that I come **D** that I will come

9.4 I know I locked the door. I clearly remember _____ it. — 54
A locking **B** to lock **C** to have locked

9.5 She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help _____. — 55
A laughing **B** to laugh **C** that she laughed **D** laugh

9.6 Dan lives in Vancouver now. He likes _____ there. — 56
A living **B** to live

9.7 It's not my favorite job, but I like _____ the kitchen as often as possible. — 56
A cleaning **B** clean **C** to clean **D** that I clean

9.8 I'm tired. I'd rather _____ out tonight, if you don't mind. — 57
A not going **B** not to go **C** don't go **D** not go

9.9 Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or would you rather _____ her? — 57
A I'd tell **B** I'll tell **C** I should tell **D** I tell

9.10 Are you looking forward _____ on vacation? — 58, 60
A going **B** to go **C** to going **D** that you go

9.11 When Rachel went to Tokyo, she wasn't used _____ on the left. — 59
A driving **B** to driving **C** to drive **D** drive

9.12 I'm thinking _____ a house. Do you think that's a good idea? — 60, 64
A to buy **B** of to buy **C** of buying **D** about buying

9.13 I had no trouble _____ a place to stay. In fact, it was surprisingly easy. — 61
A find **B** found **C** to find **D** finding

9.14 I called the restaurant _____ a reservation. — 62
A for make **B** to make **C** for making **D** for to make

9.15 James doesn't speak clearly. _____ — 63
A It is hard to understand him. **B** He is hard to understand.
C He is hard to understand him.

9.16 The sidewalk was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid _____. — 64
A of falling **B** from falling **C** to fall **D** to falling

9.17 I didn't hear you _____ in. You must have been very quiet. — 65
A come **B** to come **C** came

9.18 _____ a hotel, we looked for somewhere to eat. — 66
A Finding **B** After finding **C** Having found **D** We found

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT

Articles and Nouns

10.1 It wasn't your fault. It was ..... . — 67
A accident **B** an accident **C** some accident

10.2 Where are you going to put all your ..... ? — 68
A furniture **B** furnitures

10.3 "Where are you going?" "I'm going to buy ..... ." — 68
A a bread **B** some bread **C** a loaf of bread

10.4 Jessica is ..... . She works at a large hospital. — 69, 70
A nurse **B** a nurse **C** the nurse

10.5 Natalie works six days ..... week. — 70
A in **B** for **C** a **D** the

10.6 There are millions of stars in ..... . — 71
A space **B** a space **C** the space

10.7 Every day ..... starts at 9:00 and finishes at 3:00. — 72
A school **B** a school **C** the school

10.8 ..... changed a lot in the last thirty years. — 73
A Life has **B** The life has **C** The lives have

10.9 When ..... invented? — 74
A was camera **B** were cameras **C** were the cameras
D was the camera

10.10 Have you been to ..... ? — 75
A Canada or United States **B** the Canada or the United States
C Canada or the United States **D** the Canada or United States

10.11 On our first day in Moscow, we visited ..... . — 76
A Kremlin **B** a Kremlin **C** the Kremlin

10.12 I have some news for you. ..... . — 77, 68
A It's good news **B** They are good news **C** It's a good news

10.13 It took us quite a long time to get here. It was ..... trip. — 78
A three hour **B** a three-hours **C** a three-hour

10.14 This isn't my book. It's ..... . — 79
A my sister **B** my sister's **C** from my sister **D** of my sister
E of my sister's

Pronouns and Determiners

11.1 What time should we ..... tomorrow? — 80
A meet **B** meet us **C** meet ourselves

11.2 I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. ..... is getting married. — 81
A A friend of me **B** A friend of mine **C** One my friends

11.3 They live on a busy street. ..... a lot of noise from the traffic. — 82
A It must be **B** It must have **C** There must have **D** There must be

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

STUDY UNIT

11.4 He's lazy. He never does _____ work. — 83
A some **B** any **C** no

11.5 "What would you like to eat?" "I don't care. _____—whatever you have." — 83
A Something **B** Anything **C** Nothing

11.6 The course didn't go well. _____ of the students were happy. — 84
A All **B** No one **C** None **D** Nobody

11.7 We went shopping and spent _____ money. — 85
A a lot of **B** much **C** lots of **D** many

11.8 I was sick yesterday. I spent _____ in bed. — 86
A the most of day **B** most of day **C** the most of the day
D most of the day

11.9 I asked two people how to get to the train station, but _____ of them knew. — 87
A none **B** either **C** both **D** neither

11.10 Our vacation was a disaster. _____ went wrong. — 88
A Everything **B** All **C** All things **D** All of things

11.11 The bus service is excellent. There's a bus _____ ten minutes. — 88, 89
A each **B** every **C** all

11.12 There were four books on the table. _____ a different color. — 89
A Each of books was **B** Each of the books was **C** Each book was

Relative Clauses

12.1 I don't like stories _____ have unhappy endings. — 90
A that **B** they **C** which **D** who

12.2 I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything _____ was true. — 91
A they said **B** that they said **C** what they said

12.3 We helped some people _____. — 92
A their car had broken down **B** which car had broken down
C whose car had broken down **D** that their car had broken down

12.4 Anna told me about her new job, _____ a lot. — 93
A that she's enjoying **B** which she's enjoying **C** she's enjoying
D she's enjoying it

12.5 Sarah couldn't meet us, _____ was too bad. — 94
A that **B** it **C** what **D** which

12.6 Kevin showed me some pictures _____ by his father. — 95, 90
A painting **B** painted **C** that were painted **D** they were painted

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT

Adjectives and Adverbs

13.1 Nicole doesn't enjoy her job anymore. She's ..... because every day she does exactly the same thing. — 96
A boring **B** bored

13.2 Liz was carrying a ..... bag. — 97
A black small plastic **B** small and black plastic **C** small black plastic
D plastic small black

13.3 Maria's English is excellent. She speaks ..... . — 98
A perfectly English **B** English perfectly **C** perfect English
D English perfect

13.4 He ..... to find a job, but he had no luck. — 99
A tried hard **B** tried hardly **C** hardly tried

13.5 I haven't seen her for ..... I've forgotten what she looks like. — 100
A so long **B** so long time **C** a such long time **D** such a long time

13.6 Don't stand on that chair. It isn't ..... . — 101
A enough strong to stand on **B** strong enough to stand on it
C strong enough to stand on **D** strong enough for stand on

13.7 The exam was quite easy— ..... I expected. — 102
A more easy that **B** more easy than **C** easier than **D** easier as

13.8 The more expensive the hotel, ... — 103
A the service will be better **B** will be better the service
C the better the service **D** better the service will be

13.9 Tom is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as ..... . — 104
A he **B** him **C** he can

13.10 What's ..... you've ever made? — 105
A most important decision **B** the more important decision
C the decision more important **D** the most important decision

13.11 Ben likes walking. ..... — 106
A Every morning he walks to work. **B** He walks to work every morning.
C He walks every morning to work. **D** He every morning walks to work.

13.12 Joe never calls me. ..... — 107
A Always I have to call him. **B** I always have to call him.
C I have always to call him. **D** I have to call always him.

13.13 Megan ..... . She left last month. — 108
A still doesn't work here **B** doesn't still work here **C** no more works here
D doesn't work here anymore **E** no longer works here

13.14 ..... Emma can't drive, she has a car. — 109, 110
A Even **B** Even when **C** Even if **D** Even though

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT

Conjunctions and Prepositions

14.1 I couldn't sleep _____ very tired. — 110
A although I was **B** despite I was **C** despite of being **D** in spite of being

14.2 You should insure your bike _____ stolen. — 111
A in case it will be **B** if it will be **C** in case it is **D** if it is

14.3 The club is for members only. You _____ you're a member. — 112
A can't go in if **B** can go in only if **C** can't go in unless
D can go in unless

14.4 Yesterday we watched TV all evening _____ we didn't have anything better to do. — 113
A when **B** as **C** while **D** since

14.5 "What's that noise?" "It sounds _____ a baby crying." — 114, 115
A as **B** like **C** as if **D** as though

14.6 They are very kind to me. They treat me _____ their own son. — 115
A like I'm **B** as if I'm **C** as if I was **D** as if I were

14.7 I'm going to be in Toronto next week. I hope the weather will be good _____. — 116
A while I'll be there **B** while I'm there **C** during my visit
D during I'm there

14.8 Joe is away right now. I don't know exactly when he's coming back, but I'm sure he'll be back _____ Monday. — 117
A by **B** until

Prepositions

15.1 Bye! I'll see you _____. — 118
A at Friday morning **B** on Friday morning **C** in Friday morning
D Friday morning

15.2 I'm going away _____ the end of January. — 119
A at **B** on **C** in

15.3 When we were in Chile, we spent a few days _____ Santiago. — 120, 122
A at **B** to **C** in

15.4 Our apartment is _____ the second floor of the building. — 121
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

15.5 I saw Steve _____ a conference on Saturday. — 122
A at **B** on **C** in **D** to

15.6 What time did you _____ the hotel? — 123
A arrive to **B** arrive at **C** arrive in **D** get to **E** get in

15.7 I'm going _____ vacation next week. I'll be away for two weeks. — 124
A at **B** on **C** in **D** for

15.8 We traveled _____ 6:45 train, which arrived at 8:30. — 125
A in the **B** on the **C** by the **D** by

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT	STUDY UNIT
15.9 "Who is this painting ..... ? Picasso?" "I have no idea." **A** of **B** from **C** by	125
15.10 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage ..... the other car. **A** of **B** for **C** to **D** on **E** at	126
15.11 I like them very much. They have always been very nice ..... me. **A** of **B** for **C** to **D** with	127
15.12 I'm not very good ..... repairing things. **A** at **B** for **C** in **D** about	128
15.13 I don't understand this sentence. Can you ..... ? **A** explain to me this word **B** explain me this word **C** explain this word to me	129
15.14 If you're worried about the problem, you should do something ..... it. **A** for **B** about **C** against **D** with	130
15.15 "Who is Tom Hart?" "I have no idea. I've never heard ..... him." **A** about **B** from **C** after **D** of	131
15.16 I don't know what time we'll arrive. It depends ..... the traffic. **A** of **B** for **C** from **D** on	132
15.17 I prefer tea ..... coffee. **A** to **B** than **C** against **D** over	133, 57
Phrasal Verbs	
16.1 These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to ..... . **A** take off **B** take them off **C** take off them	134
16.2 They were playing cards, so I ..... . **A** joined in **B** came in **C** got in **D** broke in	135
16.3 Nobody believed Matt at first, but he ..... to be right. **A** worked out **B** came out **C** found out **D** turned out	136
16.4 We can't ..... making a decision. We have to decide now. **A** put away **B** put over **C** put off **D** put out	137
16.5 The party ..... until 4:00 in the morning. **A** went by **B** went to **C** went on **D** went off	138
16.6 You can always rely on Nick. He'll never ..... . **A** put you up **B** let you down **C** take you over **D** see you off	139
16.7 Children under 16 ..... half the population of the city. **A** make up **B** put up **C** take up **D** bring up	140
16.8 I'm surprised to hear that Kate and John have ..... . They seemed very happy together. **A** broken up **B** ended up **C** finished up **D** split up	141
16.9 I parked in a no-parking zone, but I ..... it. **A** came up with **B** got away with **C** made off with **D** got on with	142

Answer Key to Exercises

In some of the exercises you have to use your own ideas to write sentences. Example answers are given in the Answer Key. If possible, check your answers with somebody who speaks English well.

UNIT 1

1.1

2 He's tying / He is tying
3 They're crossing / They are crossing
4 He's scratching / He is scratching
5 She's hiding / She is hiding
6 They're waving / They are waving

1.2

2 e
3 g
4 a
5 d
6 h
7 b
8 c

1.3

2 Why are you crying?
3 Is she working today?
4 What are you doing these days?
5 What is she studying? / What's she studying?
6 What are they doing?
7 Are you enjoying it?
8 Why are you walking so fast?

1.4

3 I'm not listening / I am not listening
4 She's having / She is having
5 He's learning / He is learning
6 they aren't speaking / they're not speaking / they are not speaking
7 it's getting / it is getting
8 isn't working / 's not working / is not working
9 I'm looking / I am looking
10 It's working / It is working
11 They're building / They are building
12 He's not enjoying / He is not enjoying
13 The weather's changing / The weather is changing
14 He's starting / He is starting

UNIT 2

2.1

2 go
3 causes
4 closes
5 live
6 take
7 connects

2.2

2 do the banks close
3 don't use
4 does Maria come
5 do you do
6 does this word mean
7 doesn't get
8 takes ... does it take

2.3

3 rises
4 make
5 don't eat
6 doesn't believe
7 translates
8 don't tell
9 flows

2.4

2 Does your sister play tennis?
3 How often do you go to the movies?
4 What does your brother do?
5 Do you speak Spanish?
6 Where do your grandparents live?

2.5

2 I promise
3 I insist
4 I apologize
5 I recommend
6 I agree

UNIT 3

3.1

3 is trying
4 calls
5 *OK*
6 are they talking
7 *OK*
8 *OK*
9 It's getting / It is getting
10 I'm coming / I am coming
11 He always starts
12 *OK*

3.2

2 a Are you listening
b Do you listen
3 a flows
b is flowing / 's flowing
4 a I don't do
b do you usually do
5 a She's staying / She is staying
b She always stays

3.3

2 She speaks
3 Everybody's waiting / Everybody is waiting
4 do you pronounce
5 isn't working / is not working / 's not working
6 is improving
7 lives
8 I'm starting / I am starting
9 They're visiting / They are visiting
10 does your father do
11 it doesn't take
12 I'm learning / I am learning ... is teaching / 's teaching

3.4

2 It's always breaking down.
3 I'm always making the same mistake. / ... that mistake.
4 You're always leaving your phone at home.

UNIT 4

4.1

2 believes
3 I don't remember / I do not remember *or* I can't remember
4 I'm using / I am using
5 I need
6 consists
7 does he want
8 is he looking
9 do you recognize
10 I'm thinking / I am thinking
11 do you think
12 he seems

4.2

2 I'm thinking about something. / I am thinking ...
3 Who does this umbrella belong to?
4 This smells good.
5 Is anybody sitting there?
6 These gloves don't fit me.

4.3

3 *OK* (I feel *is also correct*)
4 does it taste
5 *OK*
6 do you see
7 *OK*

4.4

2 's / is
3 's being / is being
4 're / are
5 are you being
6 Are you

UNIT 5

5.1

2 had
3 She walked to work
4 It took her (about) half an hour
5 She started work
6 She didn't have (any) lunch. / ... eat (any) lunch.
7 She finished work
8 She was tired when she got home.
9 She cooked / She made
10 She didn't go
11 She went to bed
12 She slept

5.2

2 taught
3 sold
4 fell ... hurt
5 threw ... caught
6 spent ... bought ... cost

5.3

2 did you travel / did you go
3 did it take (you) / was your trip / were you there
4 did you stay
5 How was the weather *or* What was the weather like
6 Did you go to / Did you see / Did you visit

5.4

3 didn't disturb
4 left
5 were
6 didn't sleep
7 didn't cost
8 flew
9 didn't have
10 wasn't

UNIT 6

6.1

2 wasn't listening
3 were sitting
4 was working
5 weren't looking
6 was snowing
7 were you going
8 was looking

6.2

2 e
3 a
4 g
5 c
6 d
7 b

6.3

1 didn't see ... was looking
2 was riding ... stepped ... was going ... managed ... didn't hit

6.4

2 were you doing
3 Did you go
4 were you driving ... happened
5 took ... wasn't looking
6 didn't know ... did
7 saw ... was trying
8 was walking ... heard ... was following ... started
9 wanted ... changed
10 dropped ... was doing ... didn't break

UNIT 7

7.1

2 Have you ever been to California?
3 Have you ever run a marathon?
4 Have you ever spoken to a famous person?
5 What's the most beautiful place you've ever visited? / ... you have ever visited?

7.2

3 haven't eaten
4 I haven't played (it)
5 I've had / I have had
6 I haven't read
7 I've never been / I haven't been
8 it's happened / it has happened *or* that's happened / that has happened
9 I've never tried / I haven't tried *or* I've never eaten / I haven't eaten
10 's been / has been
11 I've never seen / I haven't seen

7.3

Example answers:

2 I haven't taken a bus this week.
3 I haven't been to the movies recently.
4 I haven't read a book for ages.
5 I haven't lost anything today.

7.4

2 It's the first time they've seen a giraffe. / ... they have seen ...
3 She's / She has never ridden a horse before.
4 This is the second time they've been to Japan. / ... they have been to Japan.
5 It's not the first time she's / she has / Emily has stayed at this hotel.
6 He's / He has / Ben has never played tennis before. *or* He/Ben hasn't played tennis before.

UNIT 8

8.1

2 has changed
3 forgot
4 went
5 had
6 has improved

8.2

3 did William Shakespeare write
4 *OK* (I forgot *is also correct*)
5 Who invented
6 *OK*
7 We washed
8 Where were you born
9 *OK* (Mary went *is also correct*)
10 Albert Einstein was the scientist who developed
11 I applied

8.3

2 He just went out / He's just gone out
3 I haven't finished yet / I didn't finish yet
4 I've already done it / I already did it
5 Have you found a place to live yet / Did you find a place to live yet
6 I haven't decided yet. / I didn't decide yet.
7 she just came back / she's just come back
8 already invited me / has already invited me

UNIT 9

9.1

2 's been watching TV / has been watching TV *or* ... watching television
3 've been playing tennis / have been playing tennis
4 's been running / has been running

9.2

2 Have you been waiting long?
3 What have you been doing?
4 How long have you been working here?
5 How long have you been doing that?

9.3

2 've been waiting / have been waiting
3 've been learning Japanese / have been learning Japanese
4 She's been working there / She has been working there
5 They've been going there / They have been going there *or* ... going to Mexico for years.

9.4

2 I've been looking / I have been looking
3 are you looking
4 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
5 I've been thinking / I have been thinking
6 he's working / he is working
7 She's been working / She has been working
8 you're driving / you are driving
9 has been traveling

UNIT 10

10.1

2 She's been traveling / She has been traveling ... She's visited / She has visited ...
3 He's won / He has won ... He's been playing tennis / He has been playing ...
4 They've been making / They have been making ... They've made / They have made ...

10.2

2 Have you been waiting long?
3 Have you caught any fish?
4 How many people have you invited?
5 How long have you been teaching?
6 How many books have you written? How long have you been writing books?
7 How long have you been saving (money)? How much money have you saved?

10.3

2 Somebody's broken / Somebody has broken
3 Have you been working
4 Have you ever worked
5 has she gone
6 I've had / I have had
7 I've been watching / I have been watching
8 He's appeared / He has appeared
9 I haven't been waiting
10 you've been crying / you have been crying
11 it's stopped / it has stopped
12 They've been playing / They have been playing
13 I've lost / I have lost ... Have you seen
14 I've been reading / I have been reading ... I haven't finished
15 I've read / I have read

UNIT 11

11.1

2 have you lived
3 It's raining
4 has been
5 Have you been waiting
6 We're living
7 I haven't known
8 She's
9 have you had
10 I've been feeling

11.2

2 How long have you known Katherine?
3 How long has your sister been in Australia?
4 How long have you been teaching English? / How long have you taught English?
5 How long have you had that jacket?
6 How long has Joe been working at the airport? / How long has Joe worked at the airport?
7 Have you always lived in Chicago?

11.3

3 's been/has been
4 's/is
5 haven't played
6 've been waiting / have been waiting
7 've known / have known
8 hasn't been
9 lives *or* 's living / is living
10 's lived / has lived *or* 's been living / has been living
11 's been watching / has been watching
12 haven't watched
13 've had / have had
14 haven't been
15 've always wanted / have always wanted

UNIT 12

12.1

2 since
3 for (*also correct without* for)
4 for (*also correct without* for)
5 since
6 for
7 since
8 since
9 for

12.2

2 How long have you had this car?
3 How long have you been waiting?
4 When did the class start?
5 When did Anna arrive in New York?
6 How long have you known each other?

12.3

3 He has been sick since Sunday.
4 She got married a year ago.
5 I've had a headache since I woke up.
6 The meeting started/began at 9:00.
7 I've been working in a hotel for six months. / I've been working there ...
8 Kate started learning Japanese a long time ago.

12.4

2 No, I haven't seen Megan/her for about a month.
3 No, I haven't been swimming for a long time. *or* ... gone swimming for a long time.
4 No, I haven't ridden a bike for ages.
6 No, it's been about a month since I (last) saw Megan.
7 No, it's been a long time since I (last) went swimming.
8 No, it's been ages since I (last) rode a bike.

UNIT 13

13.1

3 *OK*
4 I bought
5 Where were you
6 Maria left school
7 *OK*
8 *OK*
9 *OK*
10 When was this bridge built?

13.2

2 The weather has been cold recently.
3 It was cold last week.
4 I didn't eat any fruit yesterday.
5 I haven't eaten any fruit today.
6 Emily has earned a lot of money this year.
7 She didn't earn so much last year.
8 Have you had a vacation recently?

13.3

3 I didn't sleep
4 There was ... there were
5 worked ... he gave
6 She's lived / She has lived
7 died ... I never met
8 I've never met / I have never met
9 I haven't seen
10 Did you go ...was
11 It's been / It has been ... it was
12 have you lived / have you been living ... did you live ... did you live

13.4

Example answers:

2 I haven't bought anything today.
3 I didn't watch TV yesterday.
4 I went out with some friends last night.
5 I haven't been to the movies recently.
6 I've read a lot of books recently.

UNIT 14

14.1

2 It had changed a lot.
3 She'd arranged to do something else. / She had arranged ...
4 The movie had already started.
5 I hadn't seen him for five years.
6 They'd just had lunch. / They had just had ...

14.2

2 I'd never heard it before. / I had never heard ... / I hadn't heard ...
3 He'd never played (tennis) before. / He had never played ... / He hadn't played ...
4 We'd never been there before. / We had never been ... / We hadn't been ...

14.3

2 there was ... she'd gone / she had gone
3 He'd just come back from / He had just come back from ... He looked
4 got a phone call
He was ... He'd sent her / He had sent her ... she'd never replied (to them) / she had never replied (to them)

14.4

2 I went
3 had gone
4 he'd already traveled / he had already traveled
5 broke
6 we saw ... had broken ... we stopped

UNIT 15

15.1

2 They'd been playing football. / They had been playing ...
3 I'd been looking forward to it. / I had been looking forward ...
4 She'd been having a bad dream. / She had been having ...
5 He'd been watching a movie. / He had been watching ...
6 They'd been waiting a long time. / They had been waiting ...

15.2

2 I'd been waiting / I had been waiting ... I realized (that) I was
3 went ... had been working *or* had worked
4 had been playing ... started
5 Example answer:
I'd been walking for about ten minutes when a car suddenly stopped just behind me.

15.3

2 We'd been traveling
3 He was looking
4 She'd been running
5 He was walking
6 I'd had it
7 I'd been going
8 I've been training
9 (When I finally arrived,) she was waiting ... / she'd been waiting (such a long time)
10 a he was already working
b had already been working
c He's been working

UNIT 16

16.1

2 h
3 c
4 g
5 b
6 a
7 e
8 f

16.2

3 don't have / haven't got (haven't *is less usual*)
4 didn't have
5 doesn't have / hasn't got (hasn't *is less usual*)
6 Do you have / Have you got (Have you *is less usual*)
7 didn't have
8 Does he have / Has he got (Has he *is less usual*)
9 did you have
10 don't have / haven't got
11 had ... didn't

16.3

3 I didn't have my phone
4 I have a cold *or* I've got a cold
5 *OK*
6 I didn't have any energy
7 *OK* (*or* It hasn't got many stores.)
8 Did you have (Had you *is unusual*)
9 *OK*
10 he had a beard
11 OK (*or* We've got plenty of time.)
12 do you have breakfast

16.4

2 had a bad dream
3 had a party
4 have a look
5 's having / is having a nice time
6 had a chat
7 Did you have trouble
8 had a baby
9 Have a good trip
10 haven't had a vacation

UNIT 17

17.1

2 used to have/ride
3 used to live
4 used to be
5 used to eat/have
6 used to take
7 used to be
8 used to work

17.2

2 used
3 used to be
4 did
5 used to
6 use
7 to
8 be able
9 didn't

17.3

2–6

- She used to be very lazy, but she works very hard these days.
- She didn't use to like cheese, but she eats lots of cheese now.
- She used to play the piano, but she hasn't played the piano for a long time. / ... played it for a long time.
- She didn't use to drink tea, but she likes it now.
- She used to have a dog, but it died two years ago.

17.4

Example answers:

3 I used to be a vegetarian, but now I eat meat sometimes.
4 I used to watch TV a lot, but I don't watch it much now.
5 I used to hate getting up early, but now it's no problem.
7 I didn't use to drink coffee, but I drink it every day now.
8 I didn't use to like hot weather, but now I love it.

UNIT 18

18.1

2 How long are you going for?
3 When are you leaving?
4 Are you going alone?
5 Are you traveling by car?
6 Where are you staying?

18.2

2 We're having
3 I'm not working
4 I'm leaving
5 are you going
6 Laura isn't coming / Laura's not coming
7 I'm going
8 He's working / He is working

18.3

Example answers:

2 I'm working tomorrow morning.
3 I'm not doing anything tomorrow night.
4 I'm going swimming next Sunday.
5 I'm going to a party tonight.

18.4

2 Are you going
3 he's moving / he is moving
4 I'm going / I am going ... does it start
5 we're meeting / we are meeting
6 Are you doing
7 does this semester end ... starts
8 We're going / We are going ... Who's getting / Who is getting
9 Are you watching ...
10 leaves ... arrives

11 It finishes
12 I'm not using / I am not using

UNIT 19

19.1

2 What are you going to wear?
3 Where are you going to put it?
4 Who are you going to invite?
5 How are you going to cook it?

19.2

2 I'm going to try
3 I'm going to say
4 I'm going to wash
5 I'm not going to accept
6 I'm going to learn
7 I'm going to run
8 I'm going to complain
9 I'm not going to tell

19.3

2 He's going to be late.
3 The boat is going to sink.
4 They're going to run out of gas.
5 It's going to cost a lot (of money) to repair the car.

19.4

2 was going to buy
3 were going to play
4 was going to call
5 was going to be
6 was going to quit
7 were you going to say

UNIT 20

20.1

2 I'll turn / I'll put
3 I'll check
4 I'll do
5 I'll show
6 I'll have
7 I'll stay / I'll wait
8 I'll try

20.2

2 I think I'll go to bed.
3 I think I'll go for a walk.
4 I don't think I'll have (any) lunch.
5 I don't think I'll go swimming today.

20.3

2 I'll meet
3 I'll stay
4 I'm having
5 I won't forget
6 we're going
7 Are you doing
8 Will you do
9 Do you drive
10 won't tell
11 I'll do

UNIT 21

21.1

2 won't
3 'll/will
4 won't
5 'll/will
6 won't

21.2

2 It will look
3 you'll like / you will like
4 You'll enjoy / You will enjoy
5 You'll get / You will get
6 people will live
7 we'll see / we will see
8 she'll come / she will come
9 she'll mind
10 it will be

21.3

2 Do you think it will rain?
3 When do you think it will end?
4 How much do you think it will cost?
5 Do you think they'll get married? / ... they will get married?
6 What time do you think you'll be back? / ... you will be back?
7 What do you think will happen?

21.4

Example answers:
2 I'll be in bed.
3 I'll be at work.
4 I'll probably be at home.
5 I don't know where I'll be.

21.5

2 I'll never forget it.
3 You'll laugh
4 I'm going
5 will win
6 is coming
7 It won't hurt
8 What will happen
9 we're going

UNIT 22

22.1

2 I'll lend
3 I'm going to wash
4 I'll show
5 are you going to paint
6 I'm going to buy
7 I'll have
8 I'm not going to finish
9 (What) is he going to study / (What)'s he going to study
10 I'll call
11 he's going to take ... he's going to do.

22.2

2 I'll see
3 I'm going to sell
4 you'll find (you're going to find *is also possible*)
5a I'm going to throw
5b I'll take it.
6a I'll take
6b Amy is going to take *or* is taking

22.3

2 d
3 h
4 g
5 c
6 a
7 e
8 b

UNIT 23

23.1

2 b *is true*
3 a *and* c *are true*
4 b *and* d *are true*
5 c *and* d *are true*
6 c *is true*

23.2

2 be going
3 won't be playing
4 will be starting
5 be watching
6 will you be doing
7 won't be going
8 will be landing

23.3

2 we'll be playing / we will be playing
3 She'll be waiting / She will be waiting
4 it will have finished (*or* it will be finished)
5 you'll still be living / you will still be living
6 she'll have traveled / she will have traveled
7 I'll be staying / I will be staying
8 he'll have spent / he will have spent
9 I won't be doing / I will not be doing

UNIT 24

24.1

2 we'll let
3 starts
4 it changes
5 I'll make
6 I'm 40
7 I'll wait
8 he grows up
9 you're
10 is
11 will be
12 you've had

24.2
2 she goes
3 you know
4 I'll wait / I will wait ... you're / you are
5 Will you still be ... I get
6 there are ... I'll let / I will let
7 you won't recognize / you will not recognize ... you see
8 you need ... I'm / I am

24.3
2 it gets dark
3 you decide *or* you've decided / you have decided
4 you're in Hong Kong *or* you go to Hong Kong
5 build the new road *or* 've built the new road / have built the new road
6 she apologizes *or* she's apologized / she has apologized

24.4
2 if
3 If
4 when
5 If
6 When
7 if
8 if

UNIT 25

25.1
3 can
4 be able to
5 been able to
6 can (*or* will be able to)
7 be able to
8 can
9 be able to

25.2
Example answers:
2 I used to be able to run fast.
3 I'd like to be able to play the piano.
4 I've never been able to get up early.

25.3
2 could run
3 can wait
4 couldn't sleep
5 can't hear
6 couldn't believe

25.4
2 was able to finish it
3 were able to solve it
4 was able to get away

25.5
4 couldn't
5 managed to
6 could
7 managed to
8 could
9 couldn't
10 managed to

UNIT 26

26.1
2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d

26.2
2 could
3 can
4 could
5 can
6 can
7 could
8 can
9 could
10 could

26.3
2 could have gone
3 could be
4 could have been
5 could have
6 could come
7 have moved
8 gone

26.4
3 couldn't wear
4 couldn't have done
5 couldn't have been
6 couldn't afford (*or* couldn't do)
7 couldn't have studied
8 couldn't stand

UNIT 27

27.1
2 must
3 must not
4 must
5 must
6 must not
7 must
8 must not

27.2
3 know / have met
4 have left
5 be
6 have been
7 be looking
8 have heard
9 have been
10 be joking / be kidding

27.3
3 It must have been very expensive.
4 They must have gone away.
5 It must not have been easy for her.
6 He must have been waiting for somebody.
7 She must not have understood what I said.
8 I must have forgotten to lock it.
9 The driver must not have seen the red light.
10 He must not have worn them much.

27.4
2 must not
3 can't
4 must not
5 can't
6 must not

UNIT 28

28.1
2 might know
3 might be Brazilian
4 may not be possible
5 may be Tom's
6 might be driving
7 might have one
8 may not be feeling well

28.2
2 have been
3 have arrived
4 be waiting
5 have told
6 have gone
7 be watching
8 have
9 have left
10 have heard
11 have forgotten

28.3
2 might not have wanted
3 couldn't have been an accident
4 couldn't have tried
5 might not have been American

UNIT 29

29.1
2 I'm going to get
3 He might come
4 I might hang
5 She's going
6 I might go away

29.2
2 might wake
3 might spill
4 might need
5 might hear
6 might slip

29.3
2 might have to leave
3 might be able to see
4 might have to pay
5 might have to wait
6 might be able to fix

29.4
2 I might not recognize him.
3 We might not be able to get tickets for the game.
4 I might not have time to do the shopping.
5 I might not be able to go to the wedding.

29.5

2 might as well buy
3 might as well paint the bathroom
4 might as well watch

UNIT 30

30.1

3 I have to go / I'll have to go
4 do you have to go / will you have to go
5 he has to get up
6 we had to run
7 does she have to work
8 I had to do
9 do you have to be
10 We had to close
11 did you have to pay

30.2

3 have to make
4 don't have to decide
5 had to ask
6 don't have to pay
7 didn't have to go
8 has to make
9 had to stand
10 will have to drive / 'll have to drive / is going to have to drive

30.3

3 might have to
4 will have to / 'll have to
5 might have to
6 won't have to

30.4

3 don't have to
4 must not
5 don't have to
6 doesn't have to
7 don't have to
8 must not
9 don't have to

UNIT 31

31.1

2 You should look for another job.
3 He shouldn't stay up so late.
4 You should take a picture.
5 She shouldn't worry so much.
6 He should put some pictures on the walls.

31.2

2 should be here soon
3 should be working OK
4 shouldn't take long
5 should receive
6 should be much warmer
7 shouldn't cost more
8 should solve

31.3

3 should do
4 should have done
5 should have won
6 should come
7 should have turned
8 should have done

31.4

2 We should have made a reservation
3 I should have written down her address. / I should have written her address down. *or* I should have written it down.
4 The store should be open (now / by now). / The store should have opened by now. *or* The store shouldn't be closed now.
5 I should have been looking where I was going. / I shouldn't have been looking at my phone.
6 She shouldn't be driving 50 miles an hour. / She shouldn't be driving so fast. / She should be driving more slowly.
7 I shouldn't have gone to work (yesterday). *or* I should have stayed at home.
8 Team A should win (the game).
9 The driver in front of me shouldn't have stopped (so) suddenly.

UNIT 32

32.1

3 I stay a little longer
4 she visit the museum after lunch
5 I see a specialist
6 I not lift anything heavy
7 we pay the rent by Friday
8 I go away for a few days
9 I not give my children snacks right before dinner
10 we have dinner early

32.2

3 take
4 apologize
5 be
6 wait
7 be
8 wear
9 have
10 remember
11 drink

32.3

2 walk to work (in the morning)
3 eat more fruit and vegetables
4 suggested that he take vitamins

UNIT 33

33.1

2 We'd better make a reservation.
3 You'd better put a bandage on it.
4 You'd better not go to work this morning.
5 I'd/We'd better check what time the movie starts.
6 I'd better not disturb her right now.

33.2

2 *OK*
3 You should come more often.
4 *OK*
5 *OK*
6 everybody should learn a foreign language
7 *OK*

33.3

2 had
3 not
4 should
5 to
6 I'd
7 were
8 better
9 hadn't
10 do
11 did
12 was

33.4

2 It's time I took a vacation.
3 It's time the children were in bed. / ... went to bed.
4 It's time I started cooking dinner.
5 It's time she/Kate stopped complaining about everything.
6 It's time (some) changes were made ...

UNIT 34

34.1

Example answers:

2 I wouldn't like to be a teacher.
3 I'd love to learn to fly a plane.
4 It would be nice to have a big yard.
5 I'd like to go to Mexico.

34.2

2 'd enjoy / would enjoy
3 'd have enjoyed / would have enjoyed
4 would you do
5 'd have stopped / would have stopped
6 would have been
7 'd be / would be
8 would have

34.3

2 e
3 b
4 f
5 a
6 d

38.3

2 I wish I'd learned / I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument (when I was younger). *or* I wish I could play ... / I wish I was able to play
3 I wish I hadn't painted it red. *or* ... the gate red. *or* I wish I had painted it a different color.
4 I wish we'd taken / I wish we had taken the train.
5 I wish we'd had / I wish we had had more time (to do all the things we wanted to do).
6 I wish I hadn't moved (to my new apartment). *or* I wish I'd stayed where I was. / ... stayed in my old apartment.

UNIT 39

39.1

2 hope
3 wish
4 wished
5 hope
6 wish
7 hope

39.2

2 wasn't/weren't
3 'd told / had told
4 had / could have
5 could
6 hadn't bought
7 didn't have
8 have gone

39.3

2 I wish she would come. *or* ...would hurry up. *or* would get here.
3 I wish somebody would give me a job.
4 I wish the/that dog would stop barking.
5 I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.
6 I wish you wouldn't leave the door open (all the time).
7 I wish people wouldn't drop litter on the sidewalk.

39.4

3 I knew
4 we hadn't gone
5 the bus would come
6 I could come
7 it was/were
8 I'd taken / I had taken
9 you'd listen / you would listen
10 you wouldn't complain *or* you didn't complain
11 it wasn't/weren't
12 the weather would change
13 I had / I could have
14 we could have stayed

UNIT 40

40.1

2 is made
3 was damaged
4 are shown
5 were invited
6 's/is found
7 were passed
8 are held
9 was injured
10 is surrounded
11 was sent
12 is owned

40.2

2 When was television invented?
3 How are mountains formed?
4 When was DNA discovered?
5 What is silver used for?

40.3

2 a covers
  b is covered
3 a was stolen
  b disappeared
4 a died
  b were brought up
5 a sank
  b was rescued
6 a was fired
  b resigned
7 a doesn't bother
  b 'm/am not bothered
8 a was knocked
  b fell
9 a are they called
  b do you call

40.4

2 All flights were cancelled because of fog.
3 I was accused of stealing money.
4 How is this word used?
5 All taxes are included in the price.
6 We were warned not to go out alone.
7 This office isn't / is not used anymore.
8 Five hundred people were invited to the wedding.

UNIT 41

41.1

3 be made
4 be kept
5 have been repaired
6 be carried
7 have been arrested
8 be delayed
9 have been caused
10 be torn
11 be known
12 have been forgotten

41.2

3 It's been stolen! / It has been stolen!
4 Somebody has taken it. *or* ... taken my umbrella.
5 He hasn't been seen since then.
6 I haven't seen her for ages.
7 Have you ever been stung by a bee?
8 It's / It is being repaired right now.
9 It hasn't / It has not been found yet.
10 The furniture had been moved.
11 It's / It is working now. It's / It has been fixed.

41.3

2 A new road is being built
3 Two new hotels have been built
4 some new houses were being built
5 The date of the meeting has been changed.
6 I didn't know that our conversation was being recorded.
7 Is anything being done about the problem?
8 They hadn't / had not been cleaned for ages.

UNIT 42

42.1

2 was given
3 wasn't told / was not told
4 's paid / is paid
5 been shown
6 was asked
7 weren't given / were not given
8 to be offered

42.2

2 being invited
3 being given
4 being hit
5 being bitten
6 being treated
7 being stuck

42.3

2 got stung
3 get used
4 got stolen
5 get paid
6 get broken
7 get asked
8 got stopped

42.4

3 were
4 given
5 lost
6 being
7 get
8 doesn't
9 was
10 weren't

UNIT 48

48.1

2 c
3 a
4 b
5 b
6 c
7 b
8 a

48.2

2 How far is it to the airport?
3 I wonder how old Tom is.
4 How long have they been married?
5 Do you know how long they have been married?
6 Could you tell me where the train station is?
7 I don't know whether anyone was injured in the accident.
8 Do you know what time you will arrive tomorrow?

48.3

2 She asked me how long I'd been in Chicago. *or* ... how long I had been ...
3 They asked me if/whether I'd been to Chicago before. *or* ... I had been ...
4 He asked me if/whether I liked Chicago.
5 He asked me where I was staying.
6 She asked me how long I was going to stay.
7 She asked me if/whether I thought Chicago was expensive. *or* ... is expensive.
8 They asked me why I'd come to Chicago. *or* ... why I had come ... *or* ... why I came ...

UNIT 49

49.1

2 doesn't
3 was
4 has
5 will
6 should
7 won't
8 do
9 didn't
10 might
11 am ... isn't *or* 'm not ... is *or* can't ... can *or* can ... can't
12 would ... could ... can't

49.2

3 You do? I don't.
4 You didn't? I did.
5 You aren't? I am.
6 You did? I didn't.

49.3

Example answers:

3 So did I. *or* You did? What did you watch?
4 Neither will I. *or* You won't? Where will you be?
5 So do I. *or* You do? What kind of books do you like?
6 So would I. *or* You would? Where would you like to live?
7 Neither can I. *or* You can't? Why not?
8 So am I. *or* You are? Are you doing something fun?

49.4

2 I hope so.
3 I hope not.
4 I don't think so.
5 I suppose so.
6 I'm afraid so.
7 I think so.
8 I'm afraid not.

UNIT 50

50.1

3 don't you
4 were you
5 does she
6 isn't he
7 did it
8 can't you
9 will they
10 aren't there
11 will you
12 is it
13 aren't I
14 would you
15 hasn't she
16 should I
17 had he

50.2

2 It's (very) expensive, isn't it?
3 The course was great, wasn't it?
4 You've gotten your hair cut, haven't you? *or* You got your hair cut, didn't you?
5 She has a good voice, doesn't she? *or* She has a good voice, hasn't she? *or* She's got / She has got a good voice, hasn't she?
6 It doesn't look right, does it?
7 This bridge isn't very safe, is it? *or* ... doesn't look very safe, does it?

50.3

2 Joe, you couldn't help me (with this table), could you?
3 Rachel, you don't know where Sarah is, do you? *or* ... you haven't seen Sarah, have you?
4 Nicole, you don't have a tennis racket, do you? *or* ... you haven't got a tennis racket, have you?
5 Anna, you couldn't take me to the train station, could you? *or* ... you couldn't give me a ride to the train station, could you?
6 Robert, you haven't seen my keys, have you? *or* ... you didn't see my keys, did you?

UNIT 51

51.1

2 playing tennis
3 going for a walk
4 causing the accident
5 waiting a few minutes
6 studying Portuguese

51.2

2 making
3 listening
4 applying
5 reading
6 living
7 driving
8 forgetting
9 paying
10 studying
11 losing
12 interrupting

51.3

2 I don't mind you driving it.
3 Can you imagine anybody being so stupid?
4 I don't remember him playing chess.
5 I don't want to keep you waiting.

51.4

Example answers:

2 sitting on the floor
3 having a picnic
4 laughing
5 breaking down

UNIT 52

52.1

2 to help him
3 to carry her bag (for her)
4 to meet at 8:00
5 to tell him her name / to give him her name
6 not to tell anyone *or* (She promised) she wouldn't tell anyone.

UNIT 43

43.1

2 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
3 The thieves are thought to have gotten in through a window.
4 The driver (of the car) is alleged to have been driving 110 miles an hour. *or* ... to have driven ...
5 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.
6 The company is said to be losing a lot of money.
7 The company is believed to have lost a lot of money last year.
8 The company is expected to take a loss this year.

43.2

2 they're / they are supposed to be
3 it's / it is supposed to have been
4 they're / they are supposed to have
5 the view is supposed to be
6 she's / she is supposed to be

43.3

2 You're / You are supposed to be my friend.
3 I'm / I am supposed to be on a diet.
4 It was supposed to be a joke.
5 Or maybe it's / it is supposed to be a flower.
6 You're / You are supposed to be working.
7 It's supposed to be open every day.

43.4

2 're/are supposed to start
3 was supposed to call
4 aren't / 're not / are not supposed to put
5 was supposed to depart
6 isn't / 's not / is not supposed to lift

UNIT 44

44.1

1 b
2 a
3 a
4 b

44.2

2 Sarah has her car serviced once a year.
3 Have you had your eyes tested recently?
4 I don't like getting my hair cut.
5 It cost fifteen dollars to have my suit cleaned.
6 You need to get this document translated as soon as possible.

44.3

2 I had it cut.
3 We had them cleaned.
4 He had it built.
5 I had them delivered.
6 She had them repaired.

44.4

2 f
3 a
4 e
5 c
6 b

44.5

2 We had our bags searched.
3 I've had my salary increased. *or* I had my salary increased.
4 He's had his application rejected. *or* He had his application rejected.

UNIT 45

45.1

2 (that) it was too far
3 (that) she didn't want to go
4 (that) he would let me know next week.
5 (that) he hadn't seen her for a while
6 (that) I could borrow hers.
7 (that) she wasn't enjoying it very much
8 (that) he sold it a few months ago *or* he'd sold it ... / he had sold it ...
9 (that) she didn't know
10 (that) there were twenty students in her class

45.2

Example answers:

2 wasn't coming / was going somewhere else / couldn't come
3 they didn't like each other / they didn't get along with each other / they couldn't stand each other
4 he didn't know anyone
5 she would be away / she was going away
6 you were staying at home
7 you couldn't speak / you didn't speak any other languages
8 he'd seen you / he saw you last weekend

UNIT 46

46.1

2 But you said you didn't like fish.
3 But you said you couldn't drive.
4 But you said she had a very well-paid job.
5 But you said you didn't have any brothers or sisters.
6 But you said you'd / you had never been to the United States.
7 But you said you were working tomorrow evening.
8 But you said she was a friend of yours.

46.2

2 Tell
3 Say
4 said
5 told
6 said
7 told
8 said
9 tell ... said
10 tell ... say

46.3

2 her to slow down
3 her not to worry
4 asked Tom to give me a hand *or* ... to help me
5 asked/told me to open my bag
6 told him to mind his own business
7 asked her to marry him
8 told her not to wait (for me) if I was late

UNIT 47

47.1

2 Were you born there?
3 Are you married?
4 How long have you been married?
5 What do you do?
6 What does your wife do?
7 Do you have (any) children? *or* Have you got (any) children?
8 How old are they?

47.2

3 Who paid the bill? / Who paid it?
4 What are you worried about?
5 What happened?
6 What did she/Rachel say?
7 Who does it / this book belong to?
8 Who lives in that house? / Who lives there?
9 What did you fall over?
10 What fell off the shelf?
11 What does it / this word mean?
12 Who was she/Sarah with?
13 What are you looking for?
14 Who does she/Emma remind you of?

47.3

2 How is cheese made?
3 Why isn't Sue working today?
4 What time are your friends arriving?
5 Why was the meeting canceled?
6 When was paper invented?
7 Where were your parents born?
8 Why didn't you come to the party?
9 How did the accident happen?
10 Why aren't you happy?
11 How many languages can you speak?

47.4

2 Don't you like him?
3 Isn't it good?
4 Don't you have any? *or* Haven't you got any?

56.4

2 I would like / I'd like to have seen the program.
3 I would hate / I'd hate to have lost my watch.
4 I would love / I'd love to have met your parents.
5 I wouldn't like to have been alone.
6 I would prefer / I'd prefer to have taken the train.

UNIT 57

57.1

Example answers:

2 I prefer basketball to football.
3 I prefer going to a movie theater to watching movies at home.
4 I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.
6 I prefer to go to a movie theatre rather than watch movies at home. *or* I prefer going to a movie theater rather than watching movies at home.
7 I prefer to be very busy rather than have nothing to do. *or* I prefer being very busy rather than having nothing to do.

57.2

3 prefer
4 eat/stay
5 I'd rather / I'd prefer to
6 to go
7 (I'd) rather (think) / (I'd) prefer to (think)
8 I'd prefer
9 go
11 I'd rather listen to some music than watch TV.
12 I'd prefer to eat/stay at home rather than go to a restaurant.
13 I'd rather go for a swim than play tennis. *or* ... than have a game of tennis.
14 I'd prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.

57.3

2 (would you rather) I pay it
3 would you rather I do it
4 would you rather I call her

57.4

2 watch
3 to watch
4 tell
5 would you
6 than
7 rather than
8 to
9 stay

UNIT 58

58.1

2 applying for the job
3 remembering names
4 winning the lottery
5 being late
6 eating at home
7 having to wait in line *or* (without) waiting in line
8 being 90 years old

58.2

2 by standing
3 by pushing
4 by borrowing
5 by driving
6 by putting

58.3

2 paying/settling
3 going
4 making
5 being/traveling/sitting
6 going
7 asking/telling/consulting/informing
8 doing/having
9 turning/going
10 taking
11 bending
12 buying

58.4

2 I'm looking forward to seeing her (again).
3 I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist (tomorrow).
4 She's looking forward to graduating / finishing school (next summer).
5 They're looking forward to moving (to their new apartment).

UNIT 59

59.1

2 used to going
3 used to working / used to being
4 used to walking
5 used to living

59.2

1 It took her a few months to **get used to** it. ... She**'s used to working** nights. / She **is used to working** nights.
2 When Jack started working in this job, he **wasn't used to** driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he **got used to** it. ... He**'s used to driving** two hours every morning. / He **is used to driving** ...

59.3

2 No, I'm used to sleeping on the floor.
3 I'm used to working long hours.
4 I'm not used to the crowds (of people).

59.4

2 They soon got used to her. / ... to the/ their new teacher.
3 She had to get used to living in a much smaller house.
4 She can't get used to the weather.
5 He had to get used to having less money.

59.5

2 drink
3 eating
4 having
5 have
6 go
7 be
8 being

UNIT 60

60.1

2 doing
3 coming/going
4 doing/trying
5 buying/having
6 solving
7 buying/having/owning
8 seeing

60.2

2 of stealing
3 from taking off
4 of getting
5 on telling
6 to eating
7 for being
8 from walking (*or* ... stop people walking)
9 for inviting
10 of using
11 of (not) trying

60.3

2 on driving/taking Ann to the station
3 on/for getting married
4 Sue for coming to see her
5 (to me) for being late
6 me of not caring about other people

UNIT 61

61.1

2 h
3 d
4 g
5 b
6 a
7 e
8 c

61.2

2 There's no point in working if you don't need money.
3 There's no point in trying to study if you feel tired. *or* There's no point in studying if ...
4 There's no point in hurrying if you have plenty of time.

52.2
2 to get
3 to live
4 to play
5 to tell
6 say *or* to say

52.3
2 to look
3 to move
4 waiting
5 to finish
6 barking
7 to be
8 having
9 missing
10 to say

52.4
2 Tom appears to be worried about something.
3 You seem to know a lot of people.
4 My English seems to be getting better.
5 That car appears to have broken down.
6 Rachel seems to be enjoying her job.
7 They claim to have solved the problem.

52.5
2 what to do
3 how to ride
4 whether to go
5 where to put
6 how to use

UNIT 53

53.1
2 or do you want me to lend you some
3 or would you like me to shut it
4 or would you like me to show you
5 or do you want me to repeat it
6 or do you want me to wait

53.2
2 to stay with them
3 to call Joe.
4 him to be careful
5 her to give him a hand

53.3
2 I didn't expect it to rain.
3 Let him do what he wants.
4 Tom's glasses make him look older.
5 I want you to know the truth.
6 Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job.
7 My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police.
8 I was warned not to believe everything he says.
9 Having a car enables you to get around more easily.

53.4
2 to do
3 cry
4 to study
5 finish
6 do
7 to do
8 drive
9 change
10 to work

UNIT 54

54.1
2 driving
3 to go
4 going
5 to win
6 asking
7 asking
8 to answer
9 causing
10 to do
11 being
12 to climb
13 to tell
14 talking ... to see

54.2
2 He doesn't remember crying
3 He remembers falling into the river.
4 He doesn't remember saying he wanted to be a doctor. *or* He doesn't remember wanting to be a doctor.
5 He doesn't remember being bitten by a dog.
6 He remembers his sister being born (when he was four).

54.3
1 b meeting
c leaving/putting
d to say
e lending
f to call
2 a taking
b to say
c wearing / having / taking / putting on
d leaving / giving up
3 a to become
b working
c reading
d going up / rising / increasing

UNIT 55

55.1
2 to reach
3 knocking
4 to put
5 to concentrate
6 asking
7 calling
8 to remember
9 restarting

55.2
2 It needs cutting.
3 They need cleaning.
4 They need tightening.
5 It needs emptying.

55.3
2 washing
3 looking
4 to think
5 cutting
6 to go
7 to iron
8 ironing

55.4
2 look *or* to look
3 overhearing
4 smiling
5 make *or* to make
6 organize *or* to organize
7 thinking
8 get *or* to get

UNIT 56

56.1
Example answers:
2 I don't mind playing cards.
3 I don't like being alone. *or* ... to be alone.
4 I enjoy going to museums.
5 I love cooking. *or* I love to cook.
6 I hate getting up early.

56.2
2 She likes teaching biology.
3 He likes taking pictures. *or* He likes to take pictures.
4 I didn't like working there.
5 She likes studying medicine.
6 He doesn't like being famous.
7 She doesn't like taking risks. *or* She doesn't like to take risks.
8 I like to know things in advance.

56.3
2 to sit
3 turning
4 doing *or* to do
5 to get
6 being
7 to come / to go
8 living/being
9 to talk
10 to have / to know / to get / to hear / to be told
11 to wait
12 losing *or* to lose

61.3
2 remembering people's names
3 finding/getting a job
4 getting a ticket for the game
5 understanding each other

61.4
2 going/traveling/getting
3 getting
4 watching
5 going/climbing/walking
6 getting/being
7 practicing
8 working
9 applying
10 trying

61.5
2 went swimming
3 go skiing
4 goes horseback riding
5 's/has gone shopping *or* went shopping

UNIT 62

62.1
2 I opened the box to see what was in it.
3 I moved to a new apartment to be closer to my friends.
4 I couldn't find a knife to chop the onions. *or* ... a knife to chop the onions with.
5 I called the police to report the accident.
6 I called the hotel to find out if they had any rooms available.
7 I hired an assistant to help me with my work.

62.2
2 to do
3 to walk
4 to drink
5 to put / to carry
6 to discuss / to consider / to talk about
7 to go / to travel
8 to talk / to speak
9 to wear / to put on
10 to celebrate
11 to help / to assist
12 to be

62.3
2 to
3 for
4 to
5 for
6 for
7 to
8 for ... to

62.4
2 so that I wouldn't get/be cold.
3 so that he could contact me. /... would be able to contact me.
4 so that nobody else would hear us. / so that nobody else could hear us. / ... would be able to hear us.
5 so that we can start the meeting on time. / so that we'll be able to start ...
6 so that we wouldn't forget anything.
7 so that the car behind me could pass. / ... would be able to pass.

UNIT 63

63.1
2 The window was difficult to open.
3 Some words are impossible to translate.
4 A car is expensive to maintain.
5 This meat isn't safe to eat.
6 My house is easy to get to from here.

63.2
2 It's an easy mistake to make.
3 It's a great place to live.
4 It was a strange thing to say.

63.3
2 glad
3 to hear
4 of you
5 to help
6 amazed
7 to make
8 not
9 typical

63.4
2 David was the last (person) to arrive.
3 Emily was the only student to pass (the exam). / ... the only one to pass (the exam).
4 I was the second customer/person to complain.
5 Neil Armstrong was the first person/man to walk on the moon.

63.5
2 You're / You are bound to be tired
3 He's / He is sure to forget
4 It's / It is not likely to rain *or* It isn't likely to rain
5 There's / There is sure to be

UNIT 64

64.1
3 I'm afraid of losing it.
4 I was afraid to tell her.
5 We were afraid of missing our train.
6 We were afraid to look.
7 I was afraid of dropping it.
8 I was afraid of running out of gas.
9 Don't be afraid to ask.

64.2
2 interested in starting
3 interested to hear / interested to know
4 interested in studying
5 interested to know / interested to hear
6 interested in looking

64.3
2 sorry to hear
3 sorry for saying / sorry I said
4 sorry to see
5 sorry for making / sorry I made

64.4
1 b to leave
  c from leaving
2 a to solve
  b to solve
  c in solving
3 a of going / about going
  b to go (or on going)
  c to go
  d to going
4 a to buy
  b on buying
  c to buy
  d of buying

UNIT 65

65.1
1 b give
2 a stopped
  b stop
3 a open
  b opened
4 a say
  b said (says *is also possible*)
5 a fell
  b fall

65.2
2 We saw Allison eating/sitting in a restaurant.
3 We saw David and Mary playing tennis.
4 We could smell something burning.
5 We could hear Bill playing his/the guitar.
6 We saw Linda jogging/running.

65.3
3 say
4 happen
5 crying
6 put
7 tell
8 explode
9 crawling
10 riding
11 slam
12 lying

UNIT 66

66.1

2 Amy was sitting in an armchair reading a book.
3 Nicole opened the door carefully, trying not to make any noise.
4 Sarah went out saying she would be back in an hour.
5 Kim worked in Rome for two years teaching English.
6 Anna walked around the town looking at the sights and taking pictures.

66.2

2 I got very wet walking in the rain.
3 Lauren had an accident driving to work.
4 My friend slipped and fell getting off a bus.
5 Emily hurt her back trying to lift a heavy box.
6 Two people were overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.

66.3

Example answers:

2 Having bought our tickets / Having gotten our tickets
3 Having discussed the problem / Having talked about the problem / Having thought about the problem
4 Having said he was hungry
5 Having lost his job / Having given up his job / Having been fired from his job
6 Having spent most of his life / Having lived (for) most of his life

66.4

2 Thinking they might be hungry, ...
3 Being a vegetarian, ...
4 Not having a phone, ...
5 Having traveled a lot, ...
6 Not being able to speak the local language, ...
7 Having spent almost all our money, ...

UNIT 67

67.1

3 We went to **a** very nice restaurant ...
4 *OK*
5 I use **a** toothbrush ...
6 ... if there's **a** bank near here?
7 ... for **an** insurance company.
8 *OK*
9 ... we stayed in **a** big hotel.
10 If you have **a** problem ...
11 ... It's **an** interesting idea.
12 *OK*
13 It's **a** good game.
14 *OK*
15 ... wearing **a** beautiful necklace.
16 ... have **an** airport?

67.2

3 a key
4 a coat
5 ice
6 a cookie
7 electricity
8 a question
9 a minute
10 blood
11 a decision
12 an interview

67.3

2 days
3 meat
4 a line
5 jokes
6 friends
7 people
8 air
9 patience
10 an umbrella
11 languages
12 space

UNIT 68

68.1

1 b there's a lot of noise
2 a Light
  b a light
3 a time
  b a great time
4 a a glass of water
  b broken glass
5 a a very nice room
  b room

68.2

2 bad luck
3 trip
4 complete chaos
5 doesn't
6 some lovely scenery
7 very hard work
8 paper
9 heavy traffic
10 Your hair is ... it
11 is

68.3

2 furniture
3 chairs
4 hair
5 progress
6 permission
7 advice
8 experience
9 experiences
10 damage

68.4

2 I'd like some information about places to visit (in the town).
3 Can you give me some advice about which courses to take? / ... courses I can take?
4 I (just) got some good news.
5 It's a beautiful view (from here), isn't it?
6 What horrible/awful weather!

UNIT 69

69.1

3 They're vegetables.
4 It's a flower.
5 They're planets.
6 It's a game.
7 They're tools.
8 They're rivers.
9 It's an insect.
10 They're languages.

69.2

2 He's a waiter.
3 She's a journalist.
4 He's a surgeon.
5 He's a chef.
6 He's a plumber.
7 She's a tour guide.
8 She's an interpreter.

69.3

2 a careful driver
3 some books
4 books
5 sore feet
6 a sore throat
7 a lovely present
8 some students
9 without an umbrella
10 Some people

69.4

4 a
5 Some
6 an
7 – (You're always asking questions!)
8 a
9 – (Do you like staying in hotels?)
10 Some
11 – (Those are nice shoes.)
12 You need **a** visa to visit **some** countries
13 Kate is **a** teacher. Her parents were teachers too.
14 He's **a** liar. He's always telling lies.

UNIT 70

70.1

1 ... and **a** magazine. **The** book is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put **the** magazine.
2 I saw **an** accident this morning. **A** car crashed into **a** tree. **The** driver of **the** car wasn't hurt, but **the** car was badly damaged.
3 ... **a** blue one and **a** grey one. **The** blue one belongs to my neighbors. I don't know who **the** owner of **the** grey one is.
4 My friends live in **an** old house in **a** small town. There is **a** beautiful yard behind **the** house. I would like to have **a** yard like that.

70.2

1 a a
b the
c the
2 a a
b a
c the
3 a the
b the
c a
4 a the
b a
c an
5 a the
b a
c a

70.3

2 **the** dentist
3 **the** door
4 **a** problem
5 **the** bus station
6 **the** post office
7 **a** very good player
8 **an** airport
9 **The** nearest airport
10 **the** floor
11 **the** book
12 **a** job in **a** bank
13 **a** small apartment downtown
14 **a** store at **the** end of **the** street

70.4

Example answers:

2 About once a month.
3 Once or twice a year.
4 About seven hours a night.
5 Two or three times a week.
6 About two hours a day.
7 50 kilometers an hour.

UNIT 71

71.1

1 **an** elevator
2 **a** nice vacation ... **the** best vacation
3 **the** nearest drugstore ... **the** end of this street
4 **a** beautiful day ... **a** cloud in **the** sky
5 **the** most expensive hotel ... **a** cheaper hotel
6 to travel in space ... go to **the** moon
7 think of **the** movie ... I thought **the** ending ...
8 Is it **a** star? No, it's **a** planet. It's **the** largest planet in **the** solar system.

71.2

2 TV
3 the radio
4 The television
5 dinner
6 the same name
7 for breakfast
8 vitamin C
9 the Internet
10 the ground ... the sky
11 The next train ... Platform 3

71.3

2 ... doing **the** same thing
3 Room 25 is on **the** second floor.
4 It was **a** very hot day. It was **the** hottest day of **the** year
5 We had lunch in **a** nice restaurant by **the** ocean.
6 What's playing at **the** movies ...
7 I had **a** big breakfast ...
8 You'll find **the** information you need at **the** top of page 15.

71.4

2 the ocean
3 question 3
4 the movies
5 the question
6 breakfast
7 Gate 24
8 the gate

UNIT 72

72.1

2 school
3 **the** school
4 school
5 ... get to and from school
6 **the** school
7 school
8 ... walk to school. The school isn't ...

72.2

1 b college
c college
d **the** college
2 a class
b class
c class
d **the** class
3 a prison
b **the** prison
c prison
4 a church
b church
c **the** church

72.3

2 to work
3 bed
4 at home
5 the bed
6 after work
7 in bed
8 home
9 work
10 like home

72.4

2 to school
3 at home *or* stayed home (*without* at)
4 to work
5 to college
6 in bed
7 to class / to school
8 in prison

UNIT 73

73.1

Example answers:

2–5
- I like cats.
- I don't like zoos.
- I don't mind snow.
- I'm not interested in boxing.

73.2

1 b **the** apples
2 a **the** people
b people
3 a names
b **the** names
4 a **The** First World War
b war
5 a hard work
b **the** work

73.3

3 spiders
4 meat
5 **the** questions
6 **the** people
7 Biology
8 lies
9 **The** hotels
10 **The** water
11 **the** grass
12 patience

73.4

1 stories
2 the words
3 the rooms
4 public transportation
5 All the books
6 Life
7 The weather
8 water
9 films (= films with unhappy endings *in general*)

UNIT 74

74.1

1 b the cheetah
c the kangaroo (and the rabbit)
2 a the swan
b the penguin
c the owl
3 a the wheel
b the laser
c the telescope
4 a the rupee
b the (Canadian) dollar
c the ...

74.2

2 a
3 the
4 a
5 the
6 the
7 a
8 The
9 the
10 a

74.3

2 the sick
3 the unemployed
4 the injured
5 the elderly
6 the rich

74.4

2 a German ... Germans / German people
3 a Frenchman/Frenchwoman ... the French / French people
4 a Russian ... Russians / Russian people
5 a Japanese / Japanese person ... the Japanese / Japanese people
6 a Brazilian ... Brazilians / Brazilian people
7 an Englishman/Englishwoman ... the English / English people
8 ...

UNIT 75

75.1

2 The doctor
3 Doctor Thomas
4 Professor Brown
5 the president
6 President Kennedy
7 Inspector Roberts
8 the Wilsons
9 the United States
10 France

75.2

3 *OK*
4 ... and **the** United States
5 ... than **the** north
6 *OK*
7 *OK*
8 ... in **the** Swiss Alps
9 **The** UK ...
10 **The** Seychelles ... in **the** Indian Ocean
11 *OK*
12 **The** Volga River flows into **the** Caspian Sea

75.3

2 (in) South America
3 the Nile
4 Sweden
5 the United States
6 the Rockies
7 the Mediterranean
8 Australia
9 the Pacific
10 the Indian Ocean
11 the Thames
12 the Danube
13 Thailand
14 the Panama Canal
15 the Amazon

UNIT 76

76.1

2 Turner's on Carter Road
3 the Crown (Hotel) on Park Road
4 St. Peter's on Market Street
5 the City Museum on George Street
6 Blackstone's on Forest Avenue
7 Mario's on George Street
8 Lincoln Park (on Park Road) at the end of Market Street.

76.2

2 The Eiffel Tower
3 Buckingham Palace
4 The White House
5 The Kremlin
6 Broadway
7 The Acropolis
8 O'Hare Airport

76.3

2 St Paul's Cathedral
3 Central Park
4 **the** Great Wall
5 O'Hare Airport
6 **The** Classic
7 McGill University
8 **the** National Museum
9 Harrison's
10 Cathay Pacific
11 **The** Morning News
12 **the** Leaning Tower
13 Cambridge University Press
14 **the** College of Art
15 **The** Imperial Hotel is on Baker Street.
16 **The** Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbor.

UNIT 77

77.1

2 don't
3 doesn't
4 some
5 them
6 pair
7 are
8 a
9 it

77.2

2 means
3 series
4 species
5 series
6 news
7 species
8 means

77.3

2 don't
3 want
4 was
5 are
6 Is
7 Do
8 look
9 enjoy
10 It's

77.4

2 is too hot
3 isn't enough money
4 isn't long enough
5 is a lot to carry

77.5

3 ... wearing black jeans.
4 ... very nice **people**.
5 *OK*
6 There was a **police officer** / a **policeman** / a **policewoman** ...
7 **These** scissors aren't ...
8 ...is **a** very rare species.
9 Twelve hours **is** ...

UNIT 78

78.1

3 train ticket
4 ticket machine
5 hotel staff
6 exam scores
7 race horse
8 horse race
9 running shoes
10 shoe store
11 store window
12 window cleaner
13 a construction company scandal
14 car factory workers
15 a road improvement plan
16 a New York department store

78.2
2 seat belt
3 credit card
4 weather forecast
5 washing machine
6 wedding ring
7 room number
8 birthday party
9 truck driver

78.3
2 high school football team
3 film production company
4 life insurance policy
5 tourist information office

78.4
2 two-hour
3 two hours
4 twenty-dollar
5 ten-dollar
6 15-minute
7 60 minutes
8 twelve-story
9 five days
10 Five-star
11 six years old
12 six-year-old

UNIT 79

79.1
3 your friend's umbrella
4 OK
5 James's daughter
6 Helen and Andy's son
7 OK
8 OK
9 Your children's friends
10 OK
11 Our neighbors' garden
12 David's hair
13 OK
14 my best friend's party
15 OK
16 Ben's parents' car
17 OK
18 OK (the government's economic policy *is also* OK)

79.2
2 father's
3 apples
4 Children's
5 South Korea's
6 parents' (two parents), parent's (one parent)
7 photos
8 someone else's
9 Shakespeare's

79.3
2 a child's toy
3 a girl's name
4 a boys' school
5 women's shoes
6 a children's TV program

79.4
2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.
3 The town's only movie theater has closed down.
4 Kansas City's weather is very changeable.
5 The region's main industry is tourism.

UNIT 80

80.1
2 hurt himself
3 blame herself
4 put yourself
5 enjoyed themselves
6 burn yourself
7 express myself

80.2
2 me
3 myself
4 us
5 yourself
6 you
7 ourselves
8 them
9 themselves

80.3
3 feel
4 dried myself
5 concentrate
6 defend yourself
7 meeting
8 relax

80.4
2 themselves
3 each other
4 each other
5 themselves
6 each other
7 ourselves
8 each other
9 introduced ourselves to each other

80.5
2 I made it myself
3 Olivia told me herself / Olivia herself told me
4 know themselves
5 cuts it himself
6 do it yourself?

UNIT 81

81.1
2 We met a relative of yours.
3 Jason borrowed a book of mine.
4 I met Maria and some friends of hers.
5 We had dinner with a neighbor of ours.
6 I went on vacation with two friends of mine.
7 I met a friend of Amy's at the party.
8 It's always been an ambition of mine to travel around the world.

81.2
2 his own opinions
3 her own business
4 our own words
5 its own private beach

81.3
2 your own fault
3 her own ideas
4 your own problems
5 his own decisions

81.4
2 make her own (clothes)
3 polish your own (shoes)
4 bake our own (bread)
5 write their own (songs)

81.5
2 myself
3 our own
4 my own
5 himself
6 their own
7 yourself
8 herself

81.6
2 co-workers of **mine**.
3 go out **on** my own.
4 I had **my** own office.
5 always **by** himself.
6 some friends of **theirs**.
7 all **their** own food?

UNIT 82

82.1
3 There's / There is
4 there wasn't
5 Is it
6 Is there
7 there was
8 It isn't / It's not
9 There wasn't
10 It's / It is ... there isn't
11 It was
12 Is there ... there's / there is
13 It's /It is ... There's / There is
14 there was ... It was

82.2
2 There's / There is a lot of salt in the soup. *or* ... too much salt ...
3 There was nothing in the box.
4 There were about 50 people at the meeting.
5 There's / There is a lot of violence in the movie.
6 *Example answers:*
There is a lot to do in this town. /
... plenty to do in this town. /
... a lot happening in this town. /
... a lot of places to go in this town.

82.3
2 There may be
3 there won't be
4 There's / There is going to be
5 There used to be
6 there should be
7 there wouldn't be

82.4
3 **there** will be an opportunity
4 **There** must have been a reason
5 *OK*
6 *OK*
7 **There** used to be a lot of tourists
8 **There's** no signal.
9 *OK*
10 **There's** sure to be a parking lot somewhere.
11 *OK*
12 **there** would be somebody ... but **there** wasn't anybody.

UNIT 83

83.1
2 some
3 any
4 some
5 any ... some
6 any
7 some
8 any
9 some
10 any
11 some ... any

83.2
2 somebody/someone
3 anybody/anyone
4 anything
5 something
6 anything *or* anybody/anyone
7 anybody/anyone
8 somewhere
9 anybody/anyone
10 something
11 Anybody/Anyone
12 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone
13 anywhere
14 anything
15 something
16 something ... anybody/anyone
17 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone
18 anybody/anyone ... anything

83.3
2 Any day
3 Anything
4 anybody/anyone
5 Any job *or* Anything
6 anywhere
7 Anybody/Anyone

UNIT 84

84.1
3 no
4 any
5 None
6 no
7 none
8 any
9 no
10 any
11 none
12 no
13 any
14 no

84.2
2 Nobody / No one
3 None
4 Nowhere
5 None
6 Nothing
8 I'm not waiting for anybody/anyone.
9 I didn't buy any (bread).
10 I'm not going anywhere.
11 I haven't read any (books).
12 It doesn't cost anything.

84.3
2 nobody / no one
3 Nowhere
4 anything
5 Nobody / No one
6 anywhere
7 Nothing
8 Nothing. I couldn't find anything I wanted.
9 Nobody / No one said anything.

84.4
2 nobody
3 anyone
4 Anybody
5 Nothing
6 Anything
7 anything
8 any
9 No one ... anyone

UNIT 85

85.1
3 *OK*
4 It cost **a lot** to ...
5 *OK*
6 You have **a lot of** luggage.
7 *OK*
8 ... know **many** people or ... know **a lot of** people
9 *OK*
10 He travels a lot.

85.2
2 He has (got) plenty of money.
3 There's plenty of room.
4 ... she still has plenty to learn.
5 There is plenty to see.
6 There are plenty of hotels.

85.3
2 little
3 many
4 few
5 little
6 many
7 little
8 much
9 few

85.4
2 a few dollars
3 little traffic
4 a few years ago
5 a little time
6 only a few words
7 Few people

85.5
2 a little
3 a few
4 few
5 little
6 a little
7 little
8 a few
9 a few
10 a little

UNIT 86

86.1
3 –
4 of
5 –
6 –
7 of
8 of
9 – (*of is also correct*)
10 –
11 –
12 of

86.2
3 of my spare time
4 mistakes
5 of the buildings
6 of her friends
7 of the population
8 birds
9 of the players
10 of her opinions
11 European countries
12 (of) my dinner

86.3
Example answers:
2 the time
3 my friends
4 (of) the questions
5 the pictures / the photos / the photographs
6 (of) the money

86.4
2 All of them
3 none of us
4 some of it
5 none of them
6 Some of them
7 all of it
8 none of it

UNIT 87

87.1
2 Neither
3 both
4 Either
5 Neither
6 both

87.2
2 either
3 both
4 Neither of
5 **neither** driver ... **both / both the / both of the** cars
6 both / both of

87.3
2 either of them
3 both of them
4 Neither of us
5 neither of them

87.4
3 The movie was both boring and long.
4 Neither Joe nor Sam has a car. *or* ... has got a car.
5 Emily speaks both German and Russian.
6 Ben neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.
7 That man's name is either Richard or Robert.
8 I have neither the time nor the money to go on vacation.
9 We can leave either today or tomorrow.

87.5
2 either
3 any
4 none
5 any
6 either
7 neither

UNIT 88

88.1
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 Everything
5 all
6 everybody/everyone
7 everything
8 All
9 everybody/everyone
10 All
11 everything
12 Everybody/Everyone
13 All
14 everything

88.2
2 The whole team played well.
3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).
4 They searched the whole house.
5 The whole family plays tennis. *or* ... play tennis.
6 Sarah/She worked the whole day.
7 It rained the whole week.
8 Sarah worked all day.
9 It rained all week.

88.3
2 every four hours
3 every four years
4 every five minutes
5 every six months

88.4
2 every day
3 all day
4 The whole building
5 Every time
6 all the time
7 all my luggage

UNIT 89

89.1
3 Each
4 Every
5 Each
6 every
7 each
8 every

89.2
3 Every
4 Each
5 every
6 every
7 each of
8 every
9 each
10 Every
11 each of
12 each

89.3
2 Sonia and I had ten dollars each. *or* Sonia and I each had ten dollars.
3 Those postcards cost a dollar each / ... one dollar each. *or* Those postcards are a dollar each / ... one dollar each
4 We paid 300 dollars each. *or* We each paid 300 dollars.

89.4
2 everyone
3 every one
4 Everyone
5 every one

UNIT 90

90.1
2 A customer is someone who buys something at a store.
3 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.
4 A coward is someone who is not brave.
5 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live somewhere.
6 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a store.
7 A liar is someone who doesn't tell the truth.
8 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.

90.2
2 The waiter who/that served us was impolite and impatient.
3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.
4 The people who/that were arrested have now been released.
5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

90.3
2 who/that runs away from home
3 that/which were hanging on the wall
4 that/which cannot be explained
5 who/that has stayed there
6 that/which happened in the past
7 who/that developed the theory of relativity
8 that/which can support life

90.4
3 the nearest store **that/which** sells
4 some things about me **that/which** were
5 the driver **who/that** caused
6 *OK* (the person who took *is also correct*)
7 a world **that/which** is changing
8 *OK*
9 the horse **that/which** won

UNIT 91

91.1
3 *OK* (the people **who/that** we met *is also correct*)
4 The people **who/that** work in the office
5 *OK* (the people **who/that** I work with *is also correct*)
6 *OK* (the money **that/which** I gave you *is also correct*)
7 the money **that/which** was on the table
8 *OK* (the worst movie **that/which** you've ever seen *is also correct*)
9 the best thing **that/which** has ever happened to you

91.2

2 you're wearing *or* that/which you're wearing
3 you're going to see *or* that/which you're going to see
4 I/we wanted to visit *or* that/which I/we wanted to visit
5 I/we invited to the party *or* who/whom/that we invited ...
6 you had to do *or* that/which you had to do
7 I/we rented *or* that/which I/we rented

91.3

2 the wedding we were invited to
3 the hotel you told me about
4 the job I applied for
5 the concert you went to
6 somebody you can rely on
7 the people you were with

91.4

3 – (**that** *is also correct*)
4 what
5 that
6 what
7 – (**that** *is also correct*)
8 what
9 – (**that** *is also correct*)

UNIT 92

92.1

2 whose wife is an English teacher
3 who owns a restaurant
4 whose ambition is to climb Mount Everest
5 who have just gotten married *or* who just got married
6 whose parents used to work in a circus

92.2

2 *more formal:* I went to see a lawyer whom a friend of mine (had) recommended.
less formal: I went to see a lawyer a friend of mine (had) recommended.
3 *more formal:* The person to whom I spoke wasn't very helpful.
less formal: The person I spoke to wasn't very helpful.
4 *more formal:* The woman with whom Tom was in love wasn't in love with him.
less formal: The woman Tom was in love with wasn't in love with him.

92.3

2 where
3 who
4 whose
5 where
6 whose
7 whom
8 where

92.4

Example answers:

2 The reason I left my job was that the salary was too low.
3 I'll never forget the time I got stuck in an elevator.
4 2009 was the year Amanda got married.
5 The reason they don't have a car is that neither of them can drive.
6 The last time I saw Sam was about six months ago.
7 Do you remember the day we first met?

UNIT 93

93.1

3 We drove to the airport, which was not far from the city.
4 Kate's husband, who I've never met, is an airline pilot. *or* ... whom I've never met ...
5 Lisa, whose job involves a lot of traveling, is away from home a lot.
6 Paul and Emily have a daughter, Alice, who just started school.
7 The new stadium, which will be finished next month, will hold 90,000 spectators.
8 My brother lives in Alaska, which is the largest state in the U.S.
9 Our teacher, whose name I have forgotten, was very kind.
10 We enjoyed our visit to the museum, where we saw a lot of interesting things.

93.2

2 The strike at the car factory, which began ten days ago, has now ended.
3 I've found the book I was looking for this morning. *or* ... the book that/which I was looking for.
4 My car, which I've had for 15 years, has never broken down.
5 Very few of the people who/that applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.
6 Amy showed me a picture of her son, who is a police officer.

93.3

2 My office, which is on the second floor, is very small.
3 *OK*
(The office I'm using ... *and* The office which I'm using ... *are also correct*)
4 Sarah's father, who used to be in the army, now works for a TV company.
5 *OK* (The doctor who examined me ... *is also correct*)
6 The sun, which is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.

UNIT 94

94.1

2 in which
3 with whom
4 to which
5 of which
6 of whom
7 for which
8 after which

94.2

2 most of which was useless
3 none of whom was suitable
4 one of which they never use
5 half of which he gave to his parents
6 both of whom are lawyers
7 neither of which she replied to
8 only a few of whom I knew
10 (the) sides of which were lined with trees
11 the aim of which is to save money

94.3

2 which makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.
3 which was nice of her.
4 which makes it hard to contact her.
5 which is good news.
6 which meant I had to wait two hours at the airport.
7 which means we can't go away tomorrow.
8 which she apologized for *or* for which she apologized

UNIT 95

95.1

2 The taxi taking us to the airport
3 a path leading to the river
4 A factory employing 500 people
5 The man sitting next to me on the plane
6 a brochure containing the information I needed

95.2

2 stolen from the museum
3 damaged in the storm
4 made at the meeting
5 surrounded by trees
6 involved in the project

95.3

3 invited
4 called
5 living
6 offering
7 caused
8 blown
9 sitting ... reading
10 working ... studying

95.4
3 There's somebody coming.
4 There's nothing left.
5 There were a lot of people traveling.
6 There was nobody else staying there.
7 There was nothing written on it.
8 There's a course beginning next Monday.

UNIT 96

96.1
2 a exhausting
b exhausted
3 a depressing
b depressed
c depressed
4 a exciting
b exciting
c excited

96.2
2 interested
3 exciting
4 embarrassing
5 embarrassed
6 amazed
7 amazing
8 amused
9 interested
10 terrifying ... shocked
11 (look so) bored ... (really so) boring
12 boring ... interesting

96.3
2 bored
3 confusing
4 disgusting
5 interested
6 annoyed
7 boring
8 exhausted
9 excited
10 amusing
11 interesting

UNIT 97

97.1
2 an unusual gold ring
3 a beautiful old house
4 red leather gloves
5 an old Italian movie
6 tiny pink flowers
7 a long thin face
8 big black clouds
9 a lovely sunny day
10 an ugly yellow dress
11 a long wide avenue
12 important new ideas
13 a nice new green sweater
14 a small black metal box
15 beautiful long black hair
16 an interesting old French painting
17 a large red and yellow umbrella
18 a big fat black and white cat

97.2
2 tastes/tasted awful
3 feel nervous
4 smell nice
5 look wet
6 sounds/sounded interesting

97.3
2 happy
3 happily
4 terrible
5 properly
6 good
7 slow
8 badly
9 violent

97.4
3 the last two days
4 the first two weeks of May
5 the next few days
6 the first three questions (on the exam)
7 the next two years
8 the last three days of our vacation

UNIT 98

98.1
2 easily
3 patiently
4 unexpectedly
5 regularly
6 perfectly ... slowly ... clearly

98.2
2 selfishly
3 suddenly
4 sudden
5 badly
6 awful
7 terribly
8 comfortable
9 clearly
10 safe
11 safe
12 safely

98.3
2 frequently
3 fluent
4 specially
5 complete
6 perfectly
7 financially *or* completely
8 permanently
9 nervous
10 dangerously

98.4
2 seriously ill
3 absolutely enormous
4 slightly damaged
5 unusually quiet
6 completely changed
7 unnecessarily long
8 happily married
9 badly planned

UNIT 99

99.1
2 good
3 well
4 well
5 good
6 well
7 well
8 well ... good

99.2
2 well-known
3 well-kept
4 well-written
5 well-informed
6 well-paid

99.3
2 slowly
3 lately
4 fast
5 hard
6 hardly
7 hard
8 hardly see
9 hard

99.4
2 hardly hear
3 hardly slept
4 hardly speak
5 hardly said
6 hardly changed
7 hardly recognized

99.5
2 hardly any
3 hardly anything
4 hardly anybody/anyone
5 hardly ever
6 hardly anywhere
7 hardly *or* hardly ever
8 hardly anybody/anyone
9 hardly any
10 hardly anywhere

UNIT 100

100.1
2 so
3 such
4 such a
5 such
6 such a
7 so
8 so
9 such a
10 such

100.2
2 The bag was so heavy
3 I have such a lot to do *or* I've got such a lot to do
4 I was so surprised
5 The music was so loud
6 It was such horrible weather
7 Her English is so good
8 The hotel was such a long way
9 I had such a big breakfast

100.3
2 are you in such a hurry?
3 I'm surprised it took so long.
4 ... but there's no such company.
5 ... why I did such a stupid thing.
6 Why are you driving so slowly?
7 How did you learn English in such a short time?
8 Why did you buy such an expensive phone?

100.4

Example answers:

2 She's so friendly.
3 She's such a nice person.
4 I haven't seen you for so long.
5 I didn't realize it was such a long way.
6 There were so many people.

UNIT 101

101.1

3 enough buses
4 wide enough
5 enough time
6 enough vegetables
7 tall enough
8 enough room
9 warm enough
10 enough cups

101.2

2 too busy to talk
3 too late to go
4 warm enough to sit
5 too shy to be
6 enough patience to be
7 too far away to hear
8 enough English to read

101.3

2 This coffee is too hot to drink.
3 The piano was too heavy to move.
4 These apples aren't / are not ripe enough to eat.
5 The situation is too complicated to explain.
6 The wall was too high to climb over.
7 This sofa isn't / is not big enough for three people (to sit on).
8 Some things are too small to see without a microscope. *or* ... to be seen without a microscope.

UNIT 102

102.1

2 stronger
3 smaller
4 more expensive
5 warmer/hotter
6 more interesting / more exciting
7 closer/nearer
8 harder / more difficult / more complicated
9 better
10 worse
11 more often
12 farther/further

102.2

3 more serious than
4 thinner
5 bigger
6 more interested
7 more important than
8 more peaceful than
9 more slowly
10 higher than

102.3

2 careful
3 better
4 frequent
5 more
6 worse
7 than
8 quietly

102.4

2 I ran farther/further than Dan.
3 The trip takes longer by train than by car.
4 My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
5 The traffic today is worse than usual.

UNIT 103

103.1

2 much bigger
3 a lot more interesting than
4 a little cooler
5 far more complicated than
6 a little more slowly
7 slightly older

103.2

2 any sooner / any earlier
3 no higher than / no more expensive than / no worse than
4 any farther/further
5 no worse than

103.3

2 bigger and bigger
3 more and more nervous
4 worse and worse
5 more and more expensive
6 better and better
7 more and more time

103.4

2 The more tired you are, the harder it is to concentrate.
3 The sooner we decide (what to do), the better.
4 The more I know, the less I understand.
5 The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be.
6 The more / The longer Kate had to wait, the more impatient she became.

103.5

2 more
3 longer
4 any
5 the
6 older
7 elder/older
8 slightly
9 no
10 (The) less (he knows, the) better

UNIT 104

104.1

2 My salary isn't as high as yours.
3 You don't know as much about cars as me. *or* ... as I do *or* ... as I know.
4 We aren't as busy today as we were yesterday. *or* ... as busy today as yesterday.
5 I don't feel as bad as I did earlier. *or* as I felt earlier.
6 Our neighbors haven't lived here as long as us. *or* as long as we have.
7 I wasn't as nervous (before the interview) as I usually am. *or* ... as usual.

104.2

3 The train station wasn't as far as I thought.
4 The meal cost less than I expected.
5 I don't watch TV as much as I used to. *or* as often as I used to.
6 Abby used to have longer hair.
7 You don't know them as well as me. *or* as I do.
8 There aren't as many students in this class as in the other one.

104.3

2 as well as
3 as long as
4 as soon as
5 as often as
6 as quietly as
7 just as hard as

104.4

2 Your hair is the same color as mine.
3 I arrived (at) the same time as you.
4 My birthday is (on) the same day as Tom's. *or* My birthday is the same as Tom's.

104.5

2 than
3 as
4 him
5 less
6 much
7 twice
8 is
9 me

UNIT 105

105.1

2 the tallest
3 the worst
4 the most popular
5 the best
6 the most honest
7 the shortest

105.2

3 better
4 the most expensive
5 more comfortable
6 The eldest *or* The oldest
7 oldest
8 the fastest
9 faster
10 my earliest
11 ... the highest (mountain in the world) (It is) higher (than ...)
12 Do you have a sharper one? No, it's the sharpest one I have.

105.3

2 It's the largest country in South America.
3 It was the happiest day of my life.
4 It's the most valuable painting in the museum.
5 It's the busiest time of the year.
7 He's one of the richest men in the country.
8 She's one of the best students in the class.
9 It was one of the worst experiences of my life.
10 It's one of the most famous universities in the world.

105.4

2 That's the funniest joke I've ever heard.
3 This is the best coffee I've ever tasted.
4 It's the worst mistake I've ever made. *or* It was the worst ...
5 Who's the most famous person you've ever met?

UNIT 106

106.1

3 Joe doesn't like football very much.
4 Dan won the race easily.
5 *OK*
6 Have you seen Chris recently?
7 I borrowed some money from a friend.
8 *OK*
9 I ate my breakfast quickly and went out. *or* I quickly ate my breakfast and ...
10 Did you invite a lot of people to the party?
11 Sam watches TV all the time.
12 *OK*

106.2

2 I met a friend of mine on my way home.
3 I forgot to put a stamp on the envelope.
4 We bought a lot of fruit at the market.
5 Did you learn a lot at school today?
6 They built a new hotel across from the park.
7 We found some interesting books in the library.
8 Please write your name at the top of the page.

106.3

2 I go to the supermarket every Friday.
3 Why did you come home so late?
4 Sarah takes her children to school every day.
5 I haven't been to the movies recently.
6 I remembered her name after a few minutes.
7 We walked around the town all morning.
8 My brother has been in Canada since April.
9 I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night.
10 Emma left her umbrella in a restaurant last night.
11 The moon goes around the earth every 27 days.
12 Anna has been teaching Italian in Chicago for the last three years.

UNIT 107

107.1

3 I usually take ...
4 *OK*
5 Steve hardly ever gets angry.
6 ... and I also sent an email.
7 I always have to repeat ...
8 I've never worked / I have never worked ...
9 *OK*
10 My friends were already there. *or* My friends were there already.

107.2

2 Katherine is always very generous.
3 I don't usually have to work on Sundays.
4 Do you always watch TV in the evenings?
5 ... he is also learning Japanese.
6 a We were all on vacation in Spain.
b We were all staying at the same hotel.
c We all had a great time.
7 a The new hotel is probably expensive.
b It probably costs a lot to stay there.
8 a I can probably help you.
b I probably can't help you.

107.3

2 usually sleeps
3 It's / It is usually easy to ... *or* Usually it's / it is easy to ...
4 were both born
5 She can also sing
6 Do you usually take
7 I have / I've never spoken
8 We're / We are still living ...
9 You always have to wait
10 We might never meet
11 I probably won't be
12 Will you still be
13 She's / She is hardly ever
14 We would / We'd never have met
15 It doesn't always take
16 We were all ... we all fell
17 always says ... she never does

UNIT 108

108.1

3 He doesn't write poems anymore.
4 He still wants to be a teacher.
5 He isn't / He's not interested in politics anymore.
6 He's still single.
7 He doesn't go fishing anymore.
8 He doesn't have a beard anymore. *or* He hasn't got ...

10–12

- He no longer writes poems.
- He is / He's no longer interested in politics.
- He no longer goes fishing.
- He no longer has a beard. / He's no longer got a beard.

108.2

2 He hasn't left yet.
3 They haven't finished (it) yet. / ... finished repairing the road yet.
4 They haven't woken up yet.
5 She hasn't found one yet. / ... found a job yet.
6 I haven't decided (what to do) yet.
7 It hasn't taken off yet.

108.3

3 still
4 yet
5 anymore
6 yet
7 anymore
8 still
9 already
10 still
11 already
12 yet
13 still
14 already
15 still
16 anymore

113.2

2 As today is a public holiday, all government offices are closed.
3 As I didn't want to disturb anybody, I tried to be very quiet.
4 As I can't go to the concert, you can have my ticket.
5 As it was a nice day, we went for a walk by the river.

113.3

3 because
4 at the same time as
5 at the same time as
6 because
7 because

113.4

3 *OK*
4 I was in Boston
5 I left school
6 *OK*
7 I was a child
8 *OK*

113.5

Example answers:

2 I saw you as you were getting into your car.
3 It started to rain just as we started playing tennis.
4 As she doesn't have a phone, it's quite difficult to contact her.
5 Just as I took the picture, somebody walked in front of the camera.

UNIT 114

114.1

3 ... his father
4 ... people him
5 *OK*
6 her mother ...
7 talking to the wall
8 *OK*
9 *OK*
10 a fish

114.2

2 e
3 b
4 f
5 d
6 a

114.3

2 like blocks of ice
3 like a beginner
4 as a tour guide
5 like a theater
6 as a birthday present
7 like winter
8 like a child

114.4

2 like
3 as
4 as
5 like
6 As
7 as
8 like
9 like (*or* such as)
10 as
11 like
12 as
13 like
14 like
15 as
16 like

UNIT 115

115.1

2 You look as if you've seen a ghost. / ... as if you saw a ghost.
3 I feel like I've (just) run a marathon. / ... like I (just) ran a marathon.
4 You sound as if you're having a good time.

115.2

2 It looks like it's going to rain.
3 It sounds like they're having an argument.
4 It looks like there's been an accident.
5 It looks like they don't have any.
6 It sounds like you should see a doctor.

115.3

2 as if he meant what he said
3 as if she's hurt her leg / as if she hurt her leg
4 as if he hadn't eaten for a week
5 as if she was enjoying it
6 as if I was crazy / as if I were crazy
7 as if she didn't want to come
8 as if I didn't exist

115.4

2 as if I was/were
3 as if she was/were
4 as if it was/were

UNIT 116

116.1

3 during
4 for
5 for
6 during
7 for
8 during
9 for
10 for
11 during
12 for

116.2

3 while
4 While
5 during
6 during
7 during
8 while
9 during
10 while
11 During
12 while

116.3

1 for
2 during
3 while
4 during
5 for
6 while
7 during
8 for
9 while
10 during

116.4

Example answers:

3 Can you wait for me while I make a quick phone call?
4 Most of the students looked bored during the class.
5 I was asked a lot of questions during the interview.
6 Don't open the car door while the car is moving.
7 The lights suddenly went out while we were watching TV.
8 What are you going to do while you're on vacation?
9 It started to rain during the game.
10 It started to rain while we were walking home.

UNIT 117

117.1

2 by 8:30
3 Let me know by Saturday
4 you're here by 2:00
5 we should arrive by lunchtime

117.2

2 by
3 until
4 by
5 until
6 by
7 by
8 until
9 by
10 by
11 until
12 By
13 until
14 by

117.3

Example answers:

3 until I come back
4 by 5:00
5 by April 3
6 until 2028
7 until midnight

117.4

2 By the time I got to the station
3 By the time I finished (work)
4 By the time the police arrived
5 By the time we got to the top (of the mountain)

UNIT 109

109.1

2 even Julia
3 not even Amy
4 even Julia
5 even Kate
6 not even Julia

109.2

2 We even painted the floor.
3 She's even met the president.
4 You could even hear it from the next street. / You could even hear the noise from ... *or* You could hear it / the noise even from the next street.
6 I can't even remember her name.
7 There isn't even a movie theater.
8 He didn't even tell his wife (where he was going).
9 I don't even know my neighbors.

109.3

2 even older
3 even better
4 even more difficult
5 even worse
6 even less

109.4

2 if
3 even if
4 even
5 even though
6 Even
7 even though
8 even if
9 Even though

UNIT 110

110.1

2 Although I had never seen her before
3 although it was quite cold
4 although we don't like them very much
5 Although I didn't speak the language well
6 Although the heat was on
7 although I'd met her twice before
8 although we've known each other for a long time

110.2

2 a In spite of (*or* Despite)
b Although
3 a because
b although
4 a because of
b in spite of (*or* despite)
5 a Although
b because of

Example answers:

6 a he hadn't studied very hard
b he had studied very hard
7 a I was hungry
b being hungry / my hunger / the fact (that) I was hungry

110.3

2 In spite of playing quite well, we lost the game *or* In spite of the fact (that) we played quite well ...
3 Although I'd hurt my foot, I managed to walk home. *or* I managed to walk home although I'd ...
4 I enjoyed the movie in spite of the silly story. / ... in spite of the story being silly. / ... in spite of the fact (that) the story was silly. *or* In spite of ..., I enjoyed the movie.
5 Despite living in the same building, we hardly ever see each other. *or* Despite the fact (that) we live in ... *or* We hardly ever see each other despite ...
6 They came to the party even though they hadn't been invited. *or* Even though they hadn't been invited, they came to the party.

110.4

2 It's very long, though.
3 We ate it, though.
4 I don't like her husband, though.

UNIT 111

111.1

2 in case you get hungry / ... you are hungry
3 in case it rains
4 in case you get thirsty / ... you are thirsty
5 in case you need to call somebody
6 in case you get lonely / ... you are lonely

111.2

2 I'll say goodbye now in case I don't see you again (before you go).
3 Can you check the list in case we've forgotten something? / ... in case we forgot something?
4 Keep the receipt in case they don't fit you (and you have to take them back to the store).

111.3

2 in case I forgot it.
3 in case they were worried (about me).
4 in case she didn't get the first one. / in case she hadn't gotten ...
5 in case they came to New York (one day).

111.4

3 If
4 in case
5 if
6 in case
7 if
8 in case
9 in case

UNIT 112

112.1

2 You won't know what to do unless you listen carefully.
3 I'll never speak to her again unless she apologizes (to me). *or* Unless she apologizes (to me), I'll ...
4 He won't understand you unless you speak very slowly. *or* Unless you speak very slowly, he ...
5 The company will have to close unless business improves soon. *or* Unless business improves soon, the company ...
6 The problem will get worse unless we do something soon. *or* Unless we do something soon, the problem

112.2

2 I'm not going (to the party) unless you go too. / ... unless you're going too.
3 The dog won't attack you unless you move suddenly.
4 Ben won't speak to you unless you ask him something.
5 The doctor won't see you unless it's an emergency.

112.3

2 unless
3 provided
4 as long as
5 unless
6 unless
7 provided
8 Unless
9 unless
10 as long as

112.4

Example answers:

2 it's not too hot.
3 there isn't too much traffic.
4 it isn't raining.
5 I'm in a hurry.
6 you have something else to do.
7 you pay it back next week.
8 you don't tell anyone else.
9 you take risks.

UNIT 113

113.1

2 I listened as she told me her story.
3 I burned myself as I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.
4 The spectators cheered as the two teams came onto the field.
5 A dog ran out in front of the car as we were driving along the road.

UNIT 118

118.1

2 on
3 in
4 on (*or* at *in British English*)
5 on *or* I last saw her Tuesday.
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 on *or* There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve.
10 at
11 in
12 in
13 at
14 on
15 in
16 At
17 in
18 on *or* The office is closed Wednesday afternoons.
19 at
20 **at** 5:00 **in** the morning
21 on January 7 ... in April *or* The course begins January 7 ... in April.)
22 on Tuesday morning ... in the afternoon (*or* at home Tuesday morning ... in the afternoon)

118.2

2 at night
3 in the evening
4 on July 21, 1969
5 at the same time
6 in the 1920s
7 in about 20 minutes
8 at the moment
9 in 11 seconds
10 on Saturdays *or* ... works Saturdays

118.3

3 a
4 both
5 a
6 b
7 b
8 a
9 both
10 b

UNIT 119

119.1

2 on time
3 on time
4 in time
5 on time
6 in time
7 in time
8 on time
9 in time

119.2

2 I got home just in time.
3 I stopped him just in time.
4 We got to the theater just in time for the beginning of the movie. *or* ... just in time to see the beginning of the movie.

119.3

2 at the end of the month
3 at the end of the course
4 at the end of the race
5 at the end of the interview

119.4

2 In the end, she resigned (from her job). *or* She resigned (from her job) in the end.
3 In the end, I gave up (trying to learn Japanese / learning Japanese). *or* I gave up (learning Japanese) in the end.
4 In the end, we decided not to go (to the party). *or* In the end, we didn't go (to the party). *or* We decided not to go (to the party) in the end. *or* We didn't go (to the party) in the end.

119.5

2 In
3 in
4 at
5 In
6 At
7 in
8 in
9 in
10 at ... at

UNIT 120

120.1

2 On his arm. *or* On the man's arm.
3 At the traffic light.
4 On the door. (notice) In the door. (key)
5 On the wall.
6 In Paris.
7 At the gate. (man) On the gate. (bird)
8 On the beach.

120.2

2 on my guitar
3 at the next gas station
4 in his hand
5 on that tree
6 in the mountains
7 on the island
8 at the window

120.3

2 on
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 in
8 at
9 on
10 at
11 in
12 on
13 in ... in
14 on ... in

UNIT 121

121.1

2 On the second floor.
3 On the corner. *or* At the corner.
4 In the corner.
5 At the top of the stairs.
6 In the back of the car.
7 In the front.
8 On the left.
9 In the back row.
10 At the end of the street.

121.2

2 on the right
3 in the world
4 on the way to work
5 on the West Coast
6 in the front row
7 in the back of the class (at the back of the class *is also possible*)
8 on the back of this card

121.3

2 in
3 at
4 in
5 on
6 in
7 in
8 in
9 at
10 on
11 in
12 on
13 in
14 on ... on

UNIT 122

122.1

2 on a train
3 at a conference
4 in the hospital
5 at the hairdresser's
6 on his bike
7 in New York
8 at the Apollo Theater

122.2

2 at the station
3 in a taxi
4 at the gym
5 on the plane
6 in Tokyo
7 in school
8 at the art museum

122.3

2 in
3 at
4 in
5 on
6 in
7 in
8 at
9 at
10 in
11 on
12 at
13 in
14 in
15 at
16 at ... at

127.3

2 of
3 to
4 with
5 with (by *or* in *are also possible*)
6 to
7 at/by
8 with
9 about
10 about
11 for
12 about/by/at
13 to
14 of
15 by/with
16 with/at
17 about
18 at/by
19 for/about
20 at/by
21 of
22 to
23 about
24 furious **with/at** us **for** making

UNIT 128

128.1

2 proud of
3 ashamed of
4 typical of
5 capable of
6 scared of
7 aware of
8 envious of

128.2

Example answers:
2 I'm terrible at telling jokes.
3 I'm not very good at math.
4 I'm pretty good at remembering names.
5 I'm good at making decisions.

128.3

2 similar to
3 afraid of
4 interested in
5 responsible for
6 proud of
7 different from / different than
8 capable of

128.4

2 of furniture
3 in sports
4 of time
5 at her job
6 to a doctor
7 of him / of Robert
8 from yours / from your problem *or* than yours / than your problem

128.5

2 for
3 of
4 in
5 of
6 of
7 with
8 of
9 on
10 of

UNIT 129

129.1

2 a
3 b
4 b
5 a
6 a
7 b
8 a
9 b
10 b
11 a
12 b

129.2

3 spoken to
4 point (them) at
5 look (directly) at
6 listen to
7 throw (stones) at
8 throw (it) to
9 reply to

129.3

2 at
3 at
4 to
5 to
6 at
7 at
8 to
9 at
10 at
11 to

UNIT 130

130.1

2 waiting for her to reply
3 searched my bag
4 asked him for a receipt
5 to ask the way
6 discussed the problem
7 nothing about them
8 for the airport

130.2

2 to
3 for
4 about
5 – (*no preposition*)
6 about
7 for
8 about

130.3

2 of
3 about
4 for
5 of
6 for
7 about
8 – (*no preposition*)

130.4

2 looking for
3 looked after
4 look for
5 looks after
6 looking for

130.5

2 wait for
3 talk about
4 ask (me) for
5 applied for
6 do (something) about
7 takes (care) of
8 left (Boston) for

UNIT 131

131.1

2 hear about
3 heard from
4 heard of
5 hear from
6 hear about
7 heard of

131.2

2 think about
3 thinking about
4 think of
5 think of
6 thinking of / thinking about
7 thought about
8 think of
9 think about
10 think (much) of
11 thinking about / thinking of
12 think of

131.3

2 of
3 about
4 of
5 of
6 to (us) about
7 of
8 about ... about ... about ... about

131.4
2 complaining about
3 think about
4 heard of
5 dream of
6 reminded (me) about
7 remind (you) of

UNIT 132

132.1
2 for
3 of
4 of
5 – (*no preposition*)
6 for
7 of/from
8 for
9 of
10 for
11 on
12 for

132.2
2 for the misunderstanding
3 her on/for winning the tournament
4 him from his enemies
5 on bread and eggs
6 me for the (bad) weather *or* the (bad) weather on me
7 my friend of stealing a car *or* (that) my friend had stolen a car.

132.3
2 paid for
3 accused of
4 depends on
5 live on
6 apologize to
7 suffers from
8 congratulate (him) on/for

132.4
2 from
3 on
4 – (*no preposition*)
5 from
6 depends how (*no preposition*) *or* depends **on** how
7 on
8 of
9 on/for

2 happened to
3 divided into
4 invited to
5 believe in
6 fill (it) with
7 breaks into
8 Concentrate on
9 succeeded in
10 drove into

2 I prefer small towns to big cities
3 The company provided me with all the information I needed
4 This morning I spent $120 on a pair of shoes
5 The city is divided into ten districts

2 to
3 on
4 in
5 to
6 in
7 with
8 into
9 in
10 on
11 – (*no preposition*)
12 into
13 on
14 into
15 with
16 from (one language) into another

Example answers:
2 on gas
3 into a wall
4 to volleyball
5 in seafood
6 into many languages

2 sit down
3 taking off
4 flew away / flew off
5 get out
6 speak up
7 get by
8 gone up
9 looked around
10 be back
11 broke down
12 get along

134.2
2 back at
3 up to
4 forward to
5 away with
6 up at
7 in through
8 out about

134.3
2 wake me up
3 get it out
4 give them back
5 turn it on
6 take them off

134.4
3 I have to give them back to her.
4 We can turn the TV/television off. *or* We can turn off the TV/television.
5 I don't want to wake her up.
6 You should put your coat on ... *or* You should put on your coat ...
7 I was able to put it out ...
8 Should I turn the light(s) on? *or* Should I turn on the light(s)?
9 I took my shoes off ... *or* I took off my shoes ...
10 I knocked it over ...

UNIT 135

135.1
2 eats
3 drop
4 fill
5 moved
6 checked
7 plug
8 dropped
9 dive

135.2
2 in
3 into
4 out
5 into
6 in
7 out
8 out of

135.3
2 dropped out
3 moved in
4 left out
5 joined in
6 fits in
7 dropped in
8 handing out

135.4
2 Fill them out
3 handed it in
4 let us in
5 get out of it

135.5

2 drop out of college
3 fill out the application form
4 get out of going to the party
5 drop in (and see us) sometime
6 was left out of the team *or* had been left out ...

UNIT 136

136.1

2 a candle
3 an order
4 a fire
5 a new product
6 a problem

136.2

2 works out
3 carried out
4 ran out
5 work out
6 find out
7 tried out
8 pointed out
9 work out
10 went out
11 turned out
12 check out
13 find out
14 put out
15 figure out
16 works out

136.3

2 blew out / has blown out
3 turned out nice/sunny
4 working out
5 run out of
6 figure out how to use the camera / her new camera

136.4

2 try it out
3 figure it out / work it out
4 pointing it out
5 check it out

UNIT 137

137.1

2 turned the oven on
3 turn the heat off
4 turned the TV off
5 turn some music on

137.2

2 going on
3 take off
4 drove off / went off
5 put on
6 had on
7 put off
8 called off
9 put on
10 tried on
11 see (me) off
12 putting (it) off.

137.3

2 took off
3 tried on a/the hat *or* tried a/the hat on
4 was called off
5 see him off
6 put them on

UNIT 138

138.1

2 c
3 b
4 a
5 c
6 b

138.2

2 lay off
3 drive on / go on
4 ripped off
5 taken on
6 went off
7 told off
8 went on
9 move on
10 keep on
11 showing off
12 hold on
13 went on with
14 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off

138.3

2 dragging on
3 go on / keep on
4 move on
5 were/got ripped off
6 go off
7 tell her off
8 She keeps on
9 dropped me off

UNIT 139

139.1

2 took them down
3 stand up
4 turned it up
5 put their bags down
6 were blown down
7 put them up
8 bent down (and) picked them up

139.2

2 turned it down
3 calm him down
4 let her down
5 written it down
6 cut them down

139.3

2 calm down
3 slowed down
4 was turned down
5 broken down
6 cut down
7 let down
8 closed down / has closed down
9 be torn down
10 turned down
11 burned down
12 broken down

UNIT 140

140.1

2 went up to / walked up to
3 catch up with
4 keep up with

140.2

2 used up
3 backed up
4 grow up
5 show up
6 gave up
7 taking up
8 give up
9 ended up
10 takes up
11 make up

140.3

3 keep it up
4 backing me up
5 keep up with
6 was brought up
7 went up to
8 set it up
9 gave it up / gave up
10 was made up of

UNIT 141

141.1

2 d
3 e
4 c
5 g
6 a
7 b

141.2

2 held up
3 fixed it up
4 cheer him up

141.3

2 blew up
3 beaten up
4 broken up / split up
5 came up
6 clears up / will clear up
7 mixed up

141.4

2 look it up
3 put up with
4 making it up
5 come up with
6 tear them up
7 saving up for
8 bring it up
9 mix them up / get them mixed up
10 clean it up

UNIT 142

142.1

2 blew away
3 put it back
4 walked away
5 threw it back (to her)
6 threw them away

142.2

2 be away / have gone away
3 be back
4 ran away
5 get away
6 keep away / keep back
7 smile back

142.3

2 throw
3 gets
4 be
5 look
6 gave
7 get
8 put

142.4

2 throw it away
3 take them back
4 pay you back / pay it back
5 gave them away
6 called back / called me back

Answer Key to Additional Exercises

1

3 I'm getting / I am getting
4 do you do
5 we arrived ... it was raining
6 calls ... she didn't call
7 you were thinking ... I decided
8 are you looking
9 It doesn't rain
10 He wasn't looking
11 we went ... she was studying ... We didn't want ... we didn't stay
12 told ... he didn't believe ... He thought ... I was joking

2

2 didn't go
3 is wearing
4 went
5 haven't heard
6 is being
7 wasn't reading
8 didn't have
9 It's beginning
10 worked
11 wasn't
12 you've stayed
13 I've been doing
14 did she leave
15 I've been playing
16 do you come
17 since I saw her
18 for 20 years

3

3 are you going
4 Do you watch
5 have you lived / have you been living / have you been
6 Did they have
7 Have you seen
8 was she wearing
9 Have you been waiting / Have you been here
10 does it take
11 Have you heard
12 Have you been / Have you ever been

4

2 've known each other / have known each other *or* 've been friends / have been friends
3 I've ever had / I've ever been on / I've had for ages (*etc.*)
4 He went / He went home / He went out / He left
5 I've worn it
6 I was playing
7 been swimming for / gone swimming for
8 since I've been / since I've gone / since I went / since I last went
9 did you buy / did you get

5

1 got ... was already waiting ... had arrived
2 was lying ... wasn't watching ... 'd fallen / had fallen ... was snoring ... turned ... woke
3 'd just gone / had just gone ... was reading ... heard ... got ... didn't see ... went
4 missed ... was standing ... realized ... 'd left / had left ... had ... got
5 met ... was walking ... 'd been / had been ... 'd been playing / had been playing ... were going ... invited ... 'd arranged / had arranged ... didn't have

6

2 Somebody has taken it.
3 They'd only known / They had only known each other (for) a few weeks.
4 It's been raining / It has been raining all day. *or* It's rained / It has rained all day.
5 I'd been dreaming. / I had been dreaming.
6 I'd had / I had had a big breakfast.
7 They've been going / They have been going there for years.
8 I've had it / I have had it since I got up.
9 He's been training / He has been training very hard for it. (He's / He is training ... *is also possible.*)

7

1 I haven't seen
2 You look / You're looking
3 are you going
4 are you meeting
5 I'm going
6 Do you travel
7 are you going
8 I'm meeting
9 has been (delayed) / is (delayed)
10 I've been waiting
11 has just started / just started
12 is she doing
13 Does she like
14 she thinks
15 Are you working
16 spoke
17 you were working
18 went
19 I started / I'd started
20 I lost
21 you haven't had
22 I've had
23 have you seen
24 has he been
25 I saw
26 he left
27 He'd been
28 he decided / he'd decided
29 He was really looking forward
30 is he doing
31 I haven't heard
32 he left

8

1 invented
2 it ended / it has ended / it's ended
3 had gone ... left
4 did you do ... Did you go
5 have you had
6 was looking *or* 'd been looking / had been looking
7 She's been teaching / She has been teaching
8 bought ... she hasn't worn *or* she didn't wear
9 I saw ... looked ... I'd seen / I had seen ... I remembered ... he was
10 Have you heard ... She was ... died ... She wrote ... I haven't read
11 does this word mean ... I've never seen
12 Did you get ... it had already started
13 knocked ... was ... she'd gone / she had gone ... she didn't want
14 He'd never used / He had never used ... he didn't know
15 went ... She needed ... she'd been sitting / she had been sitting

9

3 used to drive
4 was driving
5 were working
6 used to have
7 was living
8 was playing
9 used to play
10 was wearing

10

2 I'm going to the dentist.
3 No, we're going to rent a car.
4 I'll call her now.
5 I'm having lunch with Sue.
6 What are you going to have? / What are you having?
7 I'll turn on the light.
8 I'm going to close the window.

11

2 B
3 A
4 B
5 A
6 C
7 C
8 A

12

1 (2) Are you going to take / Are you taking
(3) it starts
(4) you'll enjoy / you're going to enjoy
(5) it will be / it's going to be
2 (1) you're going
(2) We're going
(3) you have
(4) I'll get
(5) I get
3 (1) I'm having / I'm going to have
(2) are coming
(3) they'll have left
(4) they're
(5) I won't be / I will not be
(6) you know
(7) I'll call
4 (1) I'll be waiting
(2) you arrive
(3) I'll be sitting
(4) I'll be wearing
(5) Is Agent 307 coming / Is Agent 307 going to come / Will Agent 307 be coming
(6) I'll explain / I'm going to explain
(7) I see
(8) I'll try

13

1 I'll have
2 Are you going
3 It's going to land
4 it's / it is
5 I'll miss / I'm going to miss ... you go / you've gone
6 I'll give ... I give ... will you call
7 I'm going to resign
8 does it finish
9 I'm going ... is getting
10 I'll tell ... I'm ... I won't be
11 I'm going to get / I'm getting
12 she apologizes
13 we'll be living / we'll live
14 you finish / you've finished

14

2 I've had / I have had
3 I bought *or* I got
4 I'll come / I will come *or* I'll be / I will be
5 I've been / I have been *or* I've eaten / I have eaten
6 I used to play
7 I haven't been waiting *or* I haven't been here
8 I'd been / I had been / I was *or* I'd gone / I had gone / I went
9 I'm going / I am going
10 I haven't seen *or* I haven't heard from
11 I'll have gone / I will have gone *or* I'll have left / I will have left

15

2 I've been traveling
3 I'm beginning
4 I've seen
5 has been
6 I've met
7 I left
8 I stayed *or* I was staying
9 I'd planned *or* I was planning
10 I ended up
11 I enjoyed
12 I took
13 met
14 I'm staying *or* I'm going to stay *or* I'll be staying *or* I'll stay
15 I continue
16 I'll get
17 I'm
18 I'll let
19 I know
20 I'm staying
21 we're going to visit *or* we're visiting
22 are building *or* have been building
23 it will be
24 I'll be

16

2 A
3 C
4 B *or* C
5 B
6 A *or* C
7 A *or* C
8 C
9 B *or* C
10 A *or* B
11 A
12 C
13 A *or* B
14 B
15 B

17

2 should have come
3 shouldn't have eaten
4 must have forgotten
5 can't be changed
6 may be watching
7 should have been
8 must have been waiting
9 couldn't have done
10 could have called
11 should have been warned

18

3 could rain / might rain
4 might have gone / could have gone
5 couldn't go
6 couldn't have seen / can't have seen
7 should get
8 wouldn't recognize / might not recognize
9 must have heard
10 should have turned

19

2 Where should we go (on vacation)?
3 Should I buy it?
4 Should we take a taxi, or should we walk?
5 What should we give/buy/get Olivia (for her birthday)?
6 What time should we meet?

20

4 rings
5 you were
6 it's / it is
7 it was *or* it were
8 it had been
9 you had
10 I'd had / I had had
11 it wouldn't have happened
12 I didn't watch

21

2 called (me)
3 (If) I'd known / I had known ... (I) wouldn't have disturbed (you).
4 (There) wouldn't be (so many accidents if) there was ... *or* ... (if) there were ...
5 (If) you'd told me about (the problem), I would have tried to help / I'd have tried to help (you). *or* ... I would have helped / I'd have helped
6 (I) would have gotten (very wet if) I hadn't had ...
7 (If he) hadn't been / hadn't gotten ... he wouldn't have failed / he would have passed / he'd have passed ...

22

Example answers:

1 I wasn't feeling so tired
2 I hadn't had so much to do
3 I would have forgotten Amy's birthday
4 I'd probably waste it
5 I'll take a picture of you
6 you were in trouble
7 you hadn't taken so long to get ready
8 I would have gone to the concert
9 I might have gotten the job
10 you'd eaten lunch
11 there was/were less traffic
12 it would be harder to get information

23

3 was canceled
4 has been repaired
5 is being restored
6 It's believed / It is believed
7 I'd be fired / I would be fired *or* I'd get fired / I would get fired
8 It might have been thrown
9 He was taught
10 being arrested / having been arrested *or* I was arrested
11 Have you ever been arrested
12 are reported ... have been injured

24

3 sold *or* 've sold / have sold
4 's been sold / has been sold *or* was sold
5 are made
6 might be/get stolen
7 must have been stolen
8 must have taken
9 can be solved
10 should have left
11 is delayed
12 is being built ... is expected

25

Fire at City Hall

2 was discovered
3 was injured
4 be rescued
5 are believed to have been destroyed
6 is not known

Convenience Store Robbery

1 was forced
2 being threatened
3 had been stolen
4 was later found
5 had been abandoned
6 has been arrested / was arrested
7 is still being questioned

Road Delays

1 is being resurfaced
2 are asked / are being asked / have been asked
3 is expected
4 will be closed / is going to be closed
5 will be diverted / is going to be diverted

Accident

1 was taken
2 was allowed
3 was blocked
4 be rerouted
5 have been killed

26

1 I told **her (that) Paul had gone out** and **I didn't know when he'd be back**. I asked **(her) if/whether she wanted to leave a message**, but she said **(that) she'd try again** later.
2 I had made a hotel reservation, but when I got to the hotel they told **me (that) they had no record of a reservation in my name**. When I asked **(them) if/whether they had any rooms available**, they said **(that) they were sorry**, but **the hotel was full**.
3 The immigration officer asked us **why we were visiting the country**, and we told **him (that) we were on vacation**. Then he wanted to know **how long we intended to stay** and **where we would be staying during our visit**.
4 She said **(that) she'd call us from the airport when she arrived**. *or* She said **(that) she'll call us from the airport when she arrives**.
No, she said **not to come to the airport**. She said **that she'd take the bus**. *or* She said **that she'll take the bus**.
5 He wanted to know **what my job was** and asked **(me) how much (money) I made**. *or* He wanted to know **what my job is and asked me how much (money) I make**. ... so I told **him to mind his own business** and ended the call.
6 He said **(that) he'd be at the restaurant at 7:30**.
He said **(that) he knew where the restaurant was**.
And I told **him to call me if there was a problem**.
7 You just said **(that) you weren't hungry**. But you said **(that) you didn't like bananas**. You told **me not to buy any**.

27

3 changing
4 to change
5 change
6 being
7 saying
8 to call
9 drinking
10 to be
11 to see
12 taking
13 to be
14 to think ... making
15 living ... to move
16 to be ... playing
17 being stopped ... driving
18 work ... pushing

28

3 We stopped watching after a while.
4 He tends to forget things.
5 Would you mind helping me? / Do you mind helping me?
6 Everybody seems to have gone out.
7 We're / We are thinking of moving.
8 I was afraid to touch it.
9 I was afraid of missing my train.
10 It's / It is not worth seeing.
11 I'm not used to walking so far.
12 She seems to be enjoying herself. *or* She seemed ...
13 He insisted on showing them to me.
14 I'd rather somebody else did it.

29

3 I've given up eating candy.
4 I'd rather not go out tonight / ... stay at home tonight.
5 He has trouble sleeping at night.
6 Do you want me to call you tonight?
7 I came in without anybody/anyone seeing me / ... without being seen.
8 I was accused of being a liar / ... of lying.
9 I'm looking forward to seeing them again.
10 What do you advise me to do?
11 I'd like to have gone out with you last night.
12 I regret not taking your advice / ... that I didn't take your advice.

30

2 a foreign country ... the language
3 an economist ... in the United States ... for an investment company
4 Tennis is my favorite sport ... two or three times a week ... not a very good player
5 for dinner ... after work ... to the movies
6 When unemployment is ... for people to find work .... a big problem
7 an accident ... going home ... taken to the hospital ... I think most accidents ... by people driving
8 the name of the hotel ...The Ambassador ... on West Street in the suburbs ... near the airport
9 The older one ... to be a pilot ... The younger one ... in high school ... he leaves school ... go to college ... study engineering

31

2 B
3 C
4 A *or* B
5 C
6 B
7 A *or* C
8 A
9 C
10 B *or* C
11 B
12 A
13 A *or* B
14 B

32

3 It's the most polluted place ...
4 I was disappointed that ...
5 *OK*
6 Joe works hard, but ...
7 ... in a large modern building.
8 *OK* (as fast as he can *is also correct*)
9 I missed the last three days ...
10 *OK*
11 The weather has been unusually cold ..
12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in.
13 ... to wait such a long time. *or* to wait so long.
14 *OK*
15 ... I got up earlier than usual.

33

2 If
3 when
4 if
5 when
6 if
7 if
8 unless
9 if
10 as long as
11 in case
12 in case
13 if
14 even if
15 Although
16 Although
17 When
18 when

34

2 on
3 on Tuesday morning at 9.30
4 at
5 on
6 at
7 In
8 on
9 during
10 on Friday ... since then
11 for
12 at
13 at the moment ... until Friday
14 by
15 in

35

1 in
2 by
3 at
4 on
5 in
6 on
7 to a party at Emily's house
8 on
9 on
10 to
11 in Vienna ... at the age of 35
12 in this photo ... on the left
13 to the theater ... in the front row
14 on the wall by the door / next to the door / beside the door
15 at
16 on
17 in a high-rise ... on the fifteenth floor
18 on
19 by
20 on the bus ... by car
21 on
22 in
23 in London ... to Italy
24 to
25 on

36

1 for
2 at
3 to
4 to
5 in
6 with
7 of
8 to
9 of
10 at/by
11 of
12 about

37

1 of
2 after
3 – (*no preposition*)
4 about
5 to
6 – (*no preposition*)
7 into
8 of (about *is also possible*)
9 to
10 – (*no preposition*)
11 on
12 of
13 of
14 – (*no preposition*)
15 in
16 at (about *is also possible*)
17 on
18 If Alex asks you for money
19 I apologized to Sarah for keeping ...
20 I thanked her for everything

38

2 h
3 e
4 g
5 a
6 i
7 c
8 j
9 b
10 f

39

2 D
3 B
4 B
5 A
6 B
7 D
8 C
9 C
10 B
11 A
12 D

40

2 out to
3 up with
4 forward to
5 up with
6 out of
7 on with
8 up with
9 back on
10 out about
11 along with

41

3 showed up / turned up
4 fill it out
5 torn down
6 give up
7 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off
8 split up / break up
9 put up with it
10 get by
11 went on
12 put it off

42

2 put
3 moving
4 put
5 fixed
6 turned/turns
7 find
8 Calm
9 drop/stop
10 held
11 left / 've left / have left *or* missed / 've missed / have missed
12 drop
13 join
14 works
15 let
16 work
17 went off ... woke

Answer Key to Study Guide

Present and Past

1.1 A
1.2 B
1.3 C
1.4 B, C
1.5 C
1.6 A

Present Perfect and Past

2.1 C
2.2 A
2.3 A, C
2.4 A
2.5 A
2.6 C
2.7 A
2.8 B
2.9 A, D
2.10 D
2.11 C
2.12 A
2.13 C, D
2.14 C
2.15 D
2.16 C

Future

3.1 B
3.2 A
3.3 C
3.4 A, C
3.5 B
3.6 C
3.7 A

Modals

4.1 A, B
4.2 B
4.3 A, C, D
4.4 C
4.5 B
4.6 C, D
4.7 B
4.8 B
4.9 A, D
4.10 A
4.11 D, E
4.12 A

if and wish

5.1 B
5.2 C
5.3 B
5.4 D
5.5 A

Passive

6.1 C
6.2 B
6.3 D
6.4 A
6.5 A, B
6.6 C
6.7 D

Reported Speech

7.1 A
7.2 B
7.3 A

Questions and Auxiliary Verbs

8.1 C
8.2 A
8.3 D
8.4 A
8.5 B

-ing and to ...

9.1 A
9.2 B, D
9.3 B
9.4 A
9.5 A
9.6 A
9.7 C
9.8 D
9.9 D
9.10 C
9.11 B
9.12 C, D
9.13 D
9.14 B
9.15 A, B
9.16 A
9.17 A
9.18 B, C

Articles and Nouns

10.1 B
10.2 A
10.3 B, C
10.4 B
10.5 C
10.6 A
10.7 A
10.8 A
10.9 D
10.10 C
10.11 C
10.12 A
10.13 C
10.14 B

Pronouns and Determiners

11.1 A
11.2 B
11.3 D
11.4 B
11.5 B
11.6 C
11.7 A, C
11.8 D
11.9 D
11.10 A
11.11 B
11.12 B, C

Relative Clauses

12.1 A, C
12.2 A, B
12.3 C
12.4 B
12.5 D
12.6 B, C

Adjectives and Adverbs

13.1 B
13.2 C
13.3 B, C
13.4 A
13.5 A, D
13.6 C
13.7 C
13.8 C
13.9 B, C
13.10 D
13.11 A, B
13.12 B
13.13 D, E
13.14 D

Conjunctions and Prepositions

14.1 A, D
14.2 C
14.3 B, C
14.4 B, D
14.5 B
14.6 C, D
14.7 B, C
14.8 A

Prepositions

15.1 B, D
15.2 A
15.3 C
15.4 B
15.5 A
15.6 B, D
15.7 B
15.8 B
15.9 C
15.10 C
15.11 C
15.12 A
15.13 C
15.14 B
15.15 D
15.16 D
15.17 A

Phrasal Verbs

16.1 B
16.2 A
16.3 D
16.4 C
16.5 C
16.6 B
16.7 A
16.8 A, D
16.9 B

Index

The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a/an 67–70
  a/an and *the* 70, 71A
  a little / a few 85D–E
  such a/an 100
able (*be able to*) 25
about
  adjective + *about* 127, 128A
  verb + *about* 130–131
accuse (*of*) 60B, 132A
active and passive 40
adjectives 96–99
  adjective + *to* ... 63–64
  the + adjective 74B
  adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed* 96
  order of adjectives 97
  adjectives after verbs 97C
  adjectives and adverbs 98–99
  comparative 102–104
  superlative 105
  adjective + preposition 127–128
advantage (*of/in/to*) 58A, 126B
adverbs
  adjectives and adverbs 98–99
  comparatives 102B
  position of adverbs with the verb (*always, also*, etc.) 107
advice (noncount noun) 68B
advise (+ *to* ...) 53B
afford (+ *to* ...) 52A, 54A
afraid (*of*) 128A
  I'm afraid so/not 49D
  afraid to do and *afraid of doing* 64A
after
  after + present simple / present perfect 24A–B
  after + *-ing* 58B, 66B
  look after 130D
ago 12C
agree (+ *to* ...) 52A, 54A
all 86, 88
  all and *all the* 73B, 86B
  all (*of*) 86
  all and *both* 87D
  all, every and *whole* 88
  position of *all* 107D
alleged (*it is alleged* ...) 43A
allow (+ *to* ... and *-ing*) 53B, 64D
already 8D, 108D
  position of *already* 107
also (position of *also*) 107
although 110
always
  I always do and *I'm always doing* 3B
  position of *always* 107
amazed
  amazed + *to* ... 63C
  amazed at/by 127C
an see **a**
angry (*about/with/for*) 127B
annoyed (*about/with/for*) 127B
answer
  an answer to something 126D
  to answer a question (no preposition) 129B
any 67C, 83–84
  any and *some* 83
  anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere 83–84
  not ... any 84
  any and *no* 84D
  any (*of*) 86
  any and *either* 87D
  any + comparative 103B
  anymore / any longer 108B
apologize (*to somebody for*) 60, 129A, 132B
apostrophe (in short forms) Appendix 5
apostrophe s ('s) 79, 81A
appear (+ *to* ...) 52B
apply (*for*) 130B
approve (*of* + *-ing*) 60A, 132A
aren't I? (tag question) 50D
arrange (+ *to* ...) 52A, 54A
arrive (*in/at*) 123B
articles (*a/an/the*) 67–76
  a/an 67–70
  a/an and *the* 70, 71A
  the 70–76
  school / the school, etc. 72
  children / the children, etc. 73
  the with names 75–76
as 104, 113–115
  as soon as 24A–B
  as ... as (in comparative sentences) 104
  as long as 112B
  as (= at the same time as) 113A
  as and *when* 113
  as (= because) 113B
  as and *like* 114
  as if / as though 115
ashamed (*of*) 128A
ask
  ask in passive sentences 42A
  ask (*somebody*) *to do something* 46D, 53A
  ask how/what + *to* ... 52D
  ask somebody (no preposition) 129B
  ask somebody for 130B
astonished (*at/by*) 127C
at
  at (time) 118
  at the end and *in the end* 119B
  at (position) 120–4
  at the age of ... 124D
  adjective + *at* 127B–C, 128B
  verb + *at* 129
attitude (*about/to/toward/towards*) 126D
auxiliary verbs (see also **modal verbs**)
  in questions 47A–B
  in short answers, etc. 49
  in tag questions 50
avoid (+ *-ing*) 51A, 54A
aware (*of*) 128A
away (verb + *away*) 134, 142

back
  in/on the back 121D, Appendix 7
  back up 140D
  verb + *back* 142
bad (*at*) 128B
baggage (noncount noun) 68B
base form of verb Appendix 1
  subjunctive 32A
  after *make* and *let* 53C
  see/hear somebody do 65
because (of) 110B–C
bed (*in bed / to bed*) 72C, 122A
been *to* 7A, 123A
before
  before + simple present 24A
  before + *-ing* 58B
begin (+ *-ing* or *to* ...) 54C
beginning (*at the beginning*) 119B
being (*he is* and *he is being*) 4D
believe (*in*) 133A
believed (*it is believed* ...) 43A
better 102C
  had better 33A–B
between (noun + *between*) 126E
blame 132B
bored
  bored and *boring* 96
  bored with 127C
born (*I was born* ...) 42C
both (*of*) 87
  both ... and 87C
  both and *all* 87D
  position of *both* 107D
bother (+ *-ing* or *to* ...) 54C
bottom (*at the bottom*) 121C
bound (*bound to do*) 63E
bread (noncount noun) 68B
break
  break into 133B
  break down 134B, 139D
  break up 141D
British English Appendix 7
busy (*busy doing something*) 61D
by 117, 125
  by after the passive 40B, 125C
  by (+ *-ing*) 58B
  by myself / yourself, etc. 81E
  by (*the time*) 117
  by and *until* 117B
  by chance / by mistake, etc. 125A
  by car / by bus, etc. 125B
  a play by Shakespeare, etc. 125C
  adjective + *by* 127C

call
call somebody (no preposition) 129A
call back 142C
call something off 137B

can 25
can I/you ... ? 35
can and other modal verbs Appendix 4
can't (*cannot*) 25, 27
can't help 55C
capable (*of*) 128A
care (*care about, care for, take care of*) 130C
carry
carry out 136C
case (*in case*) 111
causative have (*have something done*) 44
cause (*of*) 126B
certain
certain of/about 128A
check
a check for 126A
by check 125B
check something out 136C
church (*church / the church*) 72B
claim (*+ to ...*) 52B
class (*class/the class*) 72B
clauses
when and *if* clauses 24
if clauses 36–38
relative clauses 90–94
college (*college / the college*) 72B
collide (*with*) 133C
comparative 102–104
comparatives + *even* 109C
complain (*to somebody about/of ...*) 131D
compound nouns (*a tennis ball, a headache*, etc.) 78
concentrate (*on*) 133E
conditional sentences (*if* sentences)
if I do... 24C
if I do and *if I did* 36
if I knew, if I were, etc. 37
if I had known, if I had been, etc. 38
unless 112A
as long as 112B
provided 112B
congratulate (*on*) 60B, 132D
connection (*with/between*) 126E
conscious (*of*) 128A
consider (*+ -ing*) 51A, 54A
consist (*of*) 132A
contact (*with/between*) 126E
continue (*+ to ...* or *-ing*) 54C
continuous tenses see **present continuous, past continuous**
verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 15D, 16A
contractions (short forms) Appendix 5
corner (*in/at/on the corner*) 121E

could 25, 26, 28C
could and *was able to* 25D
could (do) and *could have (done)* 26
couldn't have (done) 26E
could in *if* sentences 36C, 37E, 38D
I wish I could 39C
could I/you ...? 35
could and other modal verbs Appendix 4
count and noncount nouns 67–68
crash (*into*) 133B
critical (*of*) 128A
crowded (*with*) 128B

damage (noncount noun) 68B
damage to 126D
dare 52C
decide
decide + to ... 52, 54A
decide against + -ing 60A
delighted (*with*) 127B
demand
I demand you do 32B
a demand for 126A
deny (*+ -ing*) 51, 54A
depend (*on*) 132D
dependent (*on*) 128B
depressed (and *depressing*) 96
deserve (*+ to ...*) 52A, 54A
despite 110
did
did in simple past questions and negatives) 5C
die (*of*) 132A
difference (*between*) 126E
different (*from/than*) 128B, Appendix 7
difficulty (*have difficulty + -ing*) 61C
direct speech and reported speech 45–46, 48B
disappointed
disappointed + to ... 63C
disappointed and *disappointing* 96
disappointed with 127B
discuss (no preposition) 130A
divide (*into*) 133B
do/does (in simple present questions and negatives) 2C
down (verb + *down*) 134, 139
dream
dream of + -ing 60A, 64D
dream about/of 131C
during 116

each (*of*) 89
each other 80C
-ed phrases 95
either (*of*) 87
not ... either 49C
either ... or 87C
either and *any* 87D
elder 103E
eldest 105C
encourage (*+ to ...*) 53B

end
in the end and *at the end* 119B
at the end (position) 121C
end up 140E
enjoy (*+ -ing*) 51A, 52A, 54A, 56A
enough 101
envious (*of*) 128A
even 109
position of *even* 107
even if / when 109D
even though 109D, 110E
ever (with the present perfect) 7A–B
every 88
every and *all* 88
everybody/everyone/everything 88A, D
every and *each* 89
everyone and *every one* 89D
excited (*about*) 127B
exclamations (*What ...*) 69A–B
expect
expect + to ... 53A
expected (*it is expected that*) 43A
experience (count or noncount noun) 68A
explain 52D, 129A

fail (*+ to...*) 52A, 54A, 64D
famous (*for*) 128B
far
far/farther/further 102C
far + comparative 103A
fast 99B
fed up (*with*) 58A, 127C
feel
how do you feel and *how are you feeling* 4C
feel like 60A
feel + adjective 97C, 98C
few 67C, 85
few and *a few* 85C–E
few (of) 86
finish
finish + -ing 51A
first
it's the first time I've ... 7D
the first/last/next + to ... 63D
the first two days 97D
fond (*of*) 128A
for
for with the present perfect 7C, 9B, 11–12
for and *since* 12A
for and *to ...* (purpose) 62C, 101C
for and *during* 116
noun + *for* 126A
adjective + *for* 127D, 128B
verb + *for* 130, 132B
forget (*+ to ...*) 52, 54A
forgive (*for*) 132B
frightened (*of*) 128A
from
adjective + *from* 128B
verb + *from* 132C
front (*in/on the front*) 121D

full (*of*) 128A
furious (*about/with/at/for*) 127B
furniture (noncount noun) 68B
further 102C
future 18–24, Appendix 3
present tenses with a future meaning 18
going to 19
will 20–21
will and *going to* 22
will be doing (future continuous) 23
will have done (future perfect) 23
future with *when, if,* etc. 24, 111A, 112C, 116C

generous (+ preposition) 127A
geographical names with and without *the* 75
gerund see **-ing**
get
get in the passive 42D
get something done 44C
get someone to do something 53B
get used to 59
get + adjective 97C
get to (a place) 123B
get in/out/on/off 123D, 135A
get along 134B–C
get by 134B
get out of 135C
get on 134A
get away (*with*) 142B
get back to 142C
getting (present continuous) 1C
give
give in passive sentences 42A
give up 51B, 134B, 140E
give out 135C
give away 142B
glad (+ *to* ...) 63C
go
go swimming/shopping, etc. 61E
go on vacation / on a trip, etc. 124C
go on 51B, 137B, 138A
go on doing and *go on to do* 54B
go out 136A
go off 137D, 138C
going to 19, Appendix 3
going to and *will* 22
was/were going to 19D
good
good at 58A, 128B
good of someone to do something, (be) good to someone 127A
good and *well* 99A
it's no good (+ *-ing*) 61A
got (*have got*) 16A, 30D
guess (*I guess so*) 49D

had
had done (past perfect) 14
had been doing (past perfect continuous) 15
had (past of *have*) 16
if I'd known / I wish I'd known 38
had better 33A–B
hair (count or noncount noun) 68A
half (*of*) 86
happen (*to*) 133D
happy
happy + *to* ... 63C
happy about/with 127B
hard 99B–C
hardly 99C–D
hate
hate doing / to do 56
would hate 56B–C
have/has 16
have done (present perfect) 7–13
have been -ing (present perfect continuous) 9–10
have and *have got* 16
have breakfast / have a good trip, etc. 16C
I'm having, we're having etc. 16C
have to 30
have got to 30D
have/get something done 44
having (*done*) 51D, 66B–C
have something on 137C
hear
with the simple present or *can* 4C
hear someone do/doing 65
hear of/about/from 131A
help
help + *to* ... 53A
can't help 55C
home 72C, 123C
hope
hope + simple present 21B
hope and *wish* 39A
I hope so / I hope not 49D
hope + *to* ... 52A, 54A
hospital
the hospital 72B
in the hospital 122A
British English Appendix 7
how about (+ *-ing*) 58A
how long ... ? (+ present perfect) 11–12
how long is it since ... ? 12D

if 24, 36–38
if I do ... 24C
if I do and *if I did* 36
if I knew, if I were, etc. 37
if I had known, if I had been, etc. 38
if and *when* 24D
if any 83C
even if 109D
if and *in case* 111B
as if 115
if (= *whether*) 48
imagine (+ *-ing*) 51, 54A
impressed (*with/by*) 127C
in
in (time) 118
in time and *on time* 119A
in the end and *at the end* 119B
in (position) 120–123
in/of after a superlative 105D–E
in (other uses) 124A, 126C
adjective + *in* 128B
verb + *in* 133A, 134, 135
in and *into* 135A
in case 111
increase (*in*) 126C
infinitive (*to be, to play,* etc.) 52–57, 62–65
passive infinitive (*to be done*) 41A–B
infinitive in reported speech 46D
verb + infinitive 52–57
continuous infinitive (*to be doing*) 52B
perfect infinitive (*to have done*) 52B, 56C
infinitive after a question word 52D
verb + object + infinitive 53
verb + infinitive or *-ing* 53–56
to–infinitive and *to* + *-ing* 58C
infinitive for purpose (*I called the restaurant to make a reservation*) 62
adjective + infinitive 63–64
information (noncount noun) 68B
-ing (*being, playing,* etc.) 51, 54–61
being (*done*) (passive) 42B
verb + *-ing* 51, 54–57
having (*done*) 51D, 66B–C
verb + *-ing* or *to* ... 54–56
preposition + *-ing* 58, 64
to do and *to doing* 58C
used to + *-ing* 59
verb + preposition + *-ing* 60, 64D
expressions + *-ing* 61
go swimming / go shopping, etc. 61E
see/hear somebody doing 65
-ing phrases 66, 95
insist
insist someone do 32
insist on 32D, 60A, 133E
in spite of 58A, 110
instead of (+ *-ing*) 58A
interested (*in*) 58A, 128B
interested in doing and *interested to do* 64B
interested and *interesting* 96
into 123D
verb + *into* 133B
in and *into* 135A
invitation (*to*) 126D
invite
invite + *to* ... 53B
invite somebody to something 133D
irregular verbs 5B, Appendix 1
it and *there* 82
it's no good / it's no use (+ *-ing*) 61A
it's time ... 33C
it's worth (+ *-ing*) 61B

jealous (*of*) 128A
just 8D, Appendix 7
just in case 111A
just as 113A
just in time 119A

keep
keep on 51, 54A, 138A
keep up (*with* ...) 134C, 140A
keep away (*from* ...) 142B

kind (*kind of someone to do something / be kind to someone*) 63B, 127A
know (*how/what*, etc. + to ...) 52D

late and **lately** 99B
laugh (*at*) 129C
learn (*how*) (+ *to* ...) 52, 54A
leave
leave for 130B
leave something out 135C
less 104A
let
let somebody do something 53C
let somebody down 139D
like (verb)
like doing / to do 56
would like 35D, 53A, 56B–C
like (preposition/conjunction)
like and *as* 114
like / as if / as though 115
likely (+ to ...) 63E, 82B
listen (to) 129A
little 67C, 85
little and *a little* 85C–E
little (*of*) 86
a little + comparative 103A
live (*on*) 132D
long
as long as 112B
no longer / not ... any longer 108B
look
you look and *you're looking* 4C
look forward to 58C, 60A, 134C
look + adjective 97C, 97C
look as if, look like 115
look at 129C
look back (*on*) 142C
look for/after 130D
look up 141D
lot (*a lot / lots*) 85A–B
a lot + comparative 103A
love
love doing / to do 56
would love 56B–C
be/fall in love with 124A
luck (noncount noun) 68B
luggage (noncount noun) 68B

mad (*at*) 127B
make
make somebody do something 53C
make up 140E, 141A
manage (+ *to* ...) 25D, 52A, 54A
many (and *much*) 67C, 85
many (*of*) 86
married (*to*) 128B
may 28–29
may as well 29D
may I ...? 35B–C
may and other modal verbs Appendix 4
mean (adjective—*mean of someone to do something / be mean to someone*) 63B
means (noun) 77B
might 28–29
might in *if* sentences 29B, 36C, 38D
might as well 29D
might and other modal verbs Appendix 4
mind (+ *-ing*) 51, 54A, 56A–B
do you mind if ...? 35C
mine / yours, etc. (*a friend of mine/yours*) 81A
miss (+ *-ing*) 51A
modal verbs (*will, can, must*, etc.) 20–21, 25–35, Appendix 4
more
more in comparatives 102
not ... anymore 108B
most
most + noun 73A
most (*of*) 86
the most (superlative) 105
much (and *many*) 67C, 85
much (*of*) 86
much + comparative 103A
must
you must be tired, etc. 27
must (*not*) and *can't* 27C, Appendix 7
must not and *don't have to* 30C
must and *should* 31A
must and other modal verbs Appendix 4
myself/yourself, etc. (reflexive pronouns) 80
by myself / by yourself, etc. 81E

names with and without *the* 75–76
nationality words with *the* 74C
need
need to do, needs to be done, and *need doing* 55B
a need for 126A
negative
simple present 2C
simple past 5C
subjunctive 32C
negative questions 47D
no, none and *any* 84
negative short forms Appendix 5.3
neither (of) 87
neither am I, neither do I, etc. 49C
neither ... nor 87C
neither and *none* 87D
never
never with the present perfect 7B
position of *never* 107
news (noncount noun) 68B, 77B
nice (*nice of someone to do something / be nice to someone*) 63B, 127A
no
no and *none* (*of*) 84A, 86
no and *any* 84
nobody/no one/nothing/nowhere 84B
no + comparative 103B
no longer 108B
noncount nouns 67–68
none
none (*of*) and *no* 84A, 86
none and *neither* 87D
nor
neither ... nor 87C
nouns
count and noncount 67–68
singular and plural 67, 69, 77
noun + noun (compound nouns) 78
noun + preposition 126

of
of and *'s* 79
all of / none of / most of, etc. 86, 94B
both of / neither of / either of 87, 94B
a friend of mine/yours, etc. 81A
of/in after a superlative 105D
noun + *of* 126B
adjective + *of* 127A, 128A
verb + *of* 131, 132A
off (verb + *off*) 134, 137–138
offer
offer in passive sentences 42A
offer + *to* ... 52A, 54A
on
on my own 81D
on (time) 118
on time and *in time* 119A
on (position) 120–122
on a bus / on a train, etc. 122E
on (other uses) 124B–C
adjective + *on* 128B
verb + *on* 132D, 133E, 134, 137–138
one another 80C
only (position of *only*) 107
out
out of 123D
verb + *out* 134–136
out and *out of* 135A
own
my own house / your own car, 81B–C
on my own / on your own, etc. 81D

paper (count and noncount) 68A
participle clauses (*-ing* and *-ed* clauses) 65, 95
passive 40–42
passive and active 40A
by after the passive 40B
simple tenses 40C
be done/cleaned, etc. 41A–B
perfect tenses 41C
continuous tenses 41D
being (*done*) 42B
get 42D
it is said that 43A
past (see also **past continuous**, **past perfect**, and **simple past**)
past after *if* and *wish* 36–38
past after *it's time* 33C
past after *as if* 115D
present and past tenses Appendix 2

past continuous (*I was doing*) 6
past continuous and simple past 6C–D
past continuous and *used to* 17E
past continuous passive 41D
past perfect (simple) (*I had done*) 14
past perfect and present perfect 14B
past perfect and simple past 14C
past perfect after *if* 38
past perfect passive 41C
past perfect continuous (*I had been doing*) 15
past simple see **simple past**
pay
pay in passive sentences 42A
pay (*somebody*) *for something* 132B
pay back 142C
people 77D
perfect see **present perfect, past perfect**
perfect infinitive (*to have done*) 41B
(passive), 52C, 56C
persuade (*+ to ...*) 53B
phone
on the phone 124B
phone somebody (no preposition) 129B
phone somebody back 142C
photo
in a photo 121A
a photo of someone 126B
phrasal verbs (*break down / get on*, etc.) 134–142
introduction to phrasal verbs 134
phrasal verb + preposition (*run away from*, etc.) 134C
position of object (*turn the light on / turn it on*, etc.) 134D
verb + *in/out* 135–136
verb + *on/off* 137–138
verb + *up/down* 139–141
verb + *away/back* 142
picture
in a picture 121A
a picture of someone 126B
plan (*+ to ...*) 52A, 54A
pleased
pleased + to ... 63C
pleased with 127B
plenty (*of*) 85A
plural and singular 67, 69, 77
they/them/their used for *somebody/nobody*, etc. 83E, 84C, 88D
spelling of plural nouns Appendix 6
point
there's no point in + -ing 61A
point (*something*) *at* 129C
point out 136C
police (plural) 77C
polite
polite of someone to do something / be polite to someone 127A
prefer 57
would prefer 53A, 56B–C, 57B
prefer (*one thing*) *to* (*another*) 57A, 58C, 133D
prepositions 118–133
for and *since* 12A
in questions 47C
preposition + *-ing* 58, 64
verb + preposition + *-ing* 60, 64D
prepositions in relative clauses 91C, 94A
in/of after a superlative 105E
like and *as* 114
for and *during* 116
by 117, 125
by and *until* 117B
at/on/in (time) 118–119
on time and *in time* 119A
at the end and *in the end* 119B
at/on/in (position) 120–122
to/at/in/into 123
in/at/on (other uses) 124
by car / by bus, etc. 125B
noun + preposition 126
adjective + preposition 127–128
verb + preposition 129–133
phrasal verb + preposition 134C
present see **present continuous, simple present, present perfect**
present tenses with a future meaning 18, Appendix 3
present and past tenses Appendix 2
present continuous (*I am doing*) 1
present continuous and simple present 3–4
am/is/are being 4D
present continuous with a future meaning 18, 19B, Appendix 3
present continuous passive 41D
present perfect (simple) (*I have done*) 7, 8, 10–13
present perfect with *this morning, today*, etc. 7C, 13B
present perfect simple and continuous 10–11
present perfect with *how long*, *for*, and *since* 11–12
present perfect and simple past 8, 13
present perfect and past perfect 14B
present perfect after *when* 24B
present perfect passive 41C
present perfect after a superlative 105E
British English Appendix 7
present perfect continuous (*I have been doing*) 9–10
present perfect continuous and present continuous 9C
present perfect continuous and simple 10–11
present perfect continuous and past perfect continuous 15B
present simple see **simple present**
pretend (*+ to ...*) 52B
prevent (*from*) 60B, 64D
prison (*prison / the prison*) 72B, 122A
probably
probably + will 21B
position of *probably* 107
problem (*have a problem + -ing*) 61C
progress (noncount noun) 68B
progressive tenses see continuous
promise
promise (*+ will/would*) 34B
promise + to ... 52A, 54A
protect (*from*) 132C
proud (*of*) 128A
provide (*with*) 133C
provided 112B
purpose
to used for purpose 64
on purpose 124B
put
put out 136A
put off 51B, 137
put on 137
put up/down 139A
put up with 141D
put away 142B

questions 47–48
simple present questions 2C, 47B
simple past questions 5C, 47B
negative questions 47D
embedded questions (*Do you know what ...?*) 48A
reported questions 48B
tag questions 50

rather
would rather 57C
I'd rather you do something 57D
British English Appendix 7
reason (*for*) 126A
recommend 32B–C, 51
reflexive pronouns (*myself, yourself*, etc.) 80
by myself/yourself, etc. 81D
refuse (*+ to ...*) 52A, 54A
regret (*+ -ing* and *to ...*) 51D, 54B
regular and irregular verbs Appendix 1
relationship (*with/between*) 126E
relative clauses 90–94
relative clauses as object 91
prepositions in relative clauses 91C
two types of relative clause 93
relative pronouns 90–94
who 90–94
which 90–91, 93–94
that 90–92
that and *what* 90D
whose 92A, 93C
whom 92B, 93B, 94A–B
where 92C, 93C
of whom / of which 94B
rely (*on*) 132D
remember
remember + to ... and *-ing* 54B
remember how/what + to ... 52D
remind
remind + to ... 53B
remind of/about 131E
reported speech 45–46
reported questions 48B

responsible (*for*) 128B
rise (*in*) 126C
risk (+ *-ing*) 51, 54A
room (count or noncount noun) 68A

's (apostrophe s) 79, 81A, Appendix 5.1
said (*it is said that*) 43A
same (*the same as*) 71B, 104C
satisfied
satisfied and *satisfying* 96
satisfied with 127B
say
say and *tell* 46C
say (+ *to* ...) 46D
scared (*of*) 128A
scenery (noncount noun) 68B
school (*school / the school*) 72A
search (*for*) 130B
see
with the simple present or *can* 4C
see someone do/doing 65
see off 137D
seem
seem + *to* ... 52B
seem + adjective 97C
-self (*myself/yourself*, etc.) 80, 81D
series 77B
shall (British English) Appendix 7
shocked
shocked and *shocking* 96
shocked at/by 127C
short (*of*) 128A
short forms (*I'm, you've, didn't*, etc.) Appendix 5
should 31
should I/we? 31B
should and *had better* 33B
should and other modal verbs Appendix 4
shout (at/to) 129D
show
show in passive sentences 42A
show someone how/what + *to* ... 52D
show off 138C
show up 140E
similar (*to*) 128B
simple past (*I did*) 5
simple past and past continuous 6C-D
simple past and present perfect 8, 13
simple past and past perfect 14C
simple past passive 40C
simple present (*I do*)
simple present and present continuous 3–4
simple present with a future meaning 18B
simple present after *when* and *if* 24, Appendix 3
simple present passive 40C
since
with present perfect 7C, 9B, 11–12
since and *for* 12A
how long has it been since ... ? 12D
since (= because) 113B
singular and plural 67, 69, 77
they/them/their used for *somebody/nobody*, etc. 83E, 84C, 88D
slightly (+ comparative) 103A
smell
with the simple present and *can* 4C
smell something (*burn*)*ing* 65B
smell + adjective 97C
so
so am I, so do I, etc. 49C
I think so, I hope so, etc. 49D
so that (purpose) 62D
so and *such* 100
so + adjective + *that* 100B
so long as 112B
solution (*to*) 126D
some 67C, 69, 83
some with count nouns 69
some and *any* 83
somebody/someone/something/somewhere 83
some (*of*) 85
soon (*as soon as*) 24A–B
sorry
sorry + *to* ... 63C
sorry to do and *sorry for/about doing* 64C
sorry about/for 127D
feel sorry for 127D
sound
sound + adjective 97C
sound as if, sound like 115
space (*space* and *a space*) 71C
speak (*to*) 129A
species 77B
spelling Appendix 6
spend
spend time + *-ing* 61D
spend money 133E
spite (*in spite of*) 110
start (*start* + *to* ... or *-ing*) 54C
state verbs (*like, know, belong*, etc.) 4A, 6E, 10D, 15D, 16A
still 108
still and yet 108C
stop
stop + *-ing* 51, 54A
stop someone from + *-ing* 60B, 64D
stupid (*stupid of someone to do something*) 63B, 127A
subjunctive
I suggest you do 32
I'd rather you do 57D
British English Appendix 7
succeed (*in* + *-ing*) 60A, 64D, 133A
such
such and *so* 100
such as 114A
suffer (*from*) 132C
suggest
I suggest you do 32
suggest that 53B
suggest + *-ing* 51, 52A, 54A
superlative (*longest/best*, etc.) 105
suppose (*I suppose so/not*) 49D
supposed (*He is supposed to* ...) 43B
sure
sure + *to* ... 63E, 82B
sure of/about 128B
surprised
surprised + *to* ... 63C
surprised and *surprising* 96
surprised at/by 127C
suspect (*of*) 60B, 132A
suspicious (*of*) 128A

tags (tag questions) 50
take
take care of 130C
take on 138B
take off 137C-D
take down 139A
take up 140
talk
talk to somebody 129A
talk about something 60A, 130A
taste
with the simple present or *can* 4C
taste + adjective 97C
teach
teach in passive sentences 42A
teach somebody how to do something 52D
teach + *to* ... 53B
tell
tell in passive sentences 42A
tell and *say* 46C
tell someone to do something 46D, 53B
tell someone what to do 52D
tell someone off 138C
temporal clauses (*when* clauses) 24
tend (+ *to* ...) 52A
than 102, 104
thank (*for*) 60B, 129B, 132B
that
said that 45B
in relative clauses 90–92
the 70–76
the and *a/an* 70, 71A
the sea, the sky, etc. 71C
the movies, the theater, etc. 71D
school / the school 72
children / the children 73
the + adjective (*the young*, etc.) 74B
the + nationality word (*the French*, etc.) 74C
the with geographical names 75
the with streets, buildings, etc. 76
the + comparative (*the sooner, the better*) 103D
the + superlative (*the oldest*, etc.) 105B
there (and *it*) 82
there's no point in ... 61A
there will/must/should, etc. 82B
there is + *-ing* or *-ed* 95C
they/them/their (used for *somebody/anybody/nobody/everybody*) 83E, 84C, 88D

think
I think and *I'm thinking* 4B
I think so, I don't think so 49D
think of + *-ing* 52A, 60A, 64D
think about and *think of* 131B
though 110E
as though 115
even though 109D, 110E
threaten (+ *to* ...) 52A, 54A
throw
throw to/at 129D
throw away 142B
till see **until**
time
it's the first time I've ... 7D
it's time ... 33C
count or noncount noun 68A
on time and *in time* 119A
tired
tired and *tiring* 96
tired of 127C
to 123
to + *-ing* 58C
noun + *to* 126D
adjective + *to* 127A, 128B
verb + *to* 129, 133D
too and *enough* 101
top (*at the top*) 121C
translate (*from/into*) 133B
travel (noncount noun) 68B
trouble (*have trouble doing something*) 61C
try
try + *to* ... or *-ing* 55A
try out 136C
try on 137C
turn
turn out 136
turn on/off 134D, 137A
turn up 139A, 140E
turn down 139
two-word verbs see **phrasal verbs**
typical (*of*) 128A

understand (*how/what* + *to* ...) 52D
unless 112A
until (or *till*)
until + simple present / present perfect 24A–B
until and *by* 117B
up (verb + *up*) 134, 139–141
upset (*about*) 127B
use (*it's no use* + *-ing*) 61A
used
used to do 17
be/get used to 59
I am used to doing and *I used to do* 17F, 59D
usually (position of *usually*) 107

verbs see also **present**, **past**, **future**, **passive**, etc.
verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 15D, 16A
list of irregular verbs Appendix 1.4
present and past tenses Appendix 2
verbs + *-ing* and verbs + *to* ... 51–57
verb + preposition 60, 129–133
phrasal verbs (*break down* / *get on*, etc.) 134–142

wait (*for*) 130B
want (+ *to* ...) 53A, 64D
warn (+ *to* ...) 53B
was/were 5D
was/were -ing (past continuous) 6
was/were going to 19D
was/were able to 25D
was and *were* in *if* sentences 37C
waste (*waste time* + *-ing*) 61D
weather (noncount noun) 68B
well 99A
were (used with *I/he/she/it*) 37C, 115D
what
what in questions 47
what ... *for?* 62C
What ... ! (exclamations) 69A–B
what and *that* (relative clauses) 90D, 91D
what and *which* (relative clauses) 94C
when
when + simple present / present perfect 24
when and *if* 24D
when + *-ing* 66A
even when 109D
when and *as* 113
where (in relative clauses) 92C, 93C
whether 48
which
which in questions 47
which in relative clauses 90–91, 93–94
all/none/some of which 94B
while
while + simple present / present perfect 24A
while + *-ing* 66A
while and *during* 116C
who
who in questions 47
who in relative clauses 90–94
who and *whose* in relative clauses 92A
who and *whom* in relative clauses 92B
whole 88B–C
on the whole 124B
whom
in questions 47C
in relative clauses 92B, 94A–B
all/none/some of whom 94B
whose (in relative clauses) 92A, 93C
why
why isn't/didn't (etc.) ... ? 47D
why in relative clauses 92D
will 20–21
will you? 20B, 35A, 50D
will and *going to* 22
will be doing (future continuous) 23
will have done (future perfect) 23
will in *if and when* sentences 24, 112C
will and *would* 34B, Appendix 4
will in the passive 41A
will and other future forms Appendix 3
will and other modal verbs Appendix 4
wish 39
I wish I knew, etc. 37, 39
I wish I'd known, etc. 38C, 39
wish and *hope* 39A
wish ... *would* 39D
with
noun + *with* 126E
adjective + *with* 127B–C, 128B
verb + *with* 133C
without (+ *-ing*) 58B
won't (= *will not*) 20–21
word order
have something done 44
questions 47
negative questions 47D
embedded questions (*Do you know what* ... ?) 48A
reported questions 48B
order of adjectives 97
verb and object together 106A
place and time 106B
position of adverbs with the verb (*also, always*, etc.) 107
word order with phrasal verbs (*turn on the light, turn it on*, etc.) 134D
work
noncount noun 68B, 72C
work out 136B
worried (*about*) 127B
worse 102C
worst 105A
worth (*it's worth* + *-ing*) 61B
would 34
would and *will* 34B
would you ... ? 35A
would you like? I'd like 35D
would in *if* sentences 36–38
wish ... *would* 39D
would like/love/hate/prefer + *to* ... 53A, 56B–C
would prefer 56B, 57B
would rather 57C–D
would and other modal verbs Appendix 4

yet
yet and *still* 108C
yet with the simple past and the present perfect 8D

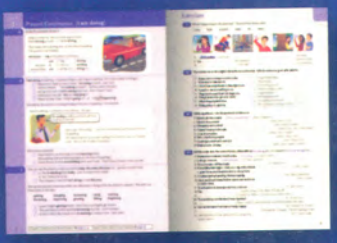
GRAMMAR IN USE INTERMEDIATE

With answers • Fourth Edition

The grammar reference and practice book for students of American English

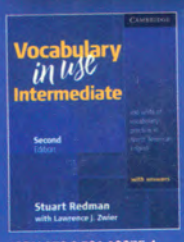
Simple explanations, clear examples, and easy-to-understand exercises make this book perfect for both self-study and classroom activities.

- Test yourself and find out your strengths and weaknesses with a simple Study Guide.
- Learn about the grammar and then practice, with explanations on the left-hand page and exercises on the right.
- Improve your understanding with even more exercises in the back of the book.
- Check your answers with the easy-to-use answer key.

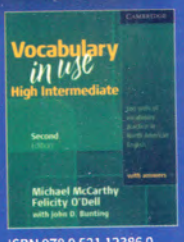


Grammar in Use Intermediate is available in the following formats:

ISBN	with answers	without answers	with ebook
978-1-108-61761-1	●		●
978-1-108-44945-8	●		
978-1-108-44939-7		●	



ISBN 978 0 521 12375 4



ISBN 978 0 521 12386 0



ISBN 978 1 108 65933 8

Also available:

VOCABULARY IN USE INTERMEDIATE
VOCABULARY IN USE HIGH INTERMEDIATE
CLEAR SPEECH

Better Learning is our simple approach where insights shape content that drives results.

Discover more:
cambridge.org/betterlearning



CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org

ISBN 978-1-108-44945-8